OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 55

Lancelot of the Lake

Le Livre de Lancelot del Lac

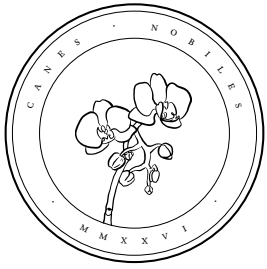
Lancelot of the Lake

Part One: From the Lake to the Dolorous Guard

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

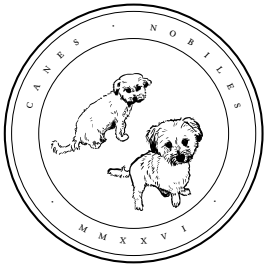


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 55 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows H. Oskar Sommer's text, The Vulgate Version of the Arthurian Romances, vol. III: Le Livre de Lancelot del Lac, part I (Washington, Carnegie Institution, 1910), pages 3–154

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

Sommer prints British Library Additional MS 10293 as the scribe wrote it, with his spelling, his capitals, and his point, and so it is printed here, with the letters Sommer supplies and without his references to the manuscripts' columns. The reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Kings of Benoic and Gannes 7
II · Trebe Taken by Treachery 24
III · The Death of King Ban 39
IV · The Queen's Grief 44
V · Claudas Takes Gannes 53
VI · The Lady of the Lake and Merlin 63
VII · Pharien's Wife 73
VIII · The Character of Claudas 87
IX · Claudas in Arthur's Court 95
X · The Childhood of Lancelot 111
XI · Lancelot's Largesse 119
XII · Queen Elaine and the Monk 137
XIII · The Monk Before Arthur 152
XIV · Saraide's Errand 162
XV · Lionel and Pharien 172
XVI · Claudas Struck Down 186
XVII · Claudas Mourns His Son 197
XVIII · The Rising at Gannes 207
XIX · Pharien's Grief 222

XX · Pharien's Counsel 238
XXI · The Three Hostages 250
XXII · The Fight in the Tower 265
XXIII · Lionel and Bors at the Lake 275
XXIV · Leonce and Lambegue at the Lake 289
XXV · Pharien in the Tower 311
XXVI · Claudas and Pharien 317
XXVII · Lambegue's Challenge 328
XXVIII · The Terms of Peace 338
XXIX · The Death of Pharien 361
XXX · Banin at Arthur's Court 373
XXXI · Lancelot at Eighteen 385
XXXII · What a Knight Must Be 392
XXXIII · The Lady Arms the Youth 408
XXXIV · The Wounded Knight at Camelot 413
XXXV · The Lady of the Lake at Court 422
XXXVI · The Youth Before the Queen 431
XXXVII · The Wounded Knight Unfastened 440
XXXVIII · The Lady of Nohaut Asks for Help 448
XXXIX · The Queen Gives Him Leave 456
XL · The Damsel in the Lake 462
XLI · The Knight of the Pavilion 473
XLII · The Battle at Nohaut 483
XLIII · The Queen's Ford 491
XLIV · The Gates of the Dolorous Guard 499
XLV · The Three Shields 513
XLVI · The Dolorous Guard Conquered 524
XLVII · The Tidings at Court 535

The Kings of Benoic and Gannes

I

Ban of Benoic and Bors of Gannes, brothers married to two sisters, hold the march of Gaul; Ban's only son is Lancelot, baptized Galahad. Their neighbor Claudas of the Land Deserted, once driven out by Aramont and Uther Pendragon, recovers his land after their deaths and, with the Roman Ponce Antony, takes all of Ban's realm but the castle of Trebe. Ban kills Ponce Antony in a sortie, but Arthur, beset by wars, sends no help, and Bors lies dying. At a parley Claudas grants forty days and secretly wins over Ban's seneschal with the promise of the realm. On the seneschal's advice Ban rides by night to seek Arthur with his queen, his infant son, a squire, and his treasure, and at dawn halts by the Lake of Diana.

En la marche de gaule & de la petite bertaigne auoit .ij.
In the march of gaul and of the little britain had two
Rois anchienement; qui estoient freire germain. & auoient a
Kings anciently who were brothers german and had as
femmes .ij. serours germaines. Li vns des .ij. Rois auoit non
wives two sisters german The one of-the two Kings had name
li Rois bans de benoich. & li autres rois auoit non li rois
the King Ban of benoic and the other king had name the king
bohours de gannes. Li Rois bans estoit viex hom. & sa
Bors of gannes The King Ban was old man and his
feme iouene; & molt estoit bele & boine dame. & amee
wife young and very was fair and good lady and loved
de boines gens. ne onques de lui nauoit eu enfant que .j.
of good people nor ever of him not-had had child but one
tout seul qui vales estoit. & auoit non lancelos en sournon.
all alone who youth was and had name Lancelot in surname
mais il auoit non en baptesme galahos. Et che pourcoi il fu
but he had name in baptism Galahad And this wherefore he was
apeleis lancelos che deuisera bien li contes cha auant. Car li
called Lancelot this will-relate well the tale here forward For the

liex ni est ore mie ne la raisons. anchois tient li contes
place not-there is now at-all nor the reason rather holds the tale
sa droite voie. & dist que li rois bans auoit .j. sien voisin
its right way and says that the king Ban had a his neighbor
qui marchisoit a lui par deuers berri. qui lors estoit apelee la
who bordered on him by toward berry which then was called the
terre deserte. li siens voisin auoit non claudas. si estoit sires
land deserted the his neighbor had name Claudas so was lord
de bohorges. & del pais tout enuiron. Chil claudas estoit
of bourges and of-the country all around That Claudas was
rois. si estoit moult boins cheualiers & moult sages. mais
king so was very good knight and very wise but
moult estoit traitres. & estoit hom le roi de gaule. qui ore
very was traitor and was man (of-)the king of gaul which now
est apelee franche. La terre del regne claudas estoit apelee
is called france The land of-the realm (of-)Claudas was called
deserte. por che que toute estoit desertie. par uterpandragon.
deserted for this that all was laid-waste by Uther-Pendragon
& par aramont qui a chel tans estoit sires de bertaigne la
and by Aramont who at that time was lord of britain the
menour. que les gens apeloient hoel en sornon. Chil aramons
lesser whom the people called Hoel in surname That Aramont
auoit desous lui gaule. & benoich & toute la terre iusque a
had under him gaul and benoic and all the land until to
la marche dauuergne & de gascoigne. & deuoit auoir desous
the march of-auvergne and of gascony and was-to have under
lui le regne de boorges Mais claudas ne li counisoit mie.
him the realm of bourges But Claudas not to-him acknowledged at-all
ne seruice ne li uoloit rendre. ains auoit fait signour del
nor service not to-him wished to-render but had made lord of-the

roi de gaule. & a chel tans estoit gaule sougite a romme.
king of gaul and at that time was gaul subject to rome
& li rendoient treu. & estoient tuit li roi par eleichon.
and to-it rendered tribute and were all the kings by election
Quant aramons vit que claudas li renoioit sa signourie
When Aramont saw that Claudas to-him denied his lordship
si lacuelli de guerre & chil auoit en aide le roi de gaule
so him-attacked with war and that-one had in aid the king of gaul
& tout son pooir. Si perdi moult aramons en la guerre qui
and all his power So lost much Aramont in the war which
trop dura. Lors vint a vterpandragon qui rois estoit de la
too-long lasted Then came-he to Uther-Pendragon who king was of the
grant bertaigne. si deuint ses hons par couent que il li
great britain so became his man by covenant that he for-him
menast sa guerre. Ensi uterpandragons passa meir a tout
might-wage his war Thus Uther-Pendragon crossed sea with all
son pooir. & oirent noueles que li signourages de gaule
his power and they-heard news that the lordship of gaul
sestoit tourneis deuers claudas por aleir encontre aramont qui
itself-was turned toward Claudas for to-go against Aramont who
uenoit entre lui & uterpandragon. Lors coururent andui sour
came between him and Uther-Pendragon Then ran both upon
claudas. si le descomfirent. & li tolirent toute sa terre.
Claudas so him defeated and from-him took all his land
& hors len cachierent. Et fu la terre de tous sens
and out him-thence chased And was the land on all sides
si outreement destruite. que onques ne remest en forterece
so utterly destroyed that ever not remained in fortress
piere sour autre. fors en la chite de boorges qui fu garde
stone upon other except in the city of bourges which was guarded
de feu. & ne fu mie destruite par le commandement
from fire and not was at-all destroyed by the command

vterpandragon pour che que il se recorda que il i auoit
(of-)Uther-Pendragon for this that he himself recalled that he there had
estei neis. Apres che sen retourna uterpandragons en
been born After this himself-thence returned Uther-Pendragon into
bertaigne le menour. Et quant il i auoit tant demore com
britain the lesser And when he there had so-long stayed as
lui plot. si sen passa en la grant bertaigne. Et des
to-him pleased so himself-thence crossed into the great britain And from
lors en auant fu la menours bertaigne desous le roiaume de
then on forward was the lesser britain under the kingdom of
logres. Quant li rois aramons fu mors. & vterpandragons.
logres When the king Aramont was dead and Uther-Pendragon
& la terre de logres fu en la main le roi artu. si
and the land of logres was in the hand (of-)the king Arthur so
sorrent guerres en bertaigne le grant. en plusours liex.
arose wars in britain the great in several places
guerroioient le roi artu le plus des barons. Et che fu el
warred the king Arthur the most of-the barons And this was in-the
commenchement de son regnement. ne nauoit encore la roine
beginning of his reign nor not-had yet the queen
genieure gaires tenue. Si ot moult a faire de toutes pars.
Guinevere much held So had-he much to do on all sides
Lors reprist claudas sa guerre qui tant lauoit entrelaissie.
Then resumed Claudas his war which so-long it-had left-off
Car il auoit sa terre toute recouuree. si tost com li rois
For he had his land all recovered so soon as the king
aramons fu mors. lors recommencha a guerroier le roi ban
Aramont was dead then began-again to war the king Ban
de benoych. pour che que a lui marchisoit & pour che que
of benoic for this that on him bordered and for this that
hom auoit estei aramont. par qui il auoit sa terre perdue si
man had been (of-)Aramont by whom he had his land lost so

longement. Et que tant lauoit nusi tant com il auoit este
long And that so-much him-had harmed so-long as he had been
au desous. A chel tans estoit venus de roume .j. conselg
at-the under At that time was come from rome a consul
de grant renon poinces anthoines. si aida a claudas. & li
of great renown Ponce Antony so helped to Claudas and to-him
bailla tout le pooir de gaule. Et des contrees qui desous
handed all the power of gaul And of-the countries which under
estoient. Si conreerent si le roi ban de benoych. que il
were So handled-they so the king Ban of benoic that they
li tolirent sa chite de benoych & toute sa autre terre
from-him took his city of benoic and all his other land
fors .j. sien castel qui auoit non trebe. si estoit el chief de
except a his castle which had name trebe so was at-the head of
sa terre. Et si estoit si fors que riens nule ne doutoit au
his land And so was so strong that thing any not feared at-the
tans de lors fors afamer ou traison. Mais vn iour pristrent
time of then except starving or treason But one day took
si anemi .j. sien castel a force qui estoit a mains de .iij.
his enemies a his castle by force which was at less of three
liues pres de chelui. & il laloit secoure & se voloit
leagues near of that-one and he it-went to-succor and himself wished
metre dedens. & quant il vit que chil dehors estoient ia
to-put inside and when he saw that those outside were already
dedens a forche. Si se feri en lost & il & si cheualier
inside by force So himself struck into the-host and he and his knights
dont il en i auoit de moult preus. Et il meismes auoit
of-whom it thereof there had of very valiant And he himself had
estei renomes de proeche meruellouse. ileuc ochistrent moult
been renowned for prowess marvelous there killed-they many
de cheualiers de lost. Et tant les fisent a eus entendre
of knights of the-host And so-much them made-they to them attend

que tous li assaus remeist. Et courut toute lost pour
that all the assault ceased And ran all the-host for
encombrer le roi ban & ses gens toutes. Et le mistrent a
to-encumber the king Ban and his people all And him put-they on
la uoie. mais trop i orent demore. Mais ponces antoines
the way but too-long there had-they stayed But Ponce Antony
a toutes ses gens qui deuers la forest lor vint au
with all his people who from-toward the forest to-them came at-the
deuant. si ot teil fais de gent que li rois bans ne li sien
front so had such mass of people that the king Ban nor the his
ne le porent soffrir. Si furent tout si compaignon que mort
not it could endure So were all his companions what dead
que prins. fors seulement .iij. Mais de tant sauancha li
what taken except only three But of so-much himself-advanced the
rois bans quil lor ochist poinchon anthoine lor signour.
king Ban that-he to-them killed Ponce Antony their lord
& fist tant darmes puis quil ne fu que soi quart. que
and did so-much of-arms after that-he not was but himself fourth that
tous les romains mist en uoie & les cacha asseis. tant que
all the Romans put-he on way and them chased enough so-long that
claudas i uint poignant tout a desroi deuant les autres.
Claudas there came spurring all at disarray before the others

Quant li rois bans le vit si dist vne parole qui bien
When the king Ban him saw so said-he a word which well
apartient a homme desirete. ha diex dist il ia uoi iou chi
belongs to man disinherited ah God says he already see I here
mon anemi mortel. sire diex qui tantes honors maues dounees.
my enemy mortal Lord God who so-many honors me-have given
Otroies moi que ie lochie. & anchois mure ie aueuc lui
Grant me that I him-may-kill and rather may-die I with him
biaus sire diex que il sen aut vis. Car lors seroient
fair Lord God than he himself-thence may-go alive For then would-be

toutes mes dolours asouagies. Atant iousterent ensamble.
all my griefs eased Thereupon jousted-they together
si labati li rois bans si durement que toutes ses gens
so him-struck-down the king Ban so hard that all his people
quiderent que il fust mors. Et lors sen parti li rois
thought that he were dead And then himself-thence parted the king
bans & fu moult lies. Car bien quidoit que sa proiere fust
Ban and was very glad For well thought-he that his prayer were
acomplie. Si feri tant des esporons quil vint a trebe.
fulfilled So struck-he so-much with-the spurs that-he came to trebe
dedens le quart iour fu pris li castiaus ou claudas seoit. Et
within the fourth day was taken the castle where Claudas sat And
lors uint au soir li rois bans dedens trebe. & quant il
then came at-the evening the king Ban within trebe and when he
sot que chil nestoit mie mors si en ot si grant deul a
knew that that-one not-was at-all dead so thereof had-he so great grief at
son cuer que onques mais puis nen issi & bien fu puis
his heart that ever more after not-thence issued and well was after
aparissant; Claudas sist deuant trebe moult longement. Et li
apparent Claudas sat before trebe very long And the
rois bans auoit plusours fois enuoie pour secours au roi artu.
king Ban had several times sent for succor to-the king Arthur
Mais li rois artus auoit tant a faire de maintes pars quil ne
But the king Arthur had so-much to do on many sides that-he not
se pooit mie legierement entremetre dautrui besoigne. Et li
himself could at-all lightly concern of-another's need And the
rois boors ses freres ki moult li auoit aidie gisoit del mal
king Bors his brother who much him had aided lay of-the sickness
de la mort. Et cascun iour couroient li forrier parmi sa terre.
of the death And each day ran the foragers through his land
Car ele marchisoit a le terre de benoich par deuers trebe.
For it bordered on the land of benoic by toward trebe

Quant claudas vit quil ne prenderoit mie le castel
When Claudas saw that-he not would-take at-all the castle
legierement. Si prist vn parlement au roi ban. & donerent
lightly So took-he a parley with-the king Ban and gave-they
seurte li vns a lautre de sauf aler & sauf venir. Li rois
surety the one to the-other of safe going and safe coming The king
bans vint au parlement soi tiers sans plus. si fu ses
Ban came to-the parley himself third without more so was his
senescaus li vns des .ij. & vns siens cheualiers auoeques. Et
seneschal the one of-the two and a his knight with-him And
autresi vint claudas soi tiers sans plus. Et fu li parlemens
likewise came Claudas himself third without more And was the parley
droit deuant la porte du castel. Li castiax seoit en haut.
right before the gate of-the castle The castle sat on high
& il sestoient desous logies. Et li tertres estoit moult
and they themselves-were below lodged And the hill was very
ruistes & moult anieus a monter. Quant claudas vit le
steep and very irksome to climb When Claudas saw the
roi ban si se plainst de poinchon anthoine premierement
king Ban so himself complained of Ponce Antony first
quil li auoit ochis. Et chil se plaint de sa terre
that-he to-him had killed And that-one himself complains of his land
quil li auoit tolue sans raison. Ie ne le vous toli
that-he from-him had taken without reason I not it from-you took
mie fait claudas pour chose que vous mauies faite ne pour
at-all says Claudas for thing that you me-had done nor for
haine que iaie a vous. Mais pour le roi artu que vous
hatred that I-may-have to you But for the king Arthur whom you
teneis a signor. Car ses peres vterpandragons me desireta.
hold as lord For his father Uther-Pendragon me disinherited
Mais se vous voleis ie vous feroie biau plait. Saisisies
But if you wish I to-you would-make fair plea Seize

moi de chest chastel. & ie le vous renderai maintenant par
me of this castle and I it to-you shall-render at-once by
teil couent que tantost deuendres mes hom & tendres
such covenant that straightway will-you-become my man and will-you-hold
de moi toute vostre terre. Che ne ferai ie mie fait li rois
from me all your land This not shall-do I at-all says the king
bans car ie me pariureroie enuers le roi artu qui hom
Ban for I myself would-perjure toward the king Arthur whose man
ie sui liges. Or vous dirai donques fait claudas que vous
I am liege Now to-you shall-I-tell then says Claudas what you
ferois. Enuoies a artu que il vous sequere dedens .xl. iours
will-do Send to Arthur that he you may-succor within forty days
& se dedens chel terme ne vous a secourut rendeis moi
and if within that term not you has succored render me
le castel & deuenes mes hons de toute vostre terre. Et
the castle and become my man of all your land And
ie le vous acroisterai de riches fies. Li rois bans dist quil
I it for-you shall-increase with rich fiefs The king Ban said that-he
sen consellera & le matin li saura a dire ou
himself-thereof will-take-counsel and the morning to-him will-know to say or
mander lequel il vaudra faire ou le rendre ou le contretenir.
send which he will-wish to-do or it render or it hold-out

Atant sen parti li rois bans & ses senescaus fu
Thereupon himself-thence parted the king Ban and his seneschal was
remeis vn poi ariere si parla claudas a li. senescaus fait il
remained a little behind so spoke Claudas to him seneschal says he
ie sai bien que chist castiax est maleureus. Car ia del
I know well that this castle is ill-fated For ever from-the
roi artu secours naura. si perdera tout li rois bans par
king Arthur succor not-will-have so will-lose all the king Ban by
fole atente. & moi poise moult que vous estes entour teil
foolish waiting and me grieves much that you are about such

homme dont biens ne vous puet venir. Car trop ai oi
man whence good not to-you can come For too-much have-I heard
dire bien de vous. & pour che vous loeroie ie que vous
say good of you and for this you would-advise I that you
uous en uenisies od moi. & saues vous que ie ferai
yourself thence might-come with me and know you what I shall-do
de vous. Ie vous afierai loiaument que ie vous donrai cest
with you I to-you shall-pledge loyally that I to-you shall-give this
regne si tost com ie laurai conquis. Et tous iours seres
realm so soon as I it-shall-have conquered And all days will-you-be
sires de mon pooir. Et se ie vous preng a forche che pesera
lord of my power And if I you take by force this will-grieve
moi quant il conuenra que ie vous fache mal asses. Car iou
me when it will-behoove that I to-you may-do harm enough For I
ai iurei sor sains que ia nus nert a forche prins de
have sworn upon saints that ever anyone not-will-be by force taken of
cheste guerre quil ne soit ochis ou enprisounes. sans issir
this war that-he not be killed or imprisoned without issuing
fors iamais a nul iour. Tant ont parlei ensanble que
out ever-more at any day So-much have-they spoken together that
li senescaus li fiancha a aidier de son pooir sans le
the seneschal to-him pledged to aid with his power without the
cors son signour trair ne vendre. Et claudas li fianche
body (of-)his lord to-betray nor sell And Claudas to-him pledges
maintenant que si tost com il auroit trebe que il li
at-once that so soon as he would-have trebe that he to-him
renderoit toute la terre & il en deuendroit ses hom.
would-render all the land and he thereof would-become his man
Atant departirent. si sen retourne claudas a ses
Thereupon parted-they so himself-thence returns Claudas to his
gens. Et li senescaus le roi ban reuint a trebe & dist
people And the seneschal (of-)the king Ban came-back to trebe and said

au roi ban que claudas a moult parlei a li & ke trop
to-the king Ban that Claudas has much spoken to him and that too-much
vaudroit samour auoir. Et que men loes vous fait li rois
would-wish his-love to-have And what me-thereof advise you says the king
bans. sire fait il le miex que ie i uoie si est que vous
Ban lord says he the best that I there see so is that you
meismes aillies crier merchi au roi artu. Car bien sera
yourself may-go to-cry mercy to-the king Arthur For well will-be
garde che que vous aues a garder dusques a vostre reuenue.
guarded this that you have to guard until to your return

Lors vint li rois bans a la roine. si li conte comment
Then came the king Ban to the queen so to-her tells how
claudas li auoit requis a rendre son castel. Et me veut fait
Claudas him had asked to render his castle And me wishes says
il iurer que si tost com il laura me reuestira de cestui
he to-swear that so soon as he it-will-have me will-reinvest with this-one
& de toute lautre terre. Mais ie sai cestui a si desloial
and with all the-other land But I know this-one for so disloyal
que sil auoit ore cest castel il ne le me renderoit iamais.
that if-he had now this castle he not it to-me would-render ever-more
ne chestui ne de toute lautre terre point. Mais ie len
nor this-one nor of all the-other land any But I him-thereof
doi respondre demain que ien vaudrai faire. Car il me
must answer tomorrow what I-thereof shall-wish to-do For he me
requiert que ie enuoie a monsignour le roi artu. & il me
asks that I send to my-lord the king Arthur and he to-me
donra trieues de cest castel desi a .xl. Iours. Se me secort
will-give truce for this castle until to forty Days If me succors
mes sires li rois diex tant bien. Et se il ne me secort
my lord the king God so-much good And if he not me succors
ie le reuestirai de cest chastel. La roine qui moult crient
I him shall-reinvest with this castle The queen who much fears

le desirretement. li loe que ensi le face. Car quant
the disinheritance to-him advises that thus it he-may-do For when
li rois artus vous sera faillis qui vous aidera iamais. Dame
the king Arthur you will-be failed who you will-aid ever-more Lady
fait il puis ke vous uous i acordes ie le ferai. Et saueis
says he since that you yourself there agree I it shall-do And know
vous que iai en pensei a faire. Ie mesmes irai au roi
you what I-have thereof thought to do I myself shall-go to-the king
artu & si li crierai merchi de mon desiritiment. Et il
Arthur and so to-him shall-cry mercy of my disinheritance And he
en ara grignour pitie que se ie ni estoie. Car il me
thereof will-have greater pity than if I not-there were For he me
verra present & se ie i enuoioie autre message riens ne
will-see present and if I there sent other messenger anything not
me valdroit. Car nus nest si bien creus de males noueles
me would-avail For anyone not-is so well believed of evil news
com chiex qui porte ensenges apparisans. Ore vous aparellies
as that-one who bears tokens apparent Now yourself prepare
car vous i uenres auoekes moi. & ne menrons de nules
for you there will-come with me and not shall-we-lead of any
gens que mon fil & vn seul escuier qui nous fera che
people but my son and a single squire who for-us will-do this
quil nous ert mestier. Car ie veul que grans pities prenge
that-it to-us will-be need For I wish that great pity may-take
monsignour le roi de ma grant dolor quant il le verra. &
my-lord the king of my great sorrow when he it will-see and
sachies que nous mouuerons encore anuit. Et gardes que
know that we shall-set-out yet tonight And see that
vous pregnies tout le tresor que vous porois chaiens trouer
you may-take all the treasure that you will-be-able in-here to-find
& sauoir & de ioiaus & de vaselemente. & si metes
and wealth and of jewels and of vessels and so put

tout en mes grans cofres car ie ne sai quel chose est a
all in my great coffers for I not know what thing is to
uenir de mon chastel ains que ie reuiegne. Car pour nule
come of my castle before that I may-return For for any
riens ne vaudroie que vous remeisissies en auenture. Ne mie
thing not would-I-wish that you might-remain in adventure Nor at-all
pour chou que iaie paour de chest chastel quil soit ia
for this that I-may-have fear of this castle that-it be ever
pris a forche. Mais nus ne se puet garder de traison.
taken by force But anyone not himself can guard from treason
Ainsi com li rois le deuise sa aparellie la roine. Et
Thus as the king it devises herself-has prepared the queen And
quant ele a son oire apparellie ele li dist ke toute est
when she has her journey prepared she to-him says that all is
preste. Lors eslit li rois de tous ses varles chelui ou plus
ready Then chooses the king of all his servants that-one in-whom most
se fioit. Et li dist que il gart que rien ne faille
himself trusted And to-him says that he may-see that anything not may-fail
en son ronchin car cheuauchier li couuenra encor anuit.
in his packhorse for to-ride to-him will-behoove yet tonight
Li varles ama moult son seignour. si fist moult tost son
The servant loved much his lord so did very quickly his
commandement. Et il auoit le ronchin grant & fort & tost
command And he had the packhorse great and strong and quick
alant & bien apparellie de toutes choses. Et lors vint li rois
going and well equipped with all things And then came the king
a son senescal & li descueure son corage comment il veut
to his seneschal and to-him uncovers his heart how he wishes
a la court le roi artu aler. Et ie me fie plus en vous
to the court (of-)the king Arthur to-go And I myself trust more in you
que en nul autre homme. Car moult vous ai tous iours
than in any other man For much you have-I all days

amei si vous commant mon castel a garder autresi comme le
loved so to-you commend my castle to guard likewise as the
cuer de mon uentre. Et demain dirois au roi claudas que
heart of my belly And tomorrow will-you-tell to-the king Claudas that
ie ai enuoie a monsignour le roi artu. Et li ferois
I have sent to my-lord the king Arthur And to-him will-you-make
tel seurte com il vaudra. Que se ie ne sui par monsignor
such surety as he will-wish That if I not am by my-lord
le roi artu secourus dedens .xl. iours. del chastel le
the king Arthur succored within forty days with-the castle him
reuestirai a son plaisir. Mais gardes que il ne sache ia
shall-reinvest at his pleasure But see that he not may-know ever
que ie soie hors de chaiens meus. Car petit priseroit puis
that I be out of in-here moved For little would-be-prize after
le tenement del chastel que ie seroie hors. Sire fait li
the holding of-the castle that I would-be out Lord says the
traitre naies garde. Car iou en penserai moult bien.
traitor not-have care For I thereof shall-think very well

Chele nuit se coucha li rois bans auques par tans. Car
That night himself lay-down the king Ban somewhat by time For
les nuis estoient courtes. Et che fu che dist li contes la
the nights were short And this was this says the tale the
nuit de la mi aoust. Li rois fu en esfroi del voiage que il
night of the mid August The king was in dread of-the journey that he
auoit a faire. Car moult li estoit sor le col si se lieue
had to make For much to-him was upon the neck so himself rises
bien .iij. lieues ains le ior. Et quant les seles furent mises
well three leagues before the day And when the saddles were put
sor les cheuaus & il furent tout atornei. si commanda a
upon the horses and they were all equipped so commended-he to
dieu son senescal & son chastel & tous les autres gens. Et
God his seneschal and his castle and all the other people And

lors sen issi li rois par .j. petit ponchel de cloies qui
then himself-thence issued the king by a little bridge of hurdles which
estoit sour le petite riuiere qui desous le chastel estoit. Ne
was over the little river which below the castle was Nor
li chastiax nestoit assis que dune part. Et si estoit li sieges
the castle not-was besieged but on-one side And so was the siege
plus de .iij. traities loins la ou il estoit le plus pres.
more than three bowshots far there where it was the most near
Car par deuers le tertre auoit & mons & vaus & moult
For by toward the hill there-had both hills and vales and very
males avenues. Que par la riuiere dautre part ne pooit nule
bad approaches That by the river on-other side not could any
gent seoir. Car li marois i estoit grans & parfons. Ne il
people sit For the marsh there was great and deep Nor it
ni auoit de toutes voies que vne petite cauchie estroite.
not-there had of all ways but a little causeway narrow
qui duroit de lonc plus de .ij. boines lieues. par chele
which lasted of length more than two good leagues by that
cauchie sen ua li rois bans senmaine sa feme sour .j.
causeway himself-thence goes the king Ban thence-leads his wife upon a
palefroi grant & bel & amblant soef. Et vn escuier moult
palfrey great and fair and ambling gently And a squire very
preu & de grant seruice plain qui lenfant portoit deuant lui
valiant and of great service full who the-child carried before him
sour .j. moult grant ronchin en vn bercheul. Li rois bans
upon a very great packhorse in a cradle The king Ban
cheuauchoit .j. palefroi que il auoit esproue & bien portant.
rode a palfrey which he had proved and well bearing
Et fait mener a vn sien garchon a pie vn sien cheual qui
And makes lead by a his groom on foot a his horse which
moult estoit de grant bonte. Et si porte li escuiers son
very was of great goodness And so carries the squire his

escu. & li garchons qui seoit sour le cheual menoit deuant
shield and the groom who sat upon the horse led before
lui .j. soumier & porte le glaiue le roi. Li soumiers
him a sumpter and carries the lance (of-)the king The sumpter
estoit moult bien cargies de ioiaus & de vaselemente &
was very well loaded with jewels and with vessels and
de deniers. Li rois bans cheuauche en cauches de fer &
with pennies The king Ban rides in hose of iron and
en son hauberc & sespee cheinte. Sa cape a pluie afublee
in his hauberk and his-sword girded His cape for rain donned
& va en la route tous daarains. Et tant a cheuauchie
and goes in the company all hindmost And so-much has-he ridden
quil vint hors del marois & entre en vne forest. & quant
that-he came out of-the marsh and enters into a forest and when
il ot cheuauchie de la forest entour demie lieue si entre en
he had ridden of the forest about half league so enters into
vne moult bele lande ou il auoit este maintes fois. Tant a
a very fair heath where he had been many times So-much has
alei li rois bans & sa compaignie que il vint sour .j. lach
gone the king Ban and his company that he came upon a lake
qui al chief de la lande estoit. au chief dun moult haut
which at-the head of the heath was at-the head of-a very high
tertre. dont len pooit veir tout le pais & lors estoit aiourne.
hill whence one could see all the country and then was dawned
Li rois dist que il ne se mouuera dileuc deuant che
The king said that he not himself will-move thence before this
quil soit vn poi esclarchi si deschent. car il a talent de
that-it be a little brightened so dismounts for he has desire to
monter el tertre en haut pour son castel esgarder quil
climb on-the hill on high for his castle to-behold which-he
amoit sour tous les chastiax del monde. Tant atent li rois
loved above all the castles of-the world So-long waits the king

quil fu auques esclarchi. Et il monte en son cheual & laise
that-it was somewhat brightened And he mounts on his horse and leaves
la roine & sa compaignie aual sour le lach qui moult estoit
the queen and her company below upon the lake which very was
grans. Li lais estoit apeles des le tans as paiens li lais
great The lake was called from the time of-the pagans the lake
dyanes. Dyane fu roine de secile & regna au tans virgile
(of-)Diana Diana was queen of sicily and reigned at-the time (of-)Virgil
le boin auctor. si lapeloient la fole gent mescreans qui lors
the good author so her-called the foolish people unbelieving who then
estoient pour diuesse. Et chestoit la dame del monde qui
were for goddess And this-was the lady of-the world who
plus amoit deduit de bois. Et toute iour aloit chachier. &
most loved sport of wood And all day went hunting and
pour che lapeloient li mescreant la diuesse del bois. Chele
for this her-called the unbelievers the goddess of-the wood That
forest ou li lais estoit passoit toutes les fores de gaule &
forest where the lake was surpassed all the forests of gaul and
de la petite bertaigne. si comme de fores petites. Car ele
of the little britain so as of forests little For it
ne estoit que .x. lieues galesches de lonc. & .vi. ou .vij. de
not was but ten leagues Welsh of length and six or seven of
lei. Et si auoit a non bois en val. Li rois bans apuie le
breadth And so had for name wood in vale The king Ban climbs the
tertre. Car moult veut le chastel veoir que tant amoit.
hill For much wishes-he the castle to-see which so-much he-loved
Mais ore laise li contes vn poi a parler de lui & parole
But now leaves the tale a little to speak of him and speaks
de son senescal a qui il auoit son chastel commande.
of his seneschal to whom he had his castle commended

Trebe Taken by Treachery

II

The seneschal opens the gates of Trebe to Claudas, telling the watch there is a truce. Ban's godson Banin, suspecting treason, raises the cry, holds the great tower with three sergeants and curses the seneschal as a Judas. One of Claudas's men sets the town afire, to his anger, and Claudas batters the tower; starved, Banin yields on terms, and Claudas, admiring his loyalty, keeps him in honor. Banin appeals the seneschal of treason; Claudas, bound by his oath, invests the seneschal with Benoic, and Banin cuts off his head in combat in the meadow. Refusing every reward, Banin takes his leave.

Che dist li contes que quant li rois bans se fu partis
This says the tale that when the king Ban himself was parted
del chastel de trebe & li senescax qui not pas oubliee
from-the castle of trebe and the seneschal who not-had at-all forgotten
les couenences de lui & de claudas issi hors de la vile
the covenants of him and of Claudas issued out of the town
& vint a claudas. si li dist. Sire ie vous aport boines
and came to Claudas so to-him said Lord I to-you bring good
noueles. Ne onques si bien nauint a nul homme comme a
news Nor ever so well not-befell to any man as to
vous se vous me voles tenir mes couenences. Car vous poes
you if you to-me wish to-keep my covenants For you can
prendre orendroit chest chastel sans nule desfense. Comment
take right-now this castle without any defense How
fait claudas. ou est dont li rois bans. Chertes fait il il la
says Claudas where is then the king Ban Certainly says he he it-has
guerpi & sen uont entre lui & madame la roine
forsaken and themselves-thence go between him and my-lady the queen
& .j. sien escuier sans plus de gent. Or me rendes dont
and a his squire without more of people Now to-me render then

fait claudas le castel. Et ie vous reuestirai du chastel &
says Claudas the castle And I you shall-reinvest with-the castle and
de toute la terre apres. & en deuenrois diemenche apres
with all the land after and thereof will-you-become Sunday after
la messe mes hom quil sera li iours de la mi aoust &
the mass my man for-it will-be the day of the mid August and
voiant tous mes barons. De ceste chose est moult lies li
seeing all my barons Of this thing is very glad the
senescaus si li dist sire ie men irai. Et vous lairai
seneschal so to-him said lord I myself-thence shall-go And to-you shall-leave
les portes desfremees & lor dirai que nous auons boines
the gates unbarred and to-them shall-tell that we have good
trieues si se reposeront volentiers car asses ont eu
truce so themselves will-rest willingly for enough have-they had
mesaise. Et quant vous & vostre gent serois dedens si
hardship And when you and your people will-be inside so
vous tenes tuit coi iusque al maistre chastel & ensi
yourselves hold all quiet until to-the master castle and thus
porois tout prendre sans arrest. Ainsi parole li traitres
will-you-be-able all to-take without stop Thus speaks the traitor
a claudas & puis sen reua al chastel. Et quant il
to Claudas and then himself-thence goes-back to-the castle And when he
fu dedens si encontre .j. cheualier filleul le roi ban chil
was inside so meets a knight godson (of-)the king Ban that-one
gaitoit tous les nuis armeis. Et quant il vit le senescal
watched all the nights armed And when he saw the seneschal
venir de la hors si li demanda dont il venoit. & pour
come from there outside so him asked whence he came and for
quel besoigne il estoit a teil eure fors issus. Ie vieng fait
what need he was at such hour out issued I come says
li traitres de claudas la defors pour prendre trieues quil
the traitor from Claudas there outside for to-take truce which-he

auoit otroies a monseignour le roi & le vostre. Quant
had granted to my-lord the king and the yours When
chil lentent si li fremist tous li cors car moult auoit
that-one it-hears so to-him shudders all the body for much had-he
grant paour de traison. Si li dist chertes senescaus a
great fear of treason So to-him said-he certainly seneschal at
teil eure ne va on mie pour trieue au mortel anemi
such hour not goes one at-all for truce to-the mortal enemy
son signour qui loiaument en veut ouurer. Comment fait
(of-)his lord who loyally therein wishes to-work How says
li senescaus tenes me vous pour desloial. Diex vous en
the seneschal hold me you for disloyal God you thereof
desfende fait li cheualiers qui auoit non banins que vous
may-defend says the knight who had name Banin that you
nen aies fait desloiaute ne ne fachies. Itant en
not-thereof may-have done disloyalty nor not may-do So-much thereof
dist & plus en eust dit & parlei sil osast. Mais
said-he and more thereof would-have said and spoken if-he dared But
li senescaus auoit la forche si le feist tost ochire
the seneschal had the force so him would-have-made quickly kill
si en laisa la parole atant. Et li senescaus dist a chaus
so thereof left the word thereupon And the seneschal said to those
qui velloient que il ont boines trieues deu merchi. Si les
who watched that they have good truce God thanks So them
fait tous aler couchier. & il si font moult volentiers car
makes all to-go to-bed and they so do very willingly for
il estoient moult trauelliet. Mais banins na pas talent
they were very wearied But Banin not-has at-all desire
daler dormir anchois se met en agait. si est aleis monter
to-go to-sleep rather himself puts on watch so is gone to-climb
en vne tournele pour sauoir que chil de dehors feroient.
into a turret for to-know what those of outside would-do

& se chil de dedens lor iroient ouurir la porte. Mais de
and if those of inside for-them would-go to-open the gate But of
che est il decheus que les portes sont desfremees. Et quant
this is he deceived that the gates are unbarred And when
il est en haut si voit venir iusques a .xx. cheualiers tous
he is on high so sees come up to twenty knights all
les hiaumes lachies. & puis en reuienent autres .xx. &
the helms laced and then thereof come-again other twenty and
ensi dusques a .ijc. Lors soupechouna il bien que la
thus until to two-hundred Then suspected he well that the
ville seroit traie. Et il auale les degres del mur contreval.
town would-be betrayed And he descends the steps of-the wall downward
si crie a haute vois trai. trai. parmi le chastel. Ne
so cries with high voice betrayed betrayed through the castle Nor
encore ne quidoit il mie que les portes fussent ouuertes.
yet not thought he at-all that the gates were opened

Li cris est leues parmi le chastel & chil coururent a leur
The cry is raised through the castle and those ran to their
armes qui estoient desgarni. Mais tantost se mistrent li
arms who were unarmed But straightway themselves put the
cheualier claudas dedens la premiere porte. Et quant banins
knights (of-)Claudas inside the first gate And when Banin
les voit si a teil doel que pour vn poi quil ne forsene.
them sees so has-he such grief that for a little that-he — goes-mad
si lor adreche tout a pie & fiert si durement le premier
so at-them makes all on foot and strikes so hard the first
parmi lescu & parmi le hauberc. que parmi le cors li
through the-shield and through the hauberk that through the body to-him
met le glaiue tout outre si le rue mort. Et li autre
puts the lance all through so him throws dead And the others
si laisent coure a pie & a cheual & il voit que sil fuit
so let run on foot and on horse and he sees that if-he flees

al maistre chastel anchois quil i soit venus laront
to-the master castle before that-he there be come him-will-have
il abatu .ij. fois ou .iij. Car il sont monte & il est a
they struck-down two times or three For they are mounted and he is on
pie. Lors se refiert sour les murs par les degres & vait
foot Then himself strikes-again onto the walls by the steps and goes
tous les aloirs tant quil est venus a la grant tour. Et
all the wall-walks so-far that-he is come to the great tower And
maintenant lieue apres li .j. pont tourneis si troeue dedens
at-once raises after him a bridge turning so finds inside
serians qui la tour gardoient dont li vns li a luis
sergeants who the tower guarded of-whom the one to-him has the-door
ouuert. Et li autre estoient tout el baile aual pour dormir.
opened And the others were all in-the bailey below for to-sleep
car aseur quidoient tout estre. Atant es vous vne partie
for secure thought-they all to-be Thereupon behold you a part
des cheualiers claudas qui venoient apres li tous les murs
of-the knights (of-)Claudas who came after him all the walls
car il le voloient prendre. Et quant il voient quil ont a
for they him wished to-take And when they see that-they have at
li failli si sen retournent. Et li autre orent porpris
him failed so themselves-thence return And the others had seized
le petit chastel anchois que les gens peusent estre armes
the little castle before that the people could be armed
laiens. Et li cris estoit si grans que len ni oist dieu
in-there And the cry was so great that one not-there would-hear God
tonant. A ches cris & a ches noises sailli sus li senescax.
thundering At these cries and at these noises leapt up the seneschal
Et fist semblant de soi desfendre autresi comme sil ne
And made semblance of himself to-defend likewise as if-he not
seust rien de lauenture. Si en commenche son seignour a
knew anything of the-adventure So thereof begins-he his lord to

regreter. Et banins qui de la tour en haut se fu saisis li
lament And Banin who of the tower on high himself was seized to-him
commenche a huchier. ahi fiex a putain murdreres tout che
begins to shout ah son of whore murderer all this
nous aues vous porcachie. si aues trai vostre lige seignour
for-us have you contrived so have-you betrayed your liege lord
qui de noient vous a mis a grant hautece. si li aues
who from nothing you has put to great highness so from-him have-you
tolue lesperance de sa terre recouurer. Mais a autresi boin
taken the-hope of his land to-recover But to likewise good
grei en puissies vous venir en la fin comme fist iudas qui
grace thereof may you come in the end as did Judas who
trai chelui qui en terre estoit venus pour sauuer lui &
betrayed that-one who on earth was come for to-save him and
les autres pecheors. Car bien aues faites les oeures Iudas.
the other sinners For well have-you done the works (of-)Judas
Ensi parloit banins de la tour en haut au traitour. Et tout
Thus spoke Banin from the tower on high to-the traitor And all
maintenant fu prins li chastiax petis & toutes les fortereces
at-once was taken the castle little and all the strongholds
fors la tour. Mais dune cose fu claudas moult courechies que
except the tower But of-one thing was Claudas very angered that
ne sai li queus de ses hommes mist en la vile le fu. Si
not know-I the which of his men put in the town the fire So
fu la richoise des beles maisons arses & fondues. Apres che
was the richness of-the fair houses burned and melted After this
se tindrent moult & desfendirent chil de la tour & si
themselves held much and defended those of the tower and so
nestoient il que .iiij. seulement. Dont li .iij. estoient seriant
not-were they but four only Whereof the three were sergeants
& banins estoit li quars. Si tuerent des gens le roi
and Banin was the fourth So killed-they of-the people (of-)the king

claudas a grant plente en lor desfense. Au quint iour fist li
Claudas in great plenty in their defense At-the fifth day made the
rois claudas vne perriere drechier deuant le tour ne plus ni
king Claudas a catapult raise before the tower nor more not-there
pooit on seoir. Mais ia pour la perriere ne fuissent
could one sit But ever for the catapult not would-they-have-been
prins se ne fust che que il nauoient que boire ne que
taken if not were this that they not-had what to-drink nor what
mangier. Et neporquant moult se desfendoient bien. Mais
to-eat And nevertheless much themselves defended well But
sour tous les autres se desfendoit banins. & moult ochist
above all the others himself defended Banin and much killed-he
des gens claudas. a peus agus & a pieres cornues que il
of-the people (of-)Claudas with stakes sharp and with stones horned which he
lor lanchoit. si durement se desfendoit banins. Et tant
at-them hurled so hard himself defended Banin And so-much
i souffri que trop sen esmeruelloient tuit. Et
there endured-he that too-much themselves-thereat marveled all And
dist claudas quant il loi noumer & il ot veu ses grans
said Claudas when he him-heard name and he had seen his great
proeches. & dist que sil auoit .j. si preudomme cheualier &
prowesses and said that if-he had a so worthy-man knight and
si loial vers lui il le tenroit plus chier que soi meismes.
so loyal toward him he him would-hold more dear than himself self
Puis que toute raisounable uiande lor fu faillie se
After that all reasonable food to-them was failed themselves
tindrent chil de la tour .iij. Iours entiers. Et lors furent
held those of the tower three Days whole And then were-they
trop aquis dangoisse de faim. si lor auint la tierche
too-much overcome with-anguish of hunger so to-them befell the third
nuit quil prinstrent en .j. creus de la tour vne huelote
night that-they took in a hollow of the tower an owl

car dautres oisiax ni auoit nul remes pour les caus de
for of-other birds not-there had any remained for the blows of
la perriere qui les en auoient cachies. De ceste auenture
the catapult which them thence had chased Of this adventure
sesbaudirent moult. Et si les auoit la perriere si estoutoies
themselves-cheered-they much And so them had the catapult so stunned
& les murs perroies & estones ca paines se pooient
and the walls battered and shaken that-with pains themselves could
il soustenir. Et claudas vit vn iour banin si li dist banin
they sustain And Claudas saw one day Banin so to-him said Banin
cor te ren ou autrement ne te peus tu mie longement
now thyself render or otherwise not thyself canst thou at-all long
tenir. Et ie te donrai asses chastiaus & armes & despense
hold And I to-thee shall-give enough castles and arms and provision
iusque la ou tu vauras aler. & se tu o moi voloies
until there where thou wilt-wish to-go and if thou with me wished
remanoir se diex mait & li saint de chele eglize si tent
to-remain so God me-may-help and the saints of that church so holds-he
sa main vers une capele ie tameroie plus que cheualier que
his hand toward a chapel I thee-would-love more than knight that
ie onques eusse. pour la grant proeche & pour la grant
I ever might-have for the great prowess and for the great
loiaute qui est en toi. Ainsi li proia claudas maintes fois. &
loyalty which is in thee Thus him begged Claudas many times and
chil li dist .j. iour ensint comme chil qui estoit moult
that-one to-him said one day thus as that-one who was very
dolant & entrepris. sire claudas sire claudas bien sachies
sorrowful and distressed lord Claudas lord Claudas well know
que quant ie me renderai a vous ie i aurai teil ensoine
that when I myself shall-render to you I there shall-have such excuse
apparissant que ia nus ne men blamera. Et quant ie me
apparent that ever anyone not me-thereof will-blame And when I myself

rendrai a vous ne a autrui ie ne me rendrai pas comme
shall-render to you or to another I not myself shall-render at-all as
traitres. Et tant se tint banins laiens que moult afebli
traitor And so-long himself held Banin in-there that much weakened-he
de fain & il & si compaignon. Et cascun iour li proia
from hunger both he and his companions And each day him begged
claudas de rendre car trop le desiroit a auoir. et trop
Claudas to render for too-much him desired-he to have and too-much
le prisoit pour le grant proece que il auoit en li veue.
him prized for the great prowess that he had in him seen
Quant banins voit que tenir ne se porent & quil le
When Banin sees that hold not themselves could and that-it it
couenoit rendre pour le desfaute de la viande & pour la
behooved to-render for the lack of the food and for the
perriere qui les auoit trop estounes. si commencha deul a
catapult which them had too-much shaken so began-he grief to
faire trop grant. Et si compaignon qui plus ne pooient le
make too great And his companions who more not could the
faim soustenir li distrent quil se renderoient. Car
hunger sustain to-him said that-they themselves would-render For
deus plus tenir estoit il noiens. & il lor dist or ne vous
of-them more to-hold was it nothing and he to-them said now not yourselves
esmaies car ie renderai la tour. Et sera fait a tel honor
dismay for I shall-render the tower And will-be done with such honor
que ia nen serons blasme. Ne ie ne sui pas mains lases
that ever not-thereof shall-we-be blamed Nor I not am at-all less weary
ne mains familleus de vous. Mais quant grant angoisse maine
nor less famished than you But when great anguish drives
homme & il doit faire meschief toutes uois doit il sonor
man and he must do mischief all ways must he his-honor
garder. Celui iour repaira claudas a lui. & li demanda quil
guard That day returned Claudas to him and him asked what-he

auoit en talent a faire ou del rendre ou del tenir. Sire fait
had in desire to do or of-the rendering or of-the holding Lord says
il ie me sui conseillies a mes compaignons. si me loent
he I myself am counseled with my companions so me advise-they
que nous teignons ceste tour. Car nous nauons a grant
that we may-hold this tower For we not-have for great
pieche garde de periere ne dautre engin. Mais ie ne voel plus
while care of catapult nor of-other engine But I not wish more
prendre le fais sour moi. car plus preudomme & plus riche
to-take the burden upon me for more worthy-man and more rich
de moi lont laisie aler. Or si me sui conseillies que ie vous
than me it-have let go Now so myself am counseled that I to-you
rendrai la tour & mes compaignons & moi. Car il mest
shall-render the tower and my companions and me For it to-me-is
auis que ie ne le poroie rendre a plus preudomme de vous.
opinion that I not it could render to more worthy-man than you
& si nous tendres o vous. Mais anchois nous ferois
and so us will-you-hold with you But first us will-you-make
seur que vous nous garderes enuers tous hommes. & nous
sure that you us will-guard against all men and us
tendrois a droit en vostre maison enuers toute gent. En
you-will-hold to right in your house against all people In
tel maniere que se nus nous seit que demander par vous
such manner that if anyone of-us knows what to-demand by you
ferons droit. & se nous sauons a homme de vostre pooir
shall-we-do right and if we know to man of your power
rien que demander droit nous en faites. Ceste couenenche
anything to demand right to-us thereof do This covenant
lor otroia claudas a tenir. & fist aporter les sains si lor
to-them granted Claudas to keep and made bring the saints so to-them
iura au pie de la tour a tenir loiaument che que il
swore-he at-the foot of the tower to keep loyally this that they

ont deuise. Et lors issirent hors de la tour si mist claudas
have devised And then issued-they out of the tower so put Claudas
sa garison dedens la tour & moult honera banin & moult
his garrison inside the tower and much honored Banin and much
lama dedens son cuer pour che que de grant proeche
him-loved within his heart for this that of great prowess
lauoit veu plain. & pour la grant loiaute ki en lui est.
him-had-he seen full and for the great loyalty which in him is

Dedens le tierch iour auint que li senescaus demanda ses
Within the third day befell that the seneschal asked his
couenenches a claudas. Et il dist que moult volentiers li
covenants of Claudas And he said that very willingly to-him
tendroit. Si commencha a querre alonges. & tant alerent les
would-keep So began-he to seek delays and so-far went the
paroles que banins en sot vne partie. lors vint a claudas
words that Banin thereof knew a part then came-he to Claudas
la ou il estoit entre ses barons si li dist. Sire ie voel
there where he was among his barons so to-him said Lord I wish
que tout chist baron sachent bien que ie me rendi a vous
that all these barons may-know well that I myself rendered to you
pour chou que vous me garandisies contre tous hommes.
for this that you me might-warrant against all men
& me tenries vers tous a droit. & enuers toute gent
and me would-hold toward all to right and toward all people
qui riens me vaudroient ne sauroient que demander. Et a
who anything of-me would-wish or would-know what to-demand And to
tous cheus qui ie sauroie riens que demander en vostre
all those whom I would-know anything to demand in your
pooir me fesisies droite iustice. Et claudas li connoist
power me you-would-do right justice And Claudas to-him acknowledges
ensi. Sire fait il ore vous proi ie dont & requier que vous
thus Lord says he now you beg I then and ask that you

me tengies droite iustice del senescal qui chi est. comme
to-me may-hold right justice of-the seneschal who here is as
de celui qui est traitres & pariures enuers dieu & vers
of that-one who is traitor and perjurer toward God and toward
son droit signour terrien. Et se il chou ose veer que il ne
his rightful lord earthly And if he this dares deny that he not
soit vers dieu & vers son lige signour traitres & pariures
be toward God and toward his liege lord traitor and perjurer
ie sui pres que ie li monstre vers son cors orendroit
I am ready that I to-him may-show against his body right-now
ou a tel iour com vous uaudres deuiser. Oies senescax
or at such day as you will-wish to-devise Hear seneschal
fait claudas que chis cheualiers dist sour vous. ensi seroie
says Claudas what this knight says upon you thus would-I-be
moult engingnies quant ie vous ameroie & essaucheroie a
very deceived when I you would-love and would-exalt to
mon pooir & vous series vers moi traitres. Sire fait il
my power and you would-be toward me traitor Lord says he
il na si boin cheualier sous chiel ne si proisie sil voloit
it not-has so good knight under heaven nor so prized if-he wished
monstrer que ie eusse fait vers vous traison que ie nen
to-show that I had done toward you treason that I not-thereof
desfendisse mon cors. Sire fait banins tenes mon gage. de
would-defend my body Lord says Banin hold my gage to
monstrer contre son cors que iai veu & oie la traison
show against his body that I-have seen and heard the treason
que il a faite enuers son signour lige. Ore ot claudas tel
that he has done toward his lord liege Now has Claudas such
chose qui li siet & plaist. car il meismes le haoit trop
thing which him suits and pleases for he himself him hated too-much
pour la traison quil ot faite. si est moult lies quant
for the treason which-he had done so is very glad when

trouei a ocoison raisounable par quoi il puisse perdre lonour
found has occasion reasonable by which he may lose the-honor
quil li auoit promise. si li demande quil en fera.
which-he to-him had promised so him asks what-he thereof will-do
Sire fait li senescax consellies moi vous meismes. car chist
Lord says the seneschal counsel me you yourself for this-one
me heit de mort pour vous non pour autre chose ne ma
me hates to death for you not for other thing nor me-has
apele de traison. De che fait claudas vous conselleraí. se vous
appealed of treason Of this says Claudas you shall-I-counsel if you
en saues saus si vous en desfendes seurement. car
thereof know-yourself safe so yourself thereof defend surely for
vous nestes pas mains fors ne mains corsus de lui. ne mains
you not-are at-all less strong nor less bodied than him nor less
proisies darmes nestes vous mie. se en quidies estre saus
prized of-arms not-are you at-all if thereof think-you to-be safe
si vous en desfendes vistement. Car se il mapeloit autresi
so yourself thereof defend quickly For if he me-appealed likewise
com il a fait vous dont soie ie hounis se ie ne men
as he has done you then may-be I shamed if I not myself-thereof
desfendoie. Et sachies que vous naues garde de nul homme
defended And know that you not-have care of any man
que de son cors. ne il de nul homme fors de vous. Et se vous
but of his body nor he of any man except of you And if you
ne vous en desfendes dont sambles vous bien homme qui
not yourself thereof defend then seem you well man who
se sente coupable de traison. Tant lor dist claudas que
himself may-feel guilty of treason So-much to-them said Claudas that
il ont ambedoi doune lor gages en sa main. Et il apelei apres
they have both given their gages in his hand And he called after
le senescal & li dist senescaus ie vous ai tenu dusques
the seneschal and to-him said seneschal I you have held until

chi & quidie a moult loial. & li rois bans vostre sires vous
here and thought for very loyal and the king Ban your lord you
i tesmoignoit. veneis auant & tenes. Ie vous reuest del
there witnessed come forward and hold I you invest with-the
roiaume de benoic des rentes & des fies & de quanques
kingdom of benoic with-the rents and with-the fiefs and with whatever
il i apent fors seulement des fortereches dont ie nului ne
it there belongs except only of-the strongholds whereof I nobody not
reuestiroie. Et se vous de banin vous poes vengier & desfendre
would-invest And if you on Banin yourself can avenge and defend
de ceste chose si me feres ma feute & mon hommage.
from this thing so to-me will-you-do my fealty and my homage
Et se il de che vous ataint quil vous met sus ie li
And if he of this you convicts that-he upon-you puts on I to-him
otroi & doing la terre & il en deuiegne mes hons liges.
grant and give the land and he thereof may-become my man liege
Ainsi claudas reuesti le senescal del roiaume de benoich
Thus Claudas invested the seneschal with-the kingdom of benoic
pour che que pariurer ne se voloit mie del sairement
for this that to-perjure not himself wished-he at-all of-the oath
que il li auoit fait. Et bien souspechounoit que il nen
that he to-him had made And well suspected-he that he not-thereof
seroit gaires tenans. Car trop sauoit banin de grant proeche
would-be much holding For too-well knew-he Banin of great prowess
& de loiaute espris. Que vous iroie ie deuisant. au quart
and of loyalty fired What to-you would-go I relating at-the fourth
Iour fu la bataille en la praerie de benoych entre loirre &
Day was the battle in the meadow of benoic between the-loire and
arsie. Et ileuc copa banins la teste au senescal. Et lors
arsie And there cut Banin the head to-the seneschal And then
li offri claudas toute la terre de benoych en fief & en
to-him offered Claudas all the land of benoic in fief and in

iretage. & banins li dist. Sire ie me rendi a vous par si
heritage and Banin to-him said Lord I myself rendered to you by so
que ie ni remandroie se tant non com ie vaudroie. &
that I not-there would-remain except so-long not as I would-wish and
mes talens est teus que aler men voel. si vous requier
my desire is such that to-go myself-thence wish-I so you ask
voiant tous vos barons atant congie. Car la dieu merchi
seeing all your barons thereupon leave For the (of-)God mercy
iai achieue che pourquoi ie estoie o vous remes. & bien
I-have achieved this wherefore I was with you remained and well
sachies que terre ne prendroie ie nule de vous. Car diex ne
know that land not would-take I any from you For God not
fist onques si riche terre que ie vausisse pas auoir se ne
made ever so rich land that I would-wish at-all to-have if not
vous en peuse greuer. Mais mes cuers nel poroit autrement
you thereby could harm But my heart not-it could otherwise
souffrir aqui ie sui. Atant sen parti sen fu claudas
suffer to-whom I am Thereupon himself-thence parted so-thereof was Claudas
moult dolens. Car en lui retenir sil peust meist
very sorrowful For in him to-retain if-he could would-he-have-put
toute sa paine. Car il nauoit onques veu cheualier si a cuer
all his pain For he not-had ever seen knight so in heart
de proeche & de loiaute. Mais chi endroit ne parole plus
of prowess and of loyalty But here in-place not speaks more
li contes ne de banin ne de claudas ne de sa compaignie.
the tale nor of Banin nor of Claudas nor of his company
anchois retourne au roi ban dont il sest longement teus.
rather returns to-the king Ban of-whom it itself-has long silenced

The Death of King Ban

III

From the hill Ban sees Trebe burning, its halls and churches falling. Thinking of his son's poverty and of his queen in another's power, he swoons and falls from his palfrey, bleeding from nose, mouth, and ears. Coming to, he thanks God for letting him end in poverty, confesses, and commends to Him his soul, his queen, descended from King David, and his orphaned son. He beats his breast, plucks three tufts of grass in the name of the Trinity, and dies, his heart bursting. His horse runs down to the others, and the queen sends the youth up the hill, who finds the king dead.

Or dit chi endroit li contes que quant li rois bans fu issus
Now says here in-place the tale that when the king Ban was issued
de son chastel que il se monta sour vn moult haut tertre
from his castle that he himself climbed upon a very high hill
pour veoir son chastel que tant amoit de grant chierte.
for to-see his castle which so-much he-loved with great dearness
& li iours commencha moult a esclairier durement. & il
and the day began very to brighten hard and he
esgarde si voit les murs blanchoier & la tour haute & la
looks so sees the walls whiten and the tower high and the
baille enuiron. Mais il ne lot gaires esgarde quant il vit el
bailey around But he not it-had much looked when he saw in-the
chastel moult grant fumee. & vn poi apres vit par tout
castle very great smoke and a little after saw-he through all
le chastel flambe salir. si voit en poi deure les riches sales
the castle flame leap so sees-he in little of-hour the rich halls
verser a terre. & fondre les esglises & les moustiers &
overturn to earth and collapse the churches and the minsters and
le feu uoler dun lieu en lautre. & le flambe hideuse &
the fire fly from-one place into the-other and the flame hideous and

espoentable qui enuers le chiel se lanche si en est li airs
dreadful which toward the sky itself hurls so thereof is the air
tous rouges & enbrases. Et entour en relust toute la terre.
all red and kindled And around thereof shines all the land
Li rois bans voit son chastel ardoir quil amoit plus
The king Ban sees his castle burn which-he loved more
que nul chastel quil eust. Car par cestui seul castel estoit
than any castle that-he had For by this-one alone castle was
sesperance de recourer toute sa terre & si estoit tous ses
his-hope of recovering all his land and so was all his
comfors. Et quant il voit quil a che perdu ou toute sa
comfort And when he sees that-he has this lost where all his
fianche estoit nest nule rien el siecle ou il satende
trust was not-is any thing in-the world where he himself-may-trust
mais de nule rien. Car il se sent vains & debrisies. Et ses
more of any thing For he himself feels faint and broken And his
fiex est teus quil ne li puet aidier ne secoure. & sa feme
son is such that-he not him can aid nor succor and his wife
ert moult ione dame & a moult grant aise nourie & si
was very young lady and with very great ease nurtured and so
haute dame vers dieu & vers le siecle. Comme chele qui est
high lady toward God and toward the world As that-one who is
deschendue de la haute lignie le roi dauid. Si a pitie de
descended from the high lineage (of-)the king David So has-he pity of
che quil conuendra son fil issir de france en pourete & en
this that-it will-behoove his son to-issue from france in poverty and in
dolor & sa feme estre en autrui dangier que el sien. Et en
sorrow and his wife to-be in another's power than in-the his-own And in
auoeries de maintes gens & lui meisme couendra estre poure
patronage of many people and him self will-behoove to-be poor
& vielg & en grant soufraite user sa vie le remenant de
and old and in great want to-spend his life the remnant of

son eage qui tant a este douces & riches. Et qui tant a
his age which so-much has been sweet and rich And who so-much has
amei bele compaignie de gent & ioieuse mainie en sa ionece.
loved fair company of people and joyous household in his youth
Toutes ches coses recorde li rois bans. Et met deuant ses
All these things recalls the king Ban And puts before his
iex ses mains & li touche si grant dolor au cuer que les
eyes his hands and to-him touches so great sorrow at-the heart that the
lermes li sont estoupees & li cuers serres el ventre &
tears to-him are stopped and the heart clenched in-the belly and
se pasme. Si chiet de son palefroi si durement que pour
himself swoons So falls-he from his palfrey so hard that for
.j. poi que li cols ne li brise. si li saut parmi le neis
a little that the neck not to-him breaks so to-him leaps through the nose
& parmi la bouce li sans vermaus. & parmi les orrelles
and through the mouth the blood red and through the ears
ambes deus. Grant pieche a ieu li rois bans en teil maniere.
both two Great while has lain the king Ban in such manner
& quant il reuint de paumison si parole si comme il puet
and when he came-back from swoon so speaks-he so as he can
& regarde vers le chiel & dist. ahi sire diex merchi graces
and looks toward the heaven and says ah Lord God mercy thanks
vous rent peires dous. de che quil vous plaist que ie fenisse
to-you render-I father sweet for this that-it you pleases that I may-end
en pourete. Car vous uenistes mort souffrir en terre comme
in poverty For you came death to-suffer on earth as
poures & besoigneus. Sire pour che que ie ne puis auoir
poor and needy Lord for this that I not can have
el siecle plus demoree sans pechie vous en cri ie merchi.
in-the world more dwelling without sin you thereof cry I mercy
Car ie voi bien & sai que ie sui a ma fin venus. & vous
For I see well and know that I am to my end come and you

biaus peres qui de vostre sanc me uenistes racater ne perdes
fair father who with your blood me came to-ransom not may-lose
en moi lesperit que vous i meistes. Mais en chest daarain
in me the-spirit that you there put But in this last
iour ou ma fins est aparellie me recheues. Comme chelui
day where my end is prepared me receive As that-one
qui vous reiehis le carge de mes pechies si grans & si
who to-you confesses the burden of my sins so great and so
espoentables que ie nen puis dire la somme. Et se mes
dreadful that I not-thereof can tell the sum And if my
cors a mesfait en terre ou nus ne puet estre sans pechie
body has misdone on earth where anyone not can be without sin
biax sire prenes ent la uostre ueniance en tel maniere. que
fair Lord take thereof the your vengeance in such manner that
comment que lame soit tormente apres le cors quele soit
however that the-soul be tormented after the body that-it be
en aucun tans acompaignie a cheus qui auront la pardurable
in some time accompanied to those who will-have the everlasting
clarte de ta maison & compaignie sans fin. biaus peres
brightness of thy house and company without end fair father
piteus prenge vous pities de feme elene qui est deschendue
piteous may-take you pity of wife Elaine who is descended
del haut lignage que vous establistes el regne auentureus
from-the high lineage which you established in-the realm adventurous
a essauchier vostre non & la hauteche de vostre foi. Et a
to exalt your name and the highness of your faith And to
auoir vos grans repostables qui deuant les estraignes peuples
have your great hidden-things which before the strange peoples
lor auies victoire donee. sire consellies la desconsellie qui
to-them had-you victory given Lord counsel the uncounseled who
de chelui haut lignage est descendue & tant a amee vostre
of that high lineage is descended and so-much has loved your

creance & vos commandemens gardes. Et de mon cheitif fil
belief and your commandments kept And of my wretched son
sire vous remenbre qui est si iones orphenins. Car li pooir
Lord you may-remember who is so young orphan For the powers
sont en vostre main par coi vous maintenes les orphenins.
are in your hand by which you maintain the orphans
Quant li rois bans ot dites ces paroles il regarda vers le
When the king Ban had said these words he looked toward the
chiel & bati sa coupe & ploura ses pechies deuant lesgart
heaven and beat his guilt and wept his sins before the-gaze
nostre signour. Et puis erracha .iij. paus derbe el non de
(of-)our Lord And then tore-up three tufts of-grass in-the name of
sainte trinite & de ferme creance. Et lors li serre li
Holy Trinity and of firm belief And then to-him clenches the
cuers del grant deul quil a de sa feme & de son fil
heart from-the great grief that-he has of his wife and of his son
quil en pert la parole toute. & li oeil li troublent
that-he thereby loses the speech all and the eyes to-him cloud
el chief & il sestent si durement que les vaines del
in-the head and he himself-stretches so hard that the veins of-the
cuer li rompent. Et li cuers li est creues el ventre
heart to-him break And the heart to-him is burst in-the belly
& il gut mors a terre ses mains estendues. & le vis
and he lay dead on earth his hands stretched and the face
encontre le chiel & le chief torne vers orient. ses cheuax
toward the heaven and the head turned toward east his horse
fu esfraes del chaior quil a fait. lors sen tourna en
was frightened by-the fall which-he has made then himself-thence turned in
fuies tout contreual le tertre & as autres cheuax en uint
flight all down the hill and to-the other horses thence came
tout droit. Et quant la roine le voit si dist au vallet qui
all straight And when the queen it sees so says to-the youth who

auoec aus estoit quil le prenge. Chis met lenfant a terre
with them was that-he it may-take This-one puts the-child on ground
& court prendre le cheual. puis monte haut el tertre si
and runs to-take the horse then climbs high on-the hill so
treue le roi gisant tout froit mort si comme vous aues oi.
finds the king lying all cold dead so as you have heard

The Queen's Grief

IV

The queen runs up the hill and laments over the king. Remembering her son, she runs back down and finds a damsel holding the child naked in her lap; the damsel says nothing, leaps with him into the lake, and is gone. An abbess passing with her nuns hears the queen, and her chaplain knows her for Ban's wife. Calling herself the Queen of Great Sorrows, she asks to be veiled at once; her tresses are cut on the spot, and her squire becomes a lay-brother. Ban is buried in the abbey, a minster is built where he died, and the queen goes every day after mass to read her psalter by the lake. The place is called the Royal Minster.

Li valles deschent quant il treue mort le roy ban son seignour.
The youth dismounts when he finds dead the king Ban his lord
si iete vn cri si haut que la roine lot moult cler si en est
so throws a cry so high that the queen it-heard very clear so thereof is-she
tant esbahie quele laise son fil a terre deuant les pies des
so-much amazed that-she leaves her son on ground before the feet of-the
cheuax. puis sest escourchie si cuert tout a pie contremont
horses then herself-has girded-up so runs all on foot up
le tertre & treuue le varlet gisant sour le roi & faisoit
the hill and finds the youth lying upon the king and made
tel deul que ne pooit grignour faire. Et quant ele voit son
such grief that not could-be greater make And when she sees her

signour mort si se pasme desos le cors & quant ele reuint
lord dead so herself swoons under the body and when she came-back
de paumison si se demente & plaint ses grans dolours
from swoon so herself laments and bewails her great sorrows
dont ele a trop. si tire ses cauex qui moult estoient bel
of-which she has too-many so pulls her hairs which very were fair
& blont & deront ses dras & iete en uoie & esgratine son
and blond and tears her clothes and throws on way and scratches her
tendre vis. si que li sans vermaus li coule tout contreual les
tender face so that the blood red to-her flows all down the
ioes. Si regrete les grans proeches son signour & ses grans
cheeks So laments-she the great prowesses (of-)her lord and his great
deboinaretes. & crie si haut que li tertres & li vaus & toute
kindnesses and cries so high that the hill and the vale and all
la terre enuiron en rententisoit. Tant a crie que plus ne
the land around thereof resounded So-much has-she cried that more not
puet si est lasee & la parole li faut pour le grant duel dont
can-she so is weary and the speech to-her fails for the great grief whereby
li cuers li est serres si se pasme souuent & gramente.
the heart to-her is clenched so herself swoons often and laments
Quant ele a regrete les grans proeches son signour &
When she has lamented the great prowesses (of-)her lord and
bien plore & plaint ses grans damages. si ne desire nule rien
well wept and bewailed her great losses so not desires-she any thing
se la mort non. Et moult le blasme que tant demeure.
except the death not And much it blames-she that so-long it-tarries
Et quant ele a longement estei ensi si li remenbre de
And when she has long been thus so to-her remembers of
son fil. ne iamais ne veut estre comfortee par autre riens.
her son nor ever-more not wishes-she to-be comforted by other thing
& pour le grant paour quele a que li cheual ne laient
and for the great fear that-she has that the horses — him-may-have

mort deuant qui ele lot laisie. si iete vn cri moult
dead before whom she him-had left so throws-she a cry very
grant. & lors saut sus a guise de feme forsenee si cort la
great and then leaps up in guise of woman maddened so runs there
ou ele auoit son fil laisie. Mais tant le destraint le grant
where she had her son left But so-much her constrains the great
paours quele a quil ne soit mors quele chiet pasmee a terre
fear that-she has that-he — be dead that-she falls swooned to earth
ains quele soit venue al aualer del tertre ius. Au reuenir
before that-she be come at-the descent of-the hill down At-the coming-back
de paumisons se plaint & gramente moult durement.
from swoons herself bewails and laments very hard
puis saut sus & auale le montaigne grans cours aual si est
then leaps up and descends the mountain great courses down so is
escauelee & deschiree. & quant ele aproche des cheuax qui
disheveled and torn and when she approaches the horses which
estoient desus le lach si voit son fil hor del bercheul tout
were above the lake so sees her son out of-the cradle all
deslije & voit vne damoisele qui le tenoit tout nu en
unbound and sees a damsel who him held all naked in
son giron & lestraint & serre moult durement entre ses
her lap and him-clasps and presses very hard between her
mameles. Et li baise les iex & la bouce menuement & ele
breasts And him kisses the eyes and the mouth often and she
nauoit mie tort. Car che estoit li plus biaus enfes de tout
not-had at-all wrong For this was the most fair child of all
le monde. La matinee fu froide & tantost estoit aiorne
the world The morning was cold and straightway was dawned
& la roine dist a la damoisele bele douce amie pour dieu
and the queen said to the damsel fair sweet friend for God
laisies lenfant. Car des ore en auant aura asses mesaise
leave the-child For from now on forward will-he-have enough hardship

& duel. Car en si grande orfeninete est hui keus comme
and grief For into so great orphanhood is today fallen as
chil qui a perdus toute ioie. Car ses peires est orendroit
that-one who has lost all joy For his father is right-now
mors & si a sa terre perdue qui nestoit mie petite se
dead and so has his land lost which not-was at-all little if
diex la li eust gardee si comme il le deust auoir.
God it for-him had kept so as he it ought have

A chose que la dame die la damoisele ne respont vn
At thing that the lady may-say the damsel not answers a
mot. Et quant ele le voit aprochier si se lieue a tout
word And when she her sees approach so herself rises with all
lenfant quele tenoit entre ses bras. & si sen reuait
the-child which-she held between her arms and so herself-thence goes-back
durement au lac. si ioint les pies & saut ens. Quant la
hard to-the lake so joins the feet and leaps in When the
roine voit son fil dedens le lac si se pasme. & quant
queen sees her son within the lake so herself swoons and when
ele est reuenue de paumisons si ne voit ne lenfant ne
she is come-back from swoons so not sees-she nor the-child nor
la damoisele. Et lors commencha a faire .j. duel si grant
the damsel And then began-she to make a grief so great
que ne pust faire grignor & fust saillie dedens le
that not could-she make greater and would-have-been leapt into the
lac se li varles ne leust tenue qui le roi auoit laissiet en
lake if the youth not her-had held who the king had left on
la montaigne. si estoit venus la roine recomforter pour la
the mountain so was come the queen to-comfort for the
grant paour quil auoit quele ne se desesperast. Del duel
great fear that-he had that-she — herself might-despair Of-the grief
que la roine fait ne vous porroit nus dire la somme. Et
that the queen makes not to-you could anyone tell the sum And

endementiers quele se gramentoit si est auenue chose que
meanwhile that-she herself lamented so is befallen thing that
vne abeesse trespassoit par ileuc soi tierce de nounains. &
an abbess passed by there herself third of nuns and
auoec lui estoit ses capelains & vns rendus & doi escuier
with her was her chaplain and a lay-brother and two squires
sans plus de grant foi. Ele oi le duel que la roine
without more of great faith She heard the grief that the queen
demenoit si len prist moult grant pities. & tourna chele
made so her-thereof took very great pity and turned that
part si dist a la roine. diex vous doinst ioie. Chertes dame
way so said to the queen God you may-give joy Certainly lady
fait la roine il men seroit moult grant mestier. Car ie
says the queen it to-me-thereof would-be very great need For I
sui la plus desconsellie feme del monde. Car ie ai perdue
am the most uncounseled woman of-the world For I have lost
en chest iour de hui toute honor & toute ioie dont iai
in this day of today all honor and all joy whereof I-have
asses eu par maintes fies. A dame fait labeesse qui moult le
enough had by many times Ah lady says the-abbess who much her
vit de grant biaute se ne fust le grant duel quele auoit &
saw of great beauty if not were the great grief that-she had and
li dist qui estes vous. Si mait diex dame fait la roine
to-her said who are you So me-may-help God lady says the queen
moi ne puet gaires caloir orendroit qui ie soie. fors de
me not can much matter right-now who I may-be except of
che que ie vif trop. Lors le regarde li capelains & dist a
this that I live too-long Then her looks-at the chaplain and says to
labeesse. dame en non dieu iamais ne me crees se che nest
the-abbess lady in name (of-)God ever-more not me believe if this not-is
madame la roine le feme au roi ban. Quant labeesse che vit
my-lady the queen the wife of-the king Ban When the-abbess this saw

si commencha a plorer moult durement si li dist. Dame
so began-she to weep very hard so to-her said Lady
pour dieu itant nous dites se vous estes madame la roine. &
for God so-much to-us tell if you are my-lady the queen and
chele se pasme tantost. & quant ele reuint de paumison
that-one herself swoons straightway and when she came-back from swoon
si li redist labeesse. pour dieu dame ne vous cheles mie
so to-her says-again the-abbess for God lady not yourself hide at-all
vers moi car ie sai bien que vous estes madame la roine.
toward me for I know well that you are my-lady the queen
La roine li respont adonques mait diex voirement
The queen to-her answers then me-may-help God truly
sui ie la roine as grans dolors. Pour chest non quele se
am I the queen of-the great sorrows For this name which-she herself
mist est apeles chis contes el commenchement li contes de
put is called this tale in-the beginning the tale of
la roine as grans dolors. Et ele dist a labeesse. Dame pour
the queen of-the great sorrows And she said to the-abbess Lady for
dieu qui que ie soie faites moi nounain. Car ie ne desire nule
God who that I may-be make me nun For I not desire any
rien tant. chertes dame fait labeesse moult volentiers. Mais
thing so-much certainly lady says the-abbess very willingly But
pour dieu dites nous vostre mesestanche car moult en sui
for God tell us your misfortune for much thereof am-I
a malaise. Et la roine li conte sa mescheance de chief en
at unease And the queen to-her tells her mischance from head to
chief. de sa terre quele a perdue & de son signour qui est
head of her land which-she has lost and of her lord who is
mors sour le tertre. & de son fil que enporte vns dyables
dead upon the hill and of her son whom carries-off a devil
en guise dune damoisele. Lors li demande labeesse comment
in guise of-a damsel Then her asks the-abbess how

li rois auoit este mors. Mais ele ne li seit a dire. Dame
the king had been dead But she not to-her knows to say Lady
fait ele espoir chest pour le duel de trebe qui est ars.
says she perhaps this-is for the grief of trebe which is burned
Comment fait labeesse est il dont ars. Oil voir dame & si
How says the-abbess is it then burned Yes truly lady and so
quidoie que vous le seusies bien. Mait diex dame fait ele
thought-I that you it knew well Me-may-help God lady says she
non sauoie. mais or sai bien que autre dolor ne li a
not knew-I but now know-I well that other sorrow not to-him has
mort dounee. Ne des ore en auant quil pense que iaie
death given Nor from now on forward that-he may-think that I-may-have
ie ne voel plus au siecle demorer. Mes pour dieu dame faites
I not wish more in-the world to-dwell But for God lady make
prendre cest grant auoir qui chi est dor. de vaselemente &
take this great wealth which here is of-gold of vessels and
de ioiaus si en faites chi faire vn petit moustier ou on
of jewels so thereof make here to-make a little minster where one
chantera & proiera por larme mon signour a tous iours mais.
will-sing and will-pray for the-soul (of-)my lord to all days more
Dame fait labeesse chertes vous ne saues pas com il i
Lady says the-abbess certainly you not know at-all how it there
a grant carge a tenir ordre. Car tout li trauailg & toutes
has great burden to hold order For all the toils and all
les dolors & tous les perieus darmes i sont. Mais venes
the sorrows and all the perils of-souls there are But come
vous ent auoec nous en nostre abeie & soies du tout
yourself thence with us into our abbey and be of-the all
dame si com vous deues estre. Car li anchisor monsignour
lady so as you ought be For the ancestors (of-)my-lord
le roi fonderent le lieu & establirent. Dame pour dieu fait
the king founded the place and established Lady for God says

la roine ie vous requier pour dieu & sor vostre ame que
the queen I you ask for God and upon your soul that
vous me fachies noune. Car ie nai plus cure del siecle.
you me may-make nun For I not-have more care of-the world
ne li siecles na mestier de moi. Et se vous de che me
nor the world not-has need of me And if you of this me
fales ie men irai par cheste forest sauuage comme
fail I myself-thence shall-go through this forest wild as
chaitiue & esgaree & si porai tost perdre le cors &
wretch and astray and so shall-be-able soon to-lose the body and
larme. Dame fait labeesse puis que vous si a chertes laues
the-soul Lady says the-abbess since that you so in earnest it-have
enpris ore aoures dieu & gratijes. car moult en auons
undertaken now adore God and thank for much thereof have-we
grant ioie quant diex de si boine dame & de si haute roine
great joy when God of so good lady and of so high queen
nous doune la compaignie. Atant ileuc sans plus atendre
to-us gives the company Thereupon there without more to-wait
furent trenchies les beles treches la roine. Car ele auoit
were cut the fair tresses (of-)the queen For she had
le plus bel chief de tout le monde. apres li furent aporte
the most fair head of all the world after to-her were brought
li drap. si le velerent en la plache. Et quant li valles le
the clothes so her veiled-they in the place And when the youth her
vit veele qui auoeques li estoit venus si dist que au siecle
saw veiled who with her was come so said that in-the world
ne seroit iamais. puis que sa dame sen estoit issue si
not would-be-he ever-more since that his lady herself-thence was issued so
deuint ileuc rendus. Et li furent vestu li drap ains que
became-he there lay-brother And to-him were donned the clothes before that
de la plache se remuast. Apres ont prins le cors du
from the place himself he-moved After have-they taken the body of-the

roi si laporterent a labeie qui gaires nestoit loins dileuc. Si
king so it-carried-they to the-abbey which much not-was far from-there So
i font le seruice tel com len deuoit faire de cors de roi.
there do-they the service such as one ought do of body of king
Et fu hautement enseuelis en labeie meisme iusqua tant
And was highly buried in the-abbey same until so-long
que el lieu ou il auoit este mors fust fais vns moustiers.
that in-the place where he had been dead were made a minster
Quant li cors fu enterres la roine demoura en labeie &
When the body was interred the queen remained in the-abbey and
labeesse fist faire vn moustier moult bel la ou li rois
the-abbess made make a minster very fair there where the king
auoit estei mors & moult beles offechines. Et fu tous fais
had been dead and very fair offices And was all made
dedens chel an. Et quant il fu tous fais si i fu li rois
within that year And when it was all made so there was the king
portes. & lors i uint la roine soi tierche de nounains.
carried and then there came the queen herself third of nuns
& si i ot .ij. capelains & .iij. rendus. Et tous les iours
and so there had two chaplains and three lay-brothers And all the days
quil aiournoit auoit la dame vne coustume que ausi tost com
that-it dawned had the lady a custom that as soon as
ele ot oie la messe que len chantoit pour le roi. si en
she had heard the mass that one sang for the king so thence
uenoit sour le lac iluec endroit quele auoit son fil perdu si
came-she upon the lake there in-place where-she had her son lost so
lisoit son sautier teus fois estoit & disoit teus biens quele
read her psalter such times was and said such goods as-she
sauoit & ploroit moult durement. La chose fu seue par le
knew and wept very hard The thing was known through the
pais. que la roine helene de benoych estoit noune. & chis
country that the queen Elaine of benoic was nun and this

lieus si fu apeles moustiers roiaus. Durement crut li lieus
place so was called minster royal Hard grew the place
& essaucha. & les gentiex femes du pais si rendoient
and rose and the gentle women of-the country so rendered-themselves
espesement & pour dieu. & pour amour de la roine.
thickly both for God and for love of the queen
Mais atant se taist ore li contes de la roine & de sa
But thereupon itself silences now the tale of the queen and of her
compaignie & retourne au roi claudas de la terre deserte.
company and returns to-the king Claudas of the land deserted

Claudas Takes Gannes

V

Claudas takes all of Benoic and Gannes; King Bors dies two days after his brother, leaving two infant sons, Lionel and Bors. His queen Evaine, besieged in her dower castle of Montlair, flees across the river toward her sister. In the forest a knight once disinherited by King Bors, now Claudas's man, stops her; remembering that she once saved his life, he takes the children into his keeping to raise and leads her to an abbey. Claudas finds Montlair surrendered and the children gone. Evaine reaches the Royal Minster; the sisters mourn their husbands and sons together, and Evaine too takes the veil.

Chi endroit dist li contes que tant esploita claudas li rois.
Here in-place says the tale that so-much achieved Claudas the king
quil ot toute la terre del roiaume de benoych & toute la
that-he had all the land of-the kingdom of benoic and all the
terre de Gannes. Que puis que la mors au roi ban fu seue.
land of Gannes For after that the death of-the king Ban was known
Ne uesqui li rois bohors que .ij. iours. si quide len en maint
Not lived the king Bors but two days so thinks one in many

lieu quil soit mors del duel de son frere anchois que de la
place that-he be dead of-the grief of his brother rather than of the
soie maladie. Il auoit .ij. moult biaus fiex dont li vns auoit
his-own sickness He had two very fair sons of-whom the one had
non lyouniaus. & li autres bohors. Si estoient a meruelles bel
name Lionel and the other Bors So were-they at marvels fair
enfant. Mais il estoient de si petit eage que lioneax nauoit
children But they were of so little age that Lionel not-had
que .xxi. mois & bohors nen auoit que .ix. En la terre
but twenty-one months and Bors not-thereof had but nine In the land
de gannes auoit de moult preudommes & de moult boins
of gannes there-had of many worthy-men and of very good
cheualiers. Si contindrent tant la terre com il le porent
knights So held-they so-long the land as they it could
contretenir. & la roine euaine la feme au roi bohort estoit
hold-out and the queen Evaine the wife of-the king Bors was
en vn chastel qui estoit de son doaire. si auoit nom mont lair
in a castle which was of her dower so had name mont lair
& estoit meruelles fort. si fu toute la terre prise fors chis
and was marvels strong so was all the land taken except this
chastiax ou estoit la roine & si enfant. Et quant claudas ot
castle where was the queen and her children And when Claudas had
tout le pais en sa baillie si vint deuant chel chastel seoir.
all the country in his keeping so came-he before that castle to-sit
La roine qui feme fu al roi bohort quant ele vit son
The queen who wife was of-the king Bors when she saw her
chastel asegie si ni osa plus demorer pour paour que
castle besieged so not-there dared-she more to-stay for fear that
il ne li feist honte sil la peust par forche prendre. si
he — to-her might-do shame if-he her could by force take so
senfui del chastel entre lui & ses .ij. enfans. Et se
herself-fled from-the castle between her and her two children And herself

fist nagier outre vne riuiere qui desous le chastel couroit.
made row across a river which below the castle ran
Tant quele vint en vne forest desus la riuiere qui soie auoit
So-far that-she came into a forest above the river which hers had
este maint iour. iluec monta la roine & sa gent sor lor
been many day there mounted the queen and her people upon their
cheuaus si sen aloit a poi de gent. & pensa quele ne
horses so herself-thence went with little of people and thought that-she not
fineroit derrer tant quele venroit au moustier ou sa
would-cease of-journeying so-long that-she would-come to-the minster where her
seur la roine de benoych estoit velee. Ensi sen aloit
sister the queen of benoic was veiled Thus herself-thence went-she
en teil maniere & si doi enfant auoeques lui. Si vint en
in such manner and her two children with her So came-she into
vne moult bele lande & moult grant. illeuc auint a la roine
a very fair heath and very great there befell to the queen
vne moult grant mescheance si vous dirai comment. Voirs
a very great mischance so to-you shall-I-tell how True
fu que li rois bohors auoit en sa vie deshirete vn cheualier
was that the king Bors had in his life disinherited a knight
pour vn autre que il auoit ochis. Car che fu vn des
for an other that he had killed For this was one of-the
hommes del monde qui plus haute iustice tint en sa vie que
men of-the world who most high justice held in his life than
li rois bohors de gannes. fors li rois ban de benoych son
the king Bors of gannes except the king Ban of benoic his
frere. li cheualiers qui desiretes estoit qui pour somechide
brother the knight who disinherited was who for his-homicide
sen estoit venus a claudas. Car il sauoit tout le
himself-thence was come to Claudas For he knew all the
couigne & le pooir des .ij. freires. Li rois claudas lama
condition and the power of-the two brothers The king Claudas him-loved

moult par samblant & crut & essaucha. Si li bailla vne
much by semblance and trusted and exalted So to-him handed a
partie de sa gent pour coure la ou il vaudroit. & chil
part of his people for to-run there where he would-wish and that-one
le tint moult chier & moult se pena de lui seruir &
him held very dear and much himself pained of him to-serve and
de lui tenir a ami en toutes les manieres quil pot.
of him to-hold as friend in all the manners that-he could

Chelui iour que la roine sen aloit de monlair au
That day that the queen herself-thence went from montlair to-the
moustier ou sa seror estoit. si auint que en chele forest
minster where her sister was so befell that in that forest
ou ele passoit estoit li rois claudas. Et cachoit vn sanglier
where she passed was the king Claudas And hunted a boar
trop grant. & li cheualiers desiretes auoeques li. Si encontra
too great and the knight disinherited with him So met
li cheualiers desiretes la roine & ses .ij. enfans en vn lieu
the knight disinherited the queen and her two children in a place
la ou il atendoit claudas au trespas dune grant haie. Si
there where he awaited Claudas at-the passage of-a great hedge So
tost comme il vit la dame si le court saisir au fraim de
soon as he saw the lady so her runs-he to-seize at-the bridle of
son cheual. & ele commencha a plorer moult tendrement.
her horse and she began to weep very tenderly
& il fait prendre les .ij. enfans qui estoient en .ij. bercheus
and he makes take the two children who were in two cradles
sour .j. soumier. si les enmaine la ou il auoit laissie son
upon a sumpter so them leads-away there where he had left his
signor. se la roine estoit dolente il ne fait pas a demander.
lord if the queen was sorrowful it not makes at-all to ask
Car len ne poroit grignour doel auoir ne deuiser quele ne
For one not could greater grief have nor devise that-she not

feist encore grignor. & caoit pasmee si souent que tout chil
made yet greater and fell swooned so often that all those
qui la veoient quidoient quele morust isnel le pas. Quant
who her saw thought that-she would-die quick the pace When
li cheualiers le vit si douloser si len prist moult grant
the knight her saw so grieve so him-thereof took very great
pities & li dist dame moult maueis mal fait & vous
pity and to-her said lady much me-have harm done both you
& li rois qui mors est. Mais li cuers ne me soufferoit
and the king who dead is But the heart not me would-suffer
pas que ie vous meisse en males mains. Car vous me
at-all that I you might-put in evil hands For you to-me
feistes ia .j. seruice qui bien vous iert gueredounes. Car
did once a service which well to-you will-be rewarded For
vous me respitastes vne fois de la mort. & moult vous
you me reprieved one time from the death and much you
pesa de mon desiritement. si vous en rendrai ichi le
grieved of my disinheritance so to-you thereof shall-I-render here the
gueredon. Car ie vous menrai hors de ceste forest a sauuete.
reward For I you shall-lead out of this forest in safety
Mais vous me laires mes .ij. signours qui chi sont. si
But you to-me will-leave my two lords who here are so
les garderai & nourirai tant quil seront grant. & sil
them shall-I-guard and shall-nurture so-long that-they will-be great and if-they
peuent iamais lor terre recouurer mieus men sera. Et
can ever their land recover better to-me-thereof will-be And
se vous ensi ne le faites vous ne poes estre se hounie
if you thus not it do you not can be except shamed
non se vous caes es mains claudas de la deserte terre.
not if you fall into-the hands (of-)Claudas of the deserted land

Quant la roine che voit si ne seit que faire. que se ele
When the queen this sees so not knows-she what to-do for if she
laise ses .ij. enfans ele ne les quide iamais rauoir. & dautre
leaves her two children she not them thinks ever-more to-have-again and on-other
part sele chiet es mains de son anemi mortel ele crient asses
side if-she falls into-the hands of her enemy mortal she fears enough
auoir honte & dolor. si sapense que miex li vaut prendre
to-have shame and sorrow so herself-bethinks that better to-her avails to-take
de .ij. maus le mains mauuais. que auoir lun & lautre. Car
of two evils the less bad than to-have the-one and the-other For
pour la soie honte se len li fait ne remendra il mie de ses
for the her-own shame if one to-her does not will-remain it at-all of her
.ij. enfans que il ne soient liure a mort. Lors dist quele
two children that they not be delivered to death Then said-she that-she
metera ses .ij. enfans en le garde nostre signour. & en la
will-put her two children in the keeping (of-)our Lord and in the
main del cheualier & dist quele les i aime miex a metre
hand of-the knight and said that-she them there loves better to put
que il fussent desmenbre deuant ses iex meismes. si pense
than they were dismembered before her eyes same so thinks-she
quele nauroit iamais ioie. si dist au cheualier que ele laise
that-she not-would-have ever-more joy so says to-the knight that she leaves
ses enfans en la dieu garde & en la soie. & li prie que il
her children in the (of-)God keeping and in the his and him begs that he
les gart si comme il doit. Mais por dieu fait ele de ceste
them may-guard so as he must But for God says she from this
forest me ietes hors. que par autrui ne soie prinse ne destorbee.
forest me cast out that by another not I-be taken nor troubled

Li cheualiers prinst les .ij. enfans si les liura a cheus
The knight took the two children so them delivered to those
la ou il se fioit le plus. & mena la dame a camp
there where he himself trusted the most and led the lady to field

hors de la forest. Tant quele vint a vne abeie de rendus. il
out of the forest So-far that-she came to an abbey of lay-brothers he
le met laiens & li dist. Dame chi vous remandrois. tant
her puts in-there and to-her said Lady here you will-remain so-long
que vous verrois mon message. qui vous dira quant claudas
that you will-see my messenger who to-you will-tell when Claudas
sen sera ales. La roine remest & il sen part.
himself-thence will-be gone The queen remained and he himself-thence parts
& ele li chiet as pies & li prie por dieu que pities
and she to-him falls at-the feet and him begs for God that pity
li prenge des .ij. enfans. Et que pour couoitise dauoir ne
him may-take of-the two children And that for covetousness of-wealth not
les mete es mains de lor anemis mortex. & il dist &
them may-put into-the hands of their enemies mortal and he said and
iure sour sa creance que la ou il aront mal il nes
swears upon his belief that there where they will-have harm he not-them
pora garantir. Atant sen ala. & quant il vint a
will-be-able to-warrant Thereupon himself-thence went and when he came to
claudas si fu la li sangliers ochis. & tantost vindrent les
Claudas so was there the boar killed and straightway came the
noueles que monlairs estoit pris. Claudas estoit moult lies &
news that montlair was taken Claudas was very glad and
se monte tantost & vint au chastel si troua quil estoit
himself mounts straightway and came to-the castle so found that-it was
ia rendus a sa gent. Car puis que la roine en fu issue
already rendered to his people For after that the queen thence was issued
ne losa nus contretenir. Mais quant il ne troua la roine
not it-dared anyone hold-out But when he not found the queen
ne les enfans si en fu moult iries. & neporquant del
nor the children so thereof was-he very angered and nevertheless of-the
castel se saisi. & tint andeus les roialmes en tel maniere.
castle himself seized and held both the kingdoms in such manner

Mais atant se taist ore li contes que plus nen parole.
But thereupon itself silences now the tale that more not-thereof speaks
anchois retourne a la roine euaine. la feme bohort de gannes.
rather returns to the queen Evaine the wife (of-)Bors of gannes
Chi dist li contes que quant li cheualiers desiretes oi les
Here says the tale that when the knight disinherited heard the
noueles de monlair le castel qui estoit pris. & il vit monter
news of montlair the castle which was taken and he saw mount
claudas por aler la. si prist vn sien neueu escuier & lenuoia
Claudas for to-go there so took-he a his nephew squire and him-sent
a la roine. Et par cheli le fist conduire iuscal moustier
to the queen And by that-one her made-he conduct until-to-the minster
ou la roine sa seur estoit. Quant les .ij. seurs sentreuirent
where the queen her sister was When the two sisters each-other-saw
il ne fait mie a demander seles orent asses ambes deus &
it not makes at-all to ask if-they had enough both two both
dolour & ioie. Car eles en orent tant que len ne poroit
sorrow and joy For they thereof had so-much that one not could
mie dire ne deuiser de bouche. Doel orent eles de che
at-all tell nor devise by mouth Grief had they of this
que lune vit lautre desiretee & essillie qui tant soloient
that the-one saw the-other disinherited and exiled who so-much were-wont
estre honorees & de grant pooir. Et dautre part auoient
to-be honored and of great power And on-other side had-they
moult grant ioie de che queles se veoient ensamble.
very great joy of this that-they themselves saw together
pour che que grant paour auoient eu lune de lautre. Si
for this that great fear had-they had the-one of the-other So
sapenserent que plus legierement useroient ensamble
themselves-bethought-they that more lightly would-spend-they together
lor vies. en plorer & en faire duel de lor grant pertes &
their lives in weeping and in making grief of their great losses and

de lor grans dolors. & en seruir nostre signor. Car en che
of their great sorrows and in serving our Lord For in this
deuoient estre tout lor boin comfort. Mais apres che queles
ought be all their good comfort But after this that-they
se furent asses doulosees de lor desiritement & de la
themselves were enough grieved of their disinheritance and of the
perte de lor signors si prist la roine de benoich moult
loss of their lords so took the queen of benoic very
grant dolor a son cuer & se commencha moult durement
great sorrow at her heart and herself began very hard
a doloser & a plaindre. & dist ha lasse ie par ai trop
to grieve and to bewail and said ah weary I wholly have too-much
perdue. quant iai perdue ma terre & mon signor & mon
lost when I-have lost my land and my lord and my
fil. qui de tous enfans estoit la rose. & li vostre fait ele
son who of all children was the rose and the yours says she
ou sont il. & lors se pasme sa suer quant ele oi ces
where are they and then herself swoons her sister when she heard these
paroles. & quant ele voit sa seror pasmee. si se respasme
words and when she sees her sister swooned so herself swoons-again
ausi dales lui. Et tout chil & toutes cheles qui sont laiens
also beside her And all those and all those who are in-there
en font trop grant duel. Et quant la roine de gannes
thereof make too great grief And when the queen of gannes
fu releuee de paumison si commencha a conter a sa seror
was raised from swoon so began-she to tell to her sister
quant ele fu reuenue comment ele a perdue ses .ij. enfans.
when she was come-back how she has lost her two children
hai las fait chele de benoych ore sommes ambes .ij. sans
ah alas says that-one of benoic now are-we both two without
enfans. Et lors li commenche a conter comment ses sires
children And then to-her begins-she to tell how her lord

auoit este mors. Et comment ele auoit perdu lanselot son fil
had been dead And how she had lost Lancelot her son
quant la damoisele se lancha a tout lenfant dedens le lac.
when the damsel herself hurled with all the-child into the lake
Grans fu li deus as .ij. serors de la grant perte que
Great was the grief of-the two sisters of the great loss that
fait auoient. & seles ne fuissent ensamble encore fust
made had-they and if-they not were together yet were
graindre lor angoisse. Mais de che queles estoient ensamble
greater their anguish But by this that-they were together
estoient mendres lor dolors. Et maintenant que labeesse fu
were lesser their sorrows And at-once that the-abbess was
la venue. si se fist la roine de gannes rooignier & veler.
there come so herself made the queen of gannes shear and veil
Car moult auoient grant paor de la desloiaute claudas. &
For much had-they great fear of the disloyalty (of-)Claudas and
puis queles estoient velees & rooignies nauoient eles mais
after that-they were veiled and shorn not-had they more
garde de lui. Mais deles ne parole li contes plus a ceste fie.
care of him But of-them not speaks the tale more at this time
anchois retourne a lanselot la ou il est portes au lach.
rather returns to Lancelot there where he is carried to-the lake

The Lady of the Lake and Merlin

VI

The damsel who carried Lancelot into the lake is a fay, who learned her art from Merlin. Merlin was begotten on a maiden by a devil, one of the kind that brought the fallen angels' lust to earth; she would take no man she could see, and bore a fatherless son. Grown, Merlin served Uther Pendragon and then haunted the forests. He loved Niniane, a damsel of Little Britain, who drew his knowledge from him, learned to make him sleep and to guard her body with names, and at last sealed him asleep in a cave in the forest of Darnantes. She rears Lancelot three years in her household, hidden by the semblance of a lake, and he believes she is his mother.

Or dist chi li contes que la damoisele qui lanselot emporta
Now says here the tale that the damsel who Lancelot carried-off
el lac estoit vne fee. A chelui tans estoient apelees fees
into-the lake was a fay At that time were called fays
toutes icheles qui sauoient denchantement. & moult en
all those who knew of-enchantment and many thereof
estoit a chelui tans en la grant bertaigne. plus quen autres
was at that time in the great britain more than-in other
terres. Eles sauoient che dist li contes des brethes estoires.
lands They knew this says the tale of-the Breton histories
& les forches des paroles & des pieres & des erbes. par
and the forces of-the words and of-the stones and of-the herbs by
quoi eles estoient tenues en ioueneche & en biaute & en
which they were kept in youth and in beauty and in
si grant riqueche com eles deuisoient. Et tout fu establi
so great richness as they devised And all was established
au tans merlin le prophete as englois qui sot toute la
at-the time (of-)Merlin the prophet of-the English who knew all the
sapience qui des dyables puet deschendre. & por che fu
wisdom which from-the devils can descend and for this was

il tant redoutes des bertons & tant honores que tout
he so-much dreaded of-the Britons and so-much honored that all
lapeloient lor saint prophete. Et tout la menue gent lapeloient
him-called their holy prophet And all the small people him-called
lor dieu. Chele damoisele dont li contes parole sauoit par
their god That damsel of-whom the tale speaks knew by
merlin quanques ele sauoit de nigremanche. Et le sauoit par
Merlin whatever she knew of necromancy And it knew-she by
grant voisdie. Voirs fu que merlins fu engendres en feme par
great cunning True was that Merlin was engendered in woman by
dyable. & de diable mismes. Car pour che fu il apeles li
devil and of devil same For for this was he called the
enfes sans pere. Et chele maniere de deables conuerse moult
child without father And that manner of devils dwells much
el siecle. Mais il nont forche ne pooir dacomplir lor
in-the world But they not-have force nor power to-accomplish their
uolente. ne sour creant ne sour mescreant. Car il sont caut
will nor upon believer nor upon unbeliever For they are hot
& luxuriex. & trouons escrit que quant il furent fait angele
and lustful and we-find written that when they were made angels
que il furent si bel & si plaisant que il se delitoient
that they were so fair and so pleasing that they themselves delighted
a regarder lun lautre iusques a lescaufement de luxure. Et
to look the-one the-other until to the-heating of lust And
quant il furent keu auoec lor caitif maistre il retindrent la
when they were fallen with their wretched master they retained the
luxure en terre que il auoient es haus sieges commenchies.
lust on earth which they had in-the high seats begun

De teus manieres de dyables fu estrais merlins. che dist li
Of such manners of devils was descended Merlin this says the
contes des estoires & si vous dirai comment Il fu voirs
tale of-the histories and so to-you shall-I-tell how It was true

que en la marche de la terre descoche & dirlande ot
that in the march of the land of-scotland and of-ireland there-was
iadis vne damoisele gentil feme de grant biaute. Et fu fille
once a damsel gentle woman of great beauty And was daughter
a vn vauasor qui nestoit pas de grant riqueche. La damoisele
to a vavasor who not-was at-all of great richness The damsel
vint en eage de marier. & vous di quele auoit en soi
came into age of marrying and to-you say-I that-she had in herself
vne teche quele disoit a son peire & a sa meire que il
a trait that-she said to her father and to her mother that they
ne le mariasent pas. & que bien seussent il de voir que
not her might-marry at-all and that well might-know they of truth that
ele naroit ia en son lit homme que ele veist des
she not-would-have ever in her bed man whom she might-see with-the
iex. que ses cuers ne le porroit souffrir. En mainte maniere
eyes for her heart not it could suffer In many manner
lasaierent li peires & la meire sauoir sil le poroient ieter
her-tried the father and the mother to-know if-they her could cast
hors de chest corage. Mais ne pooit estre. Car ele dist que
out of this heart But not could be For she said that
bien seusent il que se il len efforchoient ia si tost
well might-know they that if they her-thereto forced ever so soon
ne le verroit que ele ne mouroit ou isteroit du sens.
not him would-see-she that she not would-die or would-issue from-the sense
Et sa meire li demanda a consel priueiment comme meire
And her mother her asked in counsel privately as mother
a sa fille. sele se vaudroit a tous iours mais domme tenir
to her daughter if-she herself would-wish to all days more from-man to-hold
& de tous carneus couuines. & ele dist que nenil se ele
and from all carnal dealings and she said that no if she
pooit auoir compaignie domme quele ne veist point. car la
could have company of-man whom-she not might-see at-all for the

volente auoit ele bien del sentir mais le ueoirs ni pooit
will had she well of-the feeling but the seeing not-there could
estre. Il nauoient andui plus denfans si lamoient tant
be They not-had both more of-children so her-loved-they so-much
com len doit amer son seul enfant. si ne vaudrent metre en
as one must love his only child so not wished-they to-put in
auenture de lor enfant perdre si sen souffrirent &
adventure of their child to-lose so themselves-thereof forbore and
atendirent se il veissent quele chaniast chestui corage. Et
waited if they might-see that-she might-change this heart And
tant que li peire morut. Apres la mort son pere semonst
so-long that the father died After the death (of-)her father urged
maintes fois la meire sa fille de mari prendre mais ne pot
many times the mother her daughter of husband to-take but not could
estre. Car ele ne se vaut acorder de homme prendre que
be For she not herself wished to-agree of man to-take whom
ele veist as iex. Car teus estoit li mehains de ses iex
she might-see with-the eyes For such was the infirmity of her eyes
que ele ne porroit soufrir le veoir pour nule rien. Mais le
that she not could suffer the seeing for any thing But the
sentir sans le veoir soufferoit ele legierement & volentiers.
feeling without the seeing would-suffer she lightly and willingly

Apres che ne demoura mie grantement. que vns deables de
After this not tarried-it at-all greatly that a devil of
tel maniere comme ie vous ai dit vint a la damoisele en
such manner as I to-you have said came to the damsel in
son lit par nuit. Si li commencha a proier moult durement.
her bed by night So her began-he to beseech very hard
& li promist que ia ne le uerroit a nul iour. Ele
and to-her promised that ever not him would-she-see at any day She
li demanda qui il estoit. Ie sui fait il vns homs destraigne
him asked who he was I am says he a man of-foreign

terre. & pour che que vous naues cure domme que vous
land and for this that you not-have care of-man whom you
puissies veoir pour che vieng ie a vous. Car autresi ne
may see for this come I to you For likewise not
poroie ie veoir nule feme a qui ie ieuse. La damoisele le
could I see any woman with whom I might-lie The damsel him
tasta si senti que il auoit le cors moult gent. & moult bien
felt so felt-she that he had the body very comely and very well
fait par samblant. Et neporquant diables na ne cors
made by semblance And nevertheless devil not-has neither body
ne autre menbre que len puisse manoier. Car espiriteus cose
nor other limb that one may handle For spiritual thing
ne puet estre manoie. & tout deable sont chose espiriteus.
not can be handled and all devils are thing spiritual
Mais deable entreprenent a le fie cors de lair. Si quil
But devils take-on at the time body of the-air So that-it
samble a cheus qui les voient quil soient forme de car
seems to those who them see that-they be form of flesh
& dos. Quant ele senti le deable au cors & as bras
and of-bone When she felt the devil at-the body and at-the arms
& as mains & es autres lieues si li fu auis a che
and at-the hands and in-the other places so to-her was opinion by this
que ele en pooit sauoir par sentir. que moult estoit bien
that she thereof could know by feeling that very was-he well
taillies a estre biaus. si len ama & fist outreement
shaped to be fair so him-thereof loved-she and did utterly
sa volentei & moult le chela bien & a sa meire & a
his will and much it hid well both from her mother and from
autrui. Quant ele ot ceste vie menee dusques a .v. mois
another When she had this life led until to five months
si engrossa. & quant ele vint au droit terme que ele
so grew-big-she and when she came to-the right term that she

enfanta si sen esmerueilla mout tous li peuples; Car
gave-birth so itself-thereat marveled much all the people For
de peire ne fu point seu; Ne ele nel vaut dire a nului.
of father not was at-all known Nor she not-it wished to-tell to anybody
Chis enfes fu vns varles si ot non merlins. Car ensi
This child was a boy so had name Merlin For thus
le commanda li deables a la damoisele ains quil nasquist.
it commanded the devil to the damsel before that-he was-born
Mais il ne fu onques baptisies. Et quant il vint al
But he not was ever baptized And when he came to-the
chief de .xij. ans si fu amenes a vterpandragon si com
head of twelve years so was brought to Uther-Pendragon so as
lestoire de ses oeures le raconte & deuise. Quant vint
the-history of his works it recounts and devises When came-it
apres che que li dus de tintaguel fu mors par la traison
after this that the duke of tintagel was dead by the treason
de vterpandragon & de merlin por igerne la ducesse que
of Uther-Pendragon and of Merlin for Igerne the duchess whom
vterpandragons amoit. si sen ala merlins conuerser es
Uther-Pendragon loved so himself-thence went Merlin to-dwell in-the
forces parfondes. & anchienes. Il fu de la nature son peire
forests deep and ancient He was of the nature (of-)his father
decheuans & desloiaus. & sot quanques cuers pooit sauoir
deceiving and disloyal and knew whatever heart could know
de toute peruerse science. Il auoit en la marche de la petite
of all perverse science It had in the march of the little
bertaigne vne damoisele de moult grant biaute qui auoit
britain a damsel of very great beauty who had
non nymenche. Chele commencha merlins a amer. & moult
name Niniane Her began Merlin to love and very
uenoit souent la ou ele estoit par nuit & par iour. &
came-he often there where she was by night and by day and

chele se desfendi moult bien a li. Car moult estoit sage
that-one herself defended very well from him For very was-she wise
& courtoise. Et tant cun iour li enquist & coniura la
and courteous And so-much that-one day him asked and adjured the
damoisele qui il estoit. & il len dist la uerite. Et ele
damsel who he was and he her-thereof told the truth And she
li dist que ele feroit quankes il vaudroit mais que li
to-him said that she would-do whatever he would-wish but that to-her
ensegnast vne partie de son grant sens. Et chil qui tant
he-might-teach a part of his great sense And that-one who so-much
lamoit comme cors morteus puet chose amer li otria a
her-loved as body mortal can thing love to-her granted to
aprendre quanques ele deuiseroit de bouche. Ie voel fait ele
teach whatever she would-devise by mouth I wish says she
que vous mensegnies comment ie poroie vn lieu si fremer par
that you me-may-teach how I could a place so close by
forche de paroles. & enserrer dedens che que ie vaudrai. Et
force of words and lock inside this that I shall-wish And
que nus ni puisse entrer nissir ne hors ni ens. Et
that anyone not-there may enter nor-issue neither out nor in And
si mensegnies comment ie porrai faire dormir a tous iors
so me-may-teach how I shall-be-able to-make sleep to all days
mais qui que ie vaudrai sans esuellier. Pourcoi fait merlins
more whoever that I shall-wish without waking Wherefore says Merlin
voles vous che sauoir. pour che fait ele que se mes peires
wish you this to-know for this says she that if my father
sauoit que vous ne autres geusies o moi il mochiroit tantost.
knew that you or other might-lie with me he me-would-kill straightway
Et issi serai aseur de lui quant ie lairai fait endormir.
And thus shall-I-be secure of him when I him-shall-have made fall-asleep
Mais bien gardes fait ele que vous ne mensegnies chose
But well see says she that you not me-may-teach thing

ou il ait point de menchoigne. Car bien sachies que
where it may-have at-all of lie For well know that
iamais a nul iour nauries mamour ne ma compaignie.
ever-more at any day not-would-you-have my-love nor my company
Chil li ensegna & lun & lautre & ele les escrist en
That-one to-her taught both the-one and the-other and she them wrote in
parchemin. Car ele sauoit asses de lettres. Si en conreoit si
parchment For she knew enough of letters So therewith treated-she so
merlin toutes les oeures quil venoit a lui parler que maintenant
Merlin all the times that-he came to her to-speak that at-once
sendormoit. Et metoit sour ses .ij. mains .ij. nons de
himself-fell-asleep And put-she upon her two hands two names of
coniuremens. que ia tant com il i fussent ne la peust nus
conjurations that ever so-long as they there were not her could any
hons despucheler ne iesir a lui carnelment. En tel maniere le
man deflower nor lie with her carnally In such manner him
mena moult longement Et tous iours quida merlins au partir
led-she very long And all days thought Merlin at-the parting
que il eust o lui geus. si le decheuoit ensi pour che quil
that he had with her lain so him deceived-she thus for this that-he
estoit morteus en vne partie. Mais se il fust del tout deables
was mortal in a part But if he were of-the all devil
ele ne le peust decheuoir. Car deables ne puet dormir. En la
she not him could deceive For devil not can sleep In the
fin sot ele tant par merlin quele lengigna. et le seela tout en
end knew she so-much by Merlin that-she him-tricked and him sealed all in
dormant en vne caue dedens la perilleuse forest de darnantes qui
sleeping in a cave within the perilous forest of darnantes which
marchist a la meir de cornouaille & al roialme de soreillois.
borders on the sea of cornwall and on-the kingdom of sorelois

Ileuc remeist en teil maniere. Car onques puis par nului ne
There remained-he in such manner For ever after by anybody not
fu seus ne par nul homme veus qui noueles en seust dire.
was-he known nor by any man seen who news thereof could tell
Chele qui lendormi & seela si fu chele damoisele qui
That-one who him-put-asleep and sealed so was that damsel who
lancelot porta dedens le lac. & quant ele len ot porte
Lancelot carried into the lake and when she him-thence had carried
il ne fait pas a demander sele le tint chier. Car ele le
it not makes at-all to ask if-she him held dear For she him
gardoit plus doucement que nule autre feme ne pooit faire
guarded more sweetly than any other woman — could do
qui porte ne leust en son uentre. Ele nestoit mie seule
who carried not him-had in her belly She not-was at-all alone
anchois auoit auoeques lui cheualiers & dames & damoiseles.
rather had-she with her knights and ladies and damsels
si quist a lenfant noriche qui boine li fu. & quant
so sought-she for the-child nurse who good to-him was and when
il se pot consiurrer si ot son maistre qui lensegna
he himself could do-without so had-he his master who him-taught
comment il se deuoit contenir. Ne nus de la maisnie a la
how he himself ought conduct Nor anyone of the household of the
damoisele ne sauoit son non fors que ele seulement. anchois
damsel not knew his name except that she only rather
lapelerent en maintes manieres. Li vn lapeloient le biau
him-called-they in many manners The ones him-called the fair
troue. & li autre lapeloient fil de roi. Et ele meisme lapeloit
found and the others him-called son of king And she herself him-called
isi souent. & teil eure estoit quele lapeloit riche orphenin.
thus often and such hour was that-she him-called rich orphan
Ensi fu lancelos .iij. ans en la garde a la damoisele a trop
Thus was Lancelot three years in the keeping of the damsel at too

grant aise. & bien quidoit pour voir que ele fust sa meire.
great ease and well thought-he for true that she were his mother
si fu plus creus en ches .iij. ans que vns autres ne feist
so was-he more grown in these three years than an other — would-do
en .v. Et fu de toutes choses si biax enfes que plus bel
in five And was-he of all things so fair child that more fair
ne peust on deuiser. La dame qui le nourisoit ne conuersoit
not could one devise The lady who him nurtured not dwelt
nule fie sen forest non grandes & parfondes. Ne li lays
any time except-in forest not great and deep Nor the lake
ou ele sali a tout lui quant ele lenporta nestoit se
where she leapt with all him when she him-carried-off not-was except
dencantement non. si estoit el plain dun tertre plus bas
of-enchantment not so was in-the plain of-a hill more low
asses de chelui ou li rois bans auoit este mors. En chel lieu
enough than that-one where the king Ban had been dead In that place
ou il sambloit que li lais fust plus grans & plus parfons
where it seemed that the lake were more great and more deep
auoit la dame moult beles maisons & moult riches. Et el
had the lady very fair houses and very rich And in-the
plain desous corut vne riuiere mout plentiueuse de poison.
plain below ran a river very plentiful of fish
Si estoit chis herbergemens si cheles que nus ne le peust
So was this lodging so hidden that anyone not it could
trouer. Car la samblanche del lac le couroit. si que veus
find For the semblance of-the lake it covered so that seen
ne pooit estre. Ensi est lancelos en la garde a la damoisele
not could be Thus is Lancelot in the keeping of the damsel
remes. si croist & amende si com vous poes oir. Mais de
remained so grows and betters so as you can hear But of

li ne parole plus li contes chi endroit. Anchois retourne
him not speaks more the tale here in-place Rather returns-it
a parler de lyonel son cousin & de boort de Gannes.
to speak of Lionel his cousin and of Bors of Gannes

Pharien's Wife

VII

The knight who took Bors's sons is Pharien, and for love of his wife Claudas makes him seneschal of Gannes. Pharien surprises the king with her and, feigning not to know him, gets Claudas to say such a man should die; he shuts his wife in a tower. She sends word to Claudas and, when he dines at their house, tells him Pharien keeps King Bors's sons. Claudas has an enemy of Pharien appeal him of treason; Pharien sends his nephew away with the children toward the Royal Minster and kills his accuser. But Claudas swears on the saints to guard the boys and give them their land, and Pharien, believing him, brings them back; Claudas shuts them, with Pharien and his nephew, in the tower of Gannes.

Chi endroit dist li contes que quant li cheualiers qui toli
Here in-place says the tale that when the knight who took
a la roine de gannes ses .ij. enfans. sen fu ales en
from the queen of gannes her two children himself-thence was gone into
son pais que li rois claudas li ot rendu. Et dautre terre
his country which the king Claudas to-him had rendered And of-other land
li ot il done grant partie. si garda les enfans a moult
to-him had he given great part so guarded-he the children with much
honor. Et orent quanques len quida boin lor fust. Car il
honor And had-they whatever one thought good to-them were For he
ne beoit fors ca eus tenir a honour tant quil venissent
not aimed except but-to them to-hold in honor so-long that-they might-come
en eage. & que diex lor rendist encore lor terre. si i
into age and that God to-them might-render yet their land so there

pensoit a auoir encore grant preu sil venoient en pooir.
thought-he to have yet great profit if-they came into power
Ensi les tint plus de .iij. ans en sa maison si cheleement
Thus them held-he more than three years in his house so secretly
que nus ne sauoit qui il estoient. fors sa feme seulement
that anyone not knew who they were except his wife only
qui moult estoit bele dame & boine & bien parlant. Et
who very was fair lady and good and well speaking And
pour la grant biaute qui en li estoit auint chose que claudas
for the great beauty which in her was befell thing that Claudas
len ama & fist tant quil ot samour. Et pour lamour
her-thereof loved and did so-much that-he had her-love And for the-love
de li fist il son signor senescal de toute la terre de gannes.
of her made he her lord seneschal of all the land of gannes
& moult lacrut de fies & de beles rentes. Li cheualiers
and much him-increased with fiefs and with fair rents The knight
estoit moult preus et moult hardis. & si auoit non fariens
was very valiant and very bold and so had name Pharien
Et tant durerent les amours del roi & de la feme au
And so-long lasted the loves of-the king and of the wife of-the
cheualier que il le sot. Sil en fu dolans che ne fait pas
knight that he it knew If-he thereof was sorrowful this not makes at-all
a demander. Car il namoit nule rien tant com la dame. Il
to ask For he not-loved any thing so-much as the lady He
sen prinst garde moult souent. tant cun ior lenuioa
himself-thereof took heed very often so-much that-one day him-sent
claudas en vn sien affaire. & chil fist samblant quil i
Claudas on a his business and that-one made semblance that-he there
aloit. mais il ni ala mie. ains se mist en agait de
went but he not-there went at-all rather himself put in watch of
sa feme esprouer. Tant que la nuit troua claudas auoec li
his wife to-prove So-far that the night found-he Claudas with her

si le quida ochire mais il ne pot. car il se lancha par
so him thought-he to-kill but he not could for he himself hurled by
vne fenestre hors de la cambre si li escapa en teil maniere.
a window out of the chamber so him escaped in such manner
Phariens connut moult bien que che estoit claudas. si li
Pharien knew very well that this was Claudas so him
pesa moult que ochis ne lauoit. Et moult ot grant paor
grieved much that killed not him-had-be And much had-be great fear
que claudas nochesist lui. Si se porpensa comment il se
that Claudas might-kill him So himself bethought-he how he himself
poroit garandir par voisdie. Car forche ni auoit mestier.
could protect by cunning For force not-there had need
Il vint a claudas si le traist a vne part a consel & si
He came to Claudas so him drew to one side in counsel and so
li dist. Sire ie sui vostre hom si me deues tenir a droit
to-him said Lord I am your man so me must-you hold to right
enuers autres gens. & les autres gens enuers moi. Ie voel
toward other people and the other people toward me I wish
bien que vous sachies que chaiens a vn de vos cheualiers
well that you may-know that in-here has one of your knights
qui de ma feme me traist. & trouei li ai ia vne fie.
who with my wife me betrays and found him have-I already one time
Qui est il fait li rois claudas al cheualier. sire fait il ie
Who is he says the king Claudas to-the knight lord says he I
ne sai qui il est. Car ma feme ne le me veut noumer.
not know who he is For my wife not him to-me wishes to-name
Mais tant ma ele dit que de vos cheualiers est il. Or me
But so-much me-has she said that of your knights is he Now me
dounes conselg comme mes sires que ie en ai a faire se
give counsel as my lord what I thereof have to do if
ie li truis mais. Chertes fait claudas ie lochiroie se ie li
I him find more Certainly says Claudas I him-would-kill if I him

trouasse mais en tel maniere com vous maueis chi descouert.
found more in such manner as you to-me-have here uncovered
Et che disoit il pour che quil quidoit que phariens ne
And this said he for this that-he thought that Pharien not
seust pas la verite que che fust il. Atant prent phariens
knew at-all the truth that this were he Thereupon takes Pharien
congie si sen reuint en son castel & prent sa feme
leave so himself-thence came-back into his castle and takes his wife
si le met en vne tour moult a malaise. & fu seule de
so her puts in a tower very at unease and was-she alone of
toute compaignie. fors que dune vielle qui li aportoit
all company except that of-an old-woman who to-her brought
che quele manioit & beuoit. Ne onques puis phariens vne
this that-she ate and drank Nor ever after Pharien one
fois ne li reprocha pourcoi il li faisoit tous ches maus.
time not to-her reproached wherefore he to-her did all these evils
Tant souffri la dame quele ne pot en auant souffrir.
So-long suffered the lady that-she not could on forward suffer
Et fist tant que ele parla a vn sien cousin. varlet poure
And did so-much that she spoke to a her cousin youth poor
homme a qui ele auoit fait bien. si i parla des
man to whom she had done good so there spoke-she from-the
fenestres de la tour a vn auesprer. Et li cargia que
windows of the tower at an evening And him charged that
il alast au roi claudas si li saluast. & li deist
he might-go to-the king Claudas so him might-greet and to-him might-tell
comment ses sires lauoit pour lui enserree. Et que il feist
how her lord her-had for him locked-up And that he might-do
tant que ele peust a lui parler. Et ele li acointeroit
so-much that she could to him speak And she to-him would-make-known
sa honte & son grant damage dont il ne se donne
his shame and his great harm whereof he not himself gives

garde. Et sil ni parlast prochainement trop grant perte
heed And if-he not-there spoke soon too great loss
i porroit auenir. Car il en mouroit & ele auoeques.
there could befall For he thereof would-die and she with-him
Li valles ala a claudas. & tant fist quil parla a lui &
The youth went to Claudas and so-much did that-he spoke to him and
li conta quanke la dame li auoit encargie. & auoec che
to-him told whatever the lady him had charged and with this
li dist boines ensegnes que ele li enuoioit. Et apres
to-him said good tokens that she to-him sent And after
che ne demora gaires que claudas cachoit en la forest de
this not tarried-it much that Claudas hunted in the forest of
gannes. Si li vint en corage que il iroit la dame ueoir.
gannes So to-him came in heart that he would-go the lady to-see
Il prinst vn sien escuier si manda a pharien quil alast
He took a his squire so sent to Pharien that-he would-go
a sa maison disner. Et quant il loi si fist moult bele
to his house to-dine And when he it-heard so made very fair
chiere au message son signour. & sambloit que moult
cheer to-the messenger (of-)his lord and seemed that much
en fust lies. Maintenant fist la dame traire hors de la
thereof were-he glad At-once made-he the lady draw out of the
tour & la fist achesmer & apparellier moult richement. Et
tower and her made adorn and array very richly And
fist atourner a mangier quanquil pot trouer de bon. Quant
made prepare to eat whatever-he could find of good When
claudas aprocha il li ala a lencontre & li fist moult
Claudas approached he to-him went to the-encounter and to-him made very
bele chiere. Et le rechut en sa maison a mout grant feste.
fair cheer And him received in his house with very great feast

Quant claudas ot disne. si sasistrent entre lui & la dame
When Claudas had dined so themselves-sat between him and the lady
sour vne couche. Et ele se commencha a plaindre a lui de
upon a couch And she herself began to complain to him of
sa mesaise. & dist sire vous i deusies bien mettre consel.
her unease and said lord you there ought well to-put counsel
Car ie nai tous ches maus se pour vous non. Chertes fait
For I not-have all these evils except for you not Certainly says
il ie i meterai moult uolentiers consel se ie sauoie comment.
he I there shall-put very willingly counsel if I knew how
Ie vous ensegnerai fait ele comment vous me pores de li
I to-you shall-teach says she how you me will-be-able on him
vengier & vous auoeques se vous mameis tant com iai
to-avenge and you with-me if you me-love so-much as I-have
deserui vers vous. De che fait il soies toute seure que se
deserved toward you Of this says he be all sure that if
ie puis auoir le point ie vous en vengerai. & me dites
I can have the point I you thereof shall-avenge and me tell
comment se vous dire le saues. & ie vous iure comme rois
how if you to-tell it know and I to-you swear as king
quil en iert a vostre plaisir. Sire fait ele il seit de voir
that-it thereof will-be at your pleasure Lord says she he knows of truth
que che fustes vous quil troua od moi en mon lit gisant
that this were you whom-he found with me in my bed lying
mais samblant nen ose faire ne monstrer tant vous
but semblance not-thereof dares-he make nor show so-much you
redoute. Et saues vous comment vous aues boine ocoison de
dreads-he And know you how you have good occasion of
lui destruire. Il a garde plus de .iij. ans les .ij. fiex au roi
him to-destroy He has guarded more than three years the two sons of-the king
bohort de gannes en vne cambre desous ceste tour. Tant quil
Bors of gannes in a chamber below this tower So-long that-they

aient eage & pooir de vous ochire. Et puis quil a che fait
may-have age and power of you to-kill And since that-he has this done
contre vous. bien a dont a droit mort deserui. Comment
against you well has-he then by right death deserved How
fait claudas est che voirs. oil fait ele nen doutes ia. Ne
says Claudas is this true yes says she not-thereof doubt ever Nor
vous ne pories nule si boine ocoison trouer sor lui comme
you not could any so good occasion find upon him as
ceste. Car par tant a il forfait a estre mors & desiretes al
this For by so-much has he forfeited to be dead and disinherited at-the
mains. Or le laisies atant fait claudas ne ia nen faites
least Now it leave thereupon says Claudas nor ever not-thereof make
nul samblant. Car ien quit moult penser prochainement.
any semblance For I-thereof think much to-think soon

Atant prist claudas congie & sen parti de laiens.
Thereupon took Claudas leave and himself-thence parted from in-there
& vint la nuit a gannes ou il gut. Il auoit en sa
and came the night to gannes where he lay He had in his
maison vn homme anemi pharien qui de mort le haoit.
house a man enemy (of-)Pharien who to death him hated
Et claudas li dist que ore estoit bien vengies de pharien
And Claudas to-him said that now was-he well avenged on Pharien
sil voloit & sil losast emprendre. Comment sire fait il. Iel
if-he wished and if-he it-dared undertake How lord says he I-it
vous dirai fait claudas. Mais vous me fiancheres loialment
to-you shall-tell says Claudas But you to-me will-pledge loyally
que vous ferois che que ie vous en conseillerai. & il li
that you will-do this that I you thereof shall-counsel and he to-him
fiance. Il est voirs fait claudas que il garde les .ij. fiex au
pledges It is true says Claudas that he guards the two sons of-the
roi bohort de Gannes dedens vne soie forterece. Car iel sai
king Bors of Gannes within a his stronghold For I-it know

par cheus meismes qui mieus sont de son consel que ie ne
by those same who better are of his counsel than I —
soie. Et saues vous comment vous le ferois. vous lapeleres
may-be And know you how you it will-do you him-will-appeal
de traison deuant moi. Comme chelui qui mes hons est.
of treason before me As that-one who my man is
& garde encontre moi mes morteus anemis. Et sil lose
and guards against me my mortal enemies And if-he it-dares
veer vous le monsterois contre son cors. Et saues vous que
deny you it will-show against his body And know you what
ie vous ferai. Ie vous doins chi endroit la senescauchie de
I for-you shall-do I to-you give here in-place the seneschalship of
gannes a tous iors mais a vous & a vostre hoir. Cil est
gannes to all days more to you and to your heir That-one is
lies de la promesse si len merchie moult durement. &
glad of the promise so him-thereof thanks very hard and
se poroffre a faire quankes il deuisera outreement. Ensi
himself offers to do whatever he will-devise utterly Thus
passa li tans que plus ne fu parole de chou. Tant que
passed the time that more not was word of this So-far that
phariens vaut vn iour a la court aler. si sapensa com
Pharien wished one day to the court to-go so himself-bethought as
chil qui moult estoit sages. quil ne sauoit que li estoit
that-one who very was wise that-he not knew what to-him was
auenir. Car moult le haoit claudas ne nus ne se puet
to-come For much him hated Claudas nor anyone not himself can
garder de traison. Si commanda a tous chaus qui gardoient
guard from treason So commanded-he to all those who guarded
les soies choses que por vn sien neueu cheualier quil auoit
the his things that for a his nephew knight whom-he had
feissent autretant com il feroient pour lui meisme. Car
they-might-do as-much as they would-do for him self For

che estoit li hons el monde ou il plus se fioit. &
this was the man in-the world in-whom he most himself trusted and
a tous en fist faire sairement. Atant mut a aler a
to all thereof made-he make oath Thereupon set-out-he to go to
la court. & tant erra quil vint & son neueu a claudas.
the court and so-far journeyed that-he came and his nephew to Claudas
Et li traitres li fist moult grant ioie. & lendemain vint
And the traitor to-him made very great joy and the-next-day came
li cheualiers qui tant le haoit a lisue del mostier &
the knight who so-much him hated at the-exit of-the minster and
dist a claudas voiant tous cheus qui la estoient. Sire sire
said to Claudas seeing all those who there were Lord lord
tenes ma droit de pharien qui chi est. comme de chelui qui
hold me right of Pharien who here is as of that-one who
est vostre traitres. Car ie le sai comme doir & de veoir.
is your traitor For I it know as of-hearing and of seeing
Et sil le velt contredire ie sui pres de monstrer par deuant
And if-he it wishes to-gainsay I am ready to show by before
vous orendroit contre son cors que il tient vos morteus
you right-now against his body that he holds your mortal
anemis encontre vous les .ij. enfans le roi bohort de
enemies against you the two children (of-)the king Bors of
gannes. Oies pharien fait claudas que chist vous met sus.
gannes Hear Pharien says Claudas what this-one upon-you puts on
Chertes se vous estes mes traitres dont sui ie moult dolans.
Certainly if you are my traitor then am I very sorrowful
Car moult vous ai honere & mis auant. Sire fait phariens
For much you have-I honored and put forward Lord says Pharien
de che me consellerai ie. Comment fait li cheualiers qui
of this myself shall-counsel I How says the knight who
ses nies estoit vous vous en consellerois. chertes ia
his nephew was you yourself thereof will-counsel certainly ever

consel nen sera pris. Car il nest mie cheualiers qui
counsel not-thereof will-be taken For he not-is at-all knight who
se conselle puis quil est apeles de traison. Mais sil
himself counsels after that-he is appealed of treason But if-he
sen sent coupables si mete la hart au col si
himself-thereof feels guilty so may-put-he the halter at-the neck so
uoist a son iuise isnelement. Et sil en a droit si se
may-go to his judgment quickly And if-he therein has right so himself
desfende seurement contre le millor cheualier del monde.
may-defend surely against the best knight of-the world
Car desloiautes fait au besoig de boin cheualier mauuais.
For disloyalty makes at-the need of good knight bad
Et loiautes fait bon cheualier & seur de cheli qui onques
And loyalty makes good knight and sure of that-one who ever
ne laura este. Lors sen vient deuant claudas & dist
not it-will-have been Then himself-thence comes before Claudas and says
sire ie desfenderai monsignour mon oncle de cheste traison
lord I shall-defend my-lord my uncle from this treason
que il nest pas traitres. Et ses oncles saut auant & dist
that he not-is at-all traitor And his uncle leaps forward and says
que ia nus nen metera escu au col se il non.
that ever anyone not-thereof will-put shield at-the neck except he not
Tenes sire fait farien mon gage que ie onques traison
Hold lord says Pharien my gage that I ever treason
ne fis vers vous. Connessies vous fait claudas que vous les
not did toward you Acknowledge you says Claudas that you the
enfans au roi bohort aies en garde. Sire sire fait li nies
children of-the king Bors may-have in keeping Lord lord says the nephew
pharien sil les gardoit ore si en fait il asseis quant il est
(of-)Pharien if-he them guarded now so thereof does he enough when he is
pres de contredire que onques ne fist traison vers vous. Et
ready to gainsay that ever not did-he treason toward you And

ensi com il est retes issi est il pres quil sen desfende.
thus as he is accused so is he ready that-he himself-thereof may-defend
Et il est retes fait claudas des enfans le roi bohort. &
And he is accused says Claudas of-the children (of-)the king Bors and
sil veut contredire que gardes ne les ait. chist est tous
if-he wishes to-gainsay that guarded not them may-have this-one is all
prest & apparellies del monstrer. Sire fait li nies pharien
ready and prepared of-the showing Lord says the nephew (of-)Pharien
sil les a gardes si ne la il mie fait en traison vers vous.
if-he them has guarded so not it-has he at-all done in treason toward you
Et sil a cheualier chaiens tant preu ne tant hardi qui voelle
And if-it has knight in-here so valiant nor so bold who may-wish
monstrer que che soit traison. Ie sui pres que ie len
to-show that this be treason I am ready that I him-thereof
desfende. Car il nissi onques de lommage au roi bohort.
may-defend For he not-issued ever from the-homage of-the king Bors
& combien que ses sires eust mesprins uers li il doit
and however-much that his lord had misdone toward him he must
garder son signor sil estoit vis & le cors de ses enfans. puis
guard his lord if-he were alive and the body of his children then
dist a son oncle ales sire si vous desfendes de la traison
said-he to his uncle go lord so yourself defend from the treason
que chis cheualiers vous met seure. & ie vous desfenderai
that this knight upon-you puts on and I you shall-defend
du mesfait que point nen a es enfans garder.
from-the misdeed that at-all not-thereof has-he in-the children guarding
A cheste parole ne fu nus homs qui onques i meist nul
At this word not was any man who ever there might-put any
conterdit. ne li cheualiers qui apelei lauoit de traison. ne se
gainsaying nor the knight who appealed him-had of treason not himself
tint pas si aigres com il auoit auant fait. Comment fait claudas
held at-all so fierce as he had before done How says Claudas

a celui qui apelei lauoit dont nen feres vous plus. Et
to that-one who appealed him-had then not-thereof will-do you more And
quant il voit quil plaist a son signour si doune son gage de
when he sees that-it pleases to his lord so gives-he his gage to
monstrer la traison. Et phariens tent le sien por conterdire
show the treason And Pharien holds-out the his for to-gainsay
le. sans nul respit que nus i feist salerent armer. Et
it without any respite that anyone there might-make themselves-went to-arm And
phariens apele son neueu si li dist. biaus nies ales vous
Pharien calls his nephew so to-him says fair nephew go yourself
ent a mon chastel. Et que que doiue de moi auenir ou
thence to my castle And whatever that must of me to-come or
ioie ou mescheance. prendes mes .ij. signeurs si les enmeneis
joy or mischance take my two lords so them lead-away
sans arest au moustier roial ou madame est. Et les li
without stop to-the minster royal where my-lady is And them to-her
rendes. Car ie ne les poroie vers chest traitour plus garandir.
render For I not them could against this traitor more protect
Atant sen part le nies pharien & vint el
Thereupon himself-thence parts the nephew (of-)Pharien and came into-the
chastel si prent les .ij. enfans & les enmaine si com li
castle so takes the two children and them leads-away so as to-him
estoit commande. Et phariens se combat tant quil lochist
was commanded And Pharien himself fights so-long that-he him-kills
le cheualier deuant les iex claudas. Et li nies pharien
the knight before the eyes (of-)Claudas And the nephew (of-)Pharien
sen estoit ales. & vienent les noueles a claudas quil
himself-thence was gone and come the news to Claudas that-he
auoit les enfans perdus. Et quant il lot si vint a pharien
had the children lost And when he it-heard so came-he to Pharien
& li fait moult bele chiere & li dist que les enfans
and to-him makes very fair cheer and to-him said that the children

li rende. & ie vous iurrai fait il orendroit sor sains
to-him he-may-render and I to-you shall-swear says he right-now upon saints
que ie les garderai si. que quant il seront en eage destre
that I them shall-guard so that when they will-be in age of-being
cheualiers ie lor rendrai lor iretage. Et se ie mur dedens
knights I to-them shall-render their heritage And if I die within
che ie les meterai en vostre main & garderois les enfans
this I them shall-put in your hand and will-you-guard the children
& la terre de gannes & cheli de benoich auoec qui lor
and the land of gannes and that-one of benoic with which to-them
doit estre. Car ie ai oi dire que li fiex au roy ban ert
must be For I have heard say that the son of-the king Ban was
mors piecha che poise moi. Car ie sui de teil eage que ie
dead long-ago this grieves me For I am of such age that I
ne doi mais beer fors que a saluer mame. Ne ie ne desiretai
not must more aim except that at saving my-soul Nor I not disinherited
lor peires se por che non que il ne voloient mi homme
their fathers except for this not that they not wished my men
deuenir. & si nauoient nule aide de signor quil eussent.
to-become and so not-had any aid of lord that-they might-have
Lors fist claudas aporter les sains auant & iura uoiant
Then made Claudas bring the saints forward and swore seeing
tout son barnage que ia par lui nauroient mal li enfant.
all his baronage that ever by him not-would-have harm the children
Anchois lor garderoit lor terre bien & loiaument tant
Rather for-them would-he-guard their land well and loyally so-long
quil venisent en eage de tenir le. Chil le crut par le
that-they might-come into age of holding it That-one him believed by the
serement. si monta & courut tant & feri des esperons
oath so mounted and ran so-much and struck with-the spurs
la par ou il sauoit quil troueroit son neueu. si ala tant
there by where he knew that-he would-find his nephew so went-he so-far

quil le troua & enmena les .ij. enfans au roi bohort.
that-he him found and led-away the two children of-the king Bors
Quant claudas les vit si lor fist moult grant ioie. Et
When Claudas them saw so to-them made very great joy And
mout furent regarde ca grant meruelle estoient bel enfant.
much were-they looked-at that-at great marvel were-they fair children
Et il les commande a garder a pharien & a son neueu.
And he them commands to guard to Pharien and to his nephew
Et ne demoura puis gaires que il les fist metre tous .iiij.
And not tarried-it after much that he them made put all four
en la tour de gannes. Car trop estoient li enfant ione che
in the tower of gannes For too were the children young this
disoit por estre cheualier. si voloit quil fusent ileuc garde.
said-he for to-be knights so wished-he that-they were there guarded

Ensi est lyoniaus & bohors en prison en la tour de gannes
Thus is Lionel and Bors in prison in the tower of gannes
& lor .ij. maistres auoec aus. Et li rois claudas lor fist moult
and their two masters with them And the king Claudas to-them made very
grant samblant damour & commande quil aient quanques il
great semblance of-love and commands that-they may-have whatever they
deuiseront. Mais daus le laise atant ester li contes ichi endroit
will-devise But of-them it leaves thereupon to-be the tale here in-place
que plus nen parole. ainchois retorne a parler del roi claudas.
that more not-thereof speaks rather returns-it to speak of-the king Claudas

The Character of Claudas

VIII

Claudas, father of one son, Dorin, whom he dares not knight for his wild spending, is described: nine feet tall, dark of face, red of beard, avaricious, fond of poor good knights and of hawking on the river, who loved but once and gave up love because a lover's heart would drive his body past its strength. After two years he resolves to test Arthur before making war on him. He leaves his lands in the keeping of his uncle Patrice, binding his men to restore Benoic and Gannes to Bors's sons if he does not return within a year, and sets out in secret with one sergeant.

Ore dist li contes que li rois claudas tint ensi le roialme
Now says the tale that the king Claudas held thus the kingdom
de gannes & chelui de benoich sans conterdit que nus
of gannes and that-one of benoic without gainsaying that anyone
i meist. Et moult fu doutes de ses uoisins & dautres
there might-put And much was-he feared by his neighbors and by-other
gens. si nauoit de tous enfans que vn tout seul qui valles
people so not-had-he of all children but one all alone who youth
estoit moult gens & mout biaus. Et auoit pres de .xv. ans.
was very comely and very fair And had near of fifteen years
si auoit non dorins. Si estoit si fiers & si desmesures &
so had name Dorin So was-he so fierce and so immoderate and
si viguereus que ses peires ne losoit encore faire cheualier.
so vigorous that his father not him-dared yet make knight
Car il auoit paour quil ne li courust sus si tost com il
For he had fear that-he — him might-run upon so soon as he
auroit pooir. Car il estoit si despendans que riens ne li
would-have power For he was so spending that anything not to-him
pooit durer. Et claudas fu li plus angoissous prinches &
could last And Claudas was the most anguished prince and
li plus auers del monde. ne iames ne dounast se lors
the most avaricious of-the world nor ever-more not would-he-give except then

non quant il auoit si grant mestier de gent que consieurer
not when he had so great need of people that do-without
ne sen pooit. Et sa fachons estoit si fiere que li
not himself-thereof could And his fashion was so fierce that the
contes dist quil auoit bien .ix. pies de lonc a le mesure des
tale says that-he had well nine feet of length at the measure of-the
pies de lors. si auoit le viaire noir & gros. Et les sorchiex
feet of then so had-he the face black and thick And the eyebrows
velus. & les iex gros & noirs lun loig del autre. Il
hairy and the eyes big and black the-one far from-the other He
auoit le neis court & reskignie & le barbe rousse. & les
had the nose short and snub and the beard red and the
cheueus ne bien noir ne bien rous. Mais entremeles dun
hairs neither well black nor well red But mingled of-one
& dautre. Si ot le col gros & le bouche grande. & les
and of-other So had-he the neck thick and the mouth great and the
dens clers & enchises. Mais les espaules les pies & tout
teeth sparse and sharp But the shoulders the feet and all
lautre cors ot il si bel & si bien fait com len le poroit
the-other body had he so fair and so well made as one it could
miex deuiser en nul homme. Et ses teces estoient & boines
best devise in any man And his traits were both good
& mauuaises. Il amoit moult poure homme cheualier boin.
and bad He loved much poor man knight good
Ne ia ne queist que riches hons fust boins cheualiers.
Nor ever not would-he-seek that rich man were good knight
si haoit tous cheus qui plus poont de lui. & amoit cheus
so hated-he all those who more could than him and loved those
dont il estoit au desus si lor valsist estre plus larges.
over-whom he was at-the above so to-them would-wish to-be more generous
volentiers aloit au moustier. mais ne faisoit mie grantment
willingly went-he to-the minster but not did-he at-all greatly

de bien a poure gent. Moult volentiers leuoit matin &
of good to poor people Very willingly rose-he early and
manioit. ne ia ne iuast as esches ne as tables ne
ate nor ever not would-he-play at-the chess nor at-the tables nor
a autres ieus se moult petit non. En bois aloit volentiers
at other games except very little not In wood went-he willingly
.ij. iours ou .iij. tout de route non pas acostumeement. ses
two days or three all of course not at-all customarily his
couuenans ne faisoit mie uolentiers. Mais souent metoit sus
covenants not did-he at-all willingly But often put-he on
ocoison de barat & de decheuanche. Onques par amours
occasion of trickery and of deceit Ever by love
not amei que vne fie. Et quant len li demandoit porcoi
not-had-he loved but one time And when one him asked wherefore
il lauoit laisie. si disoit por che quil ne baoit pas a viure
he it-had left so said-he for this that-he not aimed at-all to live
longement. Comment sire faisoient si homme dont ne peut
long How lord said his men then not can
il viure longement qui par amours aime. Et il disoit que
he live long who by love loves And he said that
nenil. pourcoi sire faisoient il. pour che fait il que cuer
no wherefore lord said they for this says he that heart
de cheualier qui finement aime ne doit baer qua vne seule
of knight who finely loves not must aim but-to one single
chose. ce est a tout le monde passer. ne nus cors domme
thing this is to all the world to-surpass nor any body of-man
tant fust preus ne poroit soffrir chou que li cuers
so-much were-it valiant not could endure this that the heart
oseroit emprendre que anchois ne le couenist finer. Mais
would-dare undertake that first not it behooved to-end But
se la forche del cors fust si grans que ele peust acomplir
if the force of-the body were so great that it could accomplish

les hardemens del cuer ie amasse par amours toute ma
the boldnesses of-the heart I would-have-loved by love all my
vie. & passase tous les preudommes de toutes iceles
life and would-have-surpassed all the worthy-men of all those
proeches qui peuent estre en cors de boin cheualier. Car il
prowesses which can be in body of good knight For he
ne puet estre tres preus darmes sil naime tres loiaument.
not can be very valiant of-arms if-he not-loves very loyally
Et ie connois tant mon cuer que ie amasse loiaument
And I know so-much my heart that I would-have-loved loyally
sour tous loiaus hommes qui par amours amassent.
above all loyal men who by love might-love

Ensi parla claudas a sa gent priueement. & il disoit voir.
Thus spoke Claudas to his people privately and he said true
Car il auoit en samour de meruellouse proece & auoit eu los
For he had in his-love of marvelous prowess and had had praise
& pris de sa cheualerie en mainte terre. Et si auoit encore
and prize of his chivalry in many land And so had-he yet
autres teches. car qui son consel li deist. ia par lui ne
other traits for who his counsel to-him might-tell ever by him not
fust descouers. Il amoit riuiere seur tous deduis. & plus
were-it uncovered He loved river above all sports and more
les faucons que les ostoirs. Ne ia ne cheuauchast gaires se
the falcons than the goshawks Nor ever not would-he-ride much except
grans destriers non fors quant il cheuauchoit grans iornees.
great chargers not except when he rode great journeys
Et lors auoit tous iors un grant destrier dencoste lui fust en
And then had-he all days a great charger beside him were-it in
pais fust en guere. Quant il ot tenu .ij. ans les .ij. roialmes
peace were-it in war When he had held two years the two kingdoms
que il auoit conquis. si sapensa dune haute proeche. Mais
that he had conquered so himself-bethought of-a high prowess But

il ne sen consella onques fors a son cuer. Si dist a
he not himself-thereof counseled ever except with his heart So said-he to
soi meisme ie sui moult riches hons & moult viguereus &
himself self I am very rich man and very vigorous and
doutes de maintes gens. Car li rois artus meismes ne se
feared by many people For the king Arthur himself not himself
osse reueler contre moi. Car iai tenu plus de .ij. ans .ij.
dares rebel against me For I-have held more than two years two
roialmes de son fief que onques nient nen osa faire. Si
kingdoms of his fief that ever anything not-thereof dared-he do So
sai bien que moult sui doutes dautres gens quant meismes
know-I well that much am-I feared by-other people when even
li rois artus me crient & doute. ne ie ne me tenrai mais
the king Arthur me fears and dreads nor I not myself shall-hold more
pour si preus com ie doi estre. se ie ne fais tant quil
for so valiant as I ought be if I not do so-much that-he
tigne de moi toute sa terre. Si ai en talent que ie le
may-hold from me all his land So have-I in desire that I him
guerroierai sans demoranche. Mais pour che quil est tenus
shall-war without delay But for this that-he is held
a si preudomme de toutes gens. ie uaudrai auant sauoir sil
for so worthy-man by all people I shall-wish first to-know if-he
a tant de valour com les gens dient. Car il mest auis
has so-much of valor as the people say For it to-me-is opinion
que nus hom ne puisse estre si durement blasmes ou loes.
that any man not may be so hard blamed or praised
que aucune chose ni ait de uoir. Pour che voel auant
that some thing not-there may-have of true For this wish-I first
sauoir de son couine & aprendre vne partie. Et sil est teus
to-know of his condition and to-learn a part And if-he is such
que iel doie assaillir de guerre ie le assaudrai prochainement.
that I-him must assail with war I him shall-assail soon

Et se ie uoi que ie nel puis au desous mettre si lairai
And if I see that I not-him can at-the under put so shall-I-let
atant esteir ma folie emprise ne plus nen ferai.
thereupon be my folly undertaken nor more not-thereof shall-I-do
Ensi parole claudas a soi meisme. puis sen uient
Thus speaks Claudas to himself self then himself-thence comes
a vn sien oncle ainsne de lui si li dist son conseil
to a his uncle elder than him so to-him says his counsel
priueement. Et li fist iurer sour sains que point ne le
privately And him made swear upon saints that at-all not it
descoueroit. Et puis li dist biaus oncles ie men uois
would-he-uncover And then to-him said fair uncle I myself-thence go
a la cort le roi artu en tapinage pour sauoir se nus
to the court (of-)the king Arthur in disguise for to-know if anyone
le poroit metre au desous. & se che doit estre par nul
him could put at-the under and if this must be by any
homme che sera par moi. Et se ie voi que folie soit del
man this will-be by me And if I see that folly be of-the
enuair. si lairai atant la chose ester. Mais ie vous lairai
attacking so shall-I-let thereupon the thing be But I to-you shall-leave
ma terre toute. Car ie ne voel en nule fin que mes fiex en
my land all For I not wish in any end that my son thereof
soit tenans iusqua chel eure que vous saurois que ie serai
be holding until-to that hour that you will-know that I shall-be
mors. & sil auenoit chose que ie ne reuenisse au chief
dead and if-it befell thing that I not might-come-back at-the head
dun an. lors me pories tenir pour mort. si le reuestires de
of-a year then me could-you hold for dead so him will-you-invest with
ma terre seurement. Et ensi le ferai iurer a tous mes
my land surely And thus it shall-I-make swear to all my
hommes de partout mes .iij. roialmes. Et issi le fait com
men from throughout my three kingdoms And thus it does-he as

il ot deuise. Si lor dist signor vous estes mi homme
he had devised So to-them said-he lords you are my men
lige. & ie men vois en vn pelerinage. & si ne menrai
liege and I myself-thence go on a pilgrimage and so not shall-I-lead
od moi que vn seul escuier. si voel que vous fianchies que
with me but a single squire so wish-I that you may-pledge that
vous feres autretant pour mon oncle qui chi est com vous
you will-do as-much for my uncle who here is as you
feries pour moi. dusques al chief dun an. Et se al
would-do for me until to-the head of-a year And if at-the
chief de lan ne reuenoie. & vous seusies que ie fuisse
head of the-year not I-came-back and you might-know that I were
mors. vous del roialme de la terre deserte renderies a mon
dead you of-the kingdom of the land deserted would-render to my
fil dorien. & mon regne de berri. Et vous del roialme de
son Dorin and my realm of berry And you of-the kingdom of
benoich & de gannes renderes as enfans le roi bohort
benoic and of gannes will-render to-the children (of-)the king Bors
& la terre qui lor doit estre. Che est la terre que ie
and the land which to-them must be This is the land that I
ai conquise. Car iai oi dire que li fiex au roi ban est
have conquered For I-have heard say that the son of-the king Ban is
mors auoeques son peire. Ne ie ne voel mie perdre mame
dead with his father Nor I not wish at-all to-lose my-soul
pour autrui deserte apres ma mort. Car mes fiex aura
for another's desert after my death For my son will-have
ases sil est preudom. Ne riens ne seroit en li bien
enough if-he is worthy-man Nor anything not would-be in him well
emploie sil estoit mauais ne dedens vn an ne voel ie mie
employed if-he were bad nor within a year not wish I at-all
quil soit dune seule roie de ma terre tenans. Et si voel
that-he be of-a single furrow of my land holding And so wish-I

que vous issi me iures. Et vous fait il biaus oncles le
that you thus to-me may-swear And you says he fair uncle it
me iureres auant a tenir loialment ensi com ie lai deuise.
to-me will-swear first to keep loyally thus as I it-have devised
Chil li iure tous premiers qui moult estoit preus &
That-one to-him swears all first who very was valiant and
loiaus tous iours vers lui. Si auoit non patriches. & estoit
loyal all days toward him So had-he name Patrice and was
sires dun castel dales gannes deuers solel escousant que
lord of-a castle beside gannes toward sun setting which
claudas li auoit doune. Mais par anchiserie estoit sires dun
Claudas to-him had given But by ancestry was-he lord of-a
chastel qui ot non charrot. & vn autre dales qui ot non
castle which had name charrot and an other beside which had name
duns. mais au tans essent li fil chelui patriche qui trop fu
dun but at-the time issued the son (of-)that Patrice who very was
preus & uigueres & fu apeles esordes pour che que trop
valiant and vigorous and was called Esordes for this that too
estoit petis ses nons. Com a si boin chastel & si plentiueus.
was small his name As to so good castle and so plentiful
si fu autant a dire essorduns comme li dus essout. De chele
so was as-much to say essorduns as the duke Essout Of that
terre estoit sires patriches a chelui tans. Et quant il ot fait
land was lord Patrice at that time And when he had made
a claudas son sairement si iurerent apres lui tout li autre.
to Claudas his oath so swore after him all the others
Dedens le quart iour mut claudas a aler en son afaire. &
Within the fourth day set-out Claudas to go on his business and
enmena auoeques lui .j. sien seriant qui moult estoit sages &
led-away with him a his sergeant who very was wise and
preus & de grant proeche de cors & de tous autres seruices.
valiant and of great prowess of body and of all other services

Claudas in Arthur's Court

IX

Claudas serves in Arthur's house at Logres in disguise from August to May, while Arthur, newly married to Guinevere, wars with his barons; the tale names the two women of the realm who matched her in beauty. He sees Arthur's largesse and prowess and judges no man his equal. Crossing back at Wissant, he asks his sergeant's counsel; the sergeant says no man could disinherit Arthur, and that if Claudas tried he would renounce his homage and help Arthur. Claudas feigns anger and they draw swords, but, afraid, he turns it to jest, swears his friendship, and later knights him as Arcois the Fleming. At Bourges he praises Arthur's largesse and forgives Dorin's.

Tant cheuaucha claudas quil vint en la grant bertaigne. &
So-far rode Claudas that-he came into the great britain and
troua le roi a logres sa chite. si auoit guerre as plusors
found the king at logres his city so had-he war with-the most
de ses barons. Ne il nauoit encore gaires que il auoit este
of his barons Nor it not-had yet much that he had been
rois. Si auoit pris la roine genieure nauoit pas plus de .vij.
king So had-he taken the queen Guinevere not-had at-all more than seven
mois & demi. Et che estoit la plus bele feme dont nus
months and half And this was the most fair woman of-whom anyone
eust onques oi parler el pooir le roi artu. Et sacies
had ever heard speak in-the power (of-)the king Arthur And know
que onques a son tans el royalme de logres nen ot
that ever at her time in-the kingdom of logres not-thereof had-there
vne qui saparellast a lui de grant biaute fors que .ij.
one who herself-might-match to her of great beauty except that two
seulement. si fu lune du chastel qui siet en la marche de
only so was the-one of-the castle which sits in the march of
norgales. & des frans. si a non li chastiax gazeuilte. Et la
north-wales and of-the Franks so has name the castle gazeuilte And the

dame ot non heliene sans peir. Et chis contes en parlera
lady had name Elaine without peer And this tale thereof will-speak
en auant. Et lautre fu fille au roi mahaignie. Che fu li
on forward And the-other was daughter of-the king maimed This was the
rois pelles qui fu peires a amite meire galaat chelui qui vit
king Pelles who was father to Amite mother (of-)Galahad that-one who saw
apertement les grans meruelles del graal. Et acompli le siege
openly the great marvels of-the grail And fulfilled the seat
perillous de la table reonde. Et mena a fin les auentures del
perilous of the table round And brought to end the adventures of-the
roialme perelleus & auentureus. Che fu li roialmes de logres.
kingdom perilous and adventurous This was the kingdom of logres
Cele fu sa suer si fu de si grant biaute que nus des
That-one was his sister so was-she of so great beauty that any of-the
contes ne dist que a son tans fust ne se peust de biaute
tales not says that at her time were nor herself could of beauty
a lui apparellier. Et si auoit non amite en sornon. & en
to her match And so had-she name Amite in surname and in
son droit non helizabel. Moult fu la roine genieure de grant
her right name Elizabel Very was the queen Guinevere of great
biaute. Mais riens ne monta la biaute a la ualour que ele
beauty But anything not amounted the beauty to the worth that she
auoit. Car che fu de toutes les dames la plus preus & la
had For this was of all the ladies the most valiant and the
plus vaillans. & auoec che li douna diex si boines graces
most worthy and with this to-her gave God so good graces
que nule tant ne fu amee ne prisie de tous cheus qui la
that any so-much not was loved nor prized by all those who her
connoisoient. a cel tans auoit li rois artus guerre au roi
knew at that time had the king Arthur war with-the king
yon dierlande la menor & au roi aguisent descoche son
Yon of-ireland the lesser and with-the king Aguisant of-scotland his

cousin meisme. Et apres au roi doutre les marches de
cousin own And after with-the king of-beyond the marches of
galone & a maint autre de ses barons. Et de tous vint
galone and with many other of his barons And of all came-he
au desus par laide nostre signour qui en maint lieu li
to-the above by the-aid (of-)our Lord which in many place to-him
fu aparellie. Et par les prodommes qui de toutes les terres
was ready And by the worthy-men who from all the lands
de crestiente li uenoient aidier pour la grant vaillanche de
of Christendom him came to-aid for the great worth of
lui. Et nis de mainte terre de painime li vindrent seruir &
him And even from many land of heathendom him came to-serve and
se crestienerent pour sa valor. Et i furent de teus qui
themselves christened for his worth And there were of such who
puis firent de hautes proeches en son osteil & en son pooir.
after did of high prowesses in his household and in his power

En teil maniere fu claudas en la maison le roi artu
In such manner was Claudas in the house (of-)the king Arthur
des la mi aoust dusques lisue de May. en samblance dun
from the mid August until the-issue of May in semblance of-a
estraigne saudoier. Et esgarda le contenement le roi artu
foreign mercenary And watched the bearing (of-)the king Arthur
& sa largeche & sa deboinarete & son grant sens & sa
and his largesse and his kindness and his great sense and his
bonte & sa proeche. Si le vit de toutes bontes de cuer &
goodness and his prowess So him saw-he of all goodnesses of heart and
de cors si entechie quil ne prisoit vers lui nul homme dont
of body so endowed that-he not prized beside him any man of-whom
il oist onques parler. Atant sen parti claudas entre
he had-heard ever speak Thereupon himself-thence parted Claudas between
lui & son seriant. Et quant il vint a winchent que il ot
him and his sergeant And when he came to wissant that he had

meir passee. si mist a raison son seriant que il auoit troue
sea crossed so put-he to reason his sergeant whom he had found
moult preu en maint besoig. Et li dist ie tai maint
very valiant in many need And to-him said I to-thee-have many
bien fait si tai troue boin & loial en mainte chose.
good done so thee-have-I found good and loyal in many thing
Mais ie te coniur sour la foi que tu me dois que tu me
But I thee adjure upon the faith that thou to-me owest that thou me
conselles a foi dune chose que ie te dirai. Sire fait li
may-counsel in faith of-a thing that I to-thee shall-tell Lord says the
serians se ie vous en sai consel douner ie le ferai volentiers.
sergeant if I to-you thereof know counsel to-give I it shall-do willingly
Or enten donques fait claudas. Tu ne ses pourcoi ie ving
Now hear then says Claudas Thou not knowest wherefore I came
en la maison le roi artu. Ne ie nel dis onques ne
into the house (of-)the king Arthur Nor I not-it told ever neither
a toi ne a autrui. Mais ore ten dirai iou le uerite.
to thee nor to another But now to-thee-thereof shall-tell I the truth
Ie mapensai antan que ie estoie vn des plus viguereus
I myself-bethought last-year that I was one of-the most vigorous
hommes du monde. Et que se ie pooie auoir le roialme
men of-the world And that if I could have the kingdom
de logres. Ie seroie li plus doutei rois qui onques fust. &
of logres I would-be the most feared king who ever were and
conqueroie tant que ie seroie rois de tout le monde. Si
would-conquer so-much that I would-be king of all the world So
mapensai a guerroier le roi artu tant que ie peusse metre
myself-bethought-I to war the king Arthur so-long that I could put
au desous. Et tu ies si sages & si apercheuans de toutes
at-the under And thou art so wise and so perceiving of all
choses que tu seis bien se paine mi aroit mestier.
things that thou knowest well if pain to-me-there would-have need

Si me di ameement que tu men loes. Sires fait chil li
So me tell lovingly what thou me-thereof advisest Lord says that-one the
mieudres est legiers a sauoir qui vn poi de connoissanche a
best is light to know who a little of knowledge has
en lui. Moi est auis que chil doit auoir cuer de toutes
in him To-me is opinion that that-one must have heart of all
choses passer. qui bee a uaintre & mettre au desous le
things to-surpass who aims to conquer and put at-the under the
roi artu. Car ie ne quideroie que diex eust fait en li che
king Arthur For I not would-think that God had made in him this
quil i a. pour estre deshoneres ne abaisies. Mais pour
which-he there has for to-be dishonored nor abased But for
vaintre toutes gens. & conquerre les vns par hauteche de
to-conquer all people and to-win the ones by highness of
soi & de sa compaignie. Et les autres par sa largueche
himself and of his company And the others by his largesse
& par sa deboinarete. Car che sauons nous bien que il est
and by his kindness For this know we well that he is
riches de terre a grant meruelle. & il a en sa maison la
rich of land at great marvel and he has in his house the
flor de toute la terriene cheualerie. Il est si biax cheualiers
flower of all the earthly chivalry He is so fair knight
que plus bel ne quiert a demander. Il est plains de si grant
that more fair not seeks-one to ask He is full of so great
proeche & de si grant hautece quil vaint toutes cheualeries
prowess and of so great highness that-he conquers all chivalries
& cheus de son ostel & les estraignes. Il est si larges
both those of his household and the strangers He is so generous
& si abandounes que nus noseroit penser che que il
and so lavish that anyone not-would-dare think this that he
oseroit despendre. Il est si deboinaires & si plains de grant
would-dare spend He is so kindly and so full of great

compaignie. quil ne remaint pour les haus hommes quil
fellowship that-he not refrains for the high men that-he
ne fache grant ioie & grant amor as poures cheualiers
not may-make great joy and great love to-the poor knights
& lor doune les riches dons & les plaisans. Et si se
and to-them gives the rich gifts and the pleasing And so himself
fait gaaignier les cuers des riches & des poures. Car il
makes win the hearts of-the rich and of-the poor For he
honeure les riches comme ses compaignons. Et les poures
honors the rich as his companions And the poor
pour lor proeches. & pour son pris & sonour acroistre
for their prowesses and for his prize and his-honor to-increase
vers dieu & vers le siecle. Car bien gaaigne pris &
toward God and toward the world For well wins prize and
honour vers le siecle & grace & amours vers dieu chiex
honor toward the world and grace and love toward God that-one
qui au siecle fait chou quil doit de teil baillie com diex
who in-the world does this that-he must of such charge as God
li aura donee. & se chist estoit fols & mauais &
to-him will-have given and if this-one were foolish and bad and
de grant couardise plains. ne voi ie ne ne sai lomme
of great cowardice full not see I nor not know the-man
qui au desous le peust metre. tant com il vaudra les
who at-the under him could put so-long as he will-wish the
preudommes croire qui od lui sont. Car il conuendroit a
worthy-men to-believe who with him are For it would-behoove to
chelui qui le vaudroit desireter. quil fust plus riches hom
that-one who him would-wish to-disinherit that-he were more rich man
de lui. et eust plentei de millors cheualiers en son pooir.
than him and had plenty of better knights in his power
Che que ie ne quit mie que nus ait. Et qui fust miex
This that I not think at-all that anyone may-have And who were better

entechies du roi artu que a paines porroit auenir. Car
endowed than-the king Arthur which with pains could befall For
ie ne quidai onques en nul cors de haut homme si hautes
I not thought ever in any body of high man so high
teches ne si beles com eles me samblent estre en lui.
traits nor so fair as they to-me seem to-be in him
Pour che ne mest il pas auis quil puist estre par nul
For this not to-me-is it at-all opinion that-he may be by any
homme desiretes. Ne ie nel loeroie a nul homme tant
man disinherited Nor I not-it would-advise to any man so-much
soit mes carneus amis loer. ne diex nel fist onques teil
be-he my carnal friend to-advise nor God not-him made ever such
pour oublier desi la ou vous dites. Ne diex ne fist onques
for to-forget until there where you say Nor God not made ever
hom. tant soit mes carneus amis ne tant mait de bien
man so-much be-he my carnal friend nor so-much me-may-have of good
fait sil le pooit desireter & ie len pooie garantir que ie
done if-he him could disinherit and I him-thereof could protect that I
ne len garandesise a mon pooir. & apres en feroie ma
not him-thereof would-protect to my power and after thereof would-do my
penitance. Comment fait claudas si li aideroies contre moi
penance How says Claudas so him wouldst-thou-aid against me
qui sui tes liges sires. & tai fait riche & honere pour ton
who am thy liege lord and thee-have made rich and honored for thy
seruiche. Sire fait il sil vous guerroioit a tort ie vous aideroie
service Lord says he if-he you warred with wrong I you would-aid
dusca la mort. voire fust a son tort fust a son droit.
until-to the death truly were-it with his wrong were-it with his right
Mais se vous auies la force de lui desireter & vous le volies
But if you had the force of him to-disinherit and you it wished
faire. se ie len pooie garandir ie len garandiroie tout.
to-do if I him-thereof could protect I him-thereof would-protect all

Dont seroies tu fait claudas mes desloiaus & mes traitres si
Then wouldst-be thou says Claudas my disloyal and my traitor so
com tu meismes connois. Car tu es mes hons liges & tu
as thou thyself acknowledgest For thou art my man liege and thou
seroies en laide a vn autre homme estraigne encontre moi.
wouldst-be in the-aid to an other man foreign against me
Sire fait chil ie ne seroie ia traitres ne desloiax. Car
Lord says that-one I not would-be ever traitor nor disloyal For
anchois que ie alasse encontre vous. Ie vous guerpiroie tout
before that I might-go against you I to-you would-forsake all
vostre hommage pour garandir tout le monde de dolor & de
your homage for to-protect all the world from sorrow and from
pouerte. & pour toute cheualerie tenir en haut. Car se chis seus
poverty and for all chivalry to-hold on high For if this single
hons estoit mors. Ie ne voi qui iamais maintenist cheualerie.
man were dead I not see who ever-more would-maintain chivalry
Ne tenist gentilleche la ou ele est. Et moult seroit miex
Nor would-hold nobility there where it is And much would-be-it better
que vous qui nestes cuns seus hons fussies ariere boutes de
that you who not-are but-one single man were back thrust from
vostre maluaise enprise. que tous li mons fust tornes a pouerte
your evil enterprise than all the world were turned to poverty
& a dolor. Car bien seroit mors & desiretes tous li mondes
and to sorrow For well would-be dead and disinherited all the world
sil estoit desiretes. Quil bee tout le monde a maintenir. &
if-he were disinherited For-he aims all the world to maintain and
se vous ne autres volies dire que ce fust desloiautes que iaie
if you or others wished to-say that this were disloyalty which I-have
dit. ne traisons ie seroie prest que ie men desfendisse
said nor treason I would-be ready that I myself-thereof might-defend
en quelconques lieu que len men osast reter. Mais puis
in whatever place that one me-thereof might-dare accuse But since

que sires demande a son homme consel il len doit dire
that lord asks to his man counsel he to-him-thereof must say
che que li cuers len conselle de raison & de loiaute.
this that the heart him-thereof counsels of reason and of loyalty
Et se li sires len veut croire & bien len vient
And if the lord him-thereof wishes to-believe and well to-him-thereof comes
chil en a honor qui li aura loe le boin consel.
that-one thereof has honor who to-him will-have advised the good counsel
Et sil ne len veut croire & maus len vient. li
And if-he not him-thereof wishes to-believe and evil to-him-thereof comes the
hons ni a nule honte. ains sen descarge a sonor.
man not-there has any shame rather himself-thereof discharges with his-honor
Quant claudas ot chelui si vigueureusement parler si
When Claudas heard that-one so vigorously speak so
len prise moult. Car bien seit quil li vient de
him-thereof prizes-he much For well knows-he that-it to-him comes from
tres grant hautece de cuer. Mais pour deliter plus en ses
very great highness of heart But for to-delight more in his
paroles qui moult li plaisoient. li court vn poi sus de la
words which much him pleased him runs-he a little upon with the
soie parole en samblant domme courechie. Si dist que ia
his word in semblance of-man angered So says-he that ever
si tost ne vendra en son pooir com il le fera moustrer
so soon not will-come-he into his power as he it will-make show
encontre lui. Que ches raisons quil a deuant li contees
against him That these reasons which-he has before him told
& reichies sont boines. En non dieu sire fait chil qui a
and recited are good In name (of-)God lord says that-one who in
moult grant despit le tient. & ie vous rent vostre hommage
very great despite it holds and I to-you render your homage
chi endroit. Si vous pri & requier que vous me dounes iour
here in-place So you beg-I and ask that you me may-give day

en vostre cort del contredire pour moi aloiauter encontre
in your court of-the gainsaying for myself to-clear against
chelui qui auant losera mettre. soit serians ou cheualiers.
that-one who forward it-will-dare put be-it sergeant or knight
Et ie sui prest par sainte crois fait li serians puis que
And I am ready by holy cross says the sergeant since that
a lesprouer men aueis mis. Ie ne men guenchirai
to the-proving me-thereof have-you put I not myself-thereof shall-swerve
ia fait claudas de monstrer orendroit encontre toi que
ever says Claudas from showing right-now against thee that
cest desloiautes & felounie. Ne nus ne seit fait claudas
this-is disloyalty and felony Nor anyone not knows says Claudas
si bien la uerite de ces paroles com ie fais. Orendroit sera
so well the truth of these words as I do Right-now will-be
la bataille. & chelui qui droit en a. en doinst diex
the battle and to-that-one who right therein has thereof may-give God
ioie. Chil met le main a lespee & claudas fait autretel.
joy That-one puts the hand to the-sword and Claudas does likewise
& il furent sans toutes armes dont il se puissent
and they were without all arms wherewith they themselves might
couurir. Et nepourquant claudas auoit aportees moult beles
cover And nevertheless Claudas had brought very fair
armes de bertaigne & moult boines. quil auoit laisies a
arms from britain and very good which-he had left at
winsant. Car il sen uoloit venir couuertement en son
wissant For he himself-thence wished to-come covertly into his
pais. Il furent loing de toutes gens. Et claudas qui de la
country They were far from all people And Claudas who of the
bataille nauoit talent. & voit chelui qui vient lespee traite
battle not-had desire and sees that-one who comes the-sword drawn
contre lui & il le sauoit & preu & hardi outreement si
against him and he him knew both valiant and bold utterly so

li poise moult de che que tant a la chose menee. qui
him grieves much of this that so-far has-he the thing led which
a gabois ot estei commenchie. Mais il ne seit que faire.
in jest had been begun But he not knows what to-do
Car sil crie chelui merchi il doute que la chose ne soit
For if-he cries that-one mercy he fears that the thing — may-be
seue. Et que les gens qui lorront dire & nen sauront
known And that the people who it-will-hear say and not-thereof will-know
la uerite le tiegnent a couardise quil auoit tous iors haie.
the truth it may-hold for cowardice which-he had all days hated
Cele le tient en sa folie. si atent comme fols celui qui
That him holds in his folly so awaits-he as fool that-one who
encontre li vient lespee traite. & qui a son droit le
against him comes the-sword drawn and who with his right him
requiert. Chest la riens qui plus lespoente. & dautre part
challenges This-is the thing which most him-frightens and on-other side
che seit il bien que li vns ou li autres nen puet passer
this knows he well that the one or the other not-thence can pass
sans mort ou sans meschief. se tant font que les espees
without death or without mischief if so-much do-they that the swords
viegnent au ferir. Si not onques mais li rois claudas de
may-come to-the striking So not-had ever more the king Claudas of
la mort si grant paour. ne tant pres de li ne le quida.
the death so great fear nor so near to him not it thought-he
Ensi sentreuienent li doi ensamble. Et claudas atent
Thus each-other-approach the two together And Claudas waits
tote voie. Et quant il voit chelui tout aparellie de ferir si
all way And when he sees that-one all ready to strike so
sescrie. Et li dist quil se seufre vn petit. tant
himself-cries-out And to-him says that-he himself may-forbear a little so-long
quil ait a lui vn petit parole. & chil sareste &
that-he may-have to him a little spoken and that-one himself-stops and

claudas li dist. Di ua ie tai nouri & maint bien fait.
Claudas to-him says Say go I thee-have nurtured and many good done
& se ie tochi ie voel que tu me pardoignes ta mort. Car
and if I thee-kill I wish that thou to-me may-pardon thy death For
les autres gens ne seiuent mie comment nous auons ceste
the other people not know at-all how we have this
bataille aramie autresi bien com nous sauons. Quant chil
battle pledged likewise well as we know When that-one
lot si se tient pour fol de che que ses sires li auoit
it-heard so himself holds for fool of this that his lord him had
requis de che dont il deust lui requerre. si li dist sire
asked of this whereof he ought him to-ask so to-him said lord
claudas sire claudas plus a de bien en vostre cuer se vous
Claudas lord Claudas more has of good in your heart if you
le volies despendre que en tous les cuers qui ore endroit
it wished to-spend than in all the hearts which now in-place
soient. Si maues ore de tant ensegnie que ie ne me
may-be So me-have-you now of so-much taught that I not myself
combaterai mais hui a vous que biau me soit. Mais nous
shall-fight more today with you that fair to-me may-be But we
en irons par le roialme de gaule mener a fin ceste bataille
thence shall-go through the kingdom of gaul to-bring to end this battle
par deuant le roi. Car il est voirs que se ie vous ochesice
by before the king For it is true that if I you killed
chi ou nous sommes. tous iours mais me seroit tenu a
here where we are all days more to-me would-be held for
murdre & a traison. Et a vous autresi se vous ochies moi.
murder and for treason And to you likewise if you kill me

Ore ot claudas chose qui li siet. si li otroit issi com
Now hears Claudas thing which him suits so to-him grants thus as
chil le deuise. & chil prent congie de lui. Et dist que
that-one it devises and that-one takes leave of him And says that

de hui en tiers iour sera apparellies de sa bataille deuant
from today in third day will-he-be prepared for his battle before
le roi de gaule. Comment fait claudas issi ne lotri ie mie
the king of gaul How says Claudas thus not it-grant I at-all
pour chou que tu ten ailles. Car dont maroies tu
for this that thou thyself-thence may-go For then me-wouldst-have thou
maluaise foi portee. Quant ie tauroie menes en estraigne
bad faith borne When I thee-would-have led into foreign
pais pour moi seruir. & tu mauroies laisie en mon
country for me to-serve and thou me-wouldst-have left in my
grignor besoig. Car ie ne vaudroie pour nule rien que on me
greatest need For I not would-wish for any thing that one me
trouast si pourement. Si te pri que tu remaignes auoeques
might-find so poorly So thee beg-I that thou mayst-remain with
moi encore. & que tu me serues si com tu as a
me yet and that thou me mayst-serve so as thou hast for
coustumes. Et chil dist que son anemi mortel ne seruera
customs And that-one said that his enemy mortal not will-serve
il ia. ne iamais ior ne sera en son seruice. Or enten fait
he ever nor ever-more day not will-be-he in his service Now hear says
claudas. tu ses bien que par nos acreans est ceste bataille
Claudas thou knowest well that by our pledges is this battle
remeise. Iusques deuant le roi de gaule & puis que ie serai
put-off Until before the king of gaul and since that I shall-be
as armes seis tu bien quil aura en moi mellee. contre vn
at-the arms knowest thou well that-it will-have in me fight against a
mellor de moi. & auoeques deuroit estre las qui mauroit
better than me and with-that ought be weary who me-would-have
mene iusca outrage. Et ie te ferai ia vne honour que ie
led until-to outrage And I to-thee shall-do now an honor that I
ne feroie mie pour toute ma terre. se ie me deuoie combatre
not would-do at-all for all my land if I myself were-to fight

au cors le roi artu. Car ie me tieng de la bataille
with-the body (of-)the king Arthur For I myself hold of the battle
por outre. Et sachies bien que ie nen parlai onques fors
for beaten And know well that I not-thereof spoke ever except
a gas. Et vi bien hui teil eure que ie vausisse estre
in jest And saw-I well today such hour that I would-have-wished to-be
outre la meir de grece. par couent que onques parole nen
beyond the sea of greece by covenant that ever word not-thereof
fust meue. Et sui prest que ie te iur sour sains
were moved And am-I ready that I to-thee may-swear upon saints
a le premiere eglize que nous trouerons. que de quanque
at the first church that we shall-find that of whatever
tu as dit ie ten sai boin grei. Et por la grant
thou hast said I to-thee-thereof know good grace And for the great
proeche que ie sai en toi. ie te doing le senescauchie
prowess that I know in thee I to-thee give the seneschalship
& le connestablie de mon ostel de hui en auant. Et
and the constableship of my household from today on forward And
te ferai cheualier le iour de le saint iehan. Car ie ne
thee shall-I-make knight the day of the Saint John For I not
te vaudroie auoir perdu pour le millor chastel que iaie.
thee would-wish to-have lost for the best castle that I-may-have
Tant li prie claudas en cheuauchant quil sont venu
So-much him begs Claudas in riding that-they are come
a vne eglize. quil orent veue pres del chemin a destre.
to a church which-they had seen near of-the road on right
si i estoit vns ermitages. Et il descent si li iure ses
so there was a hermitage And he dismounts so to-him swears his
couuenences a tenir. Et puis len a baisie en foi. En
covenants to keep And then him-thereof has kissed in faith In
teil maniere ont le pais faite si cheuauchierent tant par
such manner have-they the peace made so rode-they so-far by

lor iournees quil vindrent a boorges. Si est moult grant
their journeys that-they came to bourges So is very great
la ioie que les gens claudas font de lui. au tiers iour
the joy that the people (of-)Claudas make of him at-the third day
vint a lui patrices ses oncles. si li conte comment ses
came to him Patrice his uncle so to-him tells how his
fiex dorins auoit fait maint mal en la terre. Et viles brisies
son Dorin had done many harm in the land And towns broken
& proies prises. & hommes ochis & naures. De tout che
and preys taken and men killed and wounded Of all this
fait claudas ne me caut il. Car il a droit. Car fiex de roi
says Claudas not to-me matters it For he has right For son of king
ne doit estre destorbes de larguece quil voelle faire. puis
not must be hindered from largesse which-he may-wish to-do since
que rois net puet estre poures par douner. Et ie ai tant
that king not can be poor by giving And I have so-much
veu de largueche puis que ie departi de chi. que ie ne
seen of largesse since that I departed from here that I not
quidasse mie que autretant en peust estre par tout
would-have-thought at-all that as-much thereof could be through all
le monde. Si sai bien que chest la plus haute teche que
the world So know-I well that this-is the most high trait that
hons puist auoir que estre larges de vraie largueche. Chest de
man may have that to-be generous of true largesse This-is to
donner ausi bien sans besoig comme a besoig. Et teile est
give as well without need as at need And such is
la largueche le roi artu. Puis conte a ses gens comment
the largesse (of-)the king Arthur Then tells-he to his people how
il estoit ales en bertaigne. & porcoi. Et le contenement de
he was gone into britain and wherefore And the bearing of
la roine Et le meruelle de le cheualerie qui en sa maison
the queen And the marvel of the chivalry which in his house

est. & des prochaines terres & des lointaines. Apres lor
is both of-the near lands and of-the distant After to-them
conte le tenchon & le descort qui a este entre li &
tells-he the quarrel and the discord which has been between him and
son seriant. Si lor deuise de chief en chief. et ne mie
his sergeant So to-them devises-he from head to head and not at-all
la grant paour quil a eue. de che est grans li gas parmi
the great fear that-he has had of this is great the jest through
la court. Et li serians en a moult grant honte. &
the court And the sergeant thereof has very great shame and
moult se tient pour fol. Quant vint a la feste saint
much himself holds for fool When came-it to the feast (of-)Saint
iehan. si le fist claudas cheualiers. & lors le reuest de
John so him made Claudas knight and then him invests with
la conestablie de son osteil. Et chil fu puis cheualiers de
the constableship of his household And that-one was after knight of
moult grant proeche. autresi com il auoit este preus serians.
very great prowess likewise as he had been valiant sergeant
Et il auoit a non arcois li flamens. Ensi est li rois claudas
And he had for name Arcois the Fleming Thus is the king Claudas
repairies en sa terre. Mais chi endroit ne parole plus li
returned into his land But here in-place not speaks more the
contes de lui. anchois retourne a lancelot qui est el lac.
tale of him rather returns to Lancelot who is in-the lake

The Childhood of Lancelot

x

After three years in the damsel's keeping Lancelot looks a third older than he is. A master teaches him; he shoots with bow and bolts, rides about the lake in fair company, and learns chess and tables until none can teach him more. The tale describes him at length: his complexion, his gray laughing eyes that redden in anger, his voice like a trumpet, and a chest that Guinevere would say was no broader than so great a heart required. He is kind to the kind and fierce to felons, generous with all he has, and from his tenth year does nothing unbecoming a good childhood, nor can he be turned from what he judges right.

Chi endroit dist li contes que quant lanselos ot este en la
Here in-place says the tale that when Lancelot had been in the
garde a la damoisele les .iij. ans que vous aues oi. si fu
keeping of the damsel the three years that you have heard so was-he
tant biax quil ne fu nus qui le veist quil ne quidast
so fair that-it not was anyone who him saw that-he not thought
quil fust de grignour eage la tierche part que il nestoit.
that-he were of greater age the third part than he was
Et auoec che quil estoit grans de son eage. si estoit sages
And with this that-he was great of his age so was-he wise
& entendans & legiers. & outre che que enfes de son
and understanding and nimble and beyond this that child of his
eage ne doit estre. La damoisele li bailla vn maistre qui
age — ought be The damsel to-him handed a master who
li ensegna & monstra comment il se deuoit contenir a
him taught and showed how he himself ought conduct in
guise de gentil homme. & nepourquant de tous cheus qui
guise of gentle man and nevertheless of all those who
laiens estoient ne sauoit nus qui il estoit. fors seulement
in-there were not knew anyone who he was except only

la damoisele. & vne soie puchele. Si lapeloient lenfant si
the damsel and a her maiden So him-called-they the-child so
comme lestoire la cha en ariere deuise. Si tost com il
as the-history it-has here in back devised So soon as he
se pot aidier. li fist ses maistres vn arc a sa maniere
himself could help to-him made his master a bow to his manner
& bouions legiers. & le fist traire auant au bersaut. Et
and bolts light and him made shoot forward at-the target And
quant il sen sot entremetre. si le fist archoier as
when he himself-thereof knew busy so him made shoot at-the
menus oisiax de la forest. Ensi com il aloit croisant &
small birds of the forest Thus as he went growing and
enforchant de cors & de menbres. si li enforcha son arc
strengthening of body and of limbs so to-him strengthened his bow
& ses saietes. Et commencha a archoier as lieures & as
and his arrows And began-he to shoot at-the hares and at-the
autres menus oiseles. & as grans oisiax la ou il les
other small birds and at-the great birds there where he them
pooit trouer. Et si tost com il pooit sour cheual monter.
could find And so soon as he could upon horse mount
si li fu aparellies moult bel & moult boin. Et moult
so to-him was prepared very fair and very good And very
bien atournes de frein & de sele & dautres choses. si
well equipped with bridle and with saddle and of-other things so
cheuaucha entour le lac amont & aual non mie loing mais
rode-he around the lake up and down not at-all far but
tous iors pres. Ne nestoit pas seuls. anchois auoit moult bele
all days near Nor not-was-he at-all alone rather had-he very fair
compaignie de vales grans & petis & gentiex hommes tout
company of youths great and little and gentle men all
le plus. Et il se sauoit si belement tenir en lor compaignie.
the most And he himself knew so fairly to-hold in their company

que tout chil qui le veoient quidoient que che fust vns
that all those who him saw thought that this were one
des gentiex hommes del monde. Et pour voir si estoit il.
of-the gentle men of-the world And for true so was he
Des esches des tables & de tous les ieus quil pooit
Of-the chess of-the tables and of all the games that-he could
veoir. aprist si legierement. que quant il vint en leage de
see learned-he so lightly that when he came into the-age of
bachelerie. nus ne len peust ensengnier. Et che fu che
bachelorhood anyone not him-therein could teach And this was this
dist li contes li plus biax enfes del monde. & li miex
says the tale the most fair child of-the world and the best
taillies de cors & de tous menbres. Ne sa fachons ne fait
shaped of body and of all limbs Nor his fashion not makes
pas a oublier en conte. Mais a retraire oiant toute gent
at-all to forget in tale But to relate hearing all people
qui de grant biaute denfant voldrent oir parler. Il fu de
who of great beauty of-child wished to-hear speak He was of
moult bele charneure ne bien blans ne bien bruns. Mais
very fair complexion neither well white nor well brown But
entremelles dun & dautre. sel puet on apeleir cleirs brunes.
mingled of-one and of-other so-it can one call clear brown
Il ot le viaire enlumine de naturel color vermelle si par
He had the face illumined with natural color red so by
mesure que visaument i auoit diex assise le compaignie de
measure that visibly there had God set the company of
la blanchor & de la brunor & del vermel que la blancor
the whiteness and of the brownness and of-the red that the whiteness
nestoit estainte ne enpirie pour la brunor. ne la brunor por la
not-was quenched nor impaired by the brownness nor the brownness by the
blanchor. Ains estoit atenpres lune de lautre. Et la vermelle
whiteness Rather was tempered the-one by the-other And the red

color qui par desus estoit enluminoit & soi & les autres
color which by above was illumined both itself and the other
colors melees. Si que rien ni auoit trop blanc ne trop
colors mingled So that anything not-there had too white nor too
brun ne trop vermel. Mais igal melleure de .iij. ensamble. Il
brown nor too red But equal mixture of three together He
ot le bouche petite par mesure & bien seant & les leures
had the mouth small by measure and well seemly and the lips
coulorees & bien faites. Et les dens petis & serres &
colored and well made And the teeth small and close and
bien faites & blans. Et le menton bien fait a vne petite
well made and white And the chin well made with a little
fossete. le neis par mesure lonc vn poi hautet el milieu. les
dimple the nose by measure long a little raised in-the middle the
iex vairs & rians & plains de ioie tant com il estoit lies.
eyes gray and laughing and full of joy so-long as he was glad
Mais quant il fu iries a chertes che sambloit carbon espris.
But when he was angered in earnest this seemed coal kindled
et estoit auis que parmi le pomel des iex li sailloient
and was opinion that through the ball of-the eyes to-him leapt
goutes de sanc toutes vermeilles. & fronchoit del neis en
drops of blood all red and wrinkled-he with-the nose in
sa grant ire autresi com vns cheuaus. & estregnoit les dens
his great ire likewise as a horse and clenched the teeth
ensemble. si que il croissoient moult durement. Et iert auis
together so that they gnashed very hard And was opinion
que lalaine qui de sa bouche issoit fust toute vermelle. Et
that the-breath which from his mouth issued were all red And
lors parloit si fierement que che sambloit estre vne buisine.
then spoke-he so fiercely that this seemed to-be a trumpet
Et quanquil tenoit as dens & as mains tout depechoit.
And whatever-he held at-the teeth and at-the hands all broke

Au daarain ne li menbroit en sa grant ire. fors de che
At-the last not to-him remembered in his great ire except of this
dont il iert ireus. Et si i parut bien puis en maint affaire.
whereof he was angry And so there appeared well after in many affair
le front ot haut & bien seant. & les sourciex bruns &
the forehead had-he high and well seemly and the eyebrows brown and
petis de point. si ot les cauex delies si naturelment blons
small of point so had-he the hairs fine so naturally blond
& luisans tant com il fu enfes. que de plus bele colour
and shining so-long as he was child that of more fair color
ne peusent estre nul chauel. Mais quant il vint as armes
not could be any hairs But when he came to-the arms
si com vous orres. si li canierent de la naturel blondor.
so as you will-hear so to-him changed from the natural blondness
& deuindrent soret. & moult les ot tous iors crespes
and became sorrel and much them had-he all days curly
& cleirs par mesure & moult plaisans. De son col ne fait
and bright by measure and very pleasing Of his neck not makes
il mie a demander Car sil fust en vne tres bele dame.
it at-all to ask For if-it were on a very fair lady
si fust il asses conuenables & bien seant & bien taillies
so would-be it enough fitting and well seemly and well shaped
a la mesure del cors & des espaules. ne trop greles ne
to the measure of-the body and of-the shoulders neither too slender nor
trop gros ne lonc ne cours outre mesure. Et les espaules
too thick nor long nor short beyond measure And the shoulders
furent lees & hautes a raison. Et le pis teil que en nul
were broad and high to reason And the chest such that in any
cors ne trouast on ne si large ne si gros ne si espes.
body not would-find one neither so broad nor so big nor so thick
Ne en lui ne trouast ia nus hom plus que reprendre. ains
Nor in him not would-find ever any man more to reprove rather

disoient tout chil qui le veioient que sil fust vn poi mains
said all those who him saw that if-he were a little less
garnis de pis plus en fust ratalentables & plaisans. Mais
furnished of chest more thereby were-he agreeable and pleasing But
puis auint que chele qui de sor tous autres le deuisa.
after befell that that-one who over above all others him described
Che fu la vaillans roine genieure qui dist que diex ne li
This was the worthy queen Guinevere who said that God not to-him
auoit pas donne pis a outrage de grant ne de gros ne
had at-all given chest to excess of great nor of big nor
despesse qui i fust. Car autresi estoit grans li cuers al
of-thickness which there were For likewise was great the heart at-the
endroit. Si couenist que il creuast par estouoir se il neust
place So would-behoove that it burst by necessity if it not-had
teil estage ou il se reposast a se mesure. Ne se ie fusse
such dwelling where it itself might-rest to its measure Nor if I were
fait ele diex. Ia en lancelot ne meisse ne plus ne mains.
says she God Ever in Lancelot not would-I-put neither more nor less
Teiles estoient & les espaules & le pis & li brac furent
Such were both the shoulders and the chest and the arms were
lonc & droit. Et bien furent furni par le tor desos. Si
long and straight And well were furnished by the turn below So
furent de ners & dos moult bien garni. Et de char i
were-they with sinews and of-bones very well furnished And of flesh there
ot a mesure. les mains furent de dame tout droitement.
had-it to measure the hands were of lady all rightly
se li doit fussent vn poi plus menu. Et des rains & des
if the fingers were a little more slender And of-the loins and of-the
hanches ne vous poroit nus dire que len les peust miex
hips not to-you could anyone say that one them could better
deuiser en nul cheualier. Droites ot les cuisses & les
devise in any knight Straight had-he the thighs and the

iambes & voltis les pies. Ne nus ne fu onques plus drois
legs and arched the feet Nor anyone not was ever more straight
en son estant. Et chantoit a meruelles bien quant il voloit.
in his standing And sang-he at marvels well when he wished
Mais che nestoit pas souent. Car nus ne fist onques si poi
But this not-was at-all often For anyone not made ever so little
de ioie sans grant raison. Mais quant il auoit raison de ioie
of joy without great reason But when he had reason of joy
faire. Nus ne pooit estre tant iolis ne tant enuoisies que il
to-make Anyone not could be so jolly nor so merry that he
asses plus ne le fust. & disoit maintes fois quant il estoit en
enough more not it were and said-he many times when he was in
sa grant ioie que riens nule ses cuers noseroit emprendre.
his great joy that thing any his heart not-would-dare undertake
que ses cors ne peust mener a fin. tant se fioit en la
that his body not could bring to end so-much himself trusted-he in the
ioie qui de mainte grant besoigne le fist puis au desus
joy which of many great need him made after to-the above
venir. Et par che quil em parloit si seurement li fu il
come And by this that-he thereof spoke so surely to-him was it
atornei a mal de mainte gent qui quidoient que il le deist par
turned to ill by many people who thought that he it said by
beuban & par uantise. Mais non faisoit. ains le disoit par
pride and by boasting But not did-he rather it said-he by
la grant seurte quil auoit en che dont toute sa ioie venoit.
the great surety that-he had in this whence all his joy came
Teil furent li menbre lancelot & sa samblance. Et si
Such were the limbs (of-)Lancelot and his semblance And so
fu bien taillies & de vis & de cors & de menbres. Et
was-he well shaped both of face and of body and of limbs And
les teches du cuer ne furent pas oubliees en lui a aseior.
the traits of-the heart not were at-all forgotten in him to set

Car che fu li plus dous enfes & li plus deboinaires de
For this was the most sweet child and the most kindly of
tous la ou deboinairetes se laisoit trouer. Mais contre
all there where kindness itself let find But against
felounie le treuoit on passer felon. Ne de sa larguece
felony him found one to-surpass felon Nor of his largesse
ne fu onques nus enfes veus. Car il deportoit tout a
not was ever any child seen For he shared all with
ses compaignons autresi volentiers com il le prendoit. Il
his companions likewise willingly as he it took He
honoroit les gentiex de si grant cuer que aillours nauoit
honored the gentle of so great heart that elsewhere not-had-he
sentente mise. Ne de sa maniere ne fu onques enfes veus.
his-intent put Nor of his manner not was ever child seen
Car ia nus ne li veist faire maluais samblant se droite
For ever anyone not him saw make bad semblance if right
raison ni eust. teile dont nus hom nel deust par
reason not-there had such whereby any man not-him ought by
droit blasmer. Mais quant il se courechoit daucune chose
right to-blame But when he himself angered of-some thing
que len li eust mesfaite. nestoit lors pas legiere chose
that one to-him had misdone not-was then at-all light thing
de lui apaier. Et il estoit de si cleir sens & de si droite
of him to-appease And he was of so clear sense and of so right
entention. que puis quil ot .x. ans passes ne faisoit il
intention that after that-he had ten years passed not did he
gaires choses qui napartenissent a boines enfances. Et sil
much things which not-belonged to good childhoods And if-he
auoit en talent a faire aucune chose qui li samblast en
had in desire to do some thing which to-him seemed in

son cuer estre boine & raisounable. nen estoit pas legiers
his heart to-be good and reasonable not-thence was-he at-all light
a remuer. ne ia son maistre nen creist de rien.
to move nor ever his master not-thereof would-he-believe of anything

Lancelot's Largesse

XI

Hunting, Lancelot outrides his master and kills a young stag. He gives his horse to a youth on foot who must reach Claudas's court to prove a traitor, and the venison to an old vavasor marrying off his daughter, who, struck by his likeness to King Ban, gives him the better of his two greyhounds. His master strikes him and the greyhound, and Lancelot beats him bloody with his bow. Before the lady he defends himself: a man's heart cannot rise high under a master, and a king's son who dares not give is worthless. She tells him he is no king's son, then, pleased, kisses him and makes him his own master.

Il auint vn iour que il cachoit vn cheruecel & ses maistres
It befell one day that he hunted a young-stag and his master
apres li & si autre compaignon. si orent moult couru. &
after him and his other companions so had-they much run and
tant que tout commenchierent a remanoir. Et entre lui &
so-long that all began to remain-behind And between him and
son maistre furent miex monte. si laisierent tous les autres.
his master were better mounted so left-they all the others
Si ne demoura gaires que li maistres cai entre lui &
So not tarried-it much that the master fell between him and
son ronchin Si ot li ronchins le col brisie en trauers. ne
his packhorse So had the packhorse the neck broken in across nor
onques li enfes nel regarda. anchois feri des esperons
ever the child not-it looked-at rather struck-he with-the spurs

apres sa proie tant que il lochist dune saiete ens en vne
after his prey so-long that he it-killed with-an arrow right in a
grant voie ferree. Et lors deschendi por tourser le cheruel
great road paved And then dismounted-he for to-pack the young-stag
deriere lui. Endementiers que il se retournoit arriere vers
behind him Meanwhile that he himself returned back toward
ses compaignons qui pour lui estoient moult angoisous. si
his companions who for him were very anguished so
encontra vn homme a pie qui menoit en sa main .j. ronchi
met-he a man on foot who led in his hand a packhorse
las & recreu. Et il estoit moult biaus varles de prime
weary and spent And he was very fair youth of first
barbe. Il fu en sa cote tout chenglement tout escorchiet.
beard He was in his coat all singly all tucked-up
vne cape sour son col. ses esperons cauchies qui tout
a cape upon his neck his spurs put-on which all
estoient ensanglete del ronchi quil auoit tant couru
were bloodied from-the packhorse which-he had so-much ridden
quil ne pooit mais en auant. Quant il voit lenfant si ot
that-it not could more on forward When he sees the-child so had-he
honte moult grant. si tint le chief enclin & commencha a
shame very great so held-he the head bowed and began to
plorer moult tendrement. Et li enfes latendi vn poi hors
weep very tenderly And the child him-awaited a little out
de la voie. si li demanda qui il estoit & ou il aloit en
of the road so him asked who he was and where he went in
tel maniere. Chil pensoit moult bien que li enfes estoit
such manner That-one thought very well that the child was
moult haus hom. si li dist biax sire que diex vous
very high man so to-him said fair lord whom God you
doinst honour ne vous chaut ia qui ie soie. Car chertes
may-give honor not to-you matters ever who I may-be For certainly

ie sui asses poures. & mains aurai ie encore entre chi &
I am enough poor and less shall-have I yet between here and
tiers iour se diex ne me conselle autrement que il na fait
third day if God not me counsels otherwise than he has done
dusques chi. Et si ai ie estei plus aise que ie ne soie ore
until here And so have I been more at-ease than I — may-be now
maintes fois. Et queile auenture v boine ou maluaise vous
many times And what adventure or good or bad to-you
est auenue fait lancelos. Ie sui gentiex hom de peire &
is befallen says Lancelot I am gentle man of father and
de meire & de tant sui ie plus dolans en mon cuer des
of mother and of so-much am I more sorrowful in my heart of-the
mesqueances qui mauienent. Car se ie fusse vns vilains plus
mischances which me-befall For if I were a villein more
volentiers le souffrist mes cuers quel anui quil mauenist.
willingly it would-suffer my heart what trouble that-it me-might-befall
Et li enfes en ot moult grant pitie. Et nonpourquant
And the child thereof had very great pity And nevertheless
si li dist. Comment fait il estes vous gentiex hom &
so to-him said How says he are you gentle man and
puis si plores pour mesqueance quil aueigne. se chou nest
then so weep for mischance that-it may-befall if this not-is
dami que vous aies perdu. ou de honte qui fait vous
of-friend that you may-have lost or of shame which done to-you
soit que vous ne poes amender. Nus haus cuers ne se
be which you not can amend Any high heart not itself
doit esmaier de perte quil puisse recourer.
must dismay of loss which-it may recover

Ore sen meruelle moult li valles qui chis enfes estoit
Now himself-thereat marvels much the youth who this child was
qui iert si iones & qui si hautes paroles li auoit dites. Et
who was so young and who so high words to-him had said And

il respont chertes biaus sire ie ne plour pas por perte dami
he answers certainly fair lord I not weep at-all for loss of-friend
ne de terre que iaie fourfaite. Anchois sui aiournes a le
nor of land that I-may-have forfeited Rather am-I summoned at the
matin a le court le roi claudas desprouer vn traitor qui
morning at the court (of-)the king Claudas to-prove a traitor who
ochist piecha vn mien parent. moult preudomme cheualier en
killed long-ago a my kinsman very worthy-man knight in
son lit pour sa feme meisme. Et quant ie men uenoie
his bed for his wife same And when I myself-thence came
ier soir si me fait gaitier a vn trespas dune forest. si
yester evening so me makes-be watch at a passage of-a forest so
fui assaillis en le forest ou ie passoie. Et mes cheuaus fu
was-I assailed in the forest where I passed And my horse was
desous moi naures a mort. Mais touteuois me porta iusca
under me wounded to death But all-the-same me carried-it until-to
garison. & me douna chestui vns prodons qui diex doinst
safety and me gave this-one a worthy-man whom God may-give
honor. Mais tant lai trauellie pour la mort escuer quil
honor But so-much it-have-I labored for the death to-escape that-it
na mais gaires de mestier ne a moi ne a autrui. si
not-has more much of use neither to me nor to another so
sui dolans de mes amis que iai perdus la ou ie sui
am-I sorrowful of my friends whom I-have lost there where I am
assaillis qui ochis furent & naurei. Et dautre part me poise
assailed who killed were and wounded And on-other side me grieves
trop. de che que ie ne serai pas a tans a mon iour en
too-much of this that I not shall-be at-all in time at my day in
la maison le roi claudas. Car se ie i peusse estre ie
the house (of-)the king Claudas For if I there could be I
esclarasse mon deul au grant droit que iai dune partie
would-have-cleared my grief by-the great right that I-have of-a part

de mon duel. & ore en remandrai hounis par ma demeure.
of my grief and now thereof shall-I-remain shamed by my delay
Or me dites fait li enfes. se vous auies cheual fort &
Now me tell says the child if you had horse strong and
isnel pories i vous iamais a tans venir. Chertes sire fait il
swift could there you ever in time come Certainly lord says he
oil moult bien. se ie aloie encore le tiers de la voie a pie.
yes very well if I went yet the third of the way on foot
En non dieu fait li enfes dont ne serois vous pas
In name (of-)God says the child then not will-be you at-all
hounis par desfaute de cheual tant com ie laie. ne
shamed by lack of horse so-long as I it-may-have neither
vous ne nus gentiex hom pour que ien aie & sache.
you nor any gentle man for that I-thereof may-have and may-know
lors deschent & li baille le cheual sor quoi il seoit.
then dismounts-he and to-him hands the horse upon which he sat
Et il monte sor chelui que il tenoit. & torse deriere lui
And he mounts upon that-one which he held and packs behind him
sa venoison. Et maine le braquet en vne lasse. & quant
his venison And leads the hound on a leash and when
il a vn poi alei si li couient descendre. Car li ronchins
he has a little gone so him behooves to-dismount For the packhorse
ne peut aler si a trop grant dolor. Et il deschent si le
not can go so has-he too great sorrow And he dismounts so it
cache deuant lui. Mais not gaires ale quant il encontra
drives before him But not-had-he much gone when he met
vn vauassour sour vn palefroi vne vergue en sa main. &
a vavasor upon a palfrey a rod in his hand and
ot auoeques li .ij. leuriers & vn braquet. Li vauassors fu
had with him two greyhounds and a hound The vavasor was
deage & li enfes si tost com il le voit si le salue. &
aged and the child so soon as he him sees so him greets and

chil respont que diex li doinst amendement. puis li
that-one answers that God to-him may-give amendment then him
demande dont il est. & il dist quil est de lautre pais.
asks whence he is and he says that-he is of the-other country
Chertes fait li vauassors qui que vous soies vous estes
Certainly says the vavasor whoever that you may-be you are
biax asses & bien ensegnies. Et dont venes issi mes enfes.
fair enough and well taught And whence come-you thus my child
sire fait il de chacier si com vous poes veoir. si ai
lord says he from hunting so as you can see so have-I
prins ceste venison. si en aures se vous en dengnies
taken this venison so thereof will-you-have if you thereof deign
a prendre que ie quit quele i seroit bien enploie. Grans
to take for I think that-it there would-be well employed Great
mercis fait li vauassours mes enfes chiers. ne ie ne le
thanks says the vavasor my child dear nor I not it
refuserai pas. Car vous le maues offert de douc cuer &
shall-refuse at-all For you it to-me-have offered from sweet heart and
deboinaire. & ie quit bien que vous soies autresi de gentil
kindly and I think well that you may-be likewise of gentle
lignage com vous estes de gentil cuer. Et ien auoie grant
lineage as you are of gentle heart And I-thereof had great
mestier de la venison. Car iai hui marie vne moie fille
need of the venison For I-have today married a my daughter
si estoie venus cachier pour prendre aucune chose dont chil
so was-I come to-hunt for to-take some thing whereof those
fusent lie qui sont as neuches. Mais ie auoie fali a toutes
might-be glad who are at-the wedding But I had failed at all
prises. li vauassours est descendus si prent le venison. Et
takings the vavasor is dismounted so takes the venison And
demanda a lenfant combien il voldra quil emport. sire fait
asked to the-child how-much he will-wish that-he may-carry-off lord says

li enfes estes vous cheualiers. & il dist oil. dont lenporterois
the child are you knight and he said yes then it-will-carry-off
vous tout. Car ie nel poroie mie miex emploier puis que
you all For I not-it could at-all better employ since that
as noeches de le fille dun cheualier sera mengies.
at-the wedding of the daughter of-a knight will-be eaten
Quant li vauassors lentent si en est moult lies. si prent
When the vavasor it-hears so thereof is-he very glad so takes
le cheruel si le trousse deriere li. Et moult semont lenfant
the young-stag so it packs behind him And much urges the-child
de herbergier & de douner de sa venison meisme & dautres
to lodge and to give of his venison same and of-other
choses. Mais li enfes dist quil ne herbergera pas encore.
things But the child says that-he not will-lodge at-all yet
Car ma compaignie fait il nest pas loins de chi. Dont
For my company says he not-is at-all far from here Then
vous commans a dieu fait li vauassors. Atant sen
you commend-I to God says the vavasor Thereupon himself-thence
part li vauassors & commenche a penser a lenfant qui il
parts the vavasor and begins to think of the-child who he
puet estre. Car il li est auis que il sorsamble & si
can be For it to-him is opinion that he resembles-someone and so
ne seit a qui. si i pense moult longement. Tant quil
not knows-he to whom so there thinks-he very long So-long that-it
li ramenbre quil resamble miex le roi de benoich que
to-him recalls that-he resembles better the king of benoic than
nul autre homme. Lors fiert le palefroi des esperons. &
any other man Then strikes-he the palfrey with-the spurs and
court ariere grant aleure apres lenfant. tant quil latent.
runs back great pace after the-child so-long that-he him-reaches
Car il aloit son pas & estoit lors primes montes el
For he went his pace and was then first mounted on-the

ronchin. Car il estoit alegies del cheruel qui de desus
packhorse For it was lightened of-the young-stag which from upon
lui estoit ostes. si li dist en souspirant biax dous enfes
it was removed so to-him said-he in sighing fair sweet child
porroit il estre que vous me deisies qui vous estes. Et il
could it be that you to-me might-tell who you are And he
respont que nenil ore. Mes quen aueis vous fait il a faire.
answers that no now But what-thereof have you says he to do
Chertes fait il que vous resambles miex a vn mien signor
Certainly says he that you resemble better to a my lord
qui moult fu preudons que a autre homme. Et se vous
who very was worthy-man than to other man And if you
auies de moi mestier ie me meteroie pour vous en auenture
had of me need I myself would-put for you in adventure
& cors & terre & ie & teil .lx. cheualiers ki sont a
both body and land both I and such sixty knights who are at
.iiij. lieues de chi. Qui fu fait li enfes li preudons qui ie
four leagues from here Who was says the child the worthy-man whom I
resamble. Et li vauassors respont en plorant. Chertes fait il
resemble And the vavasor answers in weeping Certainly says he
che fu li rois bans de benoyc. si fu tous chis pais siens.
this was the king Ban of benoic so was all this country his
Et il fu desiretes a grant tort. & vns siens enfes perdus
And he was disinherited with great wrong and a his child lost
qui estoit li plus biaus enfes del monde de son eage. Et qui
who was the most fair child of-the world of his age And who
le desireta fait li enfes. biaus amis vns riches rois poissans
him disinherited says the child fair friend a rich king powerful
qui a a non claudas de la terre deserte. qui marchisoit
who has for name Claudas of the land deserted which bordered
a chest roialme. Et se vous estes ses fiex pour dieu faites
on this kingdom And if you are his son for God make

le moi sauoir. Car moult en auroient grant ioie tout chil
it me know For much thereof would-have great joy all those
& toutes cheles de ceste terre. & ie vous garderoie comme
and all those of this land and I you would-guard as
mon cors & miex asses. Car ie liueroie le mien pour le
my body and better enough For I would-deliver the mine for the
vostre garder & sauuer. Chertes sire fait li enfes fiex de
yours to-guard and to-save Certainly lord says the child son of
roi ne sui ie mie al mien quidier. si ma len apelei fil de
king not am I at-all to-the my thinking so me-has one called son of
roi maintes fois. Et de tant com vous men dites vous
king many times And of so-much as you to-me-thereof say you
aim ie miex. Car vous en dites com loiax hom. Quant li
love I better For you thereof speak as loyal man When the
vauassors voit que plus nen traira. si ne len puet li
vavasor sees that more not-thereof he-will-draw so not him-thence can the
cuers issir de che quil ne penst a cheste chose. & quide
heart issue of this that-he not may-think on this thing and thinks
sauoir que li enfes soit fiex de son signour. Et il li dist
to-know that the child be son of his lord And he to-him said
biax dous sires qui que vous soies vous sambles bien estre
fair sweet lord whoever that you may-be you seem well to-be
de grant hauteche au cors & a le contenanche. Et veis
of great highness at-the body and at the countenance And see
chi .ij. des millors leuriers que ie onques tenisse. si vous pri
here two of-the best greyhounds that I ever held so you beg-I
que vous en pregnies lun. que diex vous doinst croisance
that you thereof may-take the-one that God you may-give growth
& amendement. Et nostre petit seignour nous gart sil est
and amendment And our little lord for-us may-keep if-he is
vis. & ait pitie de lame au preudomme qui lengendra.
alive and may-have pity of the-soul of-the worthy-man who him-engendered

Quant li enfes ot parler de la bonte as leuriers si
When the child hears speak of the goodness of-the greyhounds so
en a grant ioie. Et dit que le leurier ne refusera il
thereof has-he great joy And says that the greyhound not will-refuse he
pas. Car il le voldra moult bien gueredoner sil en puet a
at-all For he it will-wish very well to-reward if-he thereof can to
lui venir. Mais dounes moi fait il le millor. & chil li
him come But give me says he the best and that-one to-him
baille par le kaine delije & le tient a moult bien emploie.
hands by the chain fine and it holds-he for very well employed
Atant sentrecommandent a dieu. si sen vait li enfes
Thereupon each-other-commend-they to God so himself-thence goes the child
dune part & li vauassors dautre. qui toute uois ne fine de
on-one side and the vavasor on-other who all ways not ceases from
penser a lenfant. Et ne demoura gaires que li enfes encontra
thinking of the-child And not tarried-it much that the child met
son maistre. & des autres iusca .iij. si le queroient.
his master and of-the others up-to three so him sought-they
Et se meruelloient moult quant il le virent sour le
And themselves marveled-they much when they him saw upon the
megre ronchi. les .ij. chiens en sa main. son arc a son
lean packhorse the two dogs in his hand his bow at his
col. son tercas a sa chenture. Et auoit ia tant esperone
neck his quiver at his belt And had-he already so-much spurred
le ronchi. quil estoit ia iuscal gros de la iambe tous
the packhorse that-it was already until-to-the thick of the leg all
sanglens. Lors li demande ses maistres quil auoit fait de
bloody Then him asks his master what-he had done of
son ronchi. Et il li dist quil lauoit perdu. & chesti
his packhorse And he to-him said that-he it-had lost and this-one
fait il ou le presistes vous. il me fu fait il dounes. Mais
says he where it took you it to-me was says he given But

li maistres ne len croit mie ains le coniure par la foi
the master not him-thereof believes at-all rather him adjures by the faith
quil doit sa dame que il li die quil en a fait. Et
that-he owes his lady that he to-him may-tell what-he thereof has done And
li enfes qui nel pariurast pas legierement li connoist
the child who not-it would-perjure at-all lightly to-him acknowledges
& dit toute la verite. & du ronchi & del cheuruel
and tells all the truth both of-the packhorse and of-the young-stag
quil auoit doune au uauassor. Comment fait chil qui
which-he had given to-the vavasor How says that-one who
maistroier le voloit. si aues doune le ronchi qui vostre
to-master him wished so have-you given the packhorse which yours
estoit. quil na teil sous ciel a vostre oels & la venison
was that-it not-has such under heaven to your use and the venison
madame sans mon congie. lors se trait auant li maistres
(of-)my-lady without my leave then himself draws forward the master
& le manache moult. Et li enfes li dist. maistres
and him threatens much And the child to-him says master
ore ne vous courechies. que encore vaut chist leuriers que
now not yourself anger for yet is-worth this greyhound which
iai de gaing teus .ij. ronchis com il estoit. par sainte
I-have of gain such two packhorses as it was by holy
crois fait li maistres mar le pensastes. Iamais tel folie ne
cross says the master ill it thought-you Ever-more such folly not
ferois quant vous escaperois de ceste que il ne vous en
will-you-do when you will-escape from this that it not to-you thereof
souinge. lors hauche le paume si li doune tel plat
may-remember then raises-he the palm so to-him gives such slap
quil labat del ronchi a terre. Et chil ne pleure
that-he him-strikes-down from-the packhorse to ground And that-one not weeps
ne ne crie por colp quil li ait doune. Et toutes vois
nor not cries for blow that-he to-him may-have given And all ways

dist il que il aime miex le leurier. que il nauroit teus .ij.
says he that he loves better the greyhound than he would-have such two
ronchis. Quant ses maistres ot quil parole encore contre se
packhorses When his master hears that-he speaks yet against his
volente. si hauche vn baston quil tenoit & fiert le leurier
will so raises-he a stick which-he held and strikes the greyhound
parmi les flans. & li bastons fu menus & chinglans. &
through the flanks and the stick was slender and stinging and
li leuriers tendres si commencha a crijer moult durement.
the greyhound tender so began-it to cry very hard
Lors fu li enfes moult courecies si laisse les chiens ans
Then was the child very angered so lets-go the dogs both
.ij. & sache son arc ius son col si le prent a .ij.
two and draws his bow down-from his neck so it takes with two
mains. Et li maistres le voit venir si le quide embrachier
hands And the master him sees come so him thinks to-embrace
& tenir. Et chil fu vistes & legiers si sali dautre part
and to-hold And that-one was quick and nimble so leapt on-other side
& le feri del trenchant del arc parmi la teste. si que
and him struck with-the edge of-the bow through the head so that
les cauex li ront & le quir li trenche & le char
the hairs to-him breaks and the skin to-him cuts and the flesh
toute. si lestordi si durement quil labati a terre ius.
all so him-stunned so hard that-he him-struck-down to earth down
Et li ars est tous voles en pieches. & quant il voit son
And the bow is all flown in pieces and when he sees his
arc brisiet si est iries trop durement. & iure que mar
bow broken so is-he angered too hard and swears that ill
li a chil son arc brisie. si recueure & fiert de rechief
to-him has that-one his bow broken so recovers-he and strikes from anew
parmi la teste & parmi les bras & parmi le cors. tant
through the head and through the arms and through the body so-much

que de tout larc ni a tant remes dont il peust
that of all the-bow not-there has so-much remained whereof he could
vn caup douner. que tous ne soit voles en pieches. lors
a blow give that all not be flown in pieces then
le coururent prendre li autre troi. & quant il ne sait de
him ran to-take the other three and when he not knows with
coi desfendre si trait ses saietes de son tarcas & lor
what to-defend so draws-he his arrows from his quiver and at-them
lanche & les veut tous ochire. Et chil se metent a
hurls and them wishes all to-kill And those themselves put to
la voie & senfuient si com il peuent. Et chil se fiert
the way and themselves-flee so as they can And that-one himself strikes
tout a pie en la forest la ou il le vit plus espese. Et li
all on foot into the forest there where he it saw most thick And the
enfes prent le ronchin a lvn des .ij. valles dont il ot
child takes the packhorse from the-one of-the two youths whereof he had
son maistre abatu si monte sus & sen vient en teil
his master struck-down so mounts on and himself-thence comes in such
maniere. Si enporte ses leuriers lun deuant lui & lautre
manner So carries-off-he his greyhounds the-one before him and the-other
derier. Tant quil est venus en vn grant val. & lors choisi
behind So-far that-he is come into a great vale and then saw
vne grant herte de bisses qui pasturoient. Et il iete ses
a great herd of hinds which grazed And he throws his
mains si quide prendre son arc. quil quidoit que encore
hands so thinks to-take his bow which-he thought that yet
pendist a son col. Quant il li menbre quil lauoit brisie
hung at his neck When it to-him recalls that-he it-had broken
parmi le teste son maistre. lors est si iries que pour vn
through the head (of-)his master then is-he so angered that for a
poi quil nesrage. Et iure a soi misme que sil le puet
little that-he not-goes-mad And swears to himself self that if-he him can

trouer. il li vendera moult chier che que il a par li
find he to-him will-sell very dear this that he has by him
perdu vne des bisses. Car a vne che dist il ne pooit falir.
lost one of-the hinds For at one this says he not could fail
Car il a le millor leurier du monde & le mieudre braket.
For he has the best greyhound of-the world and the best hound
Ainsi sen vait tous courecies tant quil vient au
Thus himself-thence goes-he all angered so-far that-he comes to-the
lac. si entre dedens la court parmi la porte. lors deschent si
lake so enters into the court through the gate then dismounts-he so
maine a la dame veoir son leurier qui moult estoit biax. Et
leads to the lady to-see his greyhound which very was fair And
quant il vint deuant lui si troua son maistre tout sanglent
when he came before her so found-he his master all bloody
qui ia sen estoit plains. Il salue sa dame. &
who already himself-thereof was complained He greets his lady and
ele li rent son salu. com chele qui tant lamoit com
she to-him renders his greeting as that-one who so-much him-loved as
nus cuers puet amer enfant qui de sa char nestoit. Mais
any heart can love child who of her flesh not-was But
samblant fait destre courechie moult durement. si li
semblance makes-she of-being angered very hard so to-him
dist fiex de roi porcoi aues vous fait tel outrage. qui aues
said son of king wherefore have you done such outrage who have
batu & naure chelui qui ie vous auoie baillie a maistre
beaten and wounded that-one whom I to-you had handed as master
& pour enseignier. Chertes dame fait il mes maistres ne
and for teaching Certainly lady says he my master nor
mes enseignieres nestoit il pas. la ou il me batoit pour
my teacher not-was he at-all there where he me beat for
che que ie nauoie fait se bien non. ne de ma bateure ne
this that I not-had done except good not nor of my beating not

me caloit il. Mais il feri mon leurier moult durement qui
to-me mattered it But he struck my greyhound very hard which
est vn des millours del monde. que par vn poi quil ne
is one of-the best of-the world that for a little that-he —
le tua voiant mes iex. por che quil sauoit que ie lamoie.
it killed seeing my eyes for this that-he knew that I it-loved
Encore vous di ie que il ma fait autre anui. Car il
Yet to-you say I that he to-me-has done other trouble For he
ma tolu a ochire vne des plus beles bisses del monde.
from-me-has taken to kill one of-the most fair hinds of-the world
Lors li conte comment il auoit son ronchi doune &
Then to-her tells-he how he had his packhorse given and
son cheuvrel & comment il auoit les bisses trouees. &
his young-stag and how he had the hinds found and
al mains sil eust son arc eu en eust il vne prinse.
at-the least if-he had his bow had thereof would-have he one taken
Et sachies bien fait il a la dame que ie ne le trouerai
And know well says he to the lady that I not him shall-find
ia en lieu que il ni mure se chaiens non. Quant la
ever in place that he not-there may-die except in-here not When the
dame lot si fierement parler si en est moult lie. Car
lady him-heard so fiercely speak so thereof is-she very glad For
bien voit quil ne puet faillir a estre preudom. si en est
well sees-she that-he not can fail to be worthy-man so thereof is-she
moult lie. & a laide de dieu & de la soie que moult i
very glad and with the-aid of God and of the hers which much there
quide valoir. Et neporquant destre courechie fait grant
thinks-she to-avail And nevertheless of-being angered makes-she great
samblant. Et quant il voit che si sen part de deuant
semblance And when he sees this so himself-thence parts from before
li moult iries & manache moult chelui qui si la vers
her very angered and threatens much that-one who so her-has toward

lui courechie. Et ele le rapele si li dist. Comment fait
him angered And she him calls-back so to-him said How says
ele si estes tex que vous quidies isi douner vos ronchis
she so are-you such that you think thus to-give your packhorses
& la moie chose. & batre vostre maistre que iai mis
and the my thing and to-beat your master whom I-have put
deseur vous pour vous garder de folie & ensegnier les
over you for you to-guard from folly and to-teach the
boines oeures. Nule de ches .ij. choses ne voel ie que vous
good works Any of these two things not wish I that you
fachies. Dame fait il si men couendra garder tant com ie
may-do Lady says he so me-thereof will-behoove to-guard so-long as I
uaudrai estre en vostre baillie. & en la garde a .j. garchon.
shall-wish to-be in your keeping and in the keeping of a groom
Et quant ie ni vaudrai plus estre si men irai la
And when I not-there shall-wish more to-be so myself-thence shall-go there
ou ie vaudrai & porcacherai la ou mestiers me sera.
where I shall-wish and shall-seek there where need to-me will-be
Mais anchois que ie men aille voel ie bien que vous
But before that I myself-thence may-go wish I well that you
sachies que cuers domme ne puet a grant honour venir
may-know that heart of-man not can to great honor come
qui trop longement est sous maistre ne sous maistresse.
which too long is under master nor under mistress
Car il le couient souuent trambler. Ne endroit de moi nai
For it it behooves often to-tremble Nor as-for of me not-have
ie plus cure de maistre ne de signour ne de dame ne di
I more care of master nor of lord nor of lady not say
iou mie. Mais mal dehait ait fiex de roi sil nose
I at-all But ill curse may-have son of king if-he not-dares
la soie chose douner hardiement. Comment fait la dame
the his thing to-give boldly How says the lady

quidies vous estre fiex de roi por che que ie vous i apel.
think you to-be son of king for this that I you there call
Dame fait il fiex de roi sui apeles. & por fil de roi ai
Lady says he son of king am-I called and for son of king have-I
este tenus. Or sacies fait ele que maluaisement vous connut
been held Now know says she that badly you knew
chil qui pour fil de roi vous tint. Car vous ne lestes mie.
that-one who for son of king you held For you not it-are at-all
Dame fait il en sospirant che poise moi. Car mes cuers
Lady says he in sighing this grieves me For my heart
losast bien estre. & lors sen tourne tous iries
it-would-dare well to-be and then himself-thence turns all angered
quil ne puet vn seul mot de la bouche dire ne souner.
that-he not can a single word from the mouth say nor sound
Lors saut la dame sus si le prent par la main & lenmaine
Then leaps the lady up so him takes by the hand and him-leads
arriere. si li commenche a baisier les iex & la bouche
back so him begins to kiss the eyes and the mouth
moult doucement que nus nel veist. quil ne quidast quil
very sweetly that anyone not-it might-see that-he not would-think that-he
fust ses enfes. Et puis li dist biaus fiex or ne soies pas
were her child And then to-him said fair son now not be at-all
a malaise. Car si mait diex ie veul que vous dounes &
at unease For so me-may-help God I wish that you may-give both
ronchis & autres choses & vous aures asses coi. Et se vous
packhorses and other things and you will-have enough what And if you
fussies en leage de .xl. ans si feissies vous bien a loer del
were in the-age of forty years so would-do you well to praise of-the
ronchi & de la venison que vous dounastes. Et des ore mais
packhorse and of the venison that you gave And from now more
voel ie que vous soies de vous sires & maistres. puis que
wish I that you be of yourself lord and master since that

vous saueis bien par vous che qui apartient a boine enfance.
you know well by yourself this which belongs to good childhood
Et de qui que vous soies fiex. voirement naueis vous
And of whomever that you may-be son truly not-have you
failli a cuer de fil de roi. & si fustes vous fiex de teil qui
failed at heart of son of king and so were you son of such who
osast bien assaillir le plus haut roi qui fust el monde.
would-dare well assail the most high king who were in-the world
par proeche de cuer & de cors. Ensi comforte la dame du
by prowess of heart and of body Thus comforts the lady of-the
lac lancelot. Et asseure si com li contes trait auant ceste
lake Lancelot And reassures so as the tale draws forward this
auenture pour seulement la haute parole quil auoit dite.
adventure for only the high word which-be had said
Mais chi endroit ne parole plus li contes de li a cheste fie.
But here in-place not speaks more the tale of him at this time
anchois retourne a sa meire & a santain. la roine de gannes
rather returns to his mother and to his-aunt the queen of gannes
la ou eles sont en moustier roial dolantes & desconseillies.
there where they are in minster royal sorrowful and uncounseled

Queen Elaine and the Monk

XII

Over seven years the Royal Minster grows to thirty nuns, and Queen Elaine comes to head the abbey. Lamenting by the lake one Monday, she is approached by a monk who was once a valiant knight and now heads a hermitage. She tells him her losses, fearing for her husband's soul and grieving for the son lost before her eyes. He rebukes her public grief but assures her, on his habit, that Lancelot is alive and well kept, though he may not say where. At the minster, where nuns know him, he recalls that she once gave him a silk robe at King Ban's Epiphany court; the queen of Gannes swoons for her own lost sons, and he promises to carry their complaint to Arthur.

Ore dist li contes que la roine elaine de benoych & sa seur
Now says the tale that the queen Elaine of benoic and her sister
la roine de gannes sont ensamble en roial moustier. La roine
the queen of gannes are together in royal minster The queen
de benoyc menoit moult bele vie & moult sainte. Et ausi
of benoic led very fair life and very holy And also
faisoit la roine sa seur. & moult amenda li lieus & crut.
did the queen her sister and much bettered the place and grew
Tant que dedens les .vij. ans que la roine si fu rendue i
So-much that within the seven years that the queen so was professed there
ot bien .xxx. nounains. toutes ientiex femes del pais. Et
had well thirty nuns all gentle women of-the country And
puis fist ele tant que a chelui vint li chies de labeie la
then did she so-much that to that-one came the head of the-abbey the
roine de benoyc. Et auoit en coustume que tous les iours
queen of benoic And had-she in custom that all the days
apres la grant messe aloit sour le tertre ou ses sires auoit
after the great mass went-she upon the hill where her lord had
este mors. & sor le lac ou ele auoit perdu son fil. Et
been dead and upon the lake where she had lost her son And

disoit tant de bien com diex li auoit ensegnie. por lame
said-she so-much of good as God her had taught for the-soul
de son signor que diex en ait pitie. & pour son fil
of her lord that God thereof may-have pity and for her son
que ele quidoit que il fust mors. Chertainement a vn lundi
whom she thought that he were dead Certainly on a Monday
matin auint que ele ot fait canter messe moult hautement
morning befell that she had made sing mass very highly
en ramenbranche. premierement por larme son signor & de
in remembrance first for the-soul (of-)her lord and of
son fil. & puis fist chanter la grant messe. Car moult li
her son and then made sing the great mass For much to-her
tardoit que ele fust a son duel faire. Et si tost com ele vint
was-late that she were at her grief making And so soon as she came
amont el tertre. si plora & plaint moult longement. Apres
up on-the hill so wept-she and bewailed very long After
vint sour le lac ou ele auoit son fil perdu si ploroit moult
came-she upon the lake where she had her son lost so wept very
durement. Tant quele nentendoit a autre chose. La ou
hard So-much that-she not-attended to other thing There where
ele demenoit en si son duel & se plainte vint par ileuc vns
she made in so her grief and her plaint came by there a
hons de religion a cheual entre lui & son escuier. li hons
man of religion on horse between him and his squire the man
fu vestus de noirs dras vne cape close afublee toute noire.
was clothed in black clothes a cape closed donned all black
Et quant il vit la roine faire teil duel moult se meruella
And when he saw the queen make such grief much himself marveled
qui ele estoit. & porcoi ele menoit teil duel. Il cheuauche
who she was and wherefore she made such grief He rides
chele part Et la roine entent si a faire son duel que ele
that way And the queen attends so to making her grief that she

nel voit ne aperchoit. Tant quil est deuant li venus. &
not-him sees nor perceives So-long that-he is before her come and
il lesgarde si le voit moult bele. & bien samble haute feme.
he her-looks-at so her sees very fair and well seems-she high woman
Lors oste son caperon si le salue. Dame fait il diex
Then removes-he his hood so her greets Lady says he God
vous doinst ioie. Car il mest auis que vous nen aues
you may-give joy For it to-me-is opinion that you not-thereof have
pas tant com il vous seroit ore mestier. La roine regarde
at-all so-much as it to-you would-be now need The queen looks-at
le preudomme si li rent son salu. si li poise moult de
the worthy-man so to-him renders his greeting so her grieves much of
chou que ele ne laparchut auant que il leust si pres prinse.
this that she not him-perceived before that he her-had so near caught
Quant la roine voit le moine si se regarde. Et voit
When the queen sees the monk so herself looks And sees
quil est moult viex & moult samble preudom. Et si auoit
that-he is very old and much seems worthy-man And so had
il este sans faille des proeches del monde. Et or estoit
he been without fail of-the prowesses of-the world And now was
il moult preudons vers nostre signour. Car il auoit este
he very worthy-man toward our Lord For he had been
cheualiers moult preus. Mais la terriene cheualerie auoit
knight very valiant But the earthly chivalry had
il toute laisie grant pieche auoit. & si estoit rendus en
he all left great while had-it and so was-he professed in
vn ermitage ou il auoit tant fait que ia i auoit
a hermitage where he had so-much done that already there had-it
couent de rendus auoeques lui. qui tenoient le rieule &
convent of brothers with him who held the rule and
lestablisement de saint augustin. Il fu grans & corsus si
the-establishment of Saint Augustine He was great and bodied so

ot les cauex melles & cangies. & les iex vairs & gros
had-he the hairs mingled and changed and the eyes gray and big
en la teste. si ot le samblant fier & plain de plaies le
in the head so had-he the semblance fierce and full of wounds the
vis. & la teste & le cors en maint lieu qui ne paroit pas.
face and the head and the body in many place which not appeared at-all
Si ot les puins megres & gros & plain de vaines. &
So had-he the fists lean and big and full of veins and
lees les espaules. & il sist es estriers moult affichies. Et
broad the shoulders and he sat in-the stirrups very fixed And
dist a la roine. Dame por dieu qui estes vous. & pourcoi
said to the queen Lady for God who are you and wherefore
faites vous tel duel. Car puis que dame est atournee a seruir
make you such grief For since that lady is turned to serve
nostre signour ele ne se doit che mest auis doloser de
our Lord she not herself must this to-me-is opinion grieve of
nule riens fors que de ses pechies plorer. anchois doit
any thing except that of her sins to-weep rather must-she
toutes pertes terrienes arriere mettre. Quant la roine lot
all losses earthly behind put When the queen him-hears
ensi parler. si li est auis que moult est preudons &
thus speak so to-her is opinion that very is-he worthy-man and
de grant consel. Et ele dist chertes sire se ie fais duel ie
of great counsel And she said certainly lord if I make grief I
nen puis mais; Ne por perte de terre ne dauoir ne fais
not-thereof can more Nor for loss of land nor of-wealth not make
ie mie si grant duel. Mais ie sui vne lasse vne caitiue qui
I at-all so great grief But I am a weary-one a wretch who
iadis fui dame de la terre de benoych & de chest pais chi
once was lady of the land of benoic and of this country here
enuiron. si perdi mon signor le plus preudomme del monde
around so lost-I my lord the most worthy-man of-the world

en ceste terre chi aleuc & mon fil le plus bel enfant de
in this land here there and my son the most fair child of
tous les autres perdi ichi. que vne damoisele enporta en ses
all the others lost-I here whom a damsel carried-off in her
bras. & sali a tout lenfant dedens chel lac. si ne sai
arms and leapt with all the-child into that lake so not know-I
sele fu puchele ou damoisele. Mais de feme auoit ele cors
if-she was maiden or damsel But of woman had she body
& fachon. pour che que mes sires morut de duel ai ie
and fashion for this that my lord died of grief have I
grant paour de same Car ien doi estre en autresi grant
great fear of his-soul For I-thereof must be in likewise great
cure com de la moie. Car puis que nous fumes entre moi
care as of the mine For since that we were between me
& li par loial mariage ensamble ioint. Nous fumes vne
and him by loyal marriage together joined We were a
seule chars. si com sainte eglize le tesmoigne & ie le croi.
single flesh so as holy church it witnesses and I it believe
Ensi por lame mon signour me plaing & plour. sauoir
Thus for the-soul (of-)my lord myself bewail-I and weep to-know
se ia en prendroit pitie a dame dieu por les larmes a vne
if ever thereof would-take pity to Lord God for the tears of a
teile pecheresse com ie sui. Et de mon fil me reprent au
such sinner as I am And of my son me takes-again at-the
cuer moult grant pitie que ie perdi en teil maniere. Car sil
heart very great pity whom I lost in such manner For if-he
fust mors voiant mes iex. plus tost leusse oublie que ie
were dead seeing my eyes more soon him-would-I-have forgotten than I
ne ferai. Car ie sai bien que tous nous couenra mourir. Mais
— shall-do For I know well that all us will-behoove to-die But
quant il me menbre que mes fiex est noies qui estoit nes de
when it me recalls that my son is drowned who was born of

loial mariage & estrait de haut lignage qui diex eslut a veoir
loyal marriage and descended of high lineage which God chose to see
ses grans meruelles. & honorer les estraignes terres de sa
his great marvels and to-honor the foreign lands with his
venue. & honerer son haut non. & essauchier sa creance. si
coming and to-honor his high name and to-exalt his belief so
mest auis que diex ma tolu & le peire & le fil pour
to-me-is opinion that God from-me-has taken both the father and the son for
aucune haine que il a vers moi. Ne iusques la ne li
some hatred that he has toward me Nor until there not to-him
quidoie ie mie auoir mesfait. Et si plour por la paor de nostre
thought I at-all to-have misdone And so weep-I for the fear of our
signor & por la paour de lame mon signor. que ele ne soit
Lord and for the fear of the-soul (of-)my lord that it — be
en pardurable mort. Et por langoisse de la laide mort mon fil.
in everlasting death And for the-anguish of the ugly death (of-)my son
Dame dame fait li preudons. chertes il a asses raison
Lady lady says the worthy-man certainly it has enough reason
en vostre duel. Car asses & trop aues perdu. Et ne
in your grief For enough and too-much have-you lost And not
mie vous seulement. Mais asseis dautre gent qui i ont
at-all you only But enough of-other people who there have
grant dommage. & neporquant trop en pories vous bien
great damage and nevertheless too-much thereof could you well
faire. Car len doit en toutes coses garder raison & mesure.
do For one must in all things keep reason and measure
Et puis que vous estes partie del siecle & aues pris
And since that you are parted from-the world and have taken
abit de religion por amor de dieu. il nest pas houneste
habit of religion for love of God it not-is at-all honest
chose de faire duel en chascun lieu. Car vous deues plorer
thing to make grief in each place For you must weep

vos pechies & les autrui ne mie voiant le pueple. mais
your sins and the another's not at-all seeing the people but
en vostre enclostre. & en plus repost que vous porois.
in your cloister and in more hidden than you will-be-able
Et neporquant ie croi bien que vous ne voles pas faire en
And nevertheless I believe well that you not wish at-all to-do in
repost ne que vous nel faites por nule vaine gloire. Mais
hidden nor that you not-it do for any vain glory But
por vostre cuer soeler. qui est angoiseus & a malaise de
for your heart to-sate which is anguished and at unease of
son anui. Et diex ait pitie de lame del preudomme qui
its trouble And God may-have pity of the-soul of-the worthy-man whose
feme vous fustes. Car de lui est grans li damages. Ne vous
wife you were For of him is great the loss Nor you
ni poes rien recourer et chest grans dolors. Mais del
not-there can anything recover and this-is great sorrow But of-the
fil soies toute seure. Car ie vous di en verite quil est sains
son be all sure For I to-you say in truth that-he is sound
& haities & tout a aise. Quant la roine lot si est tant
and hale and all at ease When the queen it-hears so is-she so-much
esbahie que ele ne dist mot dedens grant pieche. Et quant
amazed that she not said word within great while And when
ele pot parler si li chiet as pies. & li dist tout en
she could speak so to-him falls-she at-the feet and to-him said all in
plorant. hai biax sire por dieu dites vous voir que mes fiex
weeping ah fair lord for God say you true that my son
lancelos soit sains & sauf. Iel vous dit fait il sor mon abit.
Lancelot be sound and safe I-it to-you say says he upon my habit
que il est tous sains & tous haities. Et ele en a si tres
that he is all sound and all hale And she thereof has so very
grant ioie quele sest pasmee maintenant. Et lors le court
great joy that-she herself-has swooned at-once And then her runs

soustenir vne noune qui la estoit & li preudons autresi
to-hold a nun who there was and the worthy-man likewise
qui grant pitie en a. Et quant ele reuint de paumison
who great pity thereof has And when she came-back from swoon
si la comforte. & dist que toute soit seure que il li
so her-has comforted and says that all she-be sure that he to-her
a verite dite. biaus sire fait ele por dieu comment le saues
has truth said fair lord says she for God how it know
vous. Car vous maueis mis en mon cuer la grignor ioie qui
you For you me-have put in my heart the greatest joy which
onques mais i entrast. Et se che nestoit voirs si seroie
ever more there entered And if this not-were true so would-I-be
asses plus dolante que deuant. Iel sai fait il par chelui qui
enough more sorrowful than before I-it know says he by that-one who
le voit & main & soir. Et sachies que sil fust auoeques
him sees both morning and evening And know that if-he were with
vous. que vous fusies encore dame de la terre de benoych. il
you that you were yet lady of the land of benoic he
ne fust pas plus aise com il est. la ou on le nourist.
not would-be at-all more at-ease as he is there where one him nurtures
Ha sire fait ele pour dieu dites moi ou chou est. Et se
Ah lord says she for God tell me where this is And if
chou est liex ou ie le puisse veoir. si esgarderai viax chele
this is place where I him may see so shall-I-look at-least that
part souent. & atant me refroidera. se ie nel puis veoir.
way often and therewith me will-cool if I not-him can see
Dame fait il che ne vous puis ie mie dire. fors tant quil
Lady says he this not to-you can I at-all say except so-much that-he
est tous haities & sains. Et tant nen seusies vous de
is all hale and sound And so-much not-thereof would-know you of
cest an ne ie meismes. se ne fust por che que chil qui le
this year nor I myself if not were for this that those who him

gardent veulent que vostre cuers en soit aaise. ha sire fait
guard wish that your heart thereof be at-ease ah lord says
ele por dieu itant me dites se vous poes sil est es mains a
she for God so-much me tell if you can if-he is in-the hands of
ses anemis. ou a teus gens qui ne li veulent se bien non.
his enemies or of such people who not to-him wish except good not
Dame fait il de ce soies toute seure. quil est es mains a tex
Lady says he of this be all sure that-he is in-the hands of such
gens. qui le garderoient de tous maus a leur pooir. Ne ia
people who him would-guard from all evils to their power Nor ever
si anemi de son cors ni auront saisine. Lors a la roine
his enemies of his body not-there will-have seisin Then has the queen
moult grant ioie. si grant quele ne puet croire le preudomme
very great joy so great that-she not can believe the worthy-man
quil die voir. Lors li demande sire. connoissies vous nule
that-he may-say true Then him asks-she lord know you any
de nos serors qui laiens sont. Et il dist que il quide bien
of our sisters who in-there are And he said that he thinks well
connoistre de teiles i a. Et il esgarde si connoist chele
to-know of such there has-it And he looks so knows that-one
qui estoit ileuques auoec la roine. Et ele reconnoist li moult
who was there with the queen And she recognizes him very
bien. Et lors est la roine moult a aise si li dist. Sire pour
well And then is the queen very at ease so to-him said Lord for
dieu vous vendres o nous iusques laiens & verrois de nos
God you will-come with us until in-there and will-see of our
dames que vous connoissies qui moult vous uerront volentiers.
ladies whom you know who very you will-see willingly

Ensi lenmaine la roine dusques a lor porprise. si entrent
Thus him-leads the queen until to their enclosure so enter-they
ens. Et quant les dames oent dire. quensi les vient vns
in And when the ladies hear say that-thus them comes a

preudons veoir. si vienent toutes encontre lui & moult en
worthy-man to-see so come-they all toward him and many thereof
i a qui le connoissent si li font moult grant ioie.
there has who him know so to-him make-they very great joy
Et la roine lor demande a consel se ele puet croire che
And the queen them asks in counsel if she can believe this
que il li fera entendant. Oil dame font eles. Car il ne
that he to-her will-make understanding Yes lady say they For he not
mentiroit mie. car il a moult este preudom au siecle. &
would-lie at-all for he has very been worthy-man in-the world and
or est preudom a dame dieu. Lors li prient moult toutes
now is worthy-man to Lord God Then him beg much all
les dames de mengier. Et il dist que diex le seit. que il ne
the ladies to eat And he said that God it knows that he not
menieroit mie plus dune fois le ior. Car no ordre le nous
would-eat at-all more than-one time the day For our order it to-us
desfent Mais ceste dame fait il ma hui fait trop grant
forbids But this lady says he me-has today made too great
pitie auoir. & si me fist ia vn moult grant seruice que ie
pity have and so to-me did once a very great service which I
li voldrai moult bien gueredoner. Et si vous dirai quels
to-her shall-wish very well to-reward And so to-you shall-I-tell what
li seruiches fu. & ie quit quil len menbera moult bien.
the service was and I think that-it her-thereof will-recall very well
Il fu voirs que ses sires li rois dont diex ait lame.
It was true that her lord the king of-whom God may-have the-soul
tenoit vne moult esforchie cort. au Iour dune tiephane. si
held a very mighty court at-the Day of-an Epiphany so
i dona moult roebes a cheualiers & autres dons riches &
there gave-he many robes to knights and other gifts rich and
biax. Et ie ving la veille de la feste si tart que pres estoit
fair And I came the eve of the feast so late that near was

ia de vespres. Si i auoit li rois tant cheualiers a sa
already of vespers So there had the king so-many knights at his
feste que toutes auoit ses robes donees. Et quant madame qui
feast that all had-he his robes given And when my-lady who
chi est vit que ie nauoie point de robe. si dist que moult
here is saw that I not-had at-all of robe so said-she that much
sambloie estre preudom. & que ie ne deuoie pas remenoir
seemed-I to-be worthy-man and that I not ought at-all to-remain
sans robe a ceste feste. si me fist faire a ma mesure
without robe at this feast so for-me made-she make to my measure
vne robe dun moult riche drap de soie quele auoit a son
a robe of-a very rich cloth of silk which-she had to her
oes. & le me fist vestir. si fui plus richement vestus que
use and it me made don so was-I more richly clothed than
nus cheualiers de la feste. Che fu li seruices que ma dame
any knight of the feast This was the service that my lady
me fist. ne iel ne tieng pas a petit & si ai droit. Et
to-me did nor I-it not hold at-all for little and so have-I right And
pour che li gueredonrai ie a mon pooir. Et mes pooirs si
for this to-her shall-reward I to my power And my power so
est de li aidier del trauail de mon cors & de ma langue.
is to her aid with-the toil of my body and of my tongue
que deuant maint riche homme a este escoute & oie.
which before many rich man has been listened-to and heard

Lors dist li moines dame dame il est moult grant ioie
Then said the monk lady lady it is very great joy
au siecle. & moult grans honors a dieu de ce que si haute
to-the world and very great honor to God of this that so high
dame & si gentiex feme com vous estes. & de si haut
lady and so gentle woman as you are and of so high
lignage descendue. est del tout atornee au seruice dame
lineage descended is of-the all turned to-the service (of-)Lord

dieu. & li preus en iert a vostre ame se dieu plest. Mais
God and the profit thereof will-be to your soul if God pleases But
ie pleng moult la terre de benoyc. & cele de gannes qui
I lament much the land of benoic and that-one of gannes which
est queue en la main claudas le desloial. si en est li
is fallen into the hand (of-)Claudas the disloyal so thereof is the
damages a nous & a nos amis. & la honte en est le
harm to us and to our friends and the shame thereof is (of-)the
roi artu. Car il deust piecha cheste honte auoir vengie. &
king Arthur For he ought long-ago this shame to-have avenged and
bien sachies que ie men vois par vne nostre obedience.
well know that I myself-thence go by a our obedience
que nous auons pres de chi. Et si tost com ie i aurai
that we have near from here And so soon as I there shall-have
este. Ie men irai diluec en la maison le roi artu.
been I myself-thence shall-go from-there into the house (of-)the king Arthur
& li ferai ceste clamour. pour vous & por vostre
and to-him shall-make this complaint for you and for your
fil. qui encore sera sires de la terre se dieu plest. Et len
son who yet will-be lord of the land if God pleases And one
quide que il soit moult preudom se dame diex li doune
thinks that he be very worthy-man if Lord God to-him gives
vie. A ches paroles vint hors dune chambre la roine de
life At these words came out of-a chamber the queen of
gannes. ou ele auoit dormi vn poi. Car il nestoit nule nuis
gannes where she had slept a little For it not-was any night
que entre lui & sa seur ne releuassent .iij. fois al mains
that between her and her sister not might-rise three times at-the least
por faire lor orisons & lor proieres. Et quant ele oi
for to-make their orisons and their prayers And when she heard

parler de lancelot son neueu quil estoit vis. si fu si lie
speak of Lancelot her nephew that-he was alive so was-she so glad
que ele ne se pot sor pies soustenir ains sest pasmee.
that she not herself could upon feet sustain rather herself-has swooned
Lors le prent la roine & les autres dames si le relieuent.
Then her takes the queen and the other ladies so her raise
Et li boins hons demande qui ele est & que ele a eu.
And the good man asks who she is and what she has had
Coi sire fait la roine de benoyc. chest ma suer la roine de
What lord says the queen of benoic this-is my sister the queen of
gannes. si sai bien que ele a teil ioie de son neueu que
gannes so know-I well that she has such joy of her nephew that
ele sen est pasmee. En non dieu fet chele qui de
she herself-thereof is swooned In name (of-)God says that-one who from
pamison fu reuenue non fais. Ie ne plour mie. ne ne pasme
swoon was come-back not do-I I not weep at-all nor not swoon
de la ioie de mon neueu. Ie nen ferai ia se rire
from the joy of my nephew I not-thereof shall-do ever except laugh
non. Ains me pasmai del grant duel de mes enfans que
not Rather myself swooned-I from-the great grief of my children whom
iai perdus. si men est au cuer venue vne tendrors
I-have lost so to-me-thereof is at-the heart come a tenderness
si grans. que par vn poi quil ne mest partis. Dame fait
so great that for a little that-it — to-me-is burst Lady says
li preudom ore ne vous esmaies pas de vos enfans. Car
the worthy-man now not yourself dismay at-all of your children For
nostre sires est tous poisans daus garantir autresi com il
our Lord is all powerful of-them to-protect likewise as he
a garandi vostre neueu. que vous quidies & tout si ami
has protected your nephew whom you thought and all his friends
quil fust mors. & len seit bien encore que li vostre sont
that-he were dead and one knows well yet that the yours are

sain & haitie. & parmi tous vos anuis vous deues moult
sound and hale and amid all your troubles you must much
conforter. de che que vous estes ensamble en la garde
comfort of this that you are together in the keeping
nostre signor. qui en si maluaises auentures & si felounesses
(of-)our Lord who in so bad adventures and so felonious
aueis este. Ore vous confortes des ore mais lune a lautre
have been Now yourselves comfort from now more the-one to the-other
de vos maus. & faites ensamble ioie de vos biens. Et
of your evils and make together joy of your goods And
penses a la grant riquece qui ia ne prendra fin. Car de
think of the great richness which ever not will-take end For of
la riqueche du siecle aueis vous asses eu. Et bien poes
the richness of-the world have you enough had And well can-you
bien veoir a com petit de chose il conuient toute hauteche
well see to how little of thing it behooves all highness
terriene retorner. Ne nostre sires ne vous oubliera pas. Car
earthly to-return Nor our Lord not you will-forget at-all For
il est piteus & deboinaires plus que langue ne puet conter.
he is piteous and kindly more than tongue — can tell
Si li prendra pities de vous. Et vous traira de ceste
So him will-take pity of you And you he-will-draw from this
dolor ou vous estes. en sa grant ioie pardurable. Car moi
sorrow where you are into his great joy everlasting For me
qui sui hom mortex & pechieres en est si grans pities
who am man mortal and sinner thereof is so great pity
prise que ie ne serai iamais aise diex le seit. se nest del
taken that I not shall-be ever-more at-ease God it knows if not-is of-the
seruiche diex oir. tant que iaie este en la maison le
service (of-)God hearing so-long that I-have been in the house (of-)the
roi artu. & que ie li aie faite la clamor de vo
king Arthur and that I to-him may-have made the complaint of your

desiritement. Et monstre le grant honte quil i a. Car il
disinheritance And shown the great shame that-it there has For it
na court en tout le monde ou ie nosasse bien parler.
not-has court in all the world where I not-would-dare well speak
quant plus i aroit riches barons & sages hommes. Et
when most there would-have rich barons and wise men And
neporquant ie sai bien que tant a eu a faire cha en
nevertheless I know well that so-much has had to do here in
ariere li rois artus. quil nest mie de meruelle sil a ceste
back the king Arthur that-it not-is at-all of marvel if-he has this
chose mise en delai. Car il na gaires barons que ne li
thing put in delay For he not-has much barons that not to-him
ont mene guere. tant que maint ont quidie quil remansist
have led war so-much that many have thought that-he would-remain
essillie a la parclose. Et par auenture de ceste chose noi
exiled at the end And by adventure of this thing not-heard
il onques clamor. si nen fait pas tant a blasmer.
he ever complaint so not-thereof makes-he at-all so-much to blame

The Monk Before Arthur

XIII

The monk, Adragain the Brown, brother of Mador the Black, finds Arthur at London in September, back from a war with King Aguisant. Before the court he hails him as the best of kings but for one thing, and when Bedivere would make him wait he refuses. Hervi of Rivel knows him and vouches for him. He reproaches Arthur that Ban died coming to his court, his widow is veiled and his son lost, and no one has avenged it. Arthur grants the fault: he heard no complaint and lacked the power, but will amend it as Ban's liege lord when God gives the means. The monk carries the news back to the queen.

Atant sen part li preudom. si commande a dieu
Thereupon himself-thence parts the worthy-man so commends to God
premierement les .ij. roines. & puis les autres dames toutes.
first the two queens and then the other ladies all
Et cheuauche droit a grans iornees tant quil vint en
And rides straight at great journeys so-far that-he came into
la grant bertaigne. Et trueue le roi artu a londres a
the great britain And finds the king Arthur at london with
moult grant plente de gent. Che fu la premiere semaine
very great plenty of people This was the first week
de septembre che dist li contes. que li rois artus fu venus
of September this says the tale that the king Arthur was come
descoche. de sor le roi aguisant son cousin meisme. qui par
from-scotland from upon the king Aguisant his cousin same who by
.iij. fies lot guerroie. si orent fait boine pais & seure
three times him-had warred so had-they made good peace and sure
dambes deus pars. Et ot li rois artus trieues prises deuers
of-both two sides And had the king Arthur truce taken toward
le roi doutre les marches iusqua le paske. Si en fu
the king of-beyond the marches until-to the Easter So thence was-he

venus por souiorner en son plus aise pais. & chil de son
come for to-sojourn in his most easeful country and those of his
ostel auoeques lui. & dautres cheualiers a grant plente.
household with him and of-other knights in great plenty
Chel iour che dist li contes estoit diemenches. si fu assis
That day this says the tale was Sunday so was seated
al mangier li rois artus. & ot entor lui gent de maintes
at-the eating the king Arthur and had around him people of many
manieres & de maint estraigne pais. Et li rendus qui
manners and of many foreign country And the lay-brother who
venoit de la terre de benoyc entre laiens. & vint a grans
came from the land of benoic enters in-there and came at great
pas parmi la sale contreval iusques deuant le haut dois
paces through the hall down until before the high dais
ou estoit li rois artus & maint haut baron i seoient.
where was the king Arthur and many high baron there sat
Il ot abatu son chaperon & sambloit moult bien preudom.
He had lowered his hood and seemed very well worthy-man
& il auoit le langue deliure & bien parlant & le chiere
and he had the tongue free and well speaking and the face
seure. si commenche sa raison si haut que bien fu ois.
sure so begins-he his speech so high that well was-he heard
Rois artus fait il diex te saut. com le plus preudom &
King Arthur says he God thee may-save as the most worthy-man and
le millor qui onques fust. se ne fust vne seule chose. Li
the best who ever were if not were a single thing The
rois artus regarde le preudomme a grant meruelle. qui si le
king Arthur looks-at the worthy-man at great marvel who so him
blasme de maluaistie. & loe de grant valor devant ses gens
blames of wickedness and praises of great worth before his people
si en a honte trop grant. Et tout chil qui laiens sont
so thereof has-he shame too great And all those who in-there are

sen meruellent moult durement. Li rois fu moult
themselves-thereat marvel very hard The king was very
sages & moult courtois si li rendi son salu. Diex vous
wise and very courteous so to-him rendered his greeting God you
benoie fait il biax sire. quar que ie soie ou boins ou
may-bless says he fair lord whatever that I may-be or good or
maluais. Et puis que tant men aueis dit. descoures
bad And since that so-much to-me-thereof have-you said uncover
moi porcoi ie perde estre le millor rois & le plus preudom
to-me wherefore I lose to-be the best king and the most worthy-man
del monde. Car moult le sauroie volentiers. & iel vous
of-the world For much it would-I-know willingly and I-it to-you
dirai fait li preudons. Il est voirs que vous estes li rois qui
shall-tell says the worthy-man It is true that you are the king who
ore soit ne dont len ait oi parler qui plus maintient
now may-be nor of-whom one may-have heard speak who most maintains
cheualerie en grant honor. Et plus aues fait grans biens que
chivalry in great honor And more have-you done great goods than
nus rois dont len ait oi parler dusques chi. & selonc
any king of-whom one may-have heard speak until here and according-to
le monde. Mais trop estes pechereus de vengier les grans
the world But too are-you slothful of avenging the great
hontes & les damages que len vous fait. Car qui fait a vostre
shames and the harms that one to-you does For who does to your
homme damage il le vous fait. Car quex damages que vos
man harm he it to-you does For whatever harms that your
hons ait. toutes fois en est la honte vostre. vous honeres
man may-have all times thereof is the shame yours you honor
& doutes & serues chex qui desloiaument vous guerroient &
and fear and serve those who disloyally you war and
courent sus. Et cheus oublies qui vous ont loiaument serui.
run upon And those forget who you have loyally served

& sans fauser & les meteis arriere. Si ont perdu terres
and without falsifying and them put behind So have-they lost lands
& hounors & lor vies. & sont en auenture de lor ames
and honors and their lives and are in adventure of their souls
perdre pour vostre seruice. Or vous ai deuisee la chose
to-lose for your service Now to-you have-I devised the thing
porcoi vous perdes a estre li plus preudons qui onques fust.
wherefore you lose to be the most worthy-man who ever were
Quant li rois lentent si en est moult hontex. Et par
When the king it-hears so thereof is-he very ashamed And through
la sale en sont tout esbahi & vn & autre. Et dient
the hall thereof are all amazed both one and other And say
que onques mais nauoient oi rendu si bien parler. ne
that ever more not-had-they heard lay-brother so well speak nor
si hardiement deuant si haut homme. Et li plusor en
so boldly before so high man And the most thereby
ont le mangier laisie & a meruelles lesgardent. Lors vint
have the eating left and at marvels him-look-at Then came
auant beduiers li conestables. & vit que pour la parole
forward Bedivere the constable and saw that for the word
a chel rendu auoient plus de la moitie des cheualiers
of that lay-brother had more than the half of-the knights
si le mangier guerpi. quil nentendoient a nule rien fors
so the eating forsaken that-they not-attended to any thing except
a che que li rendus a dit. Et beduiers li dist. sire
to this that the lay-brother has said And Bedivere to-him said lord
rendus laisies vostre parole atant ester tant que messires
lay-brother let your word thereupon be so-long that my-lord
li rois ait mangie. & lors si parlerois a lui tout par
the king may-have eaten and then so will-you-speak to him all by
loisir. Car de tant com vous aues dit. aues vous ia
leisure For of so-much as you have said have you already

la court troublee. Car tout en laisent le mangier &
the court troubled For all thereby leave the eating both
riche & poure. Comment fait li preudom sire cheualiers si
rich and poor How says the worthy-man lord knight so
couient que ie me taise de dire la parole dont tous
behooves that I myself may-silence from saying the word whereby all
li mondes puet amender. por laissier saouler si mauuais
the world can amend for to-let sate so bad
vaisel & si enuieus com est li ventres. ou ia si riche
vessel and so envious as is the belly where ever so rich
viande ne si bele ne sera mise. quele ne deuigne orde
food nor so fair not will-be put that-it not may-become foul
& vilaine. Chertes ie ne me tairai ia que ie ne die
and base Certainly I not myself shall-silence ever that I not may-say
che que sour le cuer men gist. Et quant ie aurai
this that upon the heart to-me-thereof lies And when I shall-have
dite ma parole. Ia chaiens naura cheualier nul si hardi.
said my word Ever in-here not-will-have knight any so bold
se il veut dire que che verites ne soit que bien ne soit
if he wishes to-say that this truth not be that well not it-be
desraisnie deuant tout le barnage de chaiens. anchois que
proved before all the baronage of in-here before that
la nuis qui vient se soit a chestui iour mellee. Et bien
the night which comes itself be with this day mingled And well
aues fait samblant & contenance denfant. qui deuant tous
have-you made semblance and countenance of-child who before all
les esproues preudommes de chaiens estes venus contredire
the proven worthy-men of in-here are come to-gainsay
que ie ne paroleche. Et si ne saues le grant besoig que
that I — might-speak And so not know-you the great need that
ie en ai. ne le grant preu qui puet venir de ma parole.
I thereof have nor the great profit which can come from my word

Et si ne croi ie mie que vous soies miex vaillans ne plus
And so not believe I at-all that you be better worthy nor more
proisies de preudommes de tel vi ie ia en la maison le
prized than worthy-men of such saw I once in the house (of-)the
roi vterpandragon de bertaigne. che fu heruis de riuel. &
king Uther-Pendragon of britain this was Hervi of rivel and
renaus de karehet. chels vi ie si preus darmes. quil ne les
Renaut of karehet those saw I so valiant of-arms that-it not them
couenist a cangier por nul cors de .ij. cheualiers. ne onques
behooved to change for any body of two knights nor ever
par eus ne fu poures hons besoigneus boutes hors de court.
by them not was poor man needy thrust out of court
Mais auanchies a leur pooir. Et si nestoient pas mains
But advanced to their power And so not-were-they at-all less
signor de la maison le roi vter dont diex ait lame.
lords of the house (of-)the king Uther of-whom God may-have the-soul
Com vous estes de la maison le roi artu. qui ses fiex fu.
As you are of the house (of-)the king Arthur who his son was
Lors vint auant heruis de riuel. qui estoit au chief
Then came forward Hervi of rivel who was at-the head
del dois ou il seruoit. Car li rois artus ne fust ia si
of-the dais where he served For the king Arthur not were ever so
priueement. que ne seruissent en la maison de tous eages.
privately that not might-serve in the house of all ages
cheualiers viex & ione bacheler. Quant heruis connut le
knights old and young bachelors When Hervi knew the
preudomme. il ne fait pas a demander sil li fist ioie
worthy-man it not makes at-all to ask if-he to-him made joy
& honera. Car moult doucement lacola & baisa en la
and honored For very sweetly him-embraced-he and kissed on the
bouche maintes fois. puis le prist par la main senestre si
mouth many times then him took by the hand left so

lenmena deuant le roi. Et dist sire crees chestui de che quil
him-led before the king And said lord believe this-one of this that-he
vous dira. car ses paroles doiuent retenir & li roi & li
to-you will-tell for his words must retain both the kings and the
prinche. Et bien sachies que ses cuers a este de si haute
princes And well know that his heart has been with so high
proeche enlumines. que onques diex ne fist cors dun cheualier
prowess illumined that ever God not made body of-a knight
vers qui ie nel meisse a .j. grant besoig seurement. pour
toward whom I not-him would-put at a great need surely for
maintenir mounor. & por ma teste garandir. Comment fait
to-maintain my-honor and for my head to-protect How says
li rois qui est il dont. sire fait heruis chest adragains li
the king who is he then lord says Hervi this-is Adragain the
bruns. li freires mador le noir. le boin cheualier de lisle
brown the brother (of-)Mador the black the good knight of the-isle
noire. a chel tans viuoit li rois vriens si honera moult le
black at that time lived the king Urien so honored much the
preudomme por amour de mador son frere. Car il auoient
worthy-man for love of Mador his brother For they had
entreus .ij. este compaignon darmes moult longement.
between-them two been companions of-arms very long

Quant il fu laiens conneus. si ne vous porroit nus dire
When he was in-there known so not to-you could anyone tell
de bouche la ioie ne lonour que li fu faite. Et li rois
by mouth the joy nor the-honor that to-him was done And the king
artus meismes lauoit veu maintes fois grant tans auoit. si
Arthur himself him-had seen many times great time had-it so
lonera moult car moult bien le sauoit faire. Et adont fu
him-honored much for very well it knew-he to-do And then was
beduiers moult desconfis de che quil lauoit dit. Et li rois
Bedivere very discomfited of this that-he it-had said And the king

dist au preudomme. biax sire or poes dire che quil vous
said to-the worthy-man fair lord now can-you say this that-it you
plaira hui mais. ou soit mounours ou soit ma honte. Car
will-please today more or be-it my-honor or be-it my shame For
vous estes tex ie le sai bien quil na si haut homme
you are such I it know well that-it not-has so high man
el monde. deuant qui vous ne deusies bien estre escoutes.
in-the world before whom you not ought well to-be listened-to
Sire fait chil & ie vous di que se ne fust vne cose. ie ne
Lord says that-one and I to-you say that if not were a thing I not
seusse en vous rien que reprendre. Chest la mort au roi
would-know in you anything to reprove This-is the death of-the king
ban de benoyc que vous ne veniastes onques. qui fu mors
Ban of benoic which you not avenged ever who was dead
en la venue de vostre court. Et si est sa feme remese veue
in the coming of your court And so is his wife remained widow
desiretee. Et sest reubee dun des plus biax enfans qui
disinherited And herself-is robbed of-one of-the most fair children who
onques fust. cest si laide chose & si vilaine a vostre oels.
ever were this-is so ugly thing and so base to your use
quil est meruelle comment vous poes ne oses nul preudomme
that-it is marvel how you can nor dare any worthy-man
veoir en mi le vis. Et sachies que nus pechies ne vous
see in midst the face And know that any sin not you
destourbera tant a venir au desus de tout le monde
will-hinder so-much to come to-the above of all the world
comme chist. Et si vous di chertainement que ie ne sui
as this-one And so to-you say-I certainly that I not am
chi venus fors por pitie seulement. que iai eu de sa feme
here come except for pity only that I-have had of his wife
Qui par paour destre honnie & par angoisse sest rendue
Who for fear of-being shamed and for anguish herself-is professed

none velee en vn moustier. Et tant est claudas en la terre
nun veiled in a minster And so-much is Claudas in the land
doutes & cremus. que nus na este tant hardis qui por
feared and dreaded that anyone not-has been so bold who for
dieu ne por aumousne & por droiture en osast venir
God nor for alms and for right thereof might-dare come
deuant vous pour faire la complainte. Sire preudom fait li
before you for to-make the complaint Lord worthy-man says the
rois chertes ie macort bien a vous que vous dites raison
king certainly I myself-agree well with you that you say reason
& droit. Mais chertes ie nen oi onques complainte. Il
and right But certainly I not-thereof heard ever complaint It
est voirs que ie lai piecha seu. Et nepourquant teil eure
is true that I it-have long-ago known And nevertheless such hour
a este que se ien eusse oi la complainte. si neuse
has been that if I-thereof had heard the complaint so not-would-have
ie pas eu le pooir damender le. Car trop ai lonc tans
I at-all had the power to-amend it For too-much have-I long time
eu a faire. teil eure que mainte gent ne baioient pas que
had to do such hour that many people not expected at-all that
ie en venisse au deseure. Ains disoient cha en ariere si
I thereof might-come to-the above Rather said-they here in back so
que maintes fois loi. que en la fin me conuendroit terre
that many times it-heard-I that in the end me would-behoove land
guerpir. Mais che que iai maluaisement fait me conuendra
to-forsake But this that I-have badly done me will-behoove
amender quant diex men dounra le pooir. Et bien
to-amend when God to-me-thereof will-give the power And well
sachies que ia si tost ne vendrai en point. que iel quit si
know that ever so soon not shall-I-come in point that I-it think so
bien amender que nus ne men pora blasmer sa
well to-amend that anyone not me-thereof will-be-able to-blame except-with

son tort non. Car bien connois que iel doi faire. com chiex
his wrong not For well know-I that I-it must do as that-one
qui en sui sires liges du roi ban de benoyc. & il mes
who thereof am lord liege of-the king Ban of benoic and he my
hom. Et al roi bohort de gannes. Et diex me doinst pooir
man And of-the king Bors of gannes And God to-me may-give power
prochainement de lamender. Car moult volentiers lamenderoie.
soon of it-amending For very willingly it-would-I-amend
Atant sen parti le preudom. que plus nel pot
Thereupon himself-thence parted the worthy-man that more not-him could
li rois retenir ne nus des autres. Et dist quant il fu
the king retain nor any of-the others And told-he when he was
reuenus a la roine de benoyc les noueles. Et moult le
come-back to the queen of benoic the news And much her
comforte. Car se dieu plaist dame fait il vous orres par tans
comforts For if God pleases lady says he you will-hear in time
boines noueles. Et ele len merchie moult. Li preudom
good news And she him-thereof thanks much The worthy-man
sen parti ensi de la roine quant il ot son message
himself-thence parted thus from the queen when he had his message
fait. Et sen ala en la maison dont il estoit venus.
done And himself-thence went into the house whence he was come
Mais chi endroit laisse li contes vne pieche a parler de lui.
But here in-place leaves the tale a while to speak of him
& des .ij. roines qui sont ensamble en roial moustier. &
and of-the two queens who are together in royal minster and
retourne au rois claudas de la deserte. Mais auant parole
returns to-the king Claudas of the deserted But first speaks-it
vn petit de la damoisele del lac & si orres pourcoi.
a little of the damsel of-the lake and so will-you-hear wherefore

Saraide's Errand

XIV

The Lady of the Lake learns that Claudas holds Bors's sons in the tower of Gannes and will hold court there on the Magdalene's day. She sends her maiden Saraide, niece of the monk, with two greyhounds on silver chains. Saraide reaches Gannes as the feast begins and tells Claudas at table that her lady, who prized him above all men, now finds he lacks sense, kindness, and courtesy, for he keeps two innocent orphans in prison. Claudas grants that she speaks the truth and, to amend, sends his seneschal to bring the boys and their masters in state, but Lionel has been in a rage since the night before.

Quant la damoisele del lac sot de lyonel & de bohort. les
When the damsel of-the lake knew of Lionel and of Bors the
.ij. fiex au roi bohort de gannes quil estoient en la tour
two sons of-the king Bors of gannes that-they were in the tower
de gannes en prison si len pesa moult. Et volentiers i
of gannes in prison so her-thereof grieved much And willingly there
meist paine sele peust comment il fussent ietes des
would-she-put pain if-she could how they might-be cast from-the
mains claudas. Et par maintes fies se porpensa & tant
hands (of-)Claudas And by many times herself bethought-she and so-much
encherca les auentures. que ele sot que claudas deuoit tenir
searched the adventures that she knew that Claudas was-to hold
court a gannes & feste moult grant. dune coustume que li
court at gannes and feast very great of-a custom that the
roi auoient lors. que les plus hautes cours & les plus rices de
kings had then that the most high courts and the most rich of
tout lan. si tenoient del iour de lor courounement. Et de
all the-year so held-they of-the day of their coronation And of
che deuoient estre tout lautre ior quil portoient couroune.
this were-to be all the-other day that-they bore crown

A chele feste que claudas auoit apparellie a faire si riche.
At that feast that Claudas had prepared to make so rich
si deuoit estre au ior de la feste a la madalaine. Et quant
so was-to be at-the day of the feast of the Magdalene And when
vint au iour deuant la veille. la damoisele del lac apela
came-it to-the day before the eve the damsel of-the lake called
vne soie pucele moult bele & moult sage. si auoit non
a her maiden very fair and very wise so had name
saraide a son droit non. Lors lapela la damoisele si li
Saraide at her right name Then her-called the damsel so to-her
dist. Saraide il vous couient aler a la chite de gannes. si
said Saraide it you behooves to-go to the city of gannes so
que vous i uendrois le ior de la magdalaine. & si me
that you there will-come the day of the Magdalene and so for-me
ferois vn message qui ne vous deura pas greuer. Car vous
will-do a message which not you must at-all burden For you
enmenrois si com ie quit .ij. enfans asses haus hommes. Che
will-lead-away so as I think two children enough high men These
sont li doi fil au roi bohort de gannes. & si vous dirai
are the two sons of-the king Bors of gannes and so to-you shall-I-tell
comment. Lors li encarge sa besoigne issi com ele le sot
how Then to-her charges-she her business thus as she it knew
miex faire. & Isi com vous loreis deuiser cha auant. Et
best to-do and Thus as you it-will-hear devise here forward And
li baille les choses qui mestier li peuent auoir a faire che
to-her hands the things which need to-her can have to do this
quele li encarge. Atant monte la damoisele. si sen
that-she to-her charges Thereupon mounts the damsel so herself-thence
part de sa dame qui moult laime de grant amor & moult
parts from her lady who much her-loves with great love and much
se fie en li de toutes choses. et ele lauoit bien esprouee
herself trusts in her of all things and she her-had well proven

de lonc tans. Et ele estoit nieche au rendu qui auoit
of long time And she was niece of-the lay-brother who had
faite la clamor de la mort au roi ban de benoyc. Quant
made the complaint of the death of-the king Ban of benoic When
ele se parti del lac. si enmena auoec lui .ij. escuiers
she herself parted from-the lake so led-she with her two squires
& autres serians a cheual dusques a .x. & cheuauchierent
and other sergeants on horse until to ten and they-rode
tant par lor iornees quil vindrent en la praerie desous
so-far by their journeys that-they came into the meadow below
gannes le ior de la madalaine a eure de haute tierche.
gannes the day of the Magdalene at hour of high terce
Pres de chele praerie auoit vn poi de haute forest &
Near of that meadow there-had a little of high forest and
espese deuers senestre. ileuc se mist la damoisele & sa
thick toward left there herself put the damsel and her
compaignie. Et ele fist encherkier par vn escuier que ele i
company And she made search by a squire whom she there
enuoia se li rois claudas estoit encore al mangier assis. Et
sent if the king Claudas was yet at-the eating seated And
si tost com il sassist ele le sot. Lors sen tourne son
so soon as he himself-sat she it knew Then herself-thence turns-she her
chemin grant aleure sor vn palefroi qui tost lenporte. si ne
road great pace upon a palfrey which quickly her-carries so not
maine auoec lui que .ij. escuiers sans plus. Et porte chascuns
leads-she with her but two squires without more And carries each
vn leurier a vne caine dargent. Ensi cheuauchent tant quil
a greyhound on a chain of-silver Thus ride-they so-far that-they
vienent en la chite. & lors fait la damoisele enquerre des
come into the city and then makes the damsel inquire of-the
enfans le roi bohort sil sont a la cort. ou sil sont
children (of-)the king Bors if-they are at the court or if-they are

encore en prison si com il soloient. Et len li dist que
yet in prison so as they were-wont And one to-her says that
il sont encore en la prison. Et dautre part siet claudas a
they are yet in the prison And on-other side sits Claudas at
son haut mangier entre lui & sa barounie. dont il i a
his high eating between him and his baronage of-which it there has
a grant plente. Et si seoit deuant lui dorins ses fiex que il
in great plenty And so sat before him Dorin his son whom he
faisoit cheualier qui moult estoit biax varles. preus larges &
made knight who very was fair youth valiant generous and
hardis a desmesure. ne claudas nauoit plus de tous enfans.
bold beyond measure nor Claudas not-had more of all children
Moult estoit grans la cors & esforchie que claudas tenoit &
Very was great the court and mighty that Claudas held both
pour le iour de son courounement. Et por la hauteche de
for the day of his coronation And for the highness of
son fil qui cheualiers nouiax estoit. Si auoit plus este larges
his son who knight new was So had-he more been generous
entre la veille & le iour quil nauoit onques mais este. &
between the eve and the day than-he had ever more been and
encore dounast il asses plus anchois que la cours departist.
yet would-give he enough more before that the court might-part
Car moult lauoit amende la grant larguece quil avoit veue
For much him-had bettered the great largesse which-he had seen
en la court le roi artu. Mais la cours fu troublee par
in the court (of-)the king Arthur But the court was troubled by
vne meruelleuse auenture. si orres quele ele fu. La ou
a marvelous adventure so will-you-hear what it was There where
claudas seoit au mangier en teil ioie & en tel feste com
Claudas sat at-the eating in such joy and in such feast as

vous oies. si auint que la damoisele qui du lac venoit entra
you hear so befell that the damsel who from-the lake came entered
en la sale. ne nauoit encore claudas que le premier mes eu.
into the hall nor not-had yet Claudas but the first course had
La damoisele vint deuant claudas la ou il seoit a son
The damsel came before Claudas there where he sat at his
haut mangier. Et tint en sa main les .ij. leuriers es .ij.
high eating And held in her hand the two greyhounds in-the two
riches caines qui dargent furent. Et parla si haut que bien
rich chains which of-silver were And spoke so high that well
fu oie. Rois claudas fait ele diex te saut. & si te
was-she heard King Claudas says she God thee may-save and so thee
salu de par la plus vaillant dame qui soit el monde. &
greet-I from by the most worthy lady who may-be in-the world and
qui plus ta proisie duscal iour de hui que nul homme
who most thee-has prized until-to-the day of today than any man
qui onques fust. Mais ore ne quide ele ne ne croit. que tu
who ever were But now not thinks she nor not believes that thou
aies la moitie du sens ne de courtoisie que len li a
mayst-have the half of-the sense nor of courtesy that one her has
fait entendant. Et ele na mie tort. que plus i a a
made understanding And she not-has at-all wrong for more there has-it to
blasmer que ie ne quidoie dasses. Si men irai atant.
blame than I — thought by-far So myself-thence shall-I-go thereupon
si conterai a ma damoisele che que iai del roi veu. & de
so shall-I-tell to my damsel this that I-have of-the king seen and of
son contenement. Li rois regarde la pucele qui si fierement
his bearing The king looks-at the maiden who so fiercely
a parle. & si tost sen veut aler sans plus dire. si le
has spoken and so soon herself-thence wishes to-go without more to-say so her
rapele & dist. damoisele vous soies la bien venue. & boine
calls-back and says damsel you be there well come and good

auenture ait vostre damoisele ou vostre dame qui que
adventure may-have your damsel or your lady whoever that
ele soit. Et bien puet estre que ele a oi dire de moi plus
she may-be And well can be that she has heard say of me more
de bien que il ni a. Et pour tant quele ma mande
of good than it there has And for so-much that-she to-me-has sent
ses salus. se ie sauoie chose qui menpirast ie men
her greetings if I knew thing which me-might-worsen I myself-thereof
amenderoie pour amor de li del maintenir. Et par la foi
would-amend for love of her of-the maintaining And by the faith
que vous deues la rien que vous plus ames dites moi la
that you owe the thing that you most love tell me the
verite. Car chose voldroie bien aprendre dont ie amendasse.
truth For thing would-I-wish well to-learn whereby I might-amend
Tant maues coniuree fait la damoisele. que ia plus ne
So-much me-have-you adjured says the damsel that ever more not
vous iert chelei. Ie serf si com vous aues oi dire a vne
from-you will-be hidden I serve so as you have heard say to one
des plus vaillans dames del monde & des plus riches &
of-the most worthy ladies of-the world and of-the most rich and
est a marier. Si auoit oi dire tant de bien de vous. quele
is to marry So had-she heard say so-much of good of you that-she
ne prisoit nul home crestien envers vous vn dener vaillant.
not prized any man Christian beside you a penny worth
Car len li auoit dit que vous esties li plus ientiex rois &
For one to-her had said that you were the most gentle king and
plus deboinaires del monde. & le plus vighereus & li plus
most kindly of-the world and the most vigorous and the most
larges & de la plus haute proeche & de si grant sens. que
generous and of the most high prowess and of so great sense that
se tous li mondes fust a vne part. si seusies vous quanques
if all the world were at one side so would-know you whatever

len deust faire de bien. Miex que tout chil qui fussent
one ought do of good Better than all those who might-be
encontre vous. por che si mauoit ma dame chi enuoie pour
against you for this so me-had my lady here sent for
sauoir se les paroles quele auoit oi dire de vous estoient
to-know if the words that-she had heard say of you were
fauses ou vraies. Et iai tant veue en vous que vous aues
false or true And I-have so-much seen in you that you have
failli a .iij. des millors teces qui puissent estre en cheualier.
failed at three of-the best traits which may be in knight
Car vous naueis ne sens ne deboinarete ne cortoisie en vous.
For you not-have neither sense nor kindness nor courtesy in you
Damoisele fait li rois. Chertes se ches .iij. coses falent
Damsel says the king Certainly if these three things fail
en moi. petit puet valoir li remenans. Mais ie ne quit que
in me little can avail the remainder But I not think that
nus fust onques de ches .iij. choses si bien garnis. que en
anyone were ever with these three things so well furnished that in
aucun point ne li mesauenist par oubliance. que il feist
some point not to-him might-mishap by forgetting that he might-do
teil chose par coi il fust tenus por fols. ou por vilains ou
such thing by which he were held for fool or for villein or
por felons. Et neporquant tant me dites sil puet estre que
for felon And nevertheless so-much me tell if-it can be what
chou est que vous aues veue en moi. porcoi vous saues que
this is that you have seen in me wherefore you know that
ie nai deboinarete ne courtoisie en moi. Iel vous dirai
I not-have kindness nor courtesy in me I-it to-you shall-tell
fait la damoisele puis que tant le maues requis. Il est
says the damsel since that so-much it me-have-you asked It is
voirs que vous tenes les .ij. fiex au roi bohort de gannes
true that you hold the two sons of-the king Bors of gannes

si vilainement com en prison. Si seit de uoir trestous li
so basely as in prison So knows of truth all the
siecles quil ne vous ont noient mesfait. ne vous ne poes
world that-they not to-you have anything misdone nor you not can
oster felounie que ele ni soit. Car nule riens na si
remove felony that it not-there be For any thing not-has so
grant mestier de douchour ne de pitie com enfes a. Ne
great need of sweetness nor of pity as child has Nor
nus ne puet grant deboinairete auoir en soi. qui soit a
anyone not can great kindness have in himself who be to
enfant fel ni enuieus. par cheste mesproison mest il auis
child cruel nor hostile by this misdeed to-me-is it opinion
que vous aueis deboinairete toute ius mise. Et apres vous
that you have kindness all down put And after to-you
monsterai. que de sens naveis vous point. bien poes vous
shall-I-show that of sense not-have you at-all well can you
sauoir quil na nus sous chiel se len parole des enfans
know that-it not-has anyone under heaven if one speaks of-the children
le roi bohort que vous les teignies en teil maniere. que
(of-)the king Bors that you them hold in such manner that
cascuns ne quit que vous le fachies pour aus en la fin
each not may-think that you it may-do for them in the end
ochire. si nest nus qui en soi ait pitie. qui de cuer
to-kill so not-is anyone who in himself may-have pity who from heart
ne vous en heie. & se ne li eusies riens forfait. Et
not you thereof may-hate and if not to-him had-you anything forfeited And
puis que li hons se fait hair a tout le monde. ie ne voi
since that the man himself makes hate to all the world I not see
pas comment il puist auoir en lui grignour folie. Et dautre
at-all how it may have in him greater folly And on-other
part se vos fusies courtois. vous eusies pris les .ij. enfans
side if you were courteous you would-have taken the two children

qui sont asses che seiuent mainte gent plus haut homme de
who are enough this know many people more high men than
vous & plus gentil. si les eusies hounestement atournes
you and more gentle so them would-have-you honestly arrayed
comme fil de roi. & fussent a vostre feste ci deuant
as sons of king and might-be at your feast here before
vous. si eusies moult grant honor en leur seruiche.
you so would-have-you very great honor in their service
Et deist tous li siecles qui le seust que vous fusies
And would-say all the world who it might-know that you were
li plus gentiex rois & le plus courtois del monde qui
the most gentle king and the most courteous of-the world who
maintenes les orphenins honoreement. & si lor gardes
maintain the orphans honorably and so for-them guard
lor terre. Et par che eusies gaaignie les cuers & les
their land And by this would-have-you won the hearts and the
amors a toutes gens. ne ne vous en peust len tenir pour
loves of all people nor not you thereof could one hold for
felon. Mais por sage & por courtois & por deboinaire.
felon But for wise and for courteous and for kindly
Si voirement mait diex damoisele vous dites voir fait
So truly me-may-help God damsel you say true says
claudas. Et si aueis droit & si mi acort moult bien.
Claudas And so have-you right and so myself-thereto agree-I very well
Mais qui croit maluais conselg ne puet estre quil nen
But who believes bad counsel not can be that-he not-thence
traie a maluais chief a la fin. Mais de tant maueis
may-draw to bad head at the end But of so-much me-have-you
ensengnie a cheste fois que ien quide toute ma vie miex
taught at this time that I-thereby think all my life better
valoir. Lors apele son maistre senescal si li dist. senescaus
to-be-worth Then calls-he his master seneschal so to-him says seneschal

ales me tost querre les .ij. fiex au roi bohort. Et si menes
go for-me quickly to-seek the two sons of-the king Bors And so lead
auoeques vous teil compaignie de cheualiers & de varles &
with you such company of knights and of youths and
de serians com on doit mener qui vait quere fiex de roi. Et
of sergeants as one must lead who goes to-seek sons of king And
auoeques aus faites lor .ij. maistres venir. Li senescaus fait
with them make their two masters come The seneschal does
le commandement son signor. si prent cheualiers & serians
the command (of-)his lord so takes knights and sergeants
& escuiers a grant plente. & vait a la tour as .ij. enfans
and squires in great plenty and goes to the tower of-the two children
qui nestoient pas a aise ne il ne chil qui les gardoient.
who not-were at-all at ease nor they nor those who them guarded
Car il auoient a grant loisir plore. & fait lor duel &
For they had at great leisure wept and made their grief and
lor complainte. Car lyoniax les auoit troubles. & la nuit
their complaint For Lionel them had troubled both the night
deuant & le iour. Et che fu li plus deffernes cuers denfant
before and the day And this was the most unbridled heart of-child
qui onques fust que lyonel. Ne nus ne retraist onques si
which ever were that Lionel Nor anyone not took-after ever so
naturelment a lancelot com il faisoit. Et Galehos li preudom
naturally to Lancelot as he did And Galehaut the worthy-man
li sires des estraignes illes li fiex a la bele iaiande. lapela
the lord of-the foreign isles the son of the fair giantess him-called
vne fois cuers sans fraim. por che quil nel pooit vaintre
one time heart without bridle for this that-he not-him could conquer
par chastoier. cheli iour meisme que li rois artus le fist
by chastising that day same that the king Arthur him made
cheualier. ainsi com li contes le deuisera chi apres. Mais
knight thus as the tale it will-devise here after But

ore oies que li contes dira porcoi lyoniax les auoit trobles.
now hear what the tale will-say wherefore Lionel them had troubled
dont il auoient plaint & plorei la veille & le iour meisme.
whereof they had bewailed and wept the eve and the day same

Lionel and Pharien

XV

At supper Pharien weeps, and Lionel makes him say why: Claudas holds court as king in the city that should be Lionel's. Lionel overturns the table, will not eat, and swears to avenge himself on Claudas; Pharien begs him to wait until he is grown. Summoned to court, Lionel hides a knife, which Pharien takes from him. The people weep to see their lords pass. Claudas, in his royal robe, his crown, sword, and scepter set before him, offers Lionel his cup; Lionel stares at the sword. Saraide sets garlands of flowers on the boys' heads and clasps at their necks, and tells Lionel to drink; he answers that another will pay for it.

Il auint chose que quant vint au vespre & lor mangiers fu
It befell thing that when came-it to-the evening and their meal was
atournes a souper. Si auint que li doi enfant sasistrent au
prepared for supper So befell that the two children themselves-sat to-the
mangier ensamble. comme chil qui onques ne manioient se
eating together as those who ever not ate except
a vne escuele non. si manioit lyoniax moult durement. Tant
from one bowl not so ate Lionel very hard So-much
que pharijens ses maistres sen meruelloit moult. et a
that Pharien his master himself-thereat marveled much and at
grant meruelle len esgarde. Et quant il lot grant pieche
great marvel him-thereof looks-at And when he him-had great while
esgarde si quil en ot laisie tout le mangier. si commencha
looked-at so that-he thereof had left all the eating so began-he

a plorer si durement que les larmes li caoient tout
to weep so hard that the tears to-him fell all
contreual sa robe. desous la table ou il manioient. Moult
down his robe below the table where they ate Much
ploura longement en teil maniere tant que lyoniax sen
wept-he long in such manner so-long that Lionel himself-thereof
aperchut qui moult estoit viseus & bien parlans. Quest che
perceived who very was sharp and well speaking What-is this
biax maistres porcoi plores vous si durement & al mangier.
fair master wherefore weep you so hard and at-the eating
Laisies ester biax sire dous fait phariens. de che ne vous puet
Let be fair lord sweet says Pharien of this not to-you can
caloir. Car ia ni aurois riens gaaignie. En non dieu
matter For ever not-there will-you-have anything gained In name (of-)God
fait il ie nel lairai mie ester Car iel voel sauoir outreement. Et
says he I not-it shall-let at-all be For I-it wish to-know utterly And
vous coniur sour la foi que vous me deues que vous le me
you adjure-I upon the faith that you to-me owe that you it to-me
dites orendroit. ha sire fait phariens por dieu merchi. porcoi me
tell right-now ah lord says Pharien for God mercy wherefore me
coniures de cose ou vous ne poes riens gaaignier del sauoir
adjure-you of thing where you not can anything gain of-the knowing
ains en pories mais en auant estre dolans & courechies.
rather thereof could-you more on forward be sorrowful and angered
Par la foi que ie doi lame mon peire au roi bohort fait
By the faith that I owe the-soul (of-)my father the king Bors says
lyoniax. Ie ne mengerai de la bouche deuant que ie sache
Lionel I not shall-eat with the mouth before that I may-know
porcoi vous aues plore. biax dous sires fait phariens anchois
wherefore you have wept fair sweet lord says Pharien rather
le vous dirai ie que vous en perderies vostre mengier.
it to-you shall-tell I than you thereby would-lose your eating

dites dont fait lyoniax. Sire fait phariens ie plour por che
tell then says Lionel Lord says Pharien I weep for this
quil me menbroit de la grant hautece ou vostre lignage
that-it me recalled of the great highness where your lineage
auoit este moult longement. si ai le cuer moult a malaise
had been very long so have-I the heart very at unease
quant vous estes en prison. Et autres tient sa court &
when you are in prison And another holds his court and
sa signourie la ou vous deusies tenir la vostre. Comment
his lordship there where you ought hold the yours How
fait lyoniax qui est chou dont qui tient sa court la ou ie
says Lionel who is this then who holds his court there where I
deuroie la moie tenir. qui sire fait phariens chil qui desus
ought the mine to-hold who lord says Pharien that-one who above
en est. chest claudas li rois de la deserte. qui la tient en
thereof is this-is Claudas the king of the deserted who it holds in
ceste vile. qui deust estre chies de vostre regne si i porte
this town which ought be head of your realm so there bears-he
coroune. & i fait son fil cheualier. si ai moult grant
crown and there makes his son knight so have-I very great
duel en mon cuer. quant li haus lignages qui diex a tant
grief in my heart when the high lineage which God has so-much
essauchie dusques chi en est desiretes. & chil monstre sa
exalted until here thereof is disinherited and that-one shows his
signourie qui est li plus desloiax hons del monde. Quant li
lordship who is the most disloyal man of-the world When the
enfes lentent si li engrose li cuers. & boute des pies la
child it-hears so to-him swells the heart and pushes with-the feet the
table ius. & puis saut en mi la maison tous courechies. &
table down and then leaps into midst the house all angered and
li oeil li rougisent de mautalent & li vis li escauffe.
the eyes to-him redden with ill-will and the face to-him heats

si est auis a chaus qui lesgardent que par tout le vis
so is opinion to those who him-look-at that through all the face
li doie li sans salir. Et por che quil na cure de riens
to-him must the blood leap And for this that-he not-has care of anything
veoir. ne que nus le voie. si est montes en vne fenestre
to-see nor that anyone him may-see so is-he climbed into a window
por miex penser a grant loisir. Lors vient a li phariens
for better to-think at great leisure Then comes to him Pharien
si li a dit. a sire quest che que vous aueis fait. que
so to-him has said ah lord what-is this that you have done that
del mangier vous estes leues. a si haute nuit com anuit
from-the eating you are risen at so high night as tonight
est & par courous. venes & si mangies. Et se vous nen
is and by wrath come and so eat And if you not-thereof
aues talent. si en deues vous faire samblant por lamor de
have desire so thereof must you make semblance for the-love of
mon signor vostre freire. qui sans vous ne mangeroit pas.
my lord your brother who without you not would-eat at-all
Maistres fait lioniax ie ne mengerai pas ore. Mais aleis &
Master says Lionel I not shall-eat at-all now But go and
si mengies & vous & il. Car il me plaist que ie soie ore
so eat both you and he For it me pleases that I be now
vne pieche a ceste fenestre anchois que ie meniueche mais.
a while at this window before that I may-eat more
ha sire fait phariens por dieu merchi nous ne mangerons
ah lord says Pharien for God mercy we not shall-eat
pas sans vous. Car se vous laisies le mangier par courous.
at-all without you For if you leave the eating by wrath
nous le lairons ausi. Comment fait lyoniax dont nestes vous
we it shall-leave also How says Lionel then not-are you
a moi & vous & bohors mes freires & ses maistres ausi.
to me both you and Bors my brother and his master also

Et il dient tout que oil sans faille. Dont vous commant ie
And they say all that yes without fail Then you command I
fait il que vous aillies trestout mangier. Car ie ne mangerai
says he that you may-go all to-eat For I not shall-eat
mais a nul iour. deuant chou que iai acompli vn pense
more at any day before this that I-have accomplished a thought
ou ie sui entres. biax sire fait phariens. se chest pensers
where I am entered fair lord says Pharien if this-is thought
ou nous puissons metre consel si le nous dites. Car nous
where we may put counsel so it to-us tell For we
i meterons toutes les paines que nous i porons mettre
there shall-put all the pains that we there shall-be-able to-put
se chest pensers que vous doies a fin mener & puissies.
if this-is thought that you ought to end bring and can
Atant lor respont lyoniax et dist. Chertes fait il ie
Thereupon to-them answers Lionel and says Certainly says he I
nel vous dirai ore pas. En non dieu fait phariens ie ne
not-it to-you shall-tell now at-all In name (of-)God says Pharien I not
serai iamais en vostre seruiche de hui en auant se vous ne
shall-be ever-more in your service from today on forward if you not
le me faites a sauoir. Car dont me sambleroit il que vous
it to-me make to know For then to-me would-seem it that you
vous gardisies de moi & soupechon en eussies. Ne vous
yourself guarded from me and suspicion thereof had Nor you
ne trouuastes onques en moi porcoi vous me deusies douter.
not found ever in me wherefore you me ought doubt
lors fait samblant destre courechies moult durement. &
then makes-he semblance of-being angered very hard and
que il sen voelle aler. Et lyoniax qui moult lamoit por
that he himself-thence may-wish to-go And Lionel who much him-loved for
la pitie que il auoit en li trouee commenche a plorer &
the pity that he had in him found begins to weep and

dist. ha maistres ne vous en ales pas. Car dont mauries
says ah master not yourself thence go at-all For then me-would-have
vous mort. & anchois vous dirai ie mon pense Mais que
you dead and rather to-you shall-tell I my thought But that
vous nel me desloes pas. & que vous men aidies en foi.
you not-it to-me dissuade at-all and that you me-therein may-aid in faith
Et phariens dist que si fera il. Chertes fait lyoniax iai em
And Pharien says that so will-do he Certainly says Lionel I-have in
pense que ie me vengerai del roi claudas anchois que ie
thought that I myself shall-avenge on-the king Claudas before that I
me meuue mais. Comment fait phariens vous en quidies
myself may-move more How says Pharien yourself thereof think
vous vengier biax dols sires. Iel vous dirai fait lyoniax. Ie
you to-avenge fair sweet lord I-it to-you shall-tell says Lionel I
li manderai demain quil viegne a vous parler. & lors
to-him shall-send tomorrow that-he may-come to you to-speak and then
me porai de lui vengier. Car ie loserai moult bien
myself shall-be-able on him to-avenge For I him-shall-dare very well
emprendre a ochire. sil estoit encore plus poisans quil nest.
undertake to kill if-he were yet more powerful than-he is
Ore sire fait phariens & quant vous laures ochis que
Now lord says Pharien and when you him-will-have killed what
feres vous. Coi fait lyoniax. dont sont chil de chest pais tout
will-do you What says Lionel then are those of this country all
mi homme si me garandiront a lor pooir. Et i meteront
my men so me will-protect to their power And there will-put
consel & paine. Et se lor consel ni a mestier. diex en
counsel and pain And if their counsel not-there has need God thereof
pensera bien qui tous desconsellies conselle. Et se ie mur
will-think well who all uncounseled counsels And if I die
por mon droit conquerre bien soit la mors venue. Car miex
for my right to-conquer well be the death come For better

me vient il morir a honor que viure hounis & desiretes
to-me comes it to-die with honor than to-live shamed and disinherited
en terre. & plus en sera mame aise quant ie men
on earth and more thereof will-be my-soul at-ease when I myself-thereof
serai vengies. Car qui desirete fil de roi. chertes asses li
shall-be avenged For who disinherits son of king certainly enough from-him
taut la vie. biax sire fait phariens por dieu merchi ensi
takes the life fair lord says Pharien for God mercy thus
nel ferois vous pas. Car vous nen pories escaper vis. Ne
not-it will-do you at-all For you not-thence could escape alive Nor
len doit pas tel chose emprendre a faire sans consel. Mais
one must at-all such thing undertake to do without counsel But
atendes encore tant que diex vous mete en grignor vertu
wait yet so-long that God you may-put in greater strength
que vous nestes encore. & que vous vous puisies vengier &
than you are yet and that you yourself may avenge and
ie vous aiderai a mon pooir. Car bien sachies que ie neim
I you shall-aid to my power For well know that I not-love
pas tant enfant que iaie com ie fais vous. Moult le
at-all so-much child that I-may-have as I do you Much him
chastie phariens. & chil dist quil en fera a son consel
admonishes Pharien and that-one says that-be thereof will-do by his counsel
& atendra tant quil viegne en point de soi vengier. Mais
and will-wait so-long that-be may-come in point of himself to-avenge But
dont me gardes fait il que ie ne voie claudas. Car puis
then me guard says he that I not may-see Claudas For after
ne me poroie ie tenir de moi vengier. por que ie veisse
not myself could I hold from myself to-avenge for that I might-see
ne lun ne lautre. Ensi passerent cele nuit. Et toutes uois
either the-one or the-other Thus passed-they that night And all ways
estoit phariens en grant paor de son signor que il veoit si
was Pharien in great fear of his lord whom he saw so

courechie. ne onques puis la nuit ne lendemain bele chiere
angered nor ever after the night nor the-next-day fair cheer
ne fist por proiere que len puist faire. si sot bien phariens
not made-he for prayer that one could make so knew well Pharien
que a paines sera ietes de son pense. si met moult
that with pains will-he-be cast from his thought so puts-he very
grant paine de li apaisier. Mais biau samblant ne puet auoir.
great pain of him to-appease But fair semblance not can-he have
Quant vint a lendemain que li senescaus claudas ala
When came-it to the-next-day that the seneschal (of-)Claudas went
querre les enfans. encore nauoit lyoniax mengie de la
to-seek the children yet not-had Lionel eaten with the
bouce. ains se gisoit en vne cambre & disoit quil estoit
mouth rather himself lay in a chamber and said that-he was
deshaities. & li nies pharien faisoit mangier bohort. Mais
unwell and the nephew (of-)Pharien made eat Bors But
chestoit a moult grant angoisse. Ne ia ni eust
this-was with very great anguish Nor ever not-there would-have-he
mangie se lyoniax nel fesist a forche faire. & neporquant
eaten if Lionel not-it had-made by force to-do and nevertheless
moult li greua. A chele eure seoit phariens deuant lyonel
much him burdened At that hour sat Pharien before Lionel
& plouroit des iex moult durement. Et lors vint auant
and wept from-the eyes very hard And then came forward
li senescaus. & quant il vit lionel si sagenoille deuant lui.
the seneschal and when he saw Lionel so himself-kneels before him
comme chil qui moult estoit preus & vaillans. Sire fait il
as that-one who very was valiant and worthy Lord says he
messires li rois vous salue. si vous mande & prie que vous
my-lord the king you greets so to-you sends and begs that you
vengies entre vous & vostre freire sa court veoir. & auoec
may-come between you and your brother his court to-see and with

vous uerront vostre doi maistre. Car il nest mie droit quil
you will-come your two masters For it not-is at-all right that-he
tiegne sans vous si riche court com il a empris a faire.
may-hold without you so rich court as he has undertaken to make
Si tost com lyoniax lentent si saut sus. & lors dist au
So soon as Lionel it-hears so leaps-he up and then says to-the
senescal quil ira moult volentiers. Si fait moult grant
seneschal that-he will-go very willingly So makes-he very great
samblant destre lies. & ses maistres qui le voit soupechoune
semblance of-being glad and his master who him sees suspects
moult grant partie de ce que il pense. si est si a malaise
very great part of this that he thinks so is so at unease
de la grant mesqueance quil atent que nus nen
of the great mischance which-he awaits that anyone not-thereof
poroit la somme dire. Lyoniax li dist biax maistres faites
could the sum tell Lionel to-him says fair master make
compaignie a ches signors qui chi me sont venu quere.
company to these lords who here for-me are come to-seek
& ie vois en ceste cambre laiens si reuendrai tantost.
and I go into this chamber in-there so shall-I-come-back straightway
Atant sen entre li enfes en la cambre. si apele son
Thereupon himself-thence enters the child into the chamber so calls his
camberlenc & li fait traire vn moult riche coutel que
chamberlain and to-him makes draw-out a very rich knife that
il auoit qui moult estoit grans qui por ioiax li ot este
he had which very was great which for jewel to-him had been
dounes. Et la ou il le muchoit desous sa robe si entre ses
given And there where he it hid below his robe so enters his
maistres laiens por sauoir quil faisoit. Et quant il li voit
master in-there for to-know what-he did And when he him sees
le coutel tenir. si li sache hors des puins. & dist
the knife hold so from-him snatches-he out of-the fists and says

quil nel portera mie. non fait lyoniax si ni porterai les
that-he not-it will-carry at-all no says Lionel so not-there shall-I-carry the
pies par foi. si voi bien que vous me haes de mort. Quant
feet by faith so see-I well that you me hate to death When
vous me toles tant de deduit com ie auoie. sire fait
you from-me take so-much of pleasure as I had lord says
li maistres vous nestes mie sages. Car se vous portes chest
the master you not-are at-all wise For if you carry this
coutel tous li siecles sen apercheura. Mais iel porterai
knife all the world itself-thereof will-perceive But I-it shall-carry
qui moult miex le sai courir de vous. Et che saues vous
who much better it know to-cover than you And this know you
de voir que ie aim autant vostre bien com le mien. Dont
of truth that I love as-much your good as the mine Then
me creantes vous fait lyoniax que de quel eure que ie vous
to-me promise you says Lionel that at what hour that I you
demanderai mon coutel que vous le me baillerois. voire fait
shall-ask my knife that you it to-me will-hand truly says
phariens si vous me creantes que vous nen ferois chose
Pharien if you to-me promise that you not-thereof will-do thing
sor mon pois. Ie ne ferai fait lyoniax nule chose dont ie
against my weight I not shall-do says Lionel any thing whereof I
doi estre a droit blasmes. ensi fait phariens ne di ie mie.
must be by right blamed thus says Pharien not say I at-all
vous me creanteres loiaument que vous nen ferois ne
you to-me will-promise loyally that you not-thereof will-do neither
.j. ne autre. ne ni ferois chose qui vous puisse tourner
one nor other nor not-there will-do thing which to-you may turn
a reproche ni a damage. biax maistres fait lyoniax saues
to reproach nor to harm fair master says Lionel know
vous que vous ferois. se vous voleis si perdes le coutel &
you what you will-do if you wish so lose the knife and

se vous voles si le gardes por vous meisme. Car mestier
if you wish so it keep for you self For need
vous porroit encore auoir. Atant sen tournent en la
to-you could yet have Thereupon themselves-thence turn into the
sale ariere. ou li senescaus latendoit. Si le montent sour
hall back where the seneschal him-awaited So him mount-they upon
vn palefroi. & bohort desus vn autre & deriere chascun
a palfrey and Bors upon an other and behind each
monte ses maistres. si sen vont cheuauchant droit
mounts his master so themselves-thence go riding straight
au palais ou la cours estoit. Et tous li peuples saut hors
to-the palace where the court was And all the people leaps out
por veoir lor drois signors si en pleurent & ione &
for to-see their rightful lords so thereof weep both young and
anchien. & prient nostre signor que encore les ramaint
old and pray our Lord that yet them he-may-bring-back
en lor grant honor. & les ramaint en amendement &
into their great honor and them may-bring-back into amendment and
en poissance. Et phariens castie moult lyonel & li prie
into power And Pharien admonishes much Lionel and him begs
por dieu quil ne commenche teil folie dont il ait mal.
for God that-he not may-begin such folly whereof he may-have harm
& il & tout chil qui auoec lui seroient. Car ia pies
both he and all those who with him would-be For ever foot
nen escaperoit. Ore ne vous esmaies maistres fait il. Car
not-thence would-escape Now not yourself dismay master says he For
ie ne sui pas si fols que ie empresisse folie dont ie ne
I not am at-all so foolish that I might-undertake folly whereof I not
quidasse a chief venir. Et si le vausisse ie commenchier.
would-think to head to-come And if it would-wish I to-begin

si men aueis vous bien garde. Car vous ne maueis laisie
so me-thereof have you well guarded For you not me-have left
que les mains toutes nues.
but the hands all naked

Atant sont venu a la cort. si i furent asses qui
Thereupon are-they come to the court so there were enough who
les descendi. Et li doi enfant se sont entrepris main
them dismounted And the two children themselves are taken hand
a main & vienent deuant claudas a grant compaignie de
in hand and come before Claudas with great company of
cheualiers & de valles. & laiens auoit moult de cheualiers
knights and of youths and in-there there-had many of knights
del roialme de benoyc & de chelui de gannes. si en i
of-the kingdom of benoic and of that-one of gannes so thereof there
ot de teus qui ne se pooent tenir de plorer por nul
had of such who not themselves could hold from weeping for any
auoir. Quant il virent venir lor signors si biax enfans & si
wealth When they saw come their lords so fair children and so
plaisans qui en autrui baillie estoient & en autrui subiection.
pleasing who in another's keeping were and in another's subjection
Et lyoniax si vint teste leuee qui moult fu biax & regarda
And Lionel so came head raised who very was fair and looked
parmi le palais moult fierement & pres & loing. si sambloit
through the palace very fiercely both near and far so seemed-be
bien a le contenance & al vis gentiex hom & de haut
well at the countenance and at-the face gentle man and of high
parage. Il sont deuant le roi venu. si les esgardent a
parentage They are before the king come so them look-at at
meruelle & vn & autre. Et li rois seoit al mangier en
marvel both one and other And the king sat at-the eating on
son haut dois moult fierement en vn faudesteuf a or moult
his high dais very fiercely in a faldstool of gold very

riche & moult bel. Et deuant li fu sa couronne assise
rich and very fair And before him was his crown set
sour .j. grant soustenant dargent del grant dun homme.
upon a great stand of-silver of-the greatness of-a man
si estoit fais en guise dun gros candeleir. Et deiouste la
so was made in guise of-a big candlestick And beside the
couroune sor vn grant soustenant dargent autresi estoit une
crown upon a great stand of-silver likewise was a
espee toute nue droite trenchant & clere. si estoit li poins
sword all naked straight cutting and bright so was the pommel
desous & la moitie par desus. Et par desus la couroune
below and the half by above And by above the crown
en haut estoit fichies li ceptres dor a pieres precieuses
on high was fixed the scepter of-gold with stones precious
& de grant valor. & il manioit en la robe roial en coi il
and of great worth and he ate in the robe royal in which he
auoit este sacres. si sambloit a meruelle preudom & fier. se
had been anointed so seemed-he at marvel worthy-man and fierce if
ne fust chou que trop sambloit del visage cruel & felon.
not were this that too seemed-he of-the face cruel and felon

Quant il voit les enfans bohort venir a court. si lor
When he sees the children (of-)Bors come to court so to-them
fist moult bele chiere & apela lyonel dont il prisoit
made-he very fair cheer and called Lionel of-whom he prized
moult le samblant & la maniere. Car il disoit quil nauoit
much the semblance and the manner For he said that-he not-had
onques enfant veu. de qui il prisast plus le maniere & le
ever child seen of whom he prized more the manner and the
contenanche. Li enfes vint deuant li de chele part ou la
countenance The child came before him on that side where the
coroune & lespee estoient. Et li rois qui moult le voloit
crown and the-sword were And the king who much him wished

honerer & qui iamais a nul iour nes baoit tenir en
to-honor and who ever-more at any day not-them aimed to-hold in
prison li tent sa coupe qui moult estoit bele & riche.
prison to-him holds-out his cup which very was fair and rich
si li commande que il boiue Mais chil ne le regarda
so him commands that he may-drink But that-one not it looked-at
onques. ains bee a lespee quil voit illuec si bele & si
ever rather gapes at the-sword which-he sees there so fair and so
luisans. si li est auis que buer fust neis quil en eust
shining so to-him is opinion that happily were born who-he thereof had
vne autreteile com il quide que chele soit. por quil eust
one such as he thinks that that-one be for that-he had
la forche & la vertu quil en peust grans caus douner.
the force and the strength that-he therewith could great blows give
Et claudas quide bien quil ne laist a boire se de honte
And Claudas thinks well that-he not leaves off drinking except from shame
non por la grant plente de gent que il voit. Et lors se
not for the great plenty of people that he sees And then herself
traist auant la damoisele qui del lac estoit venue. si le
drew forward the damsel who from-the lake was come so him
prent a .ij. mains parmi les .ij. ioes si li dist. venes
takes with two hands through the two cheeks so to-him says come
biax fiex de roi. si vous amenderai ia moult. lors li
fair son of king so you shall-I-better now much then to-him
met en sa teste vn trop bel capel de flors. nouel & soeif
puts-she on his head a very fair garland of flowers new and sweet
flerant. & a son col vn petit fremail dor a riches pieres.
smelling and at his neck a little clasp of-gold with rich stones
Et autresi a fait a bohort son freire. & puis a dit a
And likewise has-she done to Bors his brother and then has-she said to
lyonel. or poes boire biax fiex de roy. que ore en aues
Lionel now can-you drink fair son of king for now thereof have-you

asses biau loier & boin. Et chil fu caus & iries si
enough fair reward and good And that-one was hot and angered so
respont. Damoisele ie beuerai fait il. Mais autres le paiera.
answers Damsel I shall-drink says he But another it will-pay

Claudas Struck Down

XVI

Protected by the herb in their garlands, Lionel dashes the wine in Claudas's face, cuts his brow with the cup, and smashes the crown, and Bors seizes the scepter. Lionel cuts Dorin's arm and cheek with the king's sword, and Bors's blow to his head kills him. Claudas pursues with a sword, but Saraide casts an enchantment that makes the boys seem greyhounds and the greyhounds boys; his blow gashes her face, and he breaks his sword on a lintel chasing the hounds, glad not to have killed children by his own hand. Saraide leads the boys away; at the lake the lady welcomes them, and Lancelot, believing them her nephews, makes them his close companions.

Lors est si entalentes de folie faire & li vns & li autres.
Then is so eager of folly to-do and the one and the other
que sil nen eussent mais eu talent. si le pristrent il
that if-they not-thereof had more had desire so it took they
ilueques par le forche de lerbe qui estoit es capiax que
there by the force of the-herb which was in-the garlands that
il auoient. si estoit la forche de lerbe si grans. que nule
they had so was the force of the-herb so great that any
arme ne pooit daus traire sanc. ne menbre fraindre ne
weapon not could from-them draw blood nor limb break nor
brisier. tant com li fremail fuissent sor aux. Lyoniax a le
shatter so-long as the clasps were upon them Lionel has the
coupe prinse. & bohors li crie quil le flatrisse a terre.
cup taken and Bors to-him cries that-he it may-dash to earth

Mais non fait ains le hauche contremont a ses .ij. mains.
But not does-he rather it raises upward with his two hands
si que del vin est vole sour la roebe le roi vne partie.
so that of-the wine is flown upon the robe (of-)the king a part
& il en fiert de toute sa vertu le roi claudas en mi
and he therewith strikes with all his strength the king Claudas in midst
le vis si que li remenans del vin li cueure tout. & li
the face so that the remnant of-the wine him covers all and him
fiert es iex & el neis & en la bouche. si que par vn
strikes in-the eyes and in-the nose and in the mouth so that for a
poi quil nest estains. Et li trenchans de la coupe li asene
little that-he is choked And the edge of the cup him strikes
en mi le front si li trenche la char & le quir tout.
in midst the forehead so to-him cuts the flesh and the skin all
puis sache la courone a soi si durement quil fait voler
then pulls-he the crown to himself so hard that-he makes fly
ius le cheptre & lespee qui dales estoit. Et il fiert a .ij.
down the scepter and the-sword which beside was And he strikes with two
mains le couroune contre le pauement del palais. si quil
hands the crown against the pavement of-the palace so that-he
en fait voler les pieres. & tout lor malement debrisier
thereof makes fly the stones and all the-gold badly break
& le defoule as pies si com il puet. Atant lieue li cris
and it tramples with-the feet so as he can Thereupon rises the cry
par le palais si salent sus des taules. li vn por conbrer
through the palace so leap up from-the tables the ones for to-seize
les enfans. & li autre por deliurer. Et li rois iut a terre
the children and the others for to-deliver And the king lay on ground
tous pasmes del vin qui el cors li est ferus par
all swooned from-the wine which into-the body to-him is struck by
le neis & par la bouche & fu sanglens del hanap qui
the nose and by the mouth and was bloody from-the goblet which

li fu ferus en mi le front. Et ses fiex dorins est hors
to-him was struck in midst the forehead And his son Dorin is out
salis por son peire vengier. Mais lioniax ot saisie lespee qui
leapt for his father to-avenge But Lionel had seized the-sword which
a le terre fu keue. si le lieue en haut a .ij. mains a
to the ground was fallen so it raises on high with two hands with
teil vertu com il auoit. et bohors prist le cheptre qui a
such strength as he had and Bors took the scepter which on
la terre gisoit. si en commenchent grans caus a departir
the ground lay so therewith begin-they great blows to deal
la il pooient ataindre. Et il auoit asses laiens qui les
there they could reach And it had enough in-there who them
departoit. Car autrement ne durassent il pas. sil fuissent
parted For otherwise not would-last they at-all if-they were
doi des millors cheualiers del monde & neporquant parmi
two of-the best knights of-the world and nevertheless amid
toute la souffrance quil orent ni porent il durer. Car
all the sufferance that-they had not-there could they last For
li rois fu reuenus de paumison si saut en estant. &
the king was come-back from swoon so leaps-he to standing and
iure son sairement que mar en escapera vns. Et ses fiex
swears his oath that ill thence will-escape one And his son
dorins seslaisse apres lyonel qui adreche al huis ou la
Dorin himself-launches after Lionel who heads to-the door where the
damoisele lenmenoit por fuir hors. Et quant lyoniax le voit
damsel him-led for to-flee out And when Lionel him sees
venir. si se trestourne & hauche lespee qui durement
come so himself turns and raises the-sword which hard
estoit trenchans sel fiert a .ij. mains. Et chil iete
was cutting so-him strikes with two hands And that-one throws
la main senestre encontre & lespee li trenche toute. &
the hand left against and the-sword to-him cuts all and

puis li deschent desus la ioe senestre. si li trenche
then to-him descends upon the cheek left so to-him cuts
toute selonc lorelle. & le col autresi iusquen milieu. Et
all along the-ear and the neck likewise until-in middle And
tout leust il trenchie. se lespee narestast as os qui
all it-would-have he cut if the-sword not-stopped at-the bones which
trop estoient dur. ne li enfes nestoit pas de la vigor quil
too were hard nor the child not-was at-all of the vigor that-he
les peust trenchier tout outre. Et bohors hauche le cheptre
them could cut all through And Bors raises the scepter
quil tient si le fiert en mi le front si durement com
which-he holds so him strikes in midst the forehead so hard as
il pot a .ij. mains. si que li teste nest si durs que il
he could with two hands so that the head not-is so hard that he
ne le croisse. Chil ne pot son caup soustenir qui a mort
not it may-crack That-one not could his blow sustain who to death
fu naures si chiet a terre. et lors esforche li cris. & li
was wounded so falls to earth and then strengthens the cry and the
rois i vint courant qui moult ot grant cuer. si vit bien
king there came running who very had great heart so saw-he well
que moult auoit de gent laiens qui ne lamoient se bien
that many there-had of people in-there who not him-loved except well
pau non. & neporquant tout met en abandon & cuer
little not and nevertheless all puts-he in abandon both heart
& cors & vient apres les enfans grant aleure. sespee en
and body and comes after the children great pace his-sword in
sa main toute nue. cun siens cheualiers li auoit baillie.
his hand all naked which-a his knight to-him had handed
sen brach enuolepe en son mantel. Et la damoisele del lac
his arm wrapped in his mantle And the damsel of-the lake
qui venir le voit en teil maniere nest tant sage que toute
who come him sees in such manner not-is so wise that all

ne soit esbahie. Mais neporquant del commandement sa
not be-she amazed But nevertheless of-the command (of-)her
damoisele li souient. si iete son enchantement. & fait
damsel to-her remembers so throws-she her enchantment and makes
resambler les .ij. enfans as .ij. leuriers. & li doi leurier
resemble the two children to-the two greyhounds and the two greyhounds
orent la samblance as .ij. enfans. che fu auis a tous
had the semblance of-the two children this was opinion to all
chaus qui les veoient. Et li rois vient si court as .ij.
those who them saw And the king comes so runs at-the two
enfans que ele tenoit & haucha lespee por ferir & ele
children whom she held and raised the-sword for to-strike and she
se lanche encontre dont ele fist hardement trop outrageus.
herself hurls against whereof she did boldness too outrageous
Et li caus deschent sor son vis si pres des puins le
And the blow descends upon her face so near of-the fists (of-)the
roy. que li heus de lespee len fiert en mi le vis. si
king that the hilt of the-sword her-thereof strikes in midst the face so
li trenche tout le cuir & la char tout contreual parmi
to-her cuts all the skin and the flesh all down through
le destre sorciel dusques el pomel de la ioie. si que
the right eyebrow until in-the ball of the cheek so that
onques puis ne fu nul iour quil ni parut apertement.
ever after not was any day that-it not-there appeared openly

Li sans cueure la damoisele & ele iete vn cri. & puis
The blood covers the damsel and she throws a cry and then
dist au roi. auoi sire claudas. Iai malement achatee la
says to-the king alas lord Claudas I-have badly bought the
venue de vostre court. que chi me voles ochire .ij. des
coming of your court for here to-me wish-you to-kill two of-the
plus biaus leuriers du monde. Et parmi tout che maues
most fair greyhounds of-the world And amid all this me-have-you

nauree. lors esgarde li rois si li samble des .ij. enfans
wounded then looks the king so to-him seems of-the two children
que che soient doi leurier tout de voir. Si voit vn poi loins
that these be two greyhounds all of truth So sees-he a little far
de li les .ij. leuriers qui senfuient en vne estable por la
from him the two greyhounds which themselves-flee into a stable for the
noise & por la grant muete dont il estoient en esfroi &
noise and for the great tumult whereof they were in fright and
il cort apres. car bien quide que che sont li doi enfant. Li
he runs after for well thinks-he that these are the two children The
leurier se sont en vne cambre fui. & li rois qui apres
greyhounds themselves are into a chamber fled and the king who after
vient poignant hauche le caup & fiert el lintel del huis
comes spurring raises the blow and strikes on-the lintel of-the door
si durement que toute lespee vole en pieches. Et il sareste
so hard that all the-sword flies in pieces And he himself-stops
& regarde sespee moult longement. Et il dist que diex
and looks-at his-sword very long And he says that God
en soit aoures quant ele brisie est & ie quit fait il biax
thereof be adored when it broken is and I think says he fair
dols sires que pour mounour laues vous fait. Car ie eusse
sweet Lord that for my-honor it-have you done For I would-have
mors de ma main ches .ij. enfans. si me fust reprochie
killed with my hand these two children so to-me would-be reproached
a tous iours mais. & en fuisse hounis en toutes cours.
to all days more and thereof would-I-be shamed in all courts
Et ie les ferai ore plus a ma grant honor morir. si que
And I them shall-make now more to my great honor die so that
li autre se garderent de moi mesfaire. Lors iete ius
the others themselves will-guard from me to-misdo Then throws-he down
le remenant de lespee que il tenoit. & saut a aus si les
the remnant of the-sword that he held and leaps at them so them

sasist. & quide por voir enmener les .ij. enfans si les baille
seizes and thinks for true to-lead-away the two children so them hands
a garder a chaus en qui il plus se fie iusques tant
to guard to those in whom he most himself trusts until so-long
que il se soit consellies comment il en ouuerra. Mais
that he himself be counseled how he thereof will-work But
se li rois a duel de son fil quil voit a terre iesir mort
if the king has grief of his son whom-he sees on ground lie dead
che ne fait pas a demander. Et li maistre as .ij. enfans
this not makes at-all to ask And the masters of-the two children
ne sont pas mains dolant de lui. Car bien quident que
not are at-all less sorrowful of him For well think-they that
a mort soient liure lor doi signor. Mais deus ne del roi
to death be delivered their two lords But of-them nor of-the king
claudas ne parole plus li contes ci endroit. Anchois retorne
Claudas not speaks more the tale here in-place Rather returns-it
a la damoisele del lac qui venue estoit a la court claudas
to the damsel of-the lake who come was to the court (of-)Claudas
por les .ij. fiex au roi bohort de gannes. Si a tant
for the two sons of-the king Bors of gannes So has-she so-much
esploitie que ele les enmaine & les a de mort garantis. si
achieved that she them leads-away and them has from death protected so
orres comment ele les emporte. la dont ele estoit venue.
will-you-hear how she them carries-off there whence she was come

Quant la damoisele del lac. chele qui les enfans garandi si
When the damsel of-the lake that-one who the children protected so
com vous aues oi. vit que toute la cours fu troblee & que ele
as you have heard saw that all the court was troubled and that she
ot fait grant partie de che quele beoit a faire si fu moult
had done great part of this that-she aimed to do so was-she very
lie. Et petit proisa le caup quele auoit recheu en mi le vis.
glad And little prized the blow which-she had received in midst the face

Ele enmaine les .ij. enfans hors de la court. & quant li doi
She leads-away the two children out of the court and when the two
escuier qui dehors latendoient le voient blechie el vis si en
squires who outside her-awaited her see hurt in-the face so thereof
sont tout esbahi. Il li ont le vis bende ensi com ele lor
are-they all amazed They to-her have the face bandaged thus as she them
ensegna. Et che fu de sa touaille sans plus. ne plus ni
taught And this was with her towel without more nor more not-there
veut mettre. Car paor a de mesqueance. Apres est en
wishes-she to-put For fear has-she of mischance After is-she on
son palefroi montee. si met lun des .ij. enfans deuant li. &
her palfrey mounted so puts the-one of-the two children before her and
che fu lyoniax. & lun des .ij. escuiers ra mis bohort
this was Lionel and the-one of-the two squires has-in-turn put Bors
deuant lui. Ensi sen vont toutes les rues contremont
before him Thus themselves-thence go-they all the streets up
& laisent le duel que li pueples fait deuant le palais roial.
and leave the grief that the people makes before the palace royal
si quide chascuns qui les voit que che soient doi leurier
so thinks each who them sees that these be two greybounds
que il emportent. & li escuier meismes le quident bien.
that they carry-off and the squires themselves it think well
Tant ont ale quil sont venu a la forest ou lor gent
So-far have-they gone that-they are come to the forest where their people
les atendoient. Ne nus daus ne sauoit porcoi la damoisele
them awaited Nor anyone of-them not knew wherefore the damsel
estoit a la court le roi claudas alee. Diluec sen
was to the court (of-)the king Claudas gone From-there themselves-thence
partent tout & sen vont grant aleure. & par les
part-they all and themselves-thence go great pace and by the
grignors destrois que il seiuent. si iurent chele nuit la ou
greatest straits that they know so lay-they that night there where

il auoient ieu lautre nuit deuant. Ne lyoniax nauoit onques
they had lain the-other night before Nor Lionel not-had ever
mengie de la bouche le ior. Mais li grans tribous ou il
eaten with the mouth the day But the great tumult where he
auoit este. li auoit fait feim oublier & sa mesaise. Quant il
had been him had made hunger forget and his hardship When they
vindrent a lostel si anuitoit moult durement. Lors descouri
came to the-lodging so grew-night very hard Then uncovered
la damoisele son enchantement & monstra as cheualiers les
the damsel her enchantment and showed to-the knights the
.ij. enfans & lor dist. signor que vous ensamble dont na
two children and to-them said lords what to-you thereof-seems then not-has
il chi moult bele proie & asses riche. Et il dient chertes
it here very fair prey and enough rich And they say certainly
oil que moult est la proie & boine & bele. Lors sont
yes that very is the prey both good and fair Then are-they
tout esbahi ou ele les pooit auoir troues. Si li demandent
all amazed where she them could have found So her ask-they
& enquierent moult durement. Mais ele ne lor en dit
and inquire very hard But she not to-them thereof tells
mie la verite. anchois dist que tant a fait que ele les
at-all the truth rather says that so-much has-she done that she them
a. len ne doit pas demander se li enfant orent bien chele
has one not must at-all ask if the children had well that
nuit lor estouoir. Car la damoisele en pensa autretant &
night their need For the damsel thereof thought as-much and
plus asses com sil fuissent si freire germain ambedui por
more enough as if-they were her brothers german both for
che que sa dame li auoit priie si durement daus. ne ne
this that her lady her had begged so hard of-them nor not
fu nule chose el siecle qui lor fausist. sil eussent lor
was any thing in-the world which to-them might-fail if-they had their

maistres auoeques eus. Et la damoisele les comforte moult
masters with them And the damsel them comforts much
& aseure & dist naies doute mi enfant. Car vostre maistre
and reassures and says not-have doubt my children For your masters
ni auront ia mal. & che disoit ele por eus comforter.
not-there will-have ever harm and this said she for them to-comfort
Car puis que ele les auoit deuers li. ele prisoit moult petit
For since that she them had toward her she prized very little
le remenant. Durement comforte la damoisele les enfans. &
the remainder Hard comforts the damsel the children and
leur desfent si chier com il ont lor cors. quil ne dient
them forbids so dear as they have their bodies that-they not may-say
qui fil il sont. Car vous series mort fait ele & alei. Et ie
whose sons they are For you would-be dead says she and gone And I
vous menrai en teil lieu ou vous aurois quanke vous saures
you shall-lead into such place where you will-have whatever you will-know
de cuer penser. ne de bouche deuiser. & si seront vostre
with heart to-think nor with mouth to-devise and so will-be your
doi maistre prochainement auoeques vous. Ensi castoie la
two masters soon with you Thus admonishes the
damoisele les .ij. enfans. & la nuit les fait iesir auoec li.
damsel the two children and the night them makes lie with her
Au matin si tost com ele aperchoit le iour. si sest
At-the morning so soon as she perceives the day so herself-is
leuee. Et puis muet & ele & sa compaignie. si cheuauchent
risen And then sets-out both she and her company so ride-they
tant quil vienent a sa dame qui les atent. Quant ele
so-far that-they come to her lady who them awaits When she
voit les enfans si lor fait ioie meruelleuse. & est tant
sees the children so to-them makes-she joy marvelous and is so
lie & tant ioiouse que plus ne poroit estre par samblant.
glad and so joyous that more not could be by semblance

si loe moult la damoisele de cheste voie. & dist que
so praises-she much the damsel for this journey and says that
quanques ele desiroit li a rendue a cheste fois. A
whatever she desired to-her has-she rendered at this time At
leure que li enfant vindrent nestoit lancelos pas laiens. Car
the-hour that the children came not-was Lancelot at-all in-there For
il estoit en bois cachier. Et quant il vint si fist moult
he was in wood hunting And when he came so made-he very
tres grant ioie des enfans. Car il quidoit tout de uoir que
very great joy of-the children For he thought all of truth that
il fuissent neueu sa dame. & ele li faisoit entendant
they were nephews (of-)his lady and she him made understanding
por voir. Moult ama lancelos la compaignie as .ij. enfans.
for true Much loved Lancelot the company of-the two children
& comment que che fust ou de nature ou de grace que
and however that this were or of nature or of grace that
diex lor eust doune. Ou por che que neueu sa dame
God to-them had given Or for this that nephews (of-)his lady
quidoit quil fuissent. plus li traioit li cuers a eus ca
thought-he that-they were more him drew the heart to them than-to
nul des autres. si en auoit il asses laiens & de moult
any of-the others so thereof had it enough in-there and of very
biax. Mais ne pot onques puis estre si acointes ne si priues
fair But not could-he ever after be so acquainted nor so intimate
de nul. comme des .ij. enfans. & tenoit tous les autres
with any as with-the two children and held all the others
ausi comme ses serians. Mais ches .ij. tenoit il comme ses
also as his sergeants But these two held he as his
compaignons de maine. Et des le premier ior ne manioient
companions of household And from the first day not ate-they
sa vne escuele non. Et gisoient tout troi ensamble
except-from one bowl not And lay all three together

sour vne couche. Ensi sont ensamble li troi cousin germain
upon one couch Thus are together the three cousins german
en la garde la damoisele del lac. Mais atant se taist
in the keeping (of-)the damsel of-the lake But thereupon itself silences
ore li contes vne piece daus & retorne au roi claudas.
now the tale a while of-them and returns to-the king Claudas

Claudas Mourns His Son

XVII

Claudas laments over Dorin, praising the kindness, largesse, and fierceness by which a man may master the world, and calls Dorin and Arthur the two pillars that held it up. Meanwhile the knights and burghers of Gannes, believing the boys about to be killed, arm and seize the tower with Pharien and his nephew Lambegue, while Claudas summons his hosts from the Land Deserted and Benoic. Pharien and the people resolve to attack the palace and set fire to it unless the children are given up.

Or dist li contes que a leure que li rois claudas auoit
Now says the tale that at the-hour that the king Claudas had
pris les .ij. leuriers ou lieu des .ij. enfans. si retourna a
taken the two greyhounds in-the place of-the two children so returned-he to
son fil que il vit mort. Si ne fait pas a demander se il
his son whom he saw dead So not makes at-all to ask if he
fait grant duel. Car il le fait si grant ca paines poroit
makes great grief For he it makes so great that-with pains could
on faire grignour. & neporquant il nestoit pas coustumiers
one make greater and nevertheless he not-was at-all accustomed
de grant duel faire. Car moult estoit de fier cuer & de
of great grief to-make For very was-he of fierce heart and of
viguereus. & si souffrans que nus nel prisoit rien par
vigorous and so enduring that anyone not-him prized anything by

samblant. ne les mesauentures qui auenoient que il faisoit.
semblance nor the misadventures which befell that he did
Mais de ceste mesauenture ne se pot il pas comforter.
But of this misadventure not himself could he at-all comfort
ne ne deut par droit legierement. Car il nauoit de tous
nor not ought-he by right lightly For he not-had of all
enfans que lui seulement. & estoit si larges & si courtois
children but him only and was-he so generous and so courteous
& si preus com li contes a deuise. Et la ou il faisoit
and so valiant as the tale has devised And there where he made
son duel nestoit il pas asseur. Car toute la gent de gannes
his grief not-was he at-all secure For all the people of gannes
estoient troublee & esmeue por lor .ij. signors que claudas
were troubled and moved for their two lords whom Claudas
voloit destruire deuant lor iex. si estoient courut as armes
wished to-destroy before their eyes so were-they run to-the arms
& li cheualier du pais & li borgois de la vile dont il
both the knights of-the country and the burghers of the town of-whom it
i auoit de moult riches & de moult aises. Et si auoient
there had of very rich and of very easeful And so had-they
de moult biax fiex qui sarmerent si tost com il oirent
of very fair sons who themselves-armed so soon as they heard
le cri des enfans qui deuoient estre ochis. Et phariens &
the cry of-the children who were-to be killed And Pharien and
ses nies qui tant sont irie com il plus peuent se
his nephew who so-much are angered as they most can themselves
sont en la tour remis ariere. & ont mande des cheualiers
are into the tower put back and have summoned of-the knights
qui a la feste estoient venu du pais & des borgois de
who to the feast were come from-the country and of-the burghers of
la vile vne partie. si ont ensamble pris vn consel. & a
the town a part so have-they together taken a counsel and to

che sacordent en la fin. que se claudas veut destruire
this themselves-agree-they in the end that if Claudas wishes to-destroy
les enfans quil i seront anchois tout ochis auoeques eus
the children that-they there will-be rather all killed with them
que il ne soient rescous. Si enuoient li cheualier du pais
than they not be rescued So send the knights of-the country
por lor armes qui sont en la chite. Car a chel tans estoit
for their arms which are in the city For at that time was-it
coustume que nus cheualiers ne cheuauchoit a court. ne
custom that any knight not rode to court nor
loins de son pais naloit sans ses armes. Quant il furent
far from his country not-went without his arms When they were
issi arme si se saisirent de la tour qui moult estoit
thus armed so themselves seized of the tower which very was
fors. Et claudas qui encore faisoit son duel de son fil en
strong And Claudas who yet made his grief of his son in
son palais. si loi dire. Mais onques samblant nen fist
his palace so it-heard say But ever semblance not-thereof made-he
com chil qui moult estoit vaillant & preus en tous ses
as that-one who very was worthy and valiant in all his
mesqueanches. Maintenant laisse le duel si apele son consel.
mischances At-once leaves-he the grief so calls his council
Et fait escrire lettres & mander par toute la deserte ses
And makes write letters and summon through all the deserted his
hommes & par les fortereces del regne de benoych. que
men and through the strongholds of-the realm of benoic which
il auoit garnies. quil venissent tout a lui maintenant. Et
he had garrisoned that-they might-come all to him at-once And
il auoit auoeques lui grant partie des barons de sa terre.
he had with him great part of-the barons of his land
& de cheus de benoyc i rauoit moult grant partie. Mais
and of those of benoic there had-again very great part But

il ni si fioit mie bien. Car li plusour lauoient ia
he not-there himself trusted at-all well For the most him-had already
guerpi. & sen estoient alez deuers pharien & deuers
forsaken and themselves-thence were gone toward Pharien and toward
cheus qui saisi sestoient de la tour. Et claudas est reuenus
those who seized themselves-were of the tower And Claudas is come-back
sor le cors son fil. si le plaint & regrete asses hautement.
upon the body (of-)his son so him bewails and laments enough loudly
si quil en ont grant pitie. nis chil qui gaires ne lamoient.
so that-they thereof have great pity even those who much not him-loved
Moult se pasme li rois claudas souent & menu. Car
Much himself swoons the king Claudas often and frequently For
tenir ne sen puet. Et quant il reuient de paumison.
hold not himself-thence can-he And when he comes-back from swoon
si parole a guise domme qui moult a grant dolor &
so speaks-he in guise of-man who very has great sorrow and
angoisse a son cuer. biax fiex dorin fait il. biax cheualiers
anguish at his heart fair son Dorin says he fair knight
& preus a desmesure. se vous vesquisies a droit eage.
and valiant beyond measure if you had-lived to right age
ie nen voi nul el siecle remanoir apres vostre mort
I not-thereof see any in-the world to-remain after your death
fors vn tout seul. qui fache a amer & a douter sour tous
except one all alone who may-be to love and to fear above all
autres hommes. & fusies doutes & ameis biax fiex se vous
other men and were-you feared and loved fair son if you
fuisies longuement en vie. plus que chil qui tous autres
had-been long in life more than that-one who all others
passe orendroit. Et si eusies & cuer & forche &
surpasses right-now And so would-you-have both heart and force and
pooir de tout le monde conquere. Car il ne sont en homme
power of all the world to-conquer For it not are in man

que .iij. choses par coi il puisse toute terriene chose mettre
but three things by which he may all earthly thing put
au desous. Chest deboinairetes largueche & fiertes. grant
at-the under This-is kindness largesse and fierceness great
compaignie & grant solas a cheus qui desous lui sont
fellowship and great solace to those who under him are
largue. si est de douner douchement & a lie chiere a
largesse so is of giving sweetly and with glad cheer to
tous chaus en qui li don peuent estre bien emploie. por
all those in whom the gifts can be well employed for
la valor qui est en eus. & al maluais por la valor qui
the worth which is in them and to-the bad for the worth which
est el douner. Car qui droite largueche velt acomplir. Il
is in-the giving For who right largesse wishes to-accomplish He
doit douner au preudomme besoigneus com a preudomme.
must give to-the worthy-man needy as to worthy-man
Et au mauuais besoigneus comme larges. ne entour homme
And to-the bad needy as generous nor around man
large ne doit reparier ne boins ne maluais. quil ne sente
generous not must dwell neither good nor bad that-he not may-feel
de ses dons & de se largueche. Mais nul riens ne valt ne
of his gifts and of his largesse But any thing not avails neither
deboinairetes ne largueche. se la tierche chose ni est.
kindness nor largesse if the third thing not-there is
Chest fiertes. fiertes est vne grans vertus qui aime & tient
This-is fierceness fierceness is a great virtue which loves and holds
chier ses amis autretant comme son cors. Et heit ses anemis
dear his friends as-much as his body And hates his enemies
sans pitie & sans merchi. ne ne puet estre la chose
without pity and without mercy nor not can be the thing
vaincue que seulement par deboinairete quant ele la trueue.
conquered but only by kindness when it it finds

Par ches .iij. choses puet li hons biax fiex passer tous autres
By these three things can the man fair son surpass all others
qui auoir les ose. & vous les auies. Car puis que li mondes
who to-have them dares and you them had For since that the world
commencha il ne fu hom de vostre compaignie. ne de vostre
began it not was man of your fellowship nor of your
solas & a priueis & a estraignes. Et a vostre largueche
solace both to intimates and to strangers And to your largesse
estoient tuit noiant li large qui onques fuissent. Car vous
were all nothing the generous who ever were For you
esties asses plus lies de douner. que nus hons nestoit du
were enough more glad of giving than any man was of-the
prendre. Et nauies paour se de che non que vostre donne
taking And not-had-you fear except of this not that your gifts
pleussent a chelui qui vous le volies douner par amor quil
might-please to that-one to-whom you it wished to-give by love that-they
nel vausissent refuser. Dautre part vous auies fierte en vous
not-it might-wish refuse On-other side you had fierceness in you
si naturelment herbergie. que nus ne vous peust faire amer
so naturally lodged that anyone not you could make love
homme orguelleus ne sorquidie. vous esties de si grant felonie
man proud nor overweening you were of so great fierceness
contre felon que vous nel poies nis regarder. ains disiies
against felon that you not-him could even look-at rather said-you
que len ne doit pas ses iex vser de maluaise chose veoir. Car
that one not must at-all his eyes use of bad thing seeing For
parmi les iex sentoit li cuers el ventre de la puor. biax
through the eyes felt the heart in-the belly of the stench fair
fiex che fu la plus haute parole que ie oisse onques dire a
son this was the most high word that I heard ever say to
nul enfant. Et quelque chiere que ie vous feisse. ie vous
any child And whatever cheer that I to-you might-make I you

amoie plus que ie ne poroie conter. Et ne mie tant por che
loved more than I — could tell And not at-all so-much for this
que vous esties mes fiex. com ie faisoie por la grant valor
that you were my son as I did for the great worth
qui en vo cuer estoit. Et che que ie vous estregnoie biax
which in your heart was And this that I you restrained fair
tres dous fiex. nel faisoie ie se por che non que ie nauoie
very sweet son not-it did I except for this not that I not-had
cuer de veoir la grant largueche ne la grant merueille qui
heart to see the great largesse nor the great marvel which
en vostre cuer estoit. Ne ie ne quit que nus hons morteus
in your heart was Nor I not think that any man mortal
losast veoir. en teil maniere que del sien le deust furnir.
it-would-dare see in such manner that from-the his it ought furnish

Biax fiex ie auoie changies por vous toutes mes anchienes
Fair son I had changed for you all my ancient
coustumes. Car ie ne fui onques larges. ne nel pooie estre
customs For I not was ever generous nor not-it could be
de la moie main. si ne baoie a estre de la vostre. Ne ie ne
of the my hand so not aimed-I to be of the yours Nor I not
baoie pas des ore mais a conquerre par ma proeche. Mais
aimed at-all from now more to conquer by my prowess But
par la vostre outrageuse valor venisse ie au deseure de
by the your outrageous worth would-come I to-the above of
tout le monde. biax tres dols fiex. diex vous auoit autresi
all the world fair very sweet son God you had likewise
esmere & espurgie de toutes maluaises teches. & empli de
refined and purged of all bad traits and filled with
toutes boines valors. com li ors est fins & esmeres deseur
all good worths as the gold is fine and refined above
tous metaus. & plus riches & presieus est li rubins deseur
all metals and more rich and precious is the ruby above

toutes les pieres presieuses. Mais ie ne quit quil vous eust
all the stones precious But I not think that-he you had
teil fait ne si boin ne si bel ne si plaisant. fors por moi
such made nor so good nor so fair nor so pleasing except for from-me
vous tolir. el point ou ie vous veisse plus volentiers. &
you to-take in-the point where I you would-see more willingly and
por moi faire mourir a duel & a tristor por langoisse de
for me to-make die of grief and of sadness for the-anguish of
vostre mort. Mais voir ie ne mourai pas encore. ains viuerai
your death But truly I not shall-die at-all yet rather shall-live
plus que ie ne vaudrai asses. Et si me conforterai en tout
more than I — shall-wish enough And so myself shall-I-comfort in all
le comfort que ie porai auoir. & en teil com il sera. Che
the comfort that I shall-be-able to-have and in such as it will-be This
iert el siecle remirer. & de tant com plus le remirerai
will-be in-the world to-gaze-at and of so-much as more it shall-I-gaze-at
tant le priserai ie mains. Car iamais ne ferai sempirier
so-much it shall-prize I less For ever-more not shall-I-do except-worsen
non. sest il hui en chest ior tant empiries que cuers nel
not itself-is it today in this day so-much worsened that heart not-it
poroit penser ne bouche dire. Car hui matin auoit .ij. pilers
could think nor mouth tell For today morning had-it two pillars
des quels il estoit soustenus. Ore nen a que vn. Mais li
of-the which it was sustained Now not-thereof has-it but one But the
vns sil peust durer en preist tant del fais sor lui. que
one if-he could last thereof would-take so-much of-the burden upon him that
li autres nel peust contreporter. anchois le conuenist brisier.
the other not-it could counter-bear rather it would-behoove to-break

Biax dous fiex de ches .ij. pilers fustes vous li vns. & li
Fair sweet son of these two pillars were you the one and the
autres fu li rois artus. Et se vous vesquisies a droit eage
other was the king Arthur And if you had-lived to right age

anchois brisier le conuenist. si se puet vanter. que hui li
rather to-break it would-behoove so himself can boast that today to-him
est tous li mondes esqueus par la mort qui vous a brisie.
is all the world fallen by the death which you has broken
Mais por che que nule forche ne puet enuers dieu durer. si
But for this that any force not can against God last so
conuient souffrir les auentures qui auienent. comment quil
behooves to-suffer the adventures which befall however that-it
soit ou a enuis ou volentiers. Mais de ceste auenture ne
be or against will or willingly But of this adventure not
saurai ie ia gre a dameldieu. ne ni bet ia nus de
shall-know I ever grace to Lord-God nor not-there aims ever anyone from
vostre mort tant soit mes priueis. Car iamais ne lameroie.
your death so-much be-he my intimate For ever-more not him-would-I-love
Ains voel bien que tous li siecles sache que chest perte
Rather wish-I well that all the world may-know that this-is loss
sans comfort. Ainsi a plaint li rois claudas son fil. &
without comfort Thus has bewailed the king Claudas his son and
regrete tresdurement. Et se pasme sor le cors menu &
lamented very-hard And himself swoons upon the body frequently and
souent. Tant que chascuns qui le voit quide quil doie
often So-much that each who him sees thinks that-he must
morir isnel le pas. Mais il meismes sen merueille plus
die quick the pace But he himself himself-thereat marvels more
que nus. comment ses cuers dure tant que il ne li
than anyone how his heart lasts so-much that it not to-him
part el ventre. Si se blasme & mesaime si durement
bursts in-the belly So himself blames-he and ill-loves so hard
que grans pities en prent a moult de gens qui gaires
that great pity thereof takes to many of people who much
ne lamoient de cuer. Mais nouele qui tost cort est venue
not him-loved from heart But news which quickly runs is come

a pharien le maistre lyonel & as autres cheualiers de la
to Pharien the master (of-)Lionel and to-the other knights of the
terre qui a lui se tenoient del tout en tout. si ont
land who to him themselves held of-the all in all so have-they
entendu que claudas a enuoie ses lettres en la terre deserte
understood that Claudas has sent his letters into the land deserted
por semonre ses hommes. si en vodra mener les enfans de
for to-summon his men so thence will-wish to-lead the children from
laiens a forche. Et puis si les ochira quant il les tenra en
in-there by force And then so them will-kill when he them will-hold in
son pooir. Chil prendent consel de cheste chose quil en
his power Those take counsel of this thing what-they thereof
feront. tant que en la fin sacorde phariens a che. que il
will-do so-much that in the end himself-agrees Pharien to this that they
iront claudas assalir en son palais. & meteront le fu dedens.
will-go Claudas to-assail in his palace and will-put the fire inside
ou il lor rendera les enfans. Car nous auons fait il asses
or he to-them will-render the children For we have says he enough
plus de gent que il nont. Et si est nostre drois si grans &
more of people than they have And so is our right so great and
si apparisans comme de nos signors quil veut ochire. Et si
so apparent as of our lords whom-he wishes to-kill And so
nous sera honours au siecle & preus as armes se nous
to-us will-be honor in-the world and profit to-the souls if we
i mourons por els. Car por son lige signor deliurer de
there die for them For for his liege lord to-deliver from
mort doit len mettre son cors en abandon sans contredit.
death must one put his body in abandon without gainsaying
Et qui en muert il est autresi sauf com sil moroit sor
And who thereof dies he is likewise saved as if-he died upon
les sarasins. qui sont anemi nostre signor ihesu crist.
the Saracens who are enemies (of-)our Lord Jesus Christ

The Rising at Gannes

XVIII

Thirty thousand men of Gannes surround the palace. Claudas, armed with a great axe, refuses Pharien's demand, and the assault begins. He holds the gate until Lambegue's lance pierces his shoulder and arrows bring him to his knee, yet he stuns Lambegue and would behead him, until Pharien strikes him down. Pharien then stops Lambegue from killing him: no one could restore the death of so worthy a man, and a vassal who has done homage must guard his lord. Lambegue calls him a traitor with an old man's heart; Claudas, overbearing, yields his sword to Pharien and promises to give the children back.

A chest conseil sacordent tuit. si en uienent tout arme
To this counsel themselves-agree all so thence come-they all armed
deuant le palais ou claudas est qui fait son duel. Si sont
before the palace where Claudas is who makes his grief So are-they
pres de .xxx. mile que cheualiers que serians que borgois
near of thirty thousand what knights what sergeants what burghers
& fil de borgois dont il en a moult grant partie si
and sons of burghers of-whom it thereof has very great part so
sont a cheual & a pie. Quant il furent tout asamble
are-they on horse and on foot When they were all assembled
deuant le palais. si fu la noise moult grans & la tulmute.
before the palace so was the noise very great and the tumult
Et claudas demande que chou estoit de la noise quil ot
And Claudas asks what this was of the noise that-he had
oie. & len li conte que che sont chil de la terre & de
heard and one to-him tells that these are those of the land and of
la chite meisme tout armes. Maintenant iete vn hauberc
the city same all armed At-once throws-he a hauberk
en son dos si lache son hiaume a grant haste. & prent son
on his back so laces his helm in great haste and takes his

escu a son col. & chaint vne espee cleire & trenchant. puis
shield at his neck and girds a sword bright and cutting then
a pris vne hache grant & pesant. dont li fers est leis
has-he taken an axe great and heavy whereof the iron is broad
& trenchans & la hanste fors & roide de fer bendee. Et
and cutting and the haft strong and stiff with iron banded And
il estoit li hons el monde qui plus amoit hache en grant
he was the man in-the world who most loved axe in great
mellee. & bien sen sot aidier a grans caus doner.
melee and well himself-therewith knew-he help with great blows to-give
Quant il fu bien atournes & ses gens toutes si vint
When he was well equipped and his people all so came-he
el palais as fenestres. Et voit pharien deuant tous les
in-the palace to-the windows And sees Pharien before all the
autres sor vn moult grant destrier tout arme. si li demande
others upon a very great charger all armed so him asks
que chou est que il veut & il & ches autres gens. Et
what this is that he wishes both he and these other people And
phariens li respont. quil demandent lor .ij. signors qui
Pharien to-him answers that-they ask their two lords who
laiens sont. les fiex au roi bohort. si voelent que on les
in-there are the sons of-the king Bors so wish-they that one them
lor rende. Comment fait claudas pharien dont nestes vous
to-them may-render How says Claudas Pharien then not-are you
mes hons. & vous & tout chil autre que ie chi voi. sire
my man both you and all those others whom I here see lord
claudas fait phariens nous ne sommes ore pas chi aiourne a
Claudas says Pharien we not are now at-all here summoned at
iour de plait. Mais les enfans que ie auoie en garde rendes
day of plea But the children whom I had in keeping render
moi. & a ches autres preudommes qui chi sont. Et des
me and to these other worthy-men who here are And from

lors en auant se vous saues que demander ne a moi ni
then on forward if you know what to-demand either to me or
as autres. nous sommes apparellie de faire droit de toutes
to-the others we are prepared to do right of all
choses & a vous & a autrui. Claudas estoit de moult grant
things both to you and to another Claudas was of very great
sens. si voit bien quil ne se poroit enuers cheus de la
sense so sees-he well that-he not himself could against those of the
vile contretenir. Et voit que en la fin li couendroit rendre
town hold-out And sees that in the end him would-behoove to-render
les enfans. mais a moult grant paine le fera. Car asses
the children but with very great pain it will-be-do For enough
auoit cuer. tant que se tout chil qui laiens estoient en
had-he heart so-much that if all those who in-there were thereof
eussent autretant chascuns en son endroit. Il ni auoit
had as-much each in his place It not-there had
mie gent contre li quil doutast se moult poi non Et
at-all people against him whom-he might-fear except very little not And
neporquant quel que li fins soit il nest pas conseillies
nevertheless whatever that the end may-be he not-is at-all counseled
des enfans rendre. ains les vaudra tenir tant com tenir
of-the children rendering rather them will-wish to-hold so-long as hold
les pora. Et se a rendre vient. il les rendra en teil
them he-will-be-able And if to rendering comes-it he them will-render in such
maniere quil nen soit blasmes de couardise Lors dist a
manner that-he not-thereof be blamed of cowardice Then says-he to
pharien quil le semont de son sairement & de sa fianche
Pharien that-he him summons by his oath and by his pledge
quil li a faite. & quil sen viegne a lui comme
which-he to-him has made and that-he himself-thence may-come to him as
ses hons. Sire fait phariens rendes nous les enfans. car a
his man Lord says Pharien render us the children for to

rendre les vous couient. Et des lors en auant il ni a
render them you behooves And from then on forward it not-there has
homme de tous cheus qui chi sont qui voist contre vous
man of all those who here are who may-go against you
de nule chose. & se deboinairement ne les nous rendes. Il
of any thing and if kindly not them to-us render It
vous conuenra tous mourir & vous & vostre compaignie
you will-behoove all to-die both you and your company
dautre part. Car de tous cheus que vous uees chi ni
on-other side For of all those whom you see here not-there
a il nul qui ne voeille anchois perdre la vie que veoir
has it any who not may-wish rather to-lose the life than to-see
la mort a son droiturier signor. Or fache dont fait claudas
the death of his rightful lord Now may-do then says Claudas
chascuns del miex que il porra. Car il ne seront pas
each of-the best that he will-be-able For they not will-be at-all
rendut. deuant que force men sera commenchie a faire.
rendered before that force to-me-thereof will-be begun to do
Et si tost com il a che dit si commenche li assaus entor
And so soon as he has this said so begins the assault around
le palais fel & crueus dars & darbalestres & as
the palace cruel and fierce of-darts and of-crossbows and with-the
fondes entorteillies. & volent perrieres saietes & quariax
slings twisted and fly stones arrows and bolts
si espesement. com sil plussent deuers le chiel.
so thickly as if-they rained from the sky
Moult se desfent durement claudas & il & ses gens.
Much himself defends hard Claudas both he and his people
si sont garnies les fenestres & li crenel de cheualiers &
so are furnished the windows and the battlements with knights and
de serians. Et chil dehors vont querre le fu por ieter el
with sergeants And those outside go to-seek the fire for to-throw into-the

palais as fondes dont il ont asses. Et quant che voit
palace with-the slings whereof they have enough And when this sees
claudas. il met cors & cuer en abandon. com chil qui de
Claudas he puts body and heart in abandon as that-one who of
grant vigor estoit. si fait luis ouurir si se met en mi
great vigor was so makes-he the-door open so himself puts in midst
la court le hache el puing & en doune grans caus &
the court the axe in-the fist and therewith gives great blows and
perilleus. la ou il les quide miex emploier. Et chil qui ont
perilous there where he them thinks best to-employ And those who have
les ars & les arbalestres descliquent tout a li. por le grant
the bows and the crossbows loose all at him for the great
damage que il lor a fait. & fait encore. Si lont plaie
harm that he to-them has done and does yet So him-have-they hurt
& naure en plusors liex. Mais por plaie ne por blecheure
and wounded in several places But for wound nor for hurt
que il li fachent il ne se muet. Ains garde la porte
that they to-him may-do he not himself moves Rather guards-he the gate
& la lor desfent a la hache trenchant quil tient.
and it from-them defends with the axe cutting which-he holds
dont il doune grans caus. Si en a en poi deure conrees
wherewith he gives great blows So thereof has-he in little of-hour dealt-with
tex .xx. que li plus sains na nul pooir de li mal faire.
such twenty that the most sound not-has any power of him harm to-do
si le doutent si li plus des autres que de pres ne losent
so him dread so the most of-the others that from near not him-dare
aprochier. Ains guenchissent a ses cals & li font voie.
approach Rather swerve-they at his blows and to-him make way
Ensi desfent claudas la porte a le hache qui soeif
Thus defends Claudas the gate with the axe which smoothly
trenche. Et quant li nies pharien qui moult estoit hardis
cuts And when the nephew (of-)Pharien who very was bold

& preus. le vit issi lor gent mal mettre & adamagier. si
and valiant him saw thus their people evil put and damage so
en fu moult iries en son cuer. si siet sor merueilleus
thereof was-he very angered in his heart so sits upon marvelous
boin cheual. & fu armes de toutes armes. le heaume en
good horse and was armed with all arms the helm on
la teste. lescu au col. & tient vne glaiue empoignie.
the head the-shield at-the neck and holds a lance gripped
dont la hanste fu grosse & courte. & li fers trenchans.
whereof the haft was thick and short and the iron cutting
Il hurte le cheual des esperons si sadreche a claudas ens
He thrusts the horse with-the spurs so himself-makes to Claudas right
en lentree de la porte si lauise moult bien & le fiert tres
in the-entry of the gate so him-sights very well and him strikes right
parmi le hauberc endroit la senestre espaule si quil li a
through the hauberk at the left shoulder so that-he to-him has
fose. Et li fers qui fu trenchans & agus li coule parmi
pierced And the iron which was cutting and sharp to-him slides through
lespaule doutre en outre. parmi lautre ploi del hauberc. si
the-shoulder from-out to out through the-other fold of-the hauberk so
que par deriere pert del fer & del fust a descouert. Il
that by behind appears of-the iron and of-the wood at uncovered He
lenpaint de toute la vertu du brach. & de la grant forche
him-thrusts with all the strength of-the arm and of the great force
dont li cheuax venoit si lenporte a terre. Mais il saiouste
wherewith the horse came so him-carries to earth But he himself-joins
a vn mur deiouste la porte. Et chil si apoie si durement
to a wall beside the gate And that-one so leans so hard
que toute li glaiue vole em pieches. Et li cheuax venoit si
that all the lance flies in pieces And the horse came so
tost que onques ne se pot retenir. si se feri si durement
fast that ever not itself could hold-back so itself struck so hard

au mur de la teste des espaules & des pies. que
at-the wall with the head with-the shoulders and with-the feet that
tout a esmie & teste & col & espaules debrisies. Et
all has-it crumbled both head and neck and shoulders broken And
par vn poi que chil qui desus estoit ne fu ochis. Li
for a little that that-one who upon was not was killed The
cheuax chiet a terre mors. & li nies pharien chiet daleis
horse falls to earth dead and the nephew (of-)Pharien falls beside
tous estordis. Et claudas ert apoies contre le mur si naures.
all stunned And Claudas was leaning against the wall so wounded
que del tronchon li pert par deuant & par deriere. &
that of-the stump to-him appears by front and by behind and
li sans vermaus li coule tout contreual iusca la terre.
the blood red to-him flows all down until-to the earth
par ambes .ij. pars. & par les .ij. pertruis quil a es
by both two sides and by the two holes that-he has in-the
espaules. Et anchois quil soit remues del lieu ou il est
shoulders And before that-he be moved from-the place where he is
adosses. lont feru que saietes que quarel que pieres grosses
backed him-have struck what arrows what bolts what stones big
& menues plus de .xl. si quil est a .j. ienoil venus.
and small more than forty so that-he is to one knee come

Lors lieue li hus & la noise des borgois qui caoir le
Then rises the shout and the noise of-the burghers who fall him
virent. Et li nies pharien li reuient courant qui releues
saw And the nephew (of-)Pharien at-him comes-back running who raised
estoit de la plache ou il fu cheus. si li laise coure
was from the place where he was fallen so at-him lets run
lespee traite por douner grant coup. comme chil qui bien
the-sword drawn for to-give great blow as that-one who well
losast faire. Car il auoit cuer & proece a grant plente.
it-would-dare do For he had heart and prowess in great plenty

& si ne haoit tant nule rien comme claudas. Quant claudas
and so not hated so-much any thing as Claudas When Claudas
le vit venir. si rest salis en pies. & moult a grant honte
him saw come so again-is leapt on feet and much has great shame
de ce que si anemi lont veu a teil meschief. lors a le
of this that his enemies him-have seen at such mischief then has-he the
hache a .ij. mains en haut leuee de si grant forche com
axe with two hands on high raised with so great force as
il ot en ses .ij. bras. & chil qui ne le haoit pas petit.
he had in his two arms and that-one who not him hated at-all little
li vient grant aleure lespee traite lescu iete desor sa
at-him comes great pace the-sword drawn the-shield thrown over his
teste sel fiert auant selonc le temple de toute sa vertu. si
head so-him strikes first along the temple with all his strength so
quil li trenche le hiaume & la ventaille par desous. Et
that-he to-him cuts the helm and the ventail by below And
deschent li caus desus la ioe. si que par desor le senestre
descends the blow upon the cheek so that by above the left
oreille li trenche tout iusques as dens. Et claudas qui ot
ear to-him cuts all until to-the teeth And Claudas who had
le colp leue grant & pesant fiert li. si lassena desor le quing
the blow raised great and heavy strikes him so him-hit upon the corner
del hiaume amont si li trenche quanquil en ataint iusca
of-the helm above so to-him cuts whatever-he thereof reaches until-to
la coiffe si que tout contreual troes doie peust len veoir les
the coif so that all down three fingers could one see the
mailles del colp. le hache deschent tout droit desus lescu
mails of-the blow the axe descends all straight upon the-shield
dont il sestoit descouers au grant colp que il ieta. si li
whereof he himself-was uncovered at-the great blow that he threw so to-him
fent tout iusca la bocle. si que par vn poi quil na le brac
splits all until-to the boss so that for a little that-he has the arm

colpe qui le portoit. Et chil le laisse atant aler si saut
cut which it carried And that-one it lets thereupon go so leaps
ariere en trauers com chil qui moult estoit vistes & legiers.
back in across as that-one who very was quick and nimble
Del grant colp que claudas ot rechut selonc la ioe fu
From-the great blow that Claudas had received along the cheek was-he
tous esperdus & vains. Ne chis ne li aida noient que
all dazed and faint Nor this-one not him helped anything which
il auoit eu parmi lespaule. Et les plaies & les blecheures
he had had through the-shoulder And the wounds and the hurts
quil auoit eues des saietes & des quariaus qui voloient
that-he had had from-the arrows and from-the bolts which flew
especement. lorent moult empirie & afebli. Et lors se
thickly him-had much worsened and weakened And then themselves
redescochent a lui tex .xl. qui des mains ne losassent
loose-again at him such forty who with-the hands not him-would-dare
adeser. & parmi tout che sadreche a li vns cheualiers sor
touch and amid all this himself-makes to him a knight upon
vn moult grant destrier qui tost le porte. sel fiert dune
a very great charger which fast him carries so-him strikes with-a
glaiue en mi le pis si durement qua poi quil ne li bouta
lance in midst the chest so hard that-for little that-he not it thrust
el cors. Li haubers se tint quil ne fausa. & li glaiue
into-the body The hauberk itself held that-it not failed and the lance
est volee en pieches. Et chil qui tost aloit se hurte
is flown in pieces And that-one who fast went himself dashes
au roi si durement. quil le porte a terre tout estendu.
at-the king so hard that-he him carries to earth all stretched
& il se pasme. lors i est venus li nies pharien qui
and he himself swoons then there is come the nephew (of-)Pharien who
moult est lies de lauenture. si li hauche le pan del
very is glad of the-adventure so to-him raises the skirt of-the

hauberc. & li veut parmi le cors bouter lespee. Mais
hauberk and to-him wishes through the body to-thrust the-sword But
ses gens saillent del palais a le rescousse de lor signor.
his people leap from-the palace to the rescue of their lord
Et quant il le voient si au desous. si metent tout en
And when they him see so at-the under so put-they all in
auenture. & laissent coure a chex ki por lui encombrer
adventure and let run at those who for him to-encumber
se sont dedens la porte mis. si les font ariere hors
themselves are inside the gate put so them make back out
flatir. tant que sor pies lont releuei. Mais si durement
dash so-long that upon feet him-have-they raised But so hard
estoit blechies ca paines se pooit sour pies soustenir.
was-he hurt that-with pains himself could-he upon feet sustain
Lors commenche enuiron lui la mellee trop perilleuse. si est
Then begins around him the melee very perilous so is
si grans la noise des espees & des haches sor hiaumes &
so great the noise of-the swords and of-the axes upon helms and
sor escus. que toute la chites entor le palais en retentist.
upon shields that all the city around the palace thereof resounds
si le rabatent souent & menu si anemi. entre les pies as
so him beat-down often and frequently his enemies between the feet of-the
cheuax. a le carge des grans caus quil li dounent.
horses by the burden of-the great blows which-they to-him give
& des haches & des espees. Et si homme le redrechent
both of-the axes and of-the swords And his men him raise-again
moult uistement qui por li se metent en abandon iusca
very quickly who for him themselves put in abandon until-to
la mort. Si dure issi la mellee moult longuement. tant
the death So lasts thus the melee very long so-long
que phariens i uint poignant bien arme de toutes armes
that Pharien there came spurring well armed with all arms

tels quil couient a cheualier sor vn moult grant cheual. Et
such as-it behooves to knight upon a very great horse And
apres lui hurtent grant partie des cheualiers del pais. &
after him dash great part of-the knights of-the country and
des fiex as borgois meismes. dont asses en i auoit
of-the sons of-the burghers same of-whom enough thereof there had
de preus. Et phariens esgarde. si voit les gens claudas
of valiant And Pharien looks so sees the people (of-)Claudas
qui moult se desfendent vistement. Et claudas meismes
who much themselves defend quickly And Claudas himself
qui moult a perdu de sanc. & neporquant repris a force
who much has lost of blood and nevertheless retaken has force
& alaine & cuer. & se desfent si durement com li
and breath and heart and himself defends so hard as the
cors le puet souffrir. si len prisent moult & vn &
body it can suffer so him-thereof prize much both one and
autre. Et dist phariens meismes. que trop mar i fu teus
other And says Pharien himself that too ill there was such
prinches de terre. quant en lui a desloialte & felounie.
prince of land when in him has disloyalty and félony

Lors li recourut sus li nies pharien moult durement.
Then at-him ran-again upon the nephew (of-)Pharien very hard
Car il na haine sa li non. Et claudas le voit venir
For he not-has hatred except-to him not And Claudas him sees come
qui bien sest aparceus que chis le heit sor toute rien.
who well himself-is perceived that this-one him hates above all thing
Li rois fu grans & bien taillies & de grant forche fust il
The king was great and well shaped and of great force were he
se tant neust de sanc perdu. si sadreche vers son anemi
if so-much not-had-he of blood lost so himself-makes toward his enemy
quil voit venir. Car il aime miex asses sau morir vient
whom-he sees come For he loves better enough if-to dying comes-it

quil mure hardiement. quen faisant samblance ne contenance
that-he may-die boldly than-in making semblance nor countenance
de couardise. Et chil li reuient grant aleure lespee traite.
of cowardice And that-one at-him comes-back great pace the-sword drawn
& il furent andui irie si sentredounent grans cols amont
and they were both angered so each-other-give great blows above
es hiaumes des cleires espees trenchans. si que eles i
on-the helms with-the bright swords cutting so that they there
sont entrees ambes .ij. & embroies. Mais li nies pharien
are entered both two and sunk But the nephew (of-)Pharien
ne sen gabe pas. Car si pesaument la li rois feru.
not himself-thereof jests at-all For so heavily him-has the king struck
comment quil soit empiries ne afeblis que tout la estoune.
however that-he be worsened nor weakened that all him-has stunned
& quil a ambes .ij. les palmes ferues en terre. Et lors
and that-he has both two the palms struck on earth And then
li saut claudas sor le cors. si li esrache le hiaume
at-him leaps Claudas upon the body so from-him tears the helm
de la teste. & moult se met auant que il li puist
from the head and much himself puts forward that he to-him may
coper la teste. Quant phariens i vint poignant & deront
cut the head When Pharien there came spurring and breaks
la presse moult durement au boin cheual sor coi il
the press very hard with-the good horse upon which he
seoit. & fiert .j. des cheualiers claudas qui o li sestoit
sat and strikes one of-the knights (of-)Claudas who with him himself-was
arestes sor son neueu por li ochire. Et phariens le fiert
stopped upon his nephew for him to-kill And Pharien him strikes
si durement. que li haubers ni a duree. si li met
so hard that the hauberk not-there has lasting so to-him puts-he
par dales le mamele ens el coste le fer trenchant. si quil
by beside the breast right in-the side the iron cutting so that-he

labat deuant claudas mort a la terre. puis li laisse
him-strikes-down before Claudas dead to the earth then to-him leaves
le glaiue el cors. & sache du feure lespee blanche &
the lance in-the body and draws from-the sheath the-sword white and
en fiert claudas grant colp amont sor le hiaume. si ca
therewith strikes Claudas great blow above upon the helm so that-to
terre le fait ferir des .ij. palmes. & des .ij. genoils tout
earth him makes strike with-the two palms and with-the two knees all
estordi. Et ses nies qui de grant cuer & de grant visteche
stunned And his nephew who of great heart and of great quickness
estoit li prent as bras si le porte desous lui a terre. &
was him takes in-the arms so him carries below him to earth and
si li veut lespee fichier el cors. Et la fust la guerre
so to-him wishes the-sword to-fix in-the body And there were the war
finee de par claudas. quant phariens est del cheual salis
ended from by Claudas when Pharien is from-the horse leapt
a terre si li tolt. puis li a dit. ha biax nies quest
to earth so from-him takes then to-him has said ah fair nephew what-is
che que vous voles faire. qui voles ochire le millor cheualier
this that you wish to-do who wish to-kill the best knight
del monde & tout le millor prinche qui soit de son
of-the world and all the best prince who may-be of his
eage. Sil mauoit de toutes terres desiretes. & iel peusse
age If-he me-had of all lands disinherited and I-him could
de mort rescoure si le rescouroie ie. Car nus ne porroit
from death rescue so him would-rescue I For anyone not could
restourer mort a si preudomme. Ne il nest mie preudom qui
restore death of so worthy-man Nor he not-is at-all worthy-man who
ne reconnoist al besoig bien & honour con li a fait.
not recognizes at-the need good and honor that-one to-him has done

Comment fait ses nies fiex a putain traitres. si voleis
How says his nephew son of whore traitor so wish-you
rescoure de mort chelui qui vous a fait toutes les hontes.
to-rescue from death that-one who you has done all the shames
Et veut ochire deuant vous sans iugement les fiex a nostre
And wishes to-kill before you without judgment the sons of our
signor lige. Chertes viel cuer & maluais aueis el ventre.
lord liege Certainly old heart and bad have-you in-the belly
Et millor vous a chil qui honte vous porcache que chil
And better to-you has that-one who shame for-you contrives than that-one
qui honor vous fait. Car vrais cuers de preudomme a tous
who honor to-you does For true heart of worthy-man has all
iors honte sele li est faite en ramenbrance. Taisies biax
days shame if-it to-him is done in remembrance Be-silent fair
nies fait phariens. len ne doit pas son signor por nul
nephew says Pharien one not must at-all his lord for any
mesfait mort porcachier ne deshonor. quant on le voit bien
misdeed death contrive nor dishonor when one him sees well
au desous. puis quil nen est issus deuant & partis
at-the under since that-be not-thence is issued before and parted
loiaument de son signor. Et chis est mes sires comment
loyally from his lord And this-one is my lord however
que ie soie ses hom. si le doi ie de mort & de honte
that I be his man so him must I from death and from shame
garandir a mon pooir por la feute garder. & por lommage
protect to my power for the fealty to-keep and for the-homage
que fait li ai. Et les enfans a mon signor qui ie
that done to-him have-I And the children of my lord whose I
sui hom danchiserie. doi ie garder en foi. & por amor
am man by-ancestry must I guard in faith and for love
de noureture que iai en eus & il en moi. Lors a leue
of nurture that I-have in them and they in me Then has raised

claudas par le nazal del hiaume en haut qui bien ot entendu
Claudas by the nasal of-the helm on high who well had heard
les paroles que il ont dites. & il li crie maintenant. com
the words that they have said and he to-him cries at-once as
chil qui de la mort a grant paor a pharien. biax dols
that-one who of the death has great fear ah Pharien fair sweet
amis merci. & gardes que ie ni mure. Car chertes bur
friend mercy and see that I not-there may-die For certainly happily
desistes la parole que vous aues dite. Et tenes mespee ie la
said-you the word that you have said And hold my-sword I it
vous rent. com au plus loial cheualier que ie onques veisse.
to-you render as to-the most loyal knight that I ever saw
Et vous renderai orendroit les .ij. enfans. Et sachies que se
And to-you shall-render right-now the two children And know that if
ie les tenoie a bouorges & vous & eus ni auroient il
I them held at bourges and you and them not-there would-have they
mal par moi. puis ke garantir les vaudries. Car vous aues
harm by me since that to-protect them you-would-wish For you have
orendroit gaaignie mon cuer & mamor a tous iors mais.
right-now won my heart and my-love to all days more
por la grant loialte que iai au besoig en vous troue.
for the great loyalty that I-have at-the need in you found

Pharien's Grief

XIX

Claudas, fainting from his wounds, hands over two greyhounds that everyone takes for the boys. At nightfall the enchantment fails, and Pharien, thinking his lords murdered, tears his hair and robe while the city mourns. A messenger of Claudas is chased back wounded; Claudas arms, has his son's body carried off in a litter, and holds the street with forty knights. Pharien leads the people against him but first parleys, and Claudas, astonished at the greyhounds, protests his innocence and offers to enter Pharien's prison. Pharien, fearing for him among his enemies, takes the offer to the barons.

A chest mot fine la mellee. si fait phariens traire ariere &
At this word ends the melee so makes Pharien draw back both
vns & autres. & dist as plus haus barons du pais qui
ones and others and says to-the most high barons of-the country who
illuec estoient quil latendent. & il lor ira querre les
there were that-they him-may-await and he for-them will-go to-seek the
enfans. Lors sen entre dedens le palais aueuc claudas.
children Then himself-thence enters into the palace with Claudas
& il commande les enfans a amener. & si tost com il la
and he commands the children to bring and so soon as he it-has
commande si sest pasmes por le sanc quil a perdus. lors
commanded so himself-is swooned for the blood that-he has lost then
salent a lui si homme qui moult ont grant paor que il ne
leap to him his men who much have great fear that he —
soit mors. si li ostent son hiaume de la teste a grant
be dead so from-him remove-they his helm from the head at great
besoig. puis si larousent diawe froide tant quil est reuenus
need then so him-sprinkle with-water cold so-long that-he is come-back
de paumison. si a honte grant & ire de che quil sestoit
from swoon so has-he shame great and ire of this that-he himself-was

pasmes deuant la gent. Atant sont mene auant li doi leurier.
swooned before the people Thereupon are led forward the two greyhounds
& quide chascuns qui les voit. que che soient li doi enfant. si
and thinks each who them sees that these be the two children so
les liure claudas a pharien moult angoisseus de son fil dont
them delivers Claudas to Pharien very anguished of his son of-whom
il li remenbre. si sen est pasmes illuec entre lor bras.
it to-him recalls so himself-thereof is swooned there between their arms
Atant prent phariens les .ij. enfans si les enmaine com
Thereupon takes Pharien the two children so them leads-away as
chil qui bien quide que che soient il. & autresi font
that-one who well thinks that these be they and likewise do
li autre. si en font grant ioie & ioine & viel. si les
the others so thereof make-they great joy both young and old so them
enmainent en la tour a grant honour Et moult sont
lead-away into the tower with great honor And much are-they
irie & en blasment pharien. de che quil nauoit colpe
angered and thereof blame Pharien of this that-he not-had cut
claudas la teste. ou souffrist cautres lochesist. Et il dist
(of-)Claudas the head or suffered that-another him-might-kill And he says
que che sachent il que il fust trop grans damages. Car a
that this may-know they that it were too great harm For at
meruelles est preudom. & sachies fait il que il ne tenoit
marvels is-he worthy-man and know says he that he not held
pas les enfans por eus faire mal. Ensi le blasment de tex
at-all the children for them to-do harm Thus him blame of such
i a. & ses nies plus que tout li autre. Car nus ne
there has-it and his nephew more than all the others For anyone not
haoit tant claudas com il faisoit. si en est tant iries de
hated so-much Claudas as he did so thereof is-he so-much angered of
che que il ne lont ochis. que par vn poi quil nist du
this that they not him-have killed that for a little that-he issues from-the

sens. Dautre part est claudas en son palais. et recommenche
sense On-other side is Claudas in his palace and begins-again
le grant duel de son fil que il voit mort. Anchois que
the great grief of his son whom he sees dead Before that
li haubers li soit ius del dos ostes. lors sont li
the hauberk to-him be down from-the back removed then are the
mire auant venus si li ostent le tronchon de lespaule
physicians forward come so from-him remove the stump from the-shoulder
dont li nies pharien lauoit feru. puis li afaitent la
wherewith the nephew (of-)Pharien him-had struck then to-him dress-they the
plaie de la ioe qui moult lauoit greue. si latournent &
wound of the cheek which much him-had pained so him-prepare-they and
appareillent issi com il seiuent que mestier est. Et il suefre
array thus as they know that need is And he suffers
quanquil li font moult uiguereusement & de grant cuer.
whatever-they to-him do very vigorously and with great heart
Quant il li ont la plaie de la ioe affaitie & chele de
When they to-him have the wound of the cheek dressed and that-one of
lespaule moult bien bendee. si recommenche son duel. dont
the-shoulder very well bandaged so begins-again-he his grief whereof
nus ne lose castoier. si en fait tant que merueille
anyone not him-dares admonish so thereof makes-he so-much that marvel
est comment il dure. Mais por che quil ne seit comment
is how he lasts But for this that-he not knows how
il li est a auenir. remet arriere le hauberc el dos.
it to-him is to befall puts-he back the hauberk on-the back
& commande que de sa gent ne soit nus si hardis qui
and commands that of his people not be anyone so bold who
se desgarnisse ne tant ne quant de ses armes. Car
himself may-unarm neither so-much nor how-much of his arms For
il ne seit que lor est a auenir. & il est entre teus gens
he not knows what to-them is to befall and he is among such people

qui ne laiment pas che seit il bien. Car asses la hui
who not him-love at-all this knows he well For enough it-has-he today
esproue & assaie. Apres fait courir .iij. cheuax de fer
proven and tried After makes-he cover three horses with iron
qui sont en sa sale qui moult sont & boin & bel en qui
which are in his hall which very are both good and fair in which
il se fioit moult daler a garison se besoig li croissoit.
he himself trusted much of-going to safety if need to-him grew
Ensi appareille li rois claudas soi & ses hommes. ne a
Thus prepares the king Claudas himself and his men nor to
nului ne descueure chose quil ait en pense. Ne por che
anybody not uncovers thing that-he may-have in thought Nor for this
ne lait son duel a faire de son fil. Car tant lamoit
not leaves-he his grief to make of his son For so-much him-loved-he
que oublier nel puet. Et dautre part resont en la tour
that forget not-him can-he And on-other side again-are in the tower
phariens & ses gens. & font grant ioie de che que lor
Pharien and his people and make great joy of this that their
signors quident auoir. Mais si tost com vint a lanuitier tout
lords think-they to-have But so soon as came-it to the-nightfall all
droitement a chele eure que la damoisele del lac descouri les
rightly at that hour that the damsel of-the lake uncovered the
enfans a ceus qui auoec li estoient quant ele lor dona a
children to those who with her were when she to-them gave to
mangier. a chele eure meisme furent descouert & coneu li
eat at that hour same were uncovered and known the
doi leurier en la tor de gannes. Et furent tout si esbahi.
two greybounds in the tower of gannes And were-they all so amazed
que mais nule gent ne furent si esbahi. Si recommenche li
that more any people not were so amazed So begins-again the
dels & langoisse & la dolor des cheualiers de benoyc. &
grief and the-anguish and the sorrow of-the knights of benoic and

crient tout a vne vois que ore iront il claudas ochire.
cry all with one voice that now will-go they Claudas to-kill
Ou il i moront tuit. Car ore seiuent il bien. quil
Or they there will-die all For now know they well that-he
a lor .ij. signors ochis. Mais li dels parest trop grans que
has their two lords killed But the grief wholly-is too great that
phariens fait seur tous les autres. comme chis qui iamais
Pharien makes above all the others as this-one who ever-more
ne quide auoir nul recourier en ses signors. en qui il auoit
not thinks to-have any recovery in his lords in whom he had
mise toute lamor & la chierte quil pooit auoir en chest
put all the-love and the dearness that-he could have in this
siecle. Si crient & quide auoir perdu quanquil a nori &
world So fears-he and thinks to-have lost whatever-he has nurtured and
garde. si len vient si tres grant angoisse au cuer. que
guarded so to-him-thereof comes so very great anguish at-the heart that
par vn poi quil ne li part. Il detort ses puins & fiert
for a little that-it — to-him bursts He wrings his fists and strikes
lun en lautre menuement. Il esrache ses cauex a grans
the-one on the-other often He tears his hairs in great
puingnies. Il deront sa robe si durement que les pieches
fistfuls He tears his robe so hard that the pieces
en gisent enuiron lui & loins & pres. Il esgratine sa
thereof lie around him both far and near He scratches his
fache & son col si que li sans vermaus en degoute aual
face and his neck so that the blood red thereof drips down
son cors iusca la terre. & brait & crie a si haute vois.
his body until-to the earth and brays and cries with so high voice
que len lot de plus loins cuns ars ne ietast a vne
that one him-heard from more far than-a bow — would-throw at one
fie de toutes pars. Il fait tant que tous li pueples i
time from all sides He does so-much that all the people there

avne. ne nus ne le voit qui en son cuer nen ait
gathers nor anyone not him sees who in his heart not-thereof may-have
trop grant pitie. si pleurent tout & toutes si durement. com
too great pity so weep all and all so hard as
se chascuns veist morir la riens el monde que miex amast.
if each saw die the thing in-the world that best he-loved
Grans est li dels que phariens maine & chil ki entor lui
Great is the grief that Pharien makes and those who around him
sont si est si grans la noise & li cris que claudas lot
are so is so great the noise and the cry that Claudas it-heard
cleirement de son palais. Il se meruelle moult que che
clearly from his palace He himself marvels much what this
puet estre. sel fait enquerre & demander. & len li a
can be so-it makes-he inquire and ask and one to-him has
dit que chest en la tour. & il i enuoie maintenant. &
said that this-is in the tower and he there sends at-once and
quant il se regarde si voit venir son message fuiant ariere
when he himself looks so sees-he come his messenger fleeing back
& a grant paour de mort. Car chil de la ville le cachient
and in great fear of death For those of the town him chase
a haches & a espees & a glaiues & a coutiax agus
with axes and with swords and with lances and with knives sharp
& trenchans quil li lanchent apres le dos. si li
and cutting which-they at-him hurl after the back so to-him
ont teus .iij. plaies faites quil a mestier de mire se garir
have such three wounds made that-he has need of physician if to-heal
en veut. Lors est li rois moult esbahis. quant il voit
thereof he-wishes Then is the king very amazed when he sees
son seriant uenir deuant lui en teil maniere. Il li demande
his sergeant come before him in such manner He him asks
que che a este. Et il li crie si com il puet. Car li
what this has been And he to-him cries so as he can For the

sans lafeblist moult qui de ses plaies est issus. hai sires
blood him-weakens much which from his wounds is issued ah lord
fait il ales vous ent a forche de cheual tant com vous
says he go yourself thence by force of horse so-much as to-you
loist. Car tous li pueples dui vient chi por chest palais
is-allowed For all the people of-today comes here for this palace
abatre. & por vostre cors tout detrenchier. Car il dient
to-strike-down and for your body all to-back-up For they say
que vous aues ochis les .ij. fiex au roi bohort & leur
that you have killed the two sons of-the king Bors and to-them
aues ou lieu des .ij. enfans baillie .ij. leuriers encaenes. si
have-you in-the place of-the two children handed two greyhounds chained so
ne vistes onques gent si entalentes de mal faire. & si tost
not saw-you ever people so eager of harm to-do and so soon
com il me connurent me coururent sus & mont conre
as they me knew me ran upon and me-have dealt-with
itel com vous poes veoir. anchois que ie peusse auoir loisir
such as you can see before that I could have leisure
de conter ma parole. si sai bien que ie sui a mort plaies.
to tell my word so know-I well that I am to death wounded
Quant claudas entent la parole si saut sus en pies &
When Claudas hears the word so leaps-he up on feet and
demande sespee & son hiaume & son escu. & commande
asks his-sword and his helm and his shield and commands
toutes ses gens a apparellier. puis a dit oiant tous ses
all his people to prepare then has-he said hearing all his
hommes & vns & autres. Ahi regnes de benoyc & cheli
men both ones and others Ah realm of benoic and that-one
de gannes. tant maues pene & trauellie. Moult fait
of gannes so-much me-have-you pained and labored Very does
grant folie auoec le grant pechie qui i est chis qui
great folly with the great sin which there is this-one who

autrui desirite & tolt sa terre. Car ia asseur vne seule
another disinherits and takes his land For ever secure a single
eure ni demourra ne par nuit ne par ior. & moult a
hour not-there will-dwell-be nor by night nor by day and very has
petite signorie sor son pueple. chil qui les cuers nen
little lordship over his people that-one who the hearts not-thereof
puet auoir. voirement est nature domme commanderesse sor
can have truly is nature of-man commandress over
tous establissemens. Car ele fait amer son droiturier signor
all establishments For it makes love one's rightful lord
de sor tous autres. por che est fols & awles qui por
from above all others for this is foolish and blind who for
couoitise de la terriene signorie qui si poi dure. se carge
covetousness of the earthly lordship which so little lasts himself loads
de pechies & de la puor de nul homme desireter. Car
with sins and with the stench of any man to-disinherit For
nule grans dolors ne puet entrer ne paroir en cuer mortel.
any great sorrow not can enter nor appear in heart mortal
que destre desiretes & essillies. fors seulement de perdre
as of-being disinherited and exiled except only of losing
son carnel ami loial. Car a chele dolor ne se puet nule
his carnal friend loyal For to that sorrow not itself can any
angoisse prendre. & Ie men sui bien apercheus
anguish take and I myself-thereof am well perceived

Atant a sespee chainte si lache son hiaume isnelement
Thereupon has-he his-sword girded so laces his helm quickly
& fait ateler .ij. palefrois a vne litiere quil auoit fait
and makes harness two palfreys to a litter which-he had made
faire tantost. si fait leuer le cors son fil. Car laissier nel
make straightway so makes raise the body (of-)his son For to-leave not-it
i uaudra il pas. Apres est issus hors parmi la porte. si
there will-wish he at-all After is-he issued out through the gate so

est montes sor .j. de ses cheuax couert de fer. Et a pris
is mounted upon one of his horses covered with iron And has taken
le trauers de le rue entre lui & .xl. cheualiers de ses plus
the breadth of the street between him and forty knights of his most
esleus. tous entalentes de lor cors desfendre sil i vient
chosen all eager of their bodies to-defend if-it there comes
qui les assaille. Tant a este claudas el pas de la rue que
who them may-assail So-long has been Claudas in-the pass of the street that
ses fiex est hors & tous ses autres harnois. Et lors vient
his son is out and all his other harness And then comes
phariens & sa compaignie si i sont li cheualier du pais
Pharien and his company so there are the knights of-the country
moult grant partie. & tout li borgois de la chite & lor
very great part and all the burghers of the city and their
fiex qui armes puent porter La nuis fu au iour mellee
sons who arms can bear The night was with-the day mingled
Mais tant i auoit lanternes & autres clartes. que autresi
But so-many there had-it lanterns and other lights that likewise
pooit len veoir le lonc de la rue com par ior. Et phariens
could one see the length of the street as by day And Pharien
cheuauchoit tout premiers. le lanche droite. lescu pris par les
rode all first the lance upright the-shield taken by the
enarmes si samble bien a meruelles prodom la ou il siet
straps so seems-he well at marvels worthy-man there where he sits
sor le destrier fort & isnel. Et bien samble que tout doiuent
upon the charger strong and swift And well seems-it that all must
a lui obeir & vn & autre & si font il com preudomme.
to him obey both one and other and so do they as worthy-man
& loial lont esproue & vn & autre ore & autrefois.
and loyal him-have-they proven both one and other now and other-times
Mais a merueilles fait grant duel & se demente de
But at marvels makes-he great grief and himself laments in

grant maniere. & ramentoit toutes les boines teches lyonel
great manner and recalls all the good traits (of-)Lionel
son signor en sa complainte & les bohort son frere apres.
his lord in his complaint and those (of-)Bors his brother after
Sire fait il com il est grans dolors & tres grans damages
Lord says he how it is great sorrow and very great harm
que vous estes mort en teil eage. qui esties li miroirs &
that you are dead in such age who were the mirror and
la merueille de tout le monde. des enfans qui ore i
the marvel of all the world of-the children who now there
sont. Car poi auies plus de .x. ans. bien esties com enfes
are For little had-you more than ten years well were-you as child
deage. Mais de sens & de proeche esties vous vieillars que
of-age But of sense and of prowess were you old-man than
nus. sun petit fuissies plus amesures de hardement. vous
anyone if-a little were-you more measured of boldness you
esties biax & bien entechies sor tous enfans. vous esties
were fair and well endowed above all children you were
sages & connoissans de consel loial. se ne fust contre vostre
wise and knowing of counsel loyal if not were against your
honor quels que fust li meschies de la honte vengier ne
honor whatever that were the mischief of the shame to-avenge not
vous peust nus hons torner par consel quil vous dounast.
you could any man turn by counsel which-he to-you might-give
comment que vous li otrijssies sa volente. Car tels estoit
however that you to-him might-grant his will For such was
li vostres cuers que nus nel pooit esfrener par enseignier.
the your heart that anyone not-it could bridle by teaching
se vous esties apercheus auant & nous apres. Car maus puet
if you were perceived before and we after For evil can
uenir de refuser de despire consel loial. Ensi pleure phariens
come of refusing of despising counsel loyal Thus weeps Pharien

& regrete lyonel. & li coulent les grosses larmes tout
and laments Lionel and to-him flow the big tears all
contreual le vis. Et lors est venus la ou claudas garde
down the face And then is-he come there where Claudas guards
la rue. & ses gens qui iluec sont assamble por aus
the street and his people who there are assembled for themselves
desfendre. Quant claudas voit pharien si le met a raison
to-defend When Claudas sees Pharien so him puts to reason
premierement. Et phariens a fait traire ariere tous cheus
first And Pharien has made draw back all those
de se partie & cheualiers & borgois. tant quil eust au
of his party both knights and burghers so-long that-he had to-the
roi claudas parle. volentiers destornast la mellee sil peust
king Claudas spoken willingly would-he-turn-aside the melee if-it could
estre. Car de verite sauoit que les gens claudas ne pooient
be For of truth knew-he that the people (of-)Claudas not could
as lors assambler. que grant damage ni eust des
with-the theirs join that great harm not-there would-have of-the
.ij. parties. si auoit trop grant paor de son neueu lanbegue
two parties so had-he too great fear of his nephew Lambegue
qui sor toute rien haoit claudas. Car bien sauoit que sil
who above all thing hated Claudas For well knew-he that if-they
sentrecouroient longement sus. Il couendroit que li vns en
each-other-ran long upon It would-behoove that the one thereof
recheust la mort. Et claudas estoit tex cheualiers que chil
might-receive the death And Claudas was such knight that that-one
ne porroit pas a lui longement durer che quidoit il bien.
not could at-all against him long last this thought he well
& se claudas lochioit il auroit le cuer si angoisseus que il
and if Claudas him-killed he would-have the heart so anguished that he
ne se poroit tenir por feute ne por hommage de li ochire
not himself could hold for fealty nor for homage from him to-kill

se com li est auis sil en pooit en lieu venir. & lors
so as to-him is opinion if-he thereof could in place come and then
seroit desloialtes. dont moult se valdroit garder sil pooit.
would-be disloyalty whereof much himself would-wish to-guard if-he could
Toutes ches choses met phariens deuant ses iex. & si
All these things puts Pharien before his eyes and so
en est moult angoisseus & entrepris Et claudas lapele
thereof is-he very anguished and distressed And Claudas him-calls
si li dit. phariens que venes vous querre en teil maniere.
so to-him says Pharien what come you to-seek in such manner
entre vous & ches miens hommes que ie voi chi. est chou
between you and these my men whom I see here is this
por mon bon ou por mon damage dites le moi. Car de
for my good or for my harm tell it me For of
vous ne daus ne quideroie ie auoir se bien non. ains auoie
you nor of-them not would-think I to-have except good not rather had-I
fait por vostre amor & por les lor quanques vous mauies
done for your love and for the theirs whatever you me-had
requis. ou fust monor ou fust ma honte. Sire claudas fait
asked or were-it my-honor or were-it my shame Lord Claudas says
phariens il fu voirs que vous nous creantastes a rendre nos
Pharien it was true that you to-us promised to render our
.ij. signors. qui fil furent au roi bohort. & vous nous
two lords who sons were of-the king Bors and you to-us
aues baillies por els .ij. leuriers encaenes. si nous vient
have handed for them two greyhounds chained so to-us comes-it
a moult grant despit. Et se vous ne men crees vees chi
to very great despite And if you not me-thereof believe see here
ambes .ij. les chiens & lors li monstre. Et quant claudas
both two the dogs and then to-him shows-he And when Claudas
les voit si en est trop esbahis. & dit quant il puet
them sees so thereof is-he too amazed and says when he can

parler. ha! las che sont les .ij. leuriers que la damoisele
speak ah alas these are the two greyhounds which the damsel
amena iehui deuant moi; la ou ie manioie. & chele en
brought today before me there where I ate and that-one thence
a par son barat enmene les .ij. enfans che sai ie bien.
has by her trickery led-away the two children this know I well
Mais ne sai se che fu por mon bien ou por mon mal.
But not know-I if this was for my good or for my ill
Mais en grant paine en sui entres. Lors se reprent
But in great pain thereby am-I entered Then himself takes-again
garde phariens que il a voir dit. & claudas li redit.
heed Pharien that he has true said and Claudas to-him says-again
Biax dols amis. ne me mescrees vous pas des .ij. enfans
Fair sweet friend not me misbelieve you at-all of-the two children
que ie les aie ne ochis ni enprisounes. Car ie sui tous
that I them may-have nor killed nor imprisoned For I am all
appareillies de faire vers vous & vers tout chest pueple
prepared to do toward you and toward all this people
quanque vous dirois loialment que ien doi faire de loialte.
whatever you will-say loyally that I-thereof must do of loyalty
Et si nel di pas por els tant com ie fais por vous.
And so not-it say-I at-all for them so-much as I do for you
Car tant vous ai esprouei & fin & loial al grant
For so-much you have-I proven both fine and loyal at-the great
besoig. que vous ne me loeries nule rien que ie ne fesisse
need that you not me would-advise any thing that I not would-do
au parestroit. ne ia ne mait diex quant ie vi onques
at-the utmost nor ever not me-may-help God when I saw ever
cheualier nul en qui ie me valsisse tant fier comme ie
knight any in whom I myself would-wish so-much trust as I
ferai en vous des ore mais. tant com il vous plaira a
shall-do in you from now more so-long as it you will-please to

entremetre de mon conselg. & dites moi outreement que
busy of my counsel and tell me utterly what
vous voles que iou en fache por che que vous men
you wish that I thereof may-do for this that you me-thereof
crees. & iel ferai sans contredit. ou soit sairement ou
may-believe and I-it shall-do without gainsaying or be-it oath or
fianche de moi & de mes gens toutes. ou me meterois en
pledge of me and of my people all or me you-will-put in
prison se vous voles en vostre garde. Car en autrui baillie ne
prison if you wish in your keeping For in another's keeping not
me meteroie ie pas que en la vostre. Car plus vous ai
myself would-put I at-all than in the yours For more you have-I
encore troue vrai & loial que nus des autres. Et quant vous
yet found true and loyal than any of-the others And when you
saures que li enfant seront sain & sauf. & que ie ne li
will-know that the children will-be sound and safe and that I nor the
mien nen sommes de rien saisi. si me remetes en autel
mine not-thereof are of anything seized so me put-back in such
maniere com ie sui ore. Et que vous me preignies encontre
manner as I am now And that you me may-take against
tous hommes a garantir. tant com ie serai en vostre garde.
all men to protect so-long as I shall-be in your keeping
phariens entent claudas qui si se met du tout en tot
Pharien hears Claudas who so himself puts of-the all in all
en se manaie si len prent moult grant pities. Et bien
in his power so him-thereof takes very great pity And well
quide & croit quil nait colpes en la mort as .ij.
thinks-he and believes that-he not-may-have guilt in the death of-the two
enfans. & que bien les puet auoir emportes la damoisele.
children and that well them can have carried-off the damsel
si se porpense en quel maniere il poroit claudas & le
so himself bethinks-he in what manner he could Claudas and the

pueple quil lor seust acomplir lor volente. & dautre part
people that-he to-them could accomplish their will and on-other side
il seit de voir que sil prent claudas en sa garde & en
he knows of truth that if-he takes Claudas in his keeping and in
conduit il nel pora pas garandir vers lambegue son
conduct he not-him will-be-able at-all to-protect against Lambegue his
neueu qui trop le heit. ne vers la gent de gannes ne de
nephew who too-much him hates nor against the people of gannes nor of
benoyc qui ne laiment pas de cuer. anchois crient quil
benoic who not him-love at-all from heart rather fears-he that-they
ne li ocheissent entre les mains. Et si reset claudas
— him might-kill between the hands And so again-knows-he Claudas
si preu & si fier & si hardi tresdurement. que sil le
so valiant and so fierce and so bold very-hard that if-he him
volt recheuoir a mener en se prison. quil ni entrast
wished to-receive to lead into his prison that-he not-there would-enter
pas legierement. car trop i aroit grant sanblanche
at-all lightly for too-much there would-have-it great semblance
de paor & de couardise. Car encore nest il mie si au
of fear and of cowardice For yet not-is he at-all so at-the
desos quil deust faire tel meschief ne si hontex. non
under that-he ought do such mischief nor so shameful not
feroit il se amors & grant fiance de pharien ne li faisoit
would-do he if love and great trust of Pharien not him made
faire. Car ne poroit estre que puis ne li fust atorne a
do For not could-it be that after not to-him were turned to
coardise que a deboinairete de mainte gent & che seit bien
cowardice than to kindness by many people and this knows well
phariens que sil tout de son gre se voloit mettre en
Pharien that if-he all of his will himself wished to-put in
sa prison. & il i morust par sa maluaise garde. il en
his prison and he there died by his bad keeping he thereof

seroit hounis a tous iors mais. Et bien seit que garandir
would-be shamed to all days more And well knows-he that protect
nel poroit mie. si ne seit quil en puisse faire. &
not-him could-be at-all so not knows-he what-be thereof may do and
se porpense en son cuer meisme moult longement.
himself bethinks in his heart same very long

Lors li dist sire claudas il est voirs que ie sui vostres
Then to-him said-be lord Claudas it is true that I am your
hom & chist autre qui chi sont auoeques moi. si nauons
man and these others who here are with me so not-have-we
nul talent de mesprendre vers vous tant com vous voldrois
any desire of misdoing toward you so-long as you will-wish
enuers nous estre loiax. & ches gens vous mescroient de
toward us to-be loyal and these people you misbelieve of
ceste chose. & vous en offres tant a faire quil ne samble
this thing and you thereof offer so-much to do that-it not seems
pas que vous en soies encoupes de nule rien. Et ie enuois
at-all that you thereof be guilty of any thing And I thence-go
parler a cheste gent qui chi sont. dont il en i a asses
to-speak to this people who here are of-whom it thereof there has enough
de plus vaillans & plus preudommes que ie ne sui. Et che
of more worthy and more worthy-men than I — am And this
quil en voldront faire ie le vous saurai a dire ia. Car
that-they thereof will-wish to-do I it to-you shall-know to tell now For
ie nen valdroie estre blasmes ne de eus aidier vers vous
I not-thereof would-wish to-be blamed nor of them to-aid against you
a tort. encore soient il mi ami carnel & mi pareil.
with wrong yet be they my friends carnal and my peers
si nai ie cure de vous greuer a vostre droit. encore
so not-have I care of you to-harm against your right yet
aies vous la terre a mes liges signors a tort saisie.
may-have you the land of my liege lords with wrong seized

Pharien's Counsel

xx

The barons agree to imprison Claudas, but Pharien would keep him himself, and Lambegue reproaches his uncle for guarding the traitor. Pharien answers with counsel for the young: in council let elders speak, in battle strike first, and never murder a lord to whom one has sworn, though a wronged vassal may renounce his homage before his peers. The young men, led by Lambegue, refuse Pharien's terms, so he returns to Claudas, who swears on the saints of his chapel that he has not harmed the children, and Pharien promises to aid him. The fight in the narrow street lasts long, while Pharien strikes no blow.

Atant est venus as barons de benoyc & de gannes.
Thereupon is-he come to-the barons of benoic and of gannes
dont li plus poissant & li millor latendoient en mi la
of-whom the most powerful and the best him-awaited in midst the
rue. les hiaumes lachies & les escus au col & lor
street the helms laced and the shields at-the neck and to-them
monstre la parole ensi com claudas lor a offert. Or si
shows the word thus as Claudas to-them has offered Now so
me dites fait il que vous en uaudrois faire entre vous. Et
me tell says he what you thereof will-wish to-do among you And
il sacordent tout a che quil le prendront volentiers. sil
they themselves-agree all to this that-they him will-take willingly if-he
sen veut mettre en la prison. Et il lor redist apres
himself-thereof wishes to-put in the prison And he to-them says-again after
dont voldrai iou fait il que vous me fianchies loialment.
then shall-wish I says he that you to-me may-pledge loyally
que il ni aura mal ne anui par nul de vous. tant que
that it not-there will-have harm nor trouble by any of you so-long that
vous sachies vraiement quil ait mors nos .ij. signors.
you may-know truly that-he may-have killed our two lords

Et lors si couendra encore que vous le destrusies par
And then so will-behoove yet that you him may-destroy by
iugement. & si voldrai por che quil ne se veut mettre
judgment and so shall-wish-I for this that-he not himself wishes to-put
en nule garde fors en la moie que vous le laissies en ma
in any keeping except in the mine that you him may-leave in my
prison. Et que nus nen sera garde se ie non. Car
prison And that anyone not-thereof will-be guard except I not For
dont seroie ie hounis se vous lochies malement apres che
then would-be I shamed if you him-killed wrongly after this
que ie lauroie creante a garder. Comment fait lambegues
that I it-would-have promised to guard How says Lambegue
ses nies biax oncles. si voles garder le traitor qui nos
his nephew fair uncle so wish-you to-guard the traitor who our
liges signors a ochis & desiretes. Et vous a fait tant de
liege lords has killed and disinherited And you has done so-much of
honte & laidure. que se tous li pueples le sauoit aussi bien
shame and outrage that if all the people it knew as well
com ie sai. vous ne deuries iamais estre ois ni escoutes.
as I know you not ought ever-more to-be heard nor listened-to
Biax nies fait phariens de toi ne me merueil ie pas. se
Fair nephew says Pharien of thee not myself marvel I at-all if
tu nas poi de raison en tes affaires. Car len uoit gaires
thou not-hast little of reason in thy affairs For one sees much
auenir en nule terre que grant sens & grant proeche soient
befall in any land that great sense and great prowess be
ensamble herbergie en cuer denfant. Et il est voirs que de
together lodged in heart of-child And it is true that of
la proeche as tu asses selonc leage que tu as. Tant que
the prowess hast thou enough according-to the-age that thou hast So-much that
tu en vois vn poi mains cler el mireor de sapience. si
thou thereof seest a little less clear in-the mirror of wisdom so

tensegnerai ore vn poi de sens. Car ie i uoi des ore mais
thee-shall-I-teach now a little of sense For I there see from now more
plus cler que tu ne fais en moult de choses. Et se tu cest
more clear than thou — dost in many of things And if thou this
ensegnement vels retenir. moult en poras amender &
teaching wilt retain much thereby wilt-be-able to-amend both
tu & tout li enfant qui en pris veulent monter par grant
thou and all the children who in prize wish to-rise by great
proeche. Et garde que tant com tu seras en enfance se tu
prowess And see that so-long as thou wilt-be in childhood if thou
es en lieu ou len consaut de grant affaire que ia ta parole
art in place where one counsels of great affair that ever thy word
ni soit oie ne tes consaus. Iusques la que tout li plus
not-there be heard nor thy counsels Until there that all the most
anchien de toi auront parle. Et se tu viens en bataille ou
ancient than thee will-have spoken And if thou comest into battle or
en poigneis de guerre. ou en lieu la grant cheualerie soit
into skirmish of war or in place there great chivalry be
assamblee. garde que ia ni atendes plus ione ne plus viel
assembled see that ever not-there thou-await more young nor more old
de toi. Mais fier deuant tous les autres des esperons por
than thee But strike before all the others with-the spurs for
faire .j. biau caup la ou tu poras ataindre. Car en pris
to-make a fair blow there where thou wilt-be-able to-reach For in prize
& en honor darmes ne doit nus atendre ne ione ne viel
and in honor of-arms not must anyone await neither young nor old
por conquerre honor et pris. Mais as grans consaus douner
for to-win honor and prize But at-the great counsels to-give
doiuent li enfant atendre as plus viex. & tant saches
must the children wait for-the more old and so-much know
tu bien de voir. que tresgrant honors gist en morir par
thou well of truth that very-great honor lies in dying by

hardement & par proece. & grans hontes & grant reproche
boldness and by prowess and great shames and great reproach
vient de dire fole parole & fol consel. Cheste essample
comes from saying foolish word and foolish counsel This example
tai ore trait auant por che que tu mas blasme
to-thee-have-I now drawn forward for this that thou me-hast blamed
deuant tous ches preudommes qui chi sont. qui miex seiuent
before all these worthy-men who here are who better know
que est sens & raisons que tu ne seis. espoir si a chi
what is sense and reason than thou — knowest perhaps so has-it here
asses de tex qui bien sacorderoient a la mort claudas. fust
enough of such who well would-agree to the death (of-)Claudas were-it
a tort ou a droit. Et sil estoit mors par eus sans
with wrong or with right And if-he were dead by them without
forfait apparissant. si en seroient tout honi a tous iors
misdeed apparent so thereof would-be all shamed to all days
mais & vn & autre. Car ie ne voi chaiens si haut homme
more both one and other For I not see in-here so high man
ne si loial qui ne li ait feute faite & hommage a
nor so loyal who not to-him may-have fealty done and homage with
iointes mains. Li vn de lor boin gre & li autre a forche.
joined hands The ones of their good will and the others by force
Et puis que li cheualiers fait tant quil fait hommage ne
And since that the knight does so-much that-he does homage or
feute. qui que le fache. il le doit garder comme son cors
fealty whoever that it may-do he him must guard as his body
de tous periex. & diex ne fist onques si haute cort ou
from all perils and God not made ever so high court where
ie nosasse bien desraisnier. Car ia por loialte desfendre
I not-would-dare well maintain For ever for loyalty defending
ne sera loiax hons hounis. & por che sachent tout chist
not will-be loyal man shamed and for this may-know all these

cheualier que ie ci voi quil ont a garder le cors claudas
knights whom I here see that-they have to guard the body (of-)Claudas
comme les lor par la feuete quil li ont faite. Ne ie
as the theirs by the fealty which-they to-him have done Nor I
ne sai nule plus laide desloialte que de son signor ochire.
not know any more ugly disloyalty than of his lord to-kill
Mais se li sires mesprent vers son homme ou li mesfait.
But if the lord misdoes toward his man or to-him misdoes
ses hons len doit a raison mettre par ses pareus par
his man him-thereof must to reason put by his peers by
le terme dune quarentaine. & se des lors ne puet rapeler
the term of-a forty-days and if from then not can-he recall
a sa droiture. si li rende son hommage deuant ses
to his right so to-him may-render his homage before his
pers. non pas en repost. Car la cose aperte porte tesmoing
peers not at-all in hidden For the thing open bears witness
de loialte. & chose reposte senefie maluaiste & felonie. Et
of loyalty and thing hidden signifies wickedness and felony And
se li sires ne se veut vers son homme amender na droit
if the lord not himself wishes toward his man to-amend nor right
tenir des que son hommage aura guerpi. sil li puet
to-hold since that his homage he-will-have forsaken if-he to-him can
forfaire & del sien prendre il ni a nule maluaistie.
do-wrong and of-the his take it not-there has any wickedness

Mais de son cors ochire ne a mort liurer se gart. Car
But of his body to-kill nor to death to-deliver himself may-guard For
il ne doit par ses mains mort recheuoir. sencontre li ne fait
he not must by his hands death receive if-against him not does-he
murdre ou felounie ou traison. Et qui autrement espant le
murder or felony or treason And who otherwise spills the
sanc son signor. il est traitres & pariures & murdriers &
blood (of-)his lord he is traitor and perjurer and murderer and

foi mentie. & puet len tous les .vij. pechies creminaus trouer
faith belied and can one all the seven sins criminal find
en lui. por che seignor vous monstre iou que vous vaudrois
in him for this lords to-you show I what you will-wish
faire de cheste chose. Car se vous voles seurte faire a moi que
to-do of this thing For if you wish surety to-make to me that
claudas naura garde de nul de vous combien quil ait
Claudas not-will-have care of any of you however-much that-he may-have
forfait. que vous ne lochires sans le iugement de la maison
misdone that you not him-will-kill without the judgment of the house
le roi artu & ie le prendrai en ma baillie a garandir
(of-)the king Arthur and I him shall-take in my keeping to protect
contre tous hommes. Et se vous isi faire ne le voles. si fache
against all men And if you thus to-do not it wish so may-do
chascuns del miex quil puet. Car ie ne me voel pas honir
each of-the best that-he can For I not myself wish at-all to-shame
en terre a tous iours mais por la mort a vn seul homme
on earth to all days more for the death of a single man
si laide & si honteuse. ne perdre mame apres sans fin &
so ugly and so shameful nor to-lose my-soul after without end and
sans recourier. Car ie ne voi mie comment il puisse auoir en
without recovery For I not see at-all how he may have in
lautre siecle lonor qui iamais ne prendrai fin que chelui de
the-other world the-honor which ever not will-take end who that-one of
chest siecle aura par sa deserte perdue & par sa desloiaute.
this world will-have by his desert lost and by his disloyalty
Or vous en conseillies a vous meismes. & me dites
Now yourselves thereof counsel with you selves and me tell
chou que vous en voldrois tenir. Et lors se trait a vne
this that you thereof will-wish to-hold And then himself draws to one
part & chil parolent ensamble. se i a tex qui loent que
side and those speak together so there has-it such who advise that

il ne preignent ia claudas en manaie ni en conduit. Car
they not may-take ever Claudas in protection nor in conduct For
orendroit le peuent a forche prendre. comme cheli qui est
right-now him can-they by force take as that-one who is
a si grant meschief qui na pas le tierche part de gent.
at so great mischief who not-has at-all the third part of people
non pas le quinte quil en ont. & si sont en lor pooir
not at-all the fifth that-they thereof have and so are-they in their power
& en lor terre. A che se sont acorde tout li bacheler
and in their land To this themselves are agreed all the bachelors
a vne vois. Mais deseure tous les autres si acorde lanbegues
with one voice But above all the others so agrees Lambegue
li nies pharien. Et dist & iure que claudas na nul pooir
the nephew (of-)Pharien And says and swears that Claudas not-has any power
a eus. que prins ou mors ne soit anuit. & il & toutes
against them that taken or dead not be tonight both he and all
ses gens sil en auoit encore autretant. Ensi ont lor
his people if-he thereof had yet as-much Thus have-they their
conselg fine si vienent a pharien & li dient que ia nel
counsel ended so come-they to Pharien and to-him say that ever not-him
prendront en teil maniere. Mais sil se veut rendre a eus
they-will-take in such manner But if-he himself wishes to-render to them
& en lor manaie metre il le prendront. ne ne veulent que
and in their protection to-put they him will-take nor not wish-they that
nus nen soit saisi se par eus non. En non dieu fait
anyone not-thereof be seized except by them not In name (of-)God says
phariens che ne li loerai ie ia. Or vous en couiengne
Pharien this not to-him shall-advise I ever Now to-you thereof may-it-befall
bien & vous & lui. car ie ne men melerai ia volentiers
well both you and him for I not myself-thereof shall-meddle ever willingly
de lui plus greuer. Et il est si preudom que asseis puet contre
of him more to-harm And he is so worthy-man that enough can-he against

vous rendre meleie. & puis quil vous offre plus que raison
you render melee and since that-be to-you offers more than reason
si se desfende durement. que tant ni gaingneres que
so himself may-defend hard that so-much not-there you-will-gain that
au double ni perdes. anchois que viegne au partir
at-the double not-there you-may-lose before that may-come-it to-the parting
de la mellee. puis est venus ariere a claudas si li dist.
of the melee then is-he come back to Claudas so to-him said
Sire sire or vous desfendes al miex que vous poes. Car
Lord lord now yourself defend to-the best that you can For
ore vous est mestiers. Car ie ne ne puis vers nostre gent la
now to-you is-it need For I not not can toward our people the
pais trouer. se ne vous metes outreement en lor merchi. non
peace find if not yourself put utterly in their mercy no
fait claudas. & que men loes vous biax dous amis. en
says Claudas and what me-thereof advise you fair sweet friend in
qui toute ma fiance est au grant besoig. Car bien sachies
whom all my trust is at-the great need For well know
que ien ferai tot vostre los outreement. Comment fait
that I-thereof shall-do all your advice utterly How says
phariens. plus vous fies en moi quil ne font tuit. Et ie
Pharien more yourself you-trust in me than-they — do all And I
vous loe que vous vous desfendes comme preudom. Car vous
you advise that you yourself may-defend as worthy-man For you
aueis asses mellee encontre aus tous Et ie otri con me
have enough fight against them all And I grant that-one me
pengne par la goule sil ne perdent por vn .ij. des lor. voire
may-hang by the throat if-they not lose for one two of-the theirs truly
fait claudas puis que vous le me loes dont nai ie garde.
says Claudas since that you it to-me advise then not-have I care
Et sachent bien tuit & vn & autre que ie ne leur en
And may-know well all both one and other that I not to-them thereof

baillerai pas orendroit le cors mon fil. par couent quil me
shall-hand at-all right-now the body (of-)my son by covenant that-they me
laisassent aler quite & deliure. Ains lenporterai voiant lor
might-let go quit and free Rather him-shall-I-carry-off seeing their
iex parmi lor terres. Et tex le porra contredire qui moult
eyes through their lands And such it will-be-able to-gainsay who very
durement le compara. Mais ie vous pri & requier trestout
hard it will-pay-for But I you beg and ask all
auant que de vostre loiaute vous menbre. si le gardes enuers
first that of your loyalty to-you may-remember so it keep toward
moi si fierement com vous deueis. Ie ne vous sai plus que
me so fiercely as you must I not to-you know more what
deuiser. Car miex saues vous que est loialtes que ie ne fais.
to-devise For better know you what is loyalty than I — do
par sainte crois fait phariens ie sui vostre hom. si est drois
by holy cross says Pharien I am your man so is-it right
que ie vous aide de mon pooir tant com vous voldres par
that I you may-aid with my power so-long as you will-wish by
mon conselg ouurer a foi & ie vous aiderai iusca la mort.
my counsel to-work in faith and I you shall-aid until-to the death
Mais vous me fiancheres auant com loiaus rois. que li doi
But you to-me will-pledge first as loyal king that the two
fil le roi bohort qui mes sires liges fu. nont pris par vous
sons (of-)the king Bors who my lord liege was not-have taken by you
mort ne mehaing. Et de quel eure que ie vaudrai & que
death nor maiming And at what hour that I shall-wish and that
ie vous en semondrai feres por vous esloiauter che que
I you thereof shall-summon will-you-do for yourself to-clear this that
vous maues ore offert. Et sachies que ie nel vous demant
you to-me-have now offered And know that I not-it of-you ask

pas por nule forche. Mais por che que plus en aurois
at-all for any force But for this that more thereby will-you-have
mon cuer puis que ie ne souspechounerai en vous desloiaute.
my heart since that I not shall-suspect in you disloyalty
En non dieu fait claudas tout che ne me grieue de
In name (of-)God says Claudas all this not me grieves of
riens ains mest moult bel. tenes que ie ensi le vous
anything rather to-me-is very fair hold for I thus it to-you
creans. Lors li tent sa main si li fianche. Et puis
promise Then to-him holds-he his hand so to-him pledges And then
tent sa main destre vers sa capele et dist itant. sachies
holds his hand right toward his chapel and says so-much know
vous fait il a pharien. que par les sains de chele capele li
you says he to Pharien that by the saints of that chapel the
enfant ne sont par moi ne mort ne mehaignie. ne daus
children not are by me neither dead nor maimed nor of-them
ne sai nouele nule. Et se ie les auoie a bohorges en
not know-I news any And if I them had at bourges in
ma prison si nauroient il ia par moi mal tant com vous
my prison so not-would-have they ever by me harm so-long as you
les voldries garandir. Si mont il fait teil dolor au cuer.
them would-wish to-protect So to-me-have they done such sorrow at-the heart
que iamais ior en chest siecle ne me faudra. & sor chestui
that ever-more day in this world not me will-fail and upon this
serement meisme vous creant ie que de quel eure que vous
oath same to-you promise I that at what hour that you
men semondrois ie me rendrai prison en vostre garde.
me-thereof will-summon I myself shall-render prisoner in your keeping
por que vous me creantes a garandir envers tous hommes
for that you to-me may-promise to protect against all men
vers qui ie naie riens mesfait. Ensi le fianchent
toward whom I not-may-have anything misdone Thus it pledge

& iurent claudas & phariens li vns a lautre. & chil
and swear Claudas and Pharien the one to the-other and that-one
se tourne deuers lui tout maintenant. Lors commenche li
himself turns toward him all at-once Then begins the
assaus moult grans & moult perillous. si volent saietes &
assault very great and very perilous so fly arrows and
pieres espesement. si refont grant esfrois & grant noise les
stones thickly so make-again great din and great noise the
lanches qui pechoient sor les escus. Dont li tronchon &
lances which shattered upon the shields Whereof the stumps and
li esclat volent en haut. & les espees qui retentissent desor
the splinters fly on high and the swords which resound upon
les hiaumes. si en cort la noise & loie de toutes
the helms so thereof runs the noise and the-hearing from all
pars le chite loing & pres. Et enuiron en retentissent
sides (of-)the city far and near And around thereof resound
& mont & val. & claudas se desfent moult durement
both hill and vale and Claudas himself defends very hard
el trauers de la rue; si est moult asseur de pharien qui
in-the breadth of the street so is-he very secure of Pharien who
sest tornes deuers lui. Mais il ne la mie tant fait por
himself-is turned toward him But he not it-has at-all so-much done for
damagier cheus del regne de gannes & de benoyc. com
to-harm those of-the realm of gannes and of benoic as
il fait por atirer la pais dambes .ij. pars se ele i peust
he does for to-arrange the peace of-both two sides if it there could
estre. Car il quide bien que en la fin ne se puissent
be For he thinks well that in the end not themselves could
chil du pais consieurer sans son conselg. si se tient
those of-the country do-without without his counsel so himself holds-he
en tel maniere quil ne nuist as vns ni as autres ne ne
in such manner that-he not harms to-the ones nor to-the others nor not

lor aide. fors seulement de volente. Et chil encontre claudas
them aids except only of will And those against Claudas
sont tant. & si espes quil ne puet aler auant. ne ne puet
are so-many and so thick that-they not can go forward nor not can
a lui auenir ni a ses gens. anchois fierent li vn lautre de
to him come nor to his people rather strike the one the-other from
loing. Et durement si ochient & plaient en teil maniere.
far And hard so kill-they and wound in such manner
& lor cors & lor cheuax Car trop sont atasse lun sor
both their bodies and their horses For too are-they heaped the-one upon
lautre & la nuis est noire & obscure. qui ne lor fait
the-other and the night is black and dark which not to-them does
se nuire non. & la rue est estroit & mesaisie. si le tient
except harm not and the street is narrow and uneasy so it holds
& se desfent si bien claudas & si cheualier que chil
and himself defends so well Claudas and his knights that those
ne peuent deseure eus de rien conquerre. ne ne lor fait
not can over them of anything conquer nor not to-them does
se nuire non che quil sont tant. Et dautre part trop
except harm not this that-they are so-many And on-other side too
sont descomforte de pharien quant il ne lont. & si ne
are-they discomforted of Pharien when they not him-have and so not
sentremet il de cop ferir en la bataille. Mais il ne seiuent
himself-busies he of blow striking in the battle But they not know
de nule chose prendre conseil por che quil lont perdu.
of any thing to-take counsel for this that-they him-have lost

Ensi dure moult longement & li assaus & la desfense. si
Thus lasts very long both the assault and the defense so
en i a asses que mors que naures de chels de gannes &
thereof there has enough what dead what wounded of those of gannes and

del pais. Car moult se desfent durement claudas & les
of-the country For much himself defends hard Claudas and the
soies gens. Car moult se seit bien aidier en grant besoig.
his people For much himself knows-he well help in great need

The Three Hostages

XXI

Claudas fires the street and drives the townsmen back into the city; at dawn they blame Pharien, who threatens to lead Claudas to his own castle. The wise among them agree to take Claudas into Pharien's prison; Lambegue still wants him handed over, and Graier, lord of High Wall, proposes to kill him once he is held. Pharien, mistrusting them, persuades Claudas to send three men in his place, a knight in Claudas's arms with the lords of Saint Chirre and of Dun. Claudas pledges himself to enter prison when summoned, and twelve chief barons swear no force will be done to the prisoners.

Endementiers que la mellee est si grans. & que trop
Meanwhile that the melee is so great and that too-much
i perdent chil du pais. si se porpense li rois claudas
there lose those of-the country so himself bethinks the king Claudas
comment il les poroit encore plus greuer. si fait le fu
how he them could yet more harm so makes-he the fire
bouter en la rue. Et li vens venoit de deuers li sor
thrust into the street And the wind came from toward him upon
aus qui moult estoit fors & angoiseus. si troua le pueple
them which very was strong and fierce so found-it the people
espessement entasse. si les destraint si durement que a forche
thickly heaped so them constrains so hard that by force
couint tous les plus fors widier la plache & fuir en la chite
behooved all the most strong to-empty the place and to-flee into the city

a garison. Et neporquant moult en i ot qui furent ars.
to safety And nevertheless many thereof there had who were burned
par chel fu furent chil del pais moult adamagie. Car il ne
by that fire were those of-the country very damaged For they not
porent auoir loisir del fu estaindre por chex deuers claudas
could have leisure of-the fire to-quench for those toward Claudas
qui si les tenoient cours. Car asses auoient eu a entendre
who so them held short For enough had-they had to attend
dels meisme. Et si les a claudas & sa gent a forche
of-themselves same And so them has Claudas and his people by force
fait ferir en la chite. Mais si tost com li fus fu rompus quil
made strike into the city But so soon as the fire was broken that-it
ne pot les murs sormonter ne les autres maisons fors dont
not could the walls surmount nor the other houses strong whereof
en la vile auoit asses. si vindrent hors chil de la chite. &
in the town there-had enough so came out those of the city and
partirent lor gent en .ij. batailles. si furent lune des .ij. alei
parted their people into two battalions so were the-one of-the two gone
au dehors por les gens claudas sosprendre. Car le palais
to-the outside for the people (of-)Claudas to-surprise For the palace
estoit dehors la vile en la praerie sor la riuiere. Chele bataille
was outside the town in the meadow upon the river That battalion
ala au dehors. si trouerent les gens claudas qui moult bien
went to-the outside so found-they the people (of-)Claudas who very well
sescargaitoient. & moult se desfendoient bien vers aus.
themselves-watched and much themselves defended well against them
& lautre lor relaissent coure par dedens toute la rue. Mais
and the-other at-them let-again run by inside all the street But
nes trouerent pas desgarnis. ains estoient entrauers la rue
not-them found-they at-all unguarded rather were-they across the street
tout aboukie. & gardoient le pas moult sagement. Et venoit
all massed and guarded the pass very wisely And came

claudas dune mellee a lautre a esperons. com chis qui
Claudas from-one melee to the-other with spurs as this-one who
moult bien en sot a kief venir. & quant il partoit dune
very well thereof knew to head to-come and when he parted from-one
mellee a lautre touiours remanoit phariens en son lieu. Mais
melee to the-other always remained Pharien in his place But
il ni feri onques caup de lanche ne despee ne de nule
he not-there struck ever blow of lance nor of-sword nor of any
arme. ne cheualier ne boriois ne feri par maltalent. Car
arm nor knight nor burgher not struck-he by ill-will For
il baoit en pais a mettre les vns & les autres a son pooir.
he aimed in peace to put the ones and the others to his power
Et che voit il bien que claudas nauoit pas tant de gent
And this sees he well that Claudas not-had at-all so-much of people
par quoi il peust durer a chex de la vile ne del pais.
by which he could last against those of the town nor of-the country
Mais il sauoit bien que moult li pooit auoir grant mestier
But he knew well that much to-him could have great need
ses consaus. & bien quidoit tant destraindre chaus del pais
his counsel and well thought-he so-much to-constrain those of-the country
par che que il sestoit encontre eus meus que il feissent
by this that he himself-was against them moved that they might-make
tel plait qui ne lor fust hontex. & par quoi claudas fust
such plea which not to-them were shameful and by which Claudas were
salues. Car il deuoit a toutes ses gens feute. Autresi en teil
saved For he owed to all his people fealty Likewise in such
maniere dura la mellee toute la nuit a la clarte des brandons
manner lasted the melee all the night by the brightness of-the brands
& des lanternes & des maisons qui arses furent. Mais plus
and of-the lanterns and of-the houses which burned were But more
perdirent asses chil del pais que claudas ne ses gens ne
lost enough those of-the country than Claudas nor his people —

firent. Et quant che vint vers la iornee si manderent pharien
did And when this came toward the daybreak so sent-they-for Pharien
por parler a lui & il i parla. & il se plainsent a li
for to-speak to him and he there spoke and they themselves complained to him
meisme de che que il lor deuoit aidier & il lor nuisoit. &
self of this that he them ought aid and he them harmed and
disent que chou estoit desloiautes & felounie. En non dieu
said that this was disloyalty and felony In name (of-)God
fait phariens de desloiaute ne de felounie ni a il pas.
says Pharien of disloyalty nor of felony not-there has it at-all
Car vous en estes issu de mon conselg. et puis que vous
For you thereof are issued from my counsel and since that you
ne me voles croire. dont sambleroit il bien que vous eusies
not me wish to-believe then would-seem it well that you had
vers moi & soupechon & mescreance. & dautre part li
toward me both suspicion and misbelief and on-other side the
rois claudas est men sire comment quil soit ou a tort ou
king Claudas is my lord however that-it be or with wrong or
a droit. Mais del sien tort ni a il point. si li doi
with right But of-the his wrong not-there has it at-all so to-him owe-I
son hommage garder a foi. que ie nel doi en son grant
his homage to-keep in faith that I not-him must in his great
besoing guerpir. nis sil mauoit ore asses mesfait & vous de
need forsake even if-he me-had now enough misdone and you of
chose dont il ait este mescreus ni aues nule droiture.
thing whereof he may-have been misbelieved not-there have any right
ains estoit tous appareillies de soi mettre en ma prison.
rather was-he all prepared of himself to-put in my prison
Iel vous offri & vous vausistes nule chose escouter que ie
I-it to-you offered and you would no thing hear that I
vous en deisse. si ne forfais de rien che mest auis se ie
to-you thereof might-say so not misdo-I of anything this to-me-is opinion if I

me torne deuers chelui qui plus se fie & croit en moi
myself turn toward that-one who more himself trusts and believes in me
que en nul homme. ne ia tant com ie li vaudrai aidier
than in any man nor ever so-long as I him shall-wish to-aid
par vous ne sera mis au desos. Car mes chastiax nest
by you not will-he-be put at-the under For my castle not-is
mie granment de chi loing. & ie le li baillerai le matin
at-all greatly from here far and I it to-him shall-hand the morning
a rechet & a desfense puis que vous nen voles mon
for refuge and for defense since that you not-thereof wish my
conseil croire. & se li menrai voiant vos iex si sainement
counsel to-believe and so him shall-lead seeing your eyes so soundly
que ia ni perdra vn seul denier. que vous nen i
that ever not-there will-lose-he a single penny that you not-thereof there
perdes .iij. tans ou .iiij. Et quant il sera en mon castel.
may-lose three times or four And when he will-be in my castle
bien pora atendre & seurement & par loisir le secors
well will-he-be-able to-await and surely and by leisure the succor
de son pais. Car iel quideroie tenir contre vous tous .j. an
of his country For I-it would-think to-hold against you all a year
entier. & sil auient que de cheste besoigne pusse escaper
whole and if-it befalls that from this need he-may escape
sains & haities che deues vous sauoir quil vous destruira
sound and hale this must you know that-he you will-destroy
tous lun apres lautre. Ia nus ne vous en ert garans.
all the-one after the-other Ever anyone not to-you thereof will-be warrant
por che si vous venist miex croire boin conseil & loial.
for this so to-you would-come better to-believe good counsel and loyal
que teil chose emprendre que vous ne puisies a chief mener.
than such thing to-undertake which you not may to head bring
Et de chou que vous dites que ie fais desloiaute & felonie.
And of this that you say that I do disloyalty and felony

ne de che que ie sui en sa besoigne mentes vous tuit.
nor of this that I am in his need lie you all
ne ia ni aura si hardi sil voloit prouer ceste parole
nor ever not-there will-have-it so bold if-he wished to-prove this word
quele fust voire. vers qui ie nel contredesisse orendroit ou
that-it were true against whom I not-it would-gainsay right-now or
le matin sans plus atendre. Quant il oient que phariens
the morning without more to-wait When they hear that Pharien
safiche si hardiement de claudas aidier & secorre. si ni
himself-fixes so boldly of Claudas aiding and succoring so not-there
ot nul qui paor ne eust. Il se traient a vne part tout
had any who fear not had They themselves draw to one side all
li plus sage. si en parolent moult longuement & dient
the most wise so thereof speak very long and say
que se claudas puet faire tant quil viengne en sa terre a
that if Claudas can do so-much that-he may-come into his land to
garison. Il ne puet falir quil ne reuiengne en la fin daus
safety It not can fail that-he not may-come-back in the end of-them
au desus. Et lors serons tous destruis sans recourier.
to-the above And then shall-we-be all destroyed without recovery
ne de tout che font il ne poons nous a chief venir sans
nor of all this say they not can we to head come without
pharien qui trop est de grant proece & de grant sens.
Pharien who too is of great prowess and of great sense
si sacordent a che tout li plus sage & li plus haut. que
so themselves-agree to this all the most wise and the most high that
sil leur veut faire autreteil offre com il auoit au soir
if-he to-them wishes to-make such offer as he had at-the evening
faite il le prendroient. Mais en nule maniere ne si
made they it would-take But in any manner not himself-thereto
veut acorder lanbegues li nies pharien. por che que claudas
wishes to-agree Lambegue the nephew (of-)Pharien for this that Claudas

remaigne en sa garde & en sa baillie. Car ie sai bien fait
may-remain in his keeping and in his keeping For I know well says
il que il le garandiroit encontre tous hommes. & sel
he that he him would-protect against all men and if-him
deust il hair plus que nului. le fiex a putain li traitres
ought he hate more than anybody the son of whore the traitor
li faillis. Mais faites tant quil remaigne en la prison &
the craven But do so-much that-he may-remain in the prison and
lors si le me baillies & en ferai tant que iamais
then so him to-me hand and thereof shall-I-do so-much that ever-more
ne vous en sordra trauax ne paine. Lors saut auant vns
not to-you thereof will-arise toil nor pain Then leaps forward a
moult haus hons qui estoit sires dun moult riche castel
very high man who was lord of-a very rich castle
qui estoit a mains de .vij. lieues galeches pres diluec.
which was at less than seven leagues Welsh near from-there

Chis chastiax auoit non haus murs. & seoit sor la riuiere
This castle had name high walls and sat upon the river
de loire moult en haut par deuers la terre deserte. & li sires
of loire very on high by toward the land deserted and the lord
auoit non graiers. si estoit moult fel & moult engingneus
had name Graier so was-he very cruel and very cunning
et preus & hardis & auoit estei cousins au roi bohort de
and valiant and bold and had been cousin to-the king Bors of
gannes & au roi ban de benoyc. chil sali auant por la
gannes and to-the king Ban of benoic that-one leapt forward for the
parole del neueu pharien. Et dist que tout seurement li
word of-the nephew (of-)Pharien And said that all surely to-him
iurassent sil voloit que sil prenoit claudas en garde. Il
they-might-swear if-he wished that if-he took Claudas in keeping He
ne troueroit ia homme qui force nule li feist. que tout
not would-find ever man who force any to-him might-do that all

li autre ne li aidassent a leur pooir. & quant il sera fait
the others not him might-aid to their power and when he will-be made
il en prison. si en laissies a chief venir moi & lambegues
he in prison so thereof let to head come me and Lambegue
qui point ne laime. Et quant nous laurons mort & nous
who at-all not him-loves And when we him-shall-have dead and we
serons a haut mur en mon castel. Ie vous abandoing a tous
shall-be at high wall in my castle I to-you abandon to all
que vous fachies vostre pooir de moi & de lui ochire. a
that you may-do your power of me and of him to-kill to
chest conseil se tienent tout. lors sont venu a pharien
this counsel themselves hold all then are-they come to Pharien
si li dient que sil voloit faire claudas metre en prison si
so to-him say that if-he wished to-make Claudas put in prison so
com il auoit la nuit offert il sen souferroient atant.
as he had the night offered they themselves-thereof would-content thereupon
Et vous meisme font il i deuries grant paine mettre por
And you self say they there ought great pain to-put for
vostre honor. & nous vous iurerons tout sor sains que nous
your honor and we to-you shall-swear all upon saints that we
vous lairons tot saisi de lui moult volentiers. & se nus vous
you shall-leave all seized of him very willingly and if anyone to-you
i met calenge. nous en serons encontre li a no pooir.
there puts challenge we thereof shall-be against him to our power
Par foi signor fait phariens tant com il le vous offri
By faith lords says Pharien so-long as he it to-you offered
por lui vous nen vausistes mie prendre. Et ore quant il
for him you not-thereof would at-all take And now when he
a veu vos esfors & vo pooir il le fera moult a enuis.
has seen your efforts and your power he it will-do very against will
Et neporquant ie li demanderai non pas a consel mais
And nevertheless I him shall-ask not at-all in counsel but

deuant vous tous. Lors sen reuient deuant claudas &
before you all Then himself-thence comes-back before Claudas and
li dist oiant tous che quil requierent & vn & autre.
to-him says hearing all this that-they ask both one and other
& claudas li dist quil seit bien les couenences daus .ij.
and Claudas to-him says that-he knows well the covenants of-them two
ne ia riens nen fera sa son los non. Et vous
nor ever anything not-thereof will-do-he except-by his advice not And you
signor fait il a cheus de la vile & del pais quen feres
lords says he to those of the town and of-the country what-thereof will-do
vous. & chil saut auant qui estoit sires de haut mur
you and that-one leaps forward who was lord of high wall
si dist quil se metent tot en che quil en fera
so says that-they themselves put all in this that-he thereof will-do
outreement. En cheste maniere ont pharien cargie dambes .ij.
utterly In this manner have Pharien charged of-both two
pars. si quide que chil del pais i entendent autresi a
sides so thinks-he that those of-the country there attend likewise to
loiaute com il faisoit. Mais non font anchois ne beent fors
loyalty as he did But not do-they rather not aim-they except
a tant seulement quil peussent ochire le roi claudas. &
at so-much only that-they could kill the king Claudas and
il pensa a garandir le roi claudas de mort sil pooit estre.
he thought to protect the king Claudas from death if-it could be
& esploitier si loiaument enuers le pueple quil nen soit
and to-act so loyally toward the people that-he not-thereof be
traitres vers aus ne pariures vers son signor. Lors apele
traitor toward them nor perjurer toward his lord Then calls-he
claudas a vne part. si dist a conseil tout seul a seul. sire
Claudas to one side so says in counsel all alone to alone lord
iai de ces gens grant paine eue daus bouter ariere & de
I-have of these people great pain had of-them to-thrust back and to

chastoier de lor folie. Et neporquant ie ne me merueil mie
chastise from their folly And nevertheless I not myself marvel at-all
sil sont dolant & angoisseus des .ij. enfans al homme
if-they are sorrowful and anguished of-the two children of-the man
el monde quil onques amerent plus. qui lor liges sires
in-the world whom-they ever loved most who their liege lord
fu. si quident que vous les aies mors. Car grant merueille
was so think-they that you them may-have killed For great marvel
est quant il ne se font tout ochire. ou quil ochient
is-it when they not themselves make all kill or that-they kill
vous. ne ie meismes ne vous aim pas bien le sachies se
you nor I myself not you love at-all well it know if
ie vous peusse ochire a mon droit & a monor. Mais
I you could kill with my right and with my-honor But
apres tous damages & toutes ires doit len garder honor.
after all harms and all ires must one keep honor
& honte cremir en terre. Car nus hons hounis en terre
and shame fear on earth For any man shamed on earth
ne puet el siecle demorer se goute voit. Et qui droiture
not can in-the world dwell if drop sees-he And who right
ne garde. de paradis a il perdue lentree sans recourier. Et
not keeps of paradise has he lost the-entry without recovery And
por che vient miex a preudomme souffrir ses ires & ses
for this comes better to worthy-man to-suffer his ires and his
dolors & ses damages. que faire desloiaute ne felonie par
sorrows and his harms than to-do disloyalty nor felony by
coi il perde lonor de chestui siecle. porcoi toute proeche
which he may-lose the-honor of this world for-which all prowess
se trauaille. & lautre qui iamais ne prendra fin chest la
itself toils and the-other which ever-more not will-take end this-is the
haute ioie de paradis. & par icheste chose ia se dieu plaist
high joy of paradise and by this thing ever if God pleases

par moi ni morois ia tant com ie soie en vostre
by me not-there will-you-die ever so-long as I be in your
hommage. des ore plus ne vous asseur ie pas. Mais or oies
homage from now more not you assure I at-all But now hear
porcoi ie vous ai che dit. Car la gent me requerent que ie
wherefore I to-you have this said For the people me ask that I
vous fache en prison entrer. tant que len sache noueles
you may-make into prison enter so-long that one may-know news
des .ij. enfans. Et vous maues creante que vous i
of-the two children And you to-me-have promised that you there
enterois si tost com ie vous en semondrai. vous vees bien
will-enter so soon as I you thereof shall-summon you see well
comment il est que vous ne poes a eus auoir la forche
how it is that you not can against them have the force
en chest pais. si ne lor ai pas dit che a leur conseil.
in this country so not to-them have-I at-all said this at their counsel
Mais toutes vois vous couendra en chele prison entrer. Et
But all ways you will-behoove into that prison to-enter And
ie vous serai garans enuers tous hommes & desfendans.
I to-you shall-be warrant against all men and defender
Chertes fait claudas che ne me greuerai ia riens. puis que
Certainly says Claudas this not me will-burden ever anything since that
vous me creantes loiaument que vous me garandires partout
you to-me promise loyally that you me will-protect everywhere
a droit & tenes ie vous rent ia mespee tout auant.
to right and hold I to-you render now my-sword all first
Quant phariens lentent si en pleure de grant pitie. Car
When Pharien it-hears so thereof weeps-he from great pity For
il oit quil se veut metre en sa prison. & si le heit
he hears that-he himself wishes to-put in his prison and so him hates-he
plus que nul homme sil le pooit ochire a son droit.
more than any man if-he him could kill with his right

Mais il ne seit comment il le prengne en conduit. Car il
But he not knows how he him may-take in conduct For he
doute que chil de la vile & del pais ne lochient entre
fears that those of the town and of-the country — him-may-kill between
ses mains si seront a tous iours mais honis. Et sensi
his hands so will-they-be to all days more shamed And if-thus
len auenoit il sochiroit del duel. si com il quide
to-him-thereof befell he himself-would-kill from-the grief so as he thinks
maintenant. Dautre part sil len laist aler. il li sera
at-once On-other side if-he him-thence lets go it to-him will-be
tenu a maluaistie & a grant defaute de cuer & si grans
held for wickedness and for great lack of heart and so great
maus en sera fais que nus nel poroit restorer tant
evils thereof will-be done that anyone not-it could restore so-much
fust poisans. Car chil qui le heient li couront sus. &
were-he powerful For those who him hate at-him will-run upon and
se metent au pas estroit en auenture de morir ou de
themselves put at-the pass narrow in adventure of dying or of
li ochire. Che est chou de coi li peril sont que il plus
him killing This is this of which the perils are that he most
crient. si pense comment il porra le roi claudas garandir
fears so thinks-he how he will-be-able the king Claudas to-protect
de mort. & lautre pueple faire de lor voloir vne partie.
from death and the-other people to-do of their will a part
Lors dist au roi. sire vous vous metes moult en moi de
Then says-he to-the king lord you yourself put much in me of
ceste chose. & ie dout que se ie vous metoie en ma prison
this thing and I fear that if I you put in my prison
que ie ne vous puisse estre garans. Car trop vous heient
that I not to-you may be warrant For too-much you hate
mainte gent de grant haine. Mais ie vous dirai que vous
many people with great hatred But I to-you shall-tell what you

ferois. vous me baillerois de vos plus riches hommes .iij.
will-do you to-me will-hand of your most rich men three
seulement. si ferois a lvn daus vos armes vestir. si
only so will-you-make to the-one of-them your arms don so
quideront tuit que che soies vous vraiement. Chil troi seront
will-think all that this be you truly Those three will-be
en la prison tant que nous aurons oi vraies noueles des
in the prison so-long that we shall-have heard true news of-the
enfans. si sera li vns de ches .iij. li sires de saint chitre
children so will-be the one of these three the lord of saint chitre
& li autres sera li sires de dun. & li tiers sera liquex
and the other will-be the lord of dun and the third will-be whichever
que vous miex voldrois de tous vos cheualiers si aura
that you best will-wish of all your knights so will-have
vos armes vestus. Et quant ie vous apelerai ia deuant le
your arms donned And when I you shall-call now before the
pueple si me fiancherois che que ie vous requerrai. & iel
people so to-me will-you-pledge this that I of-you shall-ask and I-it
ferai en tel maniere que vostre fois i sera sauue & ma
shall-do in such manner that your faith there will-be saved and my
couenenche en ert aquitee deuers nos gens. Quant claudas
covenant thereof will-be acquitted toward our people When Claudas
loit. si li otrie sa volente tout a sa deuise com chil
it-hears so to-him grants his will all at his devising as that-one
qui bien seit quil li conseillera loialte. puis sont ariere
who well knows that-be him will-counsel loyalty then are-they back
venu deuant chex qui les atendent & phariens lor dist.
come before those who them await and Pharien to-them says
Signor iai chi parle a monsignor le roi & le vostre. Car
Lords I-have here spoken to my-lord the king and the yours For
vous voles por li esloiauter quil se meche en ma garde.
you wish for him to-clear that-be himself may-put in my keeping

tant que len sache des enfans noueles qui creables soient.
so-long that one may-know of-the children news which believable be
ou de lor vie ou de lor mort. Et iou ai tant fait quil
or of their life or of their death And I have so-much done that-he
le motria moult volentiers. si len deuons tout boin
it to-me-granted very willingly so him-thereof must-we all good
gre sauoir. puis dist venes auant sire. vous me fiancheres
grace know then says-he come forward lord you to-me will-pledge
com rois sacres loiax. que de quel eure que ie voldrai vous
as king anointed loyal that at what hour that I shall-wish you
enteres en ma prison par les couens que nous auons deuise.
will-enter into my prison by the covenants that we have devised
& li rois tent la main si li fiance. Or voel ie fait
and the king holds-out the hand so to-him pledges Now wish I says
phariens que auoec vous soient doi li plus haut homme
Pharien that with you be two the most high men
de vostre terre. li sires de saint chirre & chil de chastel
of your land the lord of saint chirre and that-one of castle
dum. Car rois ne doit pas estre en prison en compaignie
dun For king not must at-all be in prison in company
de ribaus. anchois doit auoir auoeques lui de ses millors
of rogues rather must-he have with him of his best
barons. Claudas respont quil en ira parler a ches .ij.
barons Claudas answers that-he thereof will-go to-speak to these two
moult volentiers deuant le palais ou il sont andui. Car li
very willingly before the palace where they are both For the
vns gardoit son harnois. & li autres estoit en lentree de la
one guarded his harness and the other was at the-entry of the
rue qui le gardoit. Il en est au palais venus puis si se
street who it guarded He thence is to-the palace come then so himself
desarme. & baille a .j. sien cheualier ses armes. & il a les
unarms and hands to a his knight his arms and he has the

soies vestues. si estoient andui dun grant & dune grosse.
his donned so were-they both of-one greatness and of-one thickness
Maintenant est venus ariere si a commande au cheualier
At-once is-he come back so has commanded to-the knight
qui ses armes auoit. quil fache outrement quanque phariens
who his arms had that-he may-do utterly whatever Pharien
li requerra si que nus naparchoiue que che soit autres que
him will-ask so that anyone not-may-perceive that this be other than
il. & chil si fait. Quant phariens les voit tous .iij. venir
he and that-one so does When Pharien them sees all three come
armes. si dist as .ij. quil se metront en la prison
armed so says to-the two that-they themselves will-put in the prison
auoeques lor signor. Et il dient que sans eus ni sera il
with their lord And they say that without them not-there will-be he
ia. Or me fianchies dont fait il que vous nisteres de ma
ever Now to-me pledge then says he that you not-will-issue from my
prison se nest par mon congie. & il li fianchent andui.
prison if not-is by my leave and they to-him pledge both
puis prent le fiance de cheli qui a les armes au roi claudas.
then takes-he the pledge of that-one who has the arms of-the king Claudas
si quident bien tout chil qui le voient que che soit claudas.
so think well all those who him see that this be Claudas
& il prent lor .iij. espees tout maintenant. puis a dit a
and he takes their three swords all at-once then has-he said to
cheus de gannes quil li iurent que ia forche ne li
those of gannes that-they to-him may-swear that ever force not to-him
feront des .iij. prisons mettre hors de la vile. sel fait
will-they-do of-the three prisoners to-put out of the town so-it makes-be
iurer as .xij. des plus poissans barons des .ij. roialmes.
swear to-the twelve of-the most powerful barons of-the two kingdoms

The Fight in the Tower

XXII

Inside the tower Lambegue spears the knight in Claudas's arms. Pharien rushes at his nephew with an axe and splits his shoulder, then arms the hostages and defies the twelve as traitors. Graier attacks him, and they fell each other while the other ten hold back. The ten beg for Graier's life, but Pharien stuns him first, and his wife, who has long hated Lambegue, throws herself before her husband to save the nephew. The barons wound Pharien, Lambegue fights for him, and the lord of Lambrion parts the fray. Pharien, moved by his wife and his nephew, forgives them both.

Ensi est faite la pais & lacordanche dambes .ij. les os. si
Thus is made the peace and the-accord of-both two the hosts so
en vont sauuement les gens claudas & il auoeques. Et
thence go safely the people (of-)Claudas and he with-them And
entre pharien & les autres sont retorne a gannes en la grant
between Pharien and the others are returned to gannes into the great
tor. si met ses .iij. prisons dedens. a lentree de la grant
tower so puts-he his three prisoners inside at the-entry of the great
tor furent li .xij. qui orent fait a pharien le serement. &
tower were the twelve who had made to Pharien the oath and
si i fu lambegues ses nies. Et quant il furent en haut
so there was Lambegue his nephew And when they were on high
si ne se pot tenir. ains courut sus chelui qui les armes
so not himself could-he hold rather ran-he upon that-one who the arms
claudas ot vestus. Car il ne haoit riens tant com le
(of-)Claudas had donned For he not hated anything so-much as the
cors claudas. si le feri dun espiel quil auoit pris en vn
body (of-)Claudas so him struck with-a spear which-he had taken in a
hanstier si grant colp en mi le pis que li haubers faussa.
spear-rack so great blow in midst the chest that the hauberk failed
& quil li mist lespiel en mi le pis. si li saut li sans
and that-he to-him put the-spear in midst the chest so to-him leaps the blood

apres le colp. Il fu fors & vistes si lenporte a terre de
after the blow He was strong and quick so him-carries to earth with
grant vertu tot enferre & il se pasme. Et quant phariens
great strength all impaled and he himself swoons And when Pharien
voit che si saisist vne hache quil auoit maint ior en la
sees this so seizes an axe which-he had many day in the
tor gardee si cort vers son neueu le hache enpuignie a .ij.
tower kept so runs toward his nephew the axe gripped with two
mains leuee en haut. & chil le voit venir si li escrie.
hands raised on high and that-one him sees come so to-him cries
Ha fiex a putain traitres voles me vous ochire por vn
Ah son of whore traitor wish me you to-kill for a
traitor se ie lai naure. Laisies le me auant ochire &
traitor if I him-have wounded Let him me first kill and
puis si mochies apres. Car ie nameroie autretant nule vie
then so me-kill after For I not-would-love as-much any life
comme chele mort. phariens ne li respont mot de chose
as that death Pharien not to-him answers word of thing
quil die. ains li cort sus iries & caus. & chil
that-he may-say rather at-him runs upon angered and hot and that-one
se cueure de son escu quil auoit encore a son col. si
himself covers with his shield which-he had yet at his neck so
le iete desus sa teste. Et phariens i fiert de la hache
it throws over his head And Pharien there strikes with the axe
grant colp. si quil la trenche aual desos la blouque & que
great blow so that-he it cuts down below the boss and that
parmi outre deschent li fers desus la senestre espaule. si
through beyond descends the iron upon the left shoulder so
li trenche tot contreval del hauberc les blanches mailles.
to-him cuts all down of-the hauberk the white mails
& trenche del quuir du cheualier & la char blanche. &
and cuts of-the skin of-the knight and the flesh white and

est coulee dedens le grant os de lespaule plus de .iij. doie.
is slid within the great bone of the-shoulder more than three fingers
li caus fu grans & ferus par ire. si ne pot li bacheler qui
the blow was great and struck by ire so not could the bachelor who
enfes estoit sostenir le colp son oncle qui grans cheualiers
child was sustain the blow (of-)his uncle who great knight
& fors estoit. si vole a terre tous sanglens. La noise est
and strong was so flies-he to earth all bloody The noise is
en la tour leuee. & li sires de saint chirre qui despee
in the tower raised and the lord of saint chirre who of-sword
nauoit point. ahert lespee dont lambegues auoit ferus
not-had at-all seizes the-sword wherewith Lambegue had struck
lor compaignon. & li sires de dum a pris vne glaiue
their companion and the lord of dun has taken a lance
en hanstier & phariens deschaint sespee si la lor gete.
in spear-rack and Pharien ungirds his-sword so it to-them throws
& dist signor or vous desfendes comme por vous. Car
and says lords now yourselves defend as for you For
tant com iaurai la vie el cors ne vous en faudrai ie
so-long as I-shall-have the life in-the body not you thereof shall-fail I
pas. Car moult me poise de chou que ie vous ai amene
at-all For much me grieves of this that I you have led
a vostre mort. Mais ie ne quidoie pas estre venus entre
to your death But I not thought at-all to-be come among
traitors. mais entre loiaus barons. Et neporquant or i
traitors but among loyal barons And nevertheless now there
para liqueil seront loial. & liquel se pariureront. car
will-appear which will-be loyal and which themselves will-perjure for
nous sommes asses plus por che que nous sommes loial
we are enough more for this that we are loyal
homme. Ia tant ni saura venir des traitors que nous
men Ever so-many not-there will-know to-come of-the traitors that we

ne soions plus. Ensi parole phariens com homs iries. Mais
not may-be more Thus speaks Pharien as man angered But
de tous les .xij. ni a nul qui se moeue fors vn tout
of all the twelve not-there has any who himself may-move except one all
seul. ce fu graiers li sires de haut mur qui sestoit vantes
alone this was Graier the lord of high wall who himself-was boasted
quil ochiroit claudas. Chil ot saisi vne lanche pareille a le
that-he would-kill Claudas That-one had seized a lance like to the
pharien. si li adreche comme chil qui estoit asses preus
(of-)Pharien so at-him makes as that-one who was enough valiant
& plains de grant hardement. & phariens le voit venir si
and full of great boldness and Pharien him sees come so
li adreche moult vistement. il furent andui sans escu si
at-him makes very quickly they were both without shield so
sentredounent si grans caus & si pesans desor les hiaumes.
each-other-give so great blows and so heavy upon the helms
quil ni a si fort ne si dur qui contre lachier ne soit
that-it not-there has so strong nor so hard which against the-steel not be
fosses. Il furent andui asses preu & de grant forche & li
pierced They were both enough valiant and of great force and the
colp furent pesant & bien feru si rompi lachier la cerveliere
blows were heavy and well struck so broke the-steel the skullcap
del hiaume graier. & fu si estounes quil versa ius &
of-the helm (of-)Graier and was-he so stunned that-he toppled down and
feri a la terre moult durement dune des espaules. & apres
struck to the earth very hard with-one of-the shoulders and after
li cai phariens & feri a la terre dun de ses ienols. li
him fell Pharien and struck to the earth with-one of his knees the
cheualiers qui lambegues auoit feru de lespiel fu leues. Car
knight whom Lambegue had struck with the-spear was risen For
il nestoit pas naureis a mort si le semont la paors de ses
he not-was at-all wounded to death so him summons the fear of his

anemis quil voit entor lui quil se desfende. & il si
enemies whom-he sees around him that-he himself may-defend and he so
feist volentiers sil peust. Mais li sans li chiet del
would-do willingly if-he could But the blood to-him falls from-the
cors a grant ruissel qui moult lenpire. & neporquant le
body in great stream which much him-worsens and nevertheless the
glaiue a prinse que chil ot laisie caoir a qui phariens
lance has-he taken which that-one had let fall to whom Pharien
bailla lespee. si fait grant samblant de soi desfendre. Mais
handed the-sword so makes great semblance of himself to-defend But
il ne treuuent qui en eus assalir mete conroi.
they not find who in them assailing may-put array

Car li .x. dient quil ne se desloiautiront ia por
For the ten say that-they not themselves will-disloyal ever for
.ij. musars sil ont lor folie faite. Et sestoient tout sans
two fools if-they have their folly done And themselves-were all without
hiaume chil qui ni baoient a traison. & phariens estoit
helm those who not-there aimed at treason and Pharien was
redrechies. si venoit la hache leuee la ou graiers gisoit
raised-up so came the axe raised there where Graier lay
tous estordis. Et li .x. li coururent tout au deuant si li
all stunned And the ten to-him ran all at-the front so him
prient quil ne lochie pas por dieu. Mais anchois quil
beg that-he not him-may-kill at-all for God But before that-they
aient lor parole dite la il feru si durement ensi com il
may-have their word said him-has he struck so hard thus as he
se releuoit. si lasena moult bien desor le hiaume. Mais
himself raised so him-hit-he very well upon the helm But
il nel feri pas del droit trenchant de la hache. Car ele
he not-him struck at-all with-the right edge of the axe For it
li tourna dedens les mains. & neporquant si lestordi
to-him turned within the hands and nevertheless so him-stunned-he

que a la terre feri li nasiax si durement que li nes &
that to the earth struck the nasal so hard that the nose and
les ioes le compererent. & il sestent a la terre de
the cheeks it paid-for and he himself-stretches on the earth with
tout le cors si sest pasmes. Mais anchois quil recourast
all the body so himself-is swooned But before that-he recovered
li ont tolu li autre. & lont asseure & daus & de tot
him have taken the others and him-have assured both of-them and of all
lor pooir & tout sa compaignie auoeques lui. Et lors estoit
their power and all his company with him And then was
releues lambegues ses nies. & quant phariens len voit
risen Lambegue his nephew and when Pharien him-thence sees
aler si li escrie. ahi! mors estes fiex a putain traitres.
go so to-him cries ah dead are-you son of whore traitor
chertes mar mi aues honi. & me feres tenir por traitor.
certainly ill me have-you shamed and me will-make hold for traitor
Atant li cort sus. Mais sa feme i est venue corant
Thereupon at-him runs-he upon But his wife there is come running
qui moult auoit longement hai lambegues. Car par son
who much had long hated Lambegue For by his
conseil li auoit fait phariens maint anui. Et quant ele voit
counsel to-her had done Pharien many trouble And when she sees
que phariens li cort sus a toute le hache por lui ochire.
that Pharien at-him runs upon with all the axe for him to-kill
si commenche a crier merchi. puis sest mise deuant li
so begins-she to cry mercy then herself-is put before him
& dist. ha ientiex hom nochies pas le millor cheualier du
and says ah gentle man not-kill at-all the best knight of-the
monde. sil puet longement viure voirement lert il. Car
world if-he can long live truly it-will-be he For
trop seroit grant perte a cheualerie sil estoit mors. & trop
too would-be great loss to chivalry if-he were dead and too

grant desloialte endroit de vous. Et se vous autrement nel
great disloyalty as-for of you And if you otherwise not-it
voles faire. si ochies moi & lui laissies. Car sans moi ne
wish to-do so kill me and him leave For without me not
mora il ia deuant mes iex. Quant phariens voit se feme qui
will-die he ever before my eyes When Pharien sees his wife who
por chelui se met en abandon de morir qui tous les maus
for that-one herself puts in abandon of dying who all the evils
li auoit porcachie. si le laisse atant ester & court sus a
to-her had contrived so him leaves-he thereupon be and runs upon at
graier que li autre auoient releue a moult grant paine. Et
Graier whom the others had raised with very great pain And
il le fiert entre lor mains si quil le rabat a la terre ius.
he him strikes between their hands so that-he him beats-down to the earth down
& lors se courechent li plusor daus & iurent que che
and then themselves anger the most of-them and swear that this
ne soufferont il pas quil lor ochie en teil maniere chelui.
not will-suffer they at-all that-he for-them may-kill in such manner that-one
qui en lor compaignie est venus. Lors li courent sus si le
who in their company is come Then at-him run-they upon so him
fierent de glaiues & despees par deuant & par deriere. si
strike with lances and with-swords by front and by behind so
que de grans plaies li ont faites el cors. Dont li sans
that of great wounds to-him have-they made in-the body Whereof the blood
vermaus chiet & degoute. Mais ni a plaie nule qui mortex
red falls and drips But not-there has wound any which mortal
soit. si li en est moult bien auenu. Mais quant lambegues
be so to-him thereof is very well befallen But when Lambegue
ses nies voit le sanc qui des plaies li degoutoit. si nel
his nephew sees the blood which from-the wounds to-him dripped so not-it

pot plus ses cuers soffrir. Car nature de carnel amor li faisoit
could more his heart suffer For nature of carnal love him made
auoir pitie de chelui qui estoit ses drois sires & ses oncles.
have pity of that-one who was his rightful lord and his uncle
Atant met la main a lespee si lor cort sus. si
Thereupon puts-he the hand to the-sword so at-them runs upon so
naures com il estoit. si lor doune grans caus la ou il
wounded as he was so to-them gives great blows there where he
les puet ataindre. comme chis qui auoit grant forche &
them can reach as this-one who had great force and
grant hardement. & autresi lor courent sus li autre qui
great boldness and likewise at-them run upon the others who
en prison estoient por claudas. si lor liurent melleie a
in prison were for Claudas so to-them deliver melee in
grant plente. Quant li .x. voient que lambegues se met
great plenty When the ten see that Lambegue himself puts
en auenture de mort por son oncle quil quidoient quil
in adventure of death for his uncle whom-they thought that-he
haist tant. si en ont il meisme moult grant pitie. &
hated so-much so thereof have they themselves very great pity and
dient que moult est fols qui sentremet damis carneus. &
say that very is-he foolish who himself-busies of-friends carnal and
lors saut auant li plus riches & li plus poissans daus qui
then leaps forward the most rich and the most powerful of-them who
estoit sires dun castel qui auoit non lambrions. si estoit
was lord of-a castle which had name lambrion so was-he
moult sages & moult vaillans & de grant proeche auoit il
very wise and very worthy and of great prowess had he
este. Chil se mist entre pharien & chex qui lassailloient
been That-one himself put between Pharien and those who him-assailed
& si estoit moult priuees de lui & moult sentramoient
and so was-he very intimate of him and much each-other-loved-they

de longuement. si fist tant que la mellee departi sans
of long so did-he so-much that the melee parted without
plus de perte qui domme mort i fust. Mais de naures
more of loss that of-man dead there were But of wounded
en i ot il des plus proisies. Atant sont departi &
thereof there had it of-the most prized Thereupon are-they parted and
si sen vont hors de la tor trestous fors phariens
so themselves-thence go out of the tower all except Pharien
& sa maisnie qui remes i sont. Il se fait desarmer si
and his household who remained there are He himself makes unarm so
li regardent ses plaies li doi ostage qui remes furent. &
to-him look-at his wounds the two hostages who remained were and
qui asses furent preudome & li tiers iert moult naures. si
who enough were worthy-men and the third was very wounded so
sen entremet moult la feme pharien. Et quant ele seit
herself-thereof busies much the wife (of-)Pharien And when she knows
que ses sires na nule plaie perilleuse si ne li caut pas
that her lord not-has any wound perilous so not to-her matters at-all
grantment des autres fors de lambegues. dont ele sentremet
greatly of-the others except of Lambegue of-whom she herself-busies
asses plus que len quidast. il ne se volt onques hors metre
enough more than one would-think he not himself wished ever out to-put
de la tor. por che que il auoit paor que chil de la chitei
from the tower for this that he had fear that those of the city
nasaillissent son oncle. si voloit miex auoec li morir sensi
might-assail his uncle so wished-he better with him to-die if-thus
auenist que estre salues dehors auoec les autres. & phariens
it-befell than to-be saved outside with the others and Pharien
est moult mains iries vers lui quil ne li ot montre a
is very less angered toward him than-he — to-him had shown at
la mellee. Car bien seit que au parestroit ne li porroit
the melee For well knows-he that at-the utmost not him could-he

souffrir a auoir honte ne mal. Mais sor toute riens se
suffer to have shame nor harm But above all thing himself
merueille de sa feme qui tant lauoit hai. & ore li estoit
marvels-he of his wife who so-much him-had hated and now him was
courue aidier al grant besoig de si grant cuer que ele
run to-aid at-the great need with so great heart that she
sabandouna por lui a naurer & a ochire. & de che que
herself-abandoned for him to wounding and to killing and of this that
ele en a fait a son cuer si gaaignie que de nul mesfait
she thereof has done has-she his heart so won that of any misdeed
cha en ariere na talent que iamais maluais gre li
here in back not-has-he desire that ever-more bad grace to-her
sache. ains li pardoune son maltalent de tout en tout.
he-may-know rather to-her pardons his ill-will of all in all
& a son neueu repardoune le courous quil li auoit fait
and to his nephew pardons-again the wrath which-he to-him had done
du cheualier quil auoit naure qui en son conduit estoit.
of-the knight whom-he had wounded who in his conduct was
Ensi est phariens en la tor & chil qui assailli lauoient
Thus is Pharien in the tower and those who assailed him-had
sen sont ale. sen sont dolant tex i a de
themselves-thence are gone so-thereof are sorrowful such there has-it of
che quil nauoient pharien mort. Mais a cheus qui loial
this that-they not-had Pharien killed But to those who loyal
estoient nen pesoit il mie. Car bien sauoient que sil
were not-thereof grieved it at-all For well knew-they that if-they
leussent mort il en fussent tenu a tous iors mais por
him-had killed they thereof would-be held to all days more for
desloial si fuissent honi. Mais ore se taist li contes daus
disloyal so would-be shamed But now itself silences the tale of-them

si retorne as .ij. enfans qui sont auoec lancelot lor cousin
so returns to-the two children who are with Lancelot their cousin
en la garde a la boine dame du lac.
in the keeping of the good lady of-the lake

Lionel and Bors at the Lake

XXIII

At the lake the two boys pine for their masters and will not eat. Lionel tells Lancelot who they are and how they struck Claudas and killed Dorin, and Lancelot loves him the more. The lady promises to send for the masters and takes the boys' belts as tokens. Her maiden finds Gannes besieging the tower, since the town now knows Claudas was never in prison. She tells Leonce of Paerne, a cousin of King Bors, that the boys are alive; Pharien, who must stay a prisoner until they are seen, sends Lambegue with Leonce to see them.

Quant li dui enfant che dit li contes orent .iij. iors este au
When the two children this says the tale had three days been at-the
lac. ou la damoisele les ot aportes si furent moult empirie
lake where the damsel them had brought so were-they very worsened
de tel com il estoient quant il i vindrent. Et tout che
from such as they were when they there came And all this
fu por lor maistres quil nauoient. Car moult les amoient
was for their masters whom-they not-had For much them loved-they
ambes deus. Quant la dame del lac les vit empirier si
both two When the lady of-the lake them saw worsen so
durement. si en ot moult grant pitie & grant esmai. si
hard so thereof had-she very great pity and great dismay so
lor demande quil ont eu que si durement sont empirie.
them asks what-they have had that so hard are-they worsened
& il li choilent & dient quil ne seiuent. si ne li
and they from-her hide and say that-they not know so not to-her

osent dire tant le doutent. Et ele le fait enquerre par
dare say so-much her fear-they And she it makes inquire by
lancelot & il li connoissent & dient quil ne seront
Lancelot and they to-him acknowledge and say that-they not will-be
iamais a aise deuant che quil aient lor maistres. Car il
ever-more at ease before this that-they may-have their masters For they
nosent a nului dire lor volente si com il feissent a lor
not-dare to anybody say their will so as they would-do to their
maistres. Car il i auoient tant troue de douchor & de
masters For they there had so-much found of sweetness and of
pitie. quil nen poroient che lor est auis en nului
pity that-they not-thereof could this to-them is opinion in anybody
tant trouer. Et lancelos lor enquert de lor couines & qui
so-much find And Lancelot them asks of their condition and who
il sont. Et lyoniaus li connoist quil auoient este fil au
they are And Lionel to-him acknowledges that-they had been sons of-the
roi bohort de gannes. & que fui sen estoient por vne
king Bors of gannes and that fled themselves-thence were-they for a
tele besoigne. si li a conte de chief en chief comment
such need so to-him has-he told from head to head how
il auoit feru claudas a son mangier & son fil naure. &
he had struck Claudas at his eating and his son wounded and
lancelos len aime trop miex & moult len prise.
Lancelot him-thereof loves too-much better and much him-thereof prizes
puis li demande de claudas se il est mors. & il dist que
then him asks of Claudas if he is dead and he says that
nenil. Mais ses fiex fait il est ochis. dont ie ne sui pas mains
no But his son says he is killed whereof I not am at-all less
lies que de claudas mais asses plus. Chertes fait lancelot bien
glad than of Claudas but enough more Certainly says Lancelot well
vous en est auenu. Mais ore gardes que vous soies autresi
to-you thereof is befallen But now see that you be likewise

preus cha en auant com vous aues este. Car fiex de roi che
valiant here on forward as you have been For son of king this
mest auis doit auoir asses plus proeche que autres hons.
to-me-is opinion must have enough more prowess than other man
Toutes les choses quil auoit dites a lancelot. conta
All the things that-he had said to Lancelot told
lancelos a sa dame. & dist que bien seust ele que
Lancelot to his lady and said that well might-know she that
iamais ne mangeroient li doi frere deuant quil eussent
ever-more not would-eat the two brothers before that-they had
lor maistres. & ele en a moult grant pitie si les apele.
their masters and she thereof has very great pity so them calls
& voit quil ont les ioes megres & abaisies. & les iex
and sees that-they have the cheeks lean and sunken and the eyes
rouges & enflees de plours que il auoient fait. & la
red and swollen from weepings that they had made and the
colors lor est empirie moult durement. Et il sont andui
color to-them is worsened very hard And they are both
si amati & trespensis quil ne peuent faire ne bele chiere
so dejected and pensive that-they not can make neither fair cheer
ne bel sanblant. Ele lor demande mi enfant que aues vous.
nor fair semblance She them asks my children what have you
& il ne li osent connoistre deuant que ele lor dist.
and they not to-her dare acknowledge before that she to-them said
Ie sai fait ele bien que vous estes a malaise & porcoi.
I know says she well that you are at unease and wherefore
Chest por vos maistres que vous naues. Et se ie les vous
This-is for your masters whom you not-have And if I them for-you
enuoie querre seres vous de tout a aise dites le moi. Car
send to-seek will-be you of all at ease tell it me For
bien sachies que ie enuoierai por eux se vous men voles
well know that I shall-send for them if you to-me-thereof wish

boin gre sauoir. & lyoniaus qui plus empiries estoit li
good grace to-know and Lionel who most worsened was to-her
dist. quil ne poroient des lor en auant nul mal auoir.
said that-they not could from then on forward any harm have
En non dieu fait la damoisele por che naures vous
In name (of-)God says the damsel for this not-will-have you
ia mal longuement. Car ie les enuoierai querre encor anuit.
ever harm long For I them shall-send to-seek yet tonight
Dame fait lyoniax il ne me tarde mie tant destre auoec
Lady says Lionel it not to-me is-late at-all so-much of-being with
lui. comme por la grant paor que iai quil ne soit mors.
him as for the great fear that I-have that-he — be dead
Car ie criem moult que claudas ne les ait fait ochire.
For I fear much that Claudas — them may-have made kill
car trop les heit. Or ne vous esmaies pas fait ele. que
for too-much them hates-he Now not yourself dismay at-all says she for
prochainement en ores vraies noueles. Mais gardes que
soon thereof will-you-hear true news But see that
des ore mais ne fachies maluaise chiere. car iamais ne vous
from now more not you-may-make bad cheer for ever-more not you
ameroie. Mais mangies & vous comfortes entre vous &
would-I-love But eat and yourselves comfort between you and
mon fil li vns a lautre. Car ie ne vaudroie por nule rien que
my son the one to the-other For I not would-wish for any thing that
vostre maistre vous trouassent si empirie quant il vendroient.
your masters you might-find so worsened when they would-come
& se vous nestes dedens tiers ior ausi cras & ausi bel com
and if you not-are within third day as fat and as fair as
vous esties quant vous fustes amenes chi. bien sachies que ia
you were when you were brought here well know that ever
vos maistres ni venront. Car dont quideroient il que len
your masters not-there will-come For then would-think they that one

vous eust laisie morir de faim chaiens. ha dame fait lyoniaus
you had let die of hunger in-here ah lady says Lionel
qui moult a grant paor de la manache por dieu merchie.
who much has great fear of the threat for God mercy
chertes sil nous veoient megres & empiries. dont sauroient
certainly if-they us saw lean and worsened then would-know
il bien que che seroit por lor compaignie que nous
they well that this would-be for their company which we
auriens perdue. & neporquant nous mangerons tant com
would-have lost and nevertheless we shall-eat so-much as
vous uaudrois. se vous nous creantes que vous i enuoieres
you will-wish if you to-us promise that you there will-send
encor anuit. Et la dame sen rist moult boinement. &
yet tonight And the lady herself-thereat laughs very kindly and
puis lor creante que ele i enuoiera ia orendroit. Dame
then to-them promises that she there will-send now right-now Lady
fait lyoniax enuoies lor aucunes enseignes de nous quil
says Lionel send them some tokens of us which-they
connoissent. si en seront asses plus lie. Et veis chi nos
know so thereof will-be-they enough more glad And see here our
.ij. chaintures si lor faites monstrer tout auant par cheli
two belts so to-them make show all first by that-one
qui les lor portera. Et il vendront tantost a nous ie le
who them to-them will-carry And they will-come straightway to us I it
sai bien. La dame prent les chaintures qui estoient ambes
know well The lady takes the belts which were both
.ij. dun oeure & dune sanblanche. puis est venue ariere
two of-one work and of-one semblance then is-she come back
en ses chambres si apele vne damoisele. non pas chele
into her chambers so calls a damsel not at-all that-one
qui les enfans auoit embles. mais vne autre si li dist.
who the children had stolen but an other so to-her said

Vous ires fait ele a gannes. & enquerres par vous & par
You will-go says she to gannes and will-inquire by you and by
chex qui auoec vous seront le couine del roi claudas & de
those who with you will-be the condition of-the king Claudas and of
chex del roialme de gannes. & selonc che que vous verrois
those of-the kingdom of gannes and according-to this that you will-see
si penses del cheler vers les gens claudas outreement;
so think of-the hiding toward the people (of-)Claudas utterly
& del descourir vers les maistres a nos .ij. enfans en teil
and of-the uncovering toward the masters of our two children in such
maniere com ie vous deuiserai. vous enquereres toutes les
manner as I to-you shall-devise you will-inquire all the
choses comment eles sont alees. & que len dist des .ij. enfans.
things how they are gone and what one says of-the two children
& de lor maistres ou il sont. Et se vous poes a eus parler
and of their masters where they are And if you can to them speak
priueement si i parles. & lor dites que lor doi signor les
privately so there speak and to-them say that their two lords them
saluent. & a enseignes lor dounes ches .ij. chentures & que
greet and as tokens to-them give these two belts and that
a ches enseignes vous croient que il sont sain & haitie
by these tokens you they-may-believe that they are sound and hale
& tout aise. apres lor dires que par la creanche de ches
and all at-ease after to-them will-you-say that by the belief of these
enseignes il vous croient que li enfant sont sain & haitie.
tokens they you may-believe that the children are sound and hale
Et quil viegnent a lor .ij. signors. Car il ne meniuent ne
And that-they may-come to their two lords For they not eat nor
boiuent por che quil ne sont auoec aus. Mais bien gardes
drink for this that-they not are with them But well see

que ia ne il ni autres sachent qui vous estes. ne de quel
that ever neither they nor others may-know who you are nor of what
lieu. Et chele dist que de che ne la conuient il ia castoier.
place And that-one says that of this not her behooves it ever to-admonish
Or vous dirons fait la dame comment vous en
Now to-you shall-we-tell says the lady how you therein
esploiteres. vous lor dites que il viegnent si priueiement
will-act you to-them say that they may-come so privately
que ia ni amainent riens viuant ne mais que aus
that ever not-there they-may-bring anything living except only but them
.ij. Et si les amenes par ches destors que ia nule gent
two And so them bring by these byways that ever any people
ne sachent ou vous ires Et ie quit que vous troueres ou
not may-know where you will-go And I think that you will-find either
la ou entre voies mespie que iai enuoie por le couine
there or between ways my-spy whom I-have sent for the condition
aprendre & encherquier si en aureis mains a faire que
to-learn and to-search so thereof will-you-have less to do than
vous nauries se vous fuissies tout par vous. Atant sen
you would-have if you were all by yourself Thereupon herself-thence
part la damoisele & auoeques li vont doi varlet a cheual.
parts the damsel and with her go two youths on horse
si cheuauchent tant quil encontrent lespie a lor dame. qui
so ride-they so-far that-they meet the-spy of their lady who
lor a conte comment la pais estoit faite entre claudas
to-them has told how the peace was made between Claudas
& chex de la terre de gannes. & quil le tienent en
and those of the land of gannes and that-they him hold in
prison. Et les merueilles que li doi maistre auoient faites.
prison And the marvels that the two masters had done
li vns de claudas garandir & li autres de lui ochire.
the one of Claudas protecting and the other of him killing

Toutes les choses lor conta comment eles auoient este en
All the things to-them told-be how they had been in
lost. selonc che que gens estraignes en peuent sauoir &
the-host according-to this that people foreign thereof can know and
aprendre. Et la damoisele sen vait diluec tant quele
learn And the damsel herself-thence goes from-there so-far that-she
est a gannes venue. si trueue la vile moult troublee. Car il
is to gannes come so finds the town very troubled For they
auoient assis pharien & sa maisnie dedens la tor. por che
had besieged Pharien and his household inside the tower for this
quil sauoient ore bien que claudas nestoit pas en prison
that-they knew now well that Claudas not-was at-all in prison
laiens. La damoisele vit quil assailloient la tor moult
in-there The damsel saw that-they assailed the tower very
durement si ot moult grant paor des .ij. maistres qui
hard so had-she very great fear of-the two masters who
laiens estoient. Ele enquist & encherca porcoi chis assaus
in-there were She inquired and searched wherefore this assault
estoit si grans a chele tor. autresi com sele nen seust
was so great at that tower likewise as if-she not-thereof knew
rien. & il li dient tout le porcoi. Et ele enquiert de
anything and they to-her tell all the wherefore And she inquires of
tous cheus dehors liqueus estoit li plus loiax hom. & len
all those outside which was the most loyal man and one
li noume. & ele fait tant quele parole a lui & si li
to-her names and she does so-much that-she speaks to him and so to-him
dist. biax sire len vous tient a moult sage homme & loial
says fair lord one you holds for very wise man and loyal
de grant maniere. Et ie vous diroie vne chose se vous me
of great manner And I to-you would-tell a thing if you to-me
creanties loialment que nus nel sauroit par vous que iel
promised loyally that anyone not-it would-know by you that I-it

vous eusse dit. Et sachies que che seroit de vostre grant
to-you had said And know that this would-be of your great
ioie. & del preu a vos .ij. signors. Et quant cil lentent.
joy and of-the profit to your two lords And when that-one it-hears
sen a tel ioie que plus ne porroit. si li fuit tous
so-thereof has-he such joy that more not could-he so to-him flees all
li sans quant il entent que chest de sa grant ioie. & del
the blood when he hears that this-is of his great joy and of-the
preu a ses .ij. signors. Des quels .ij. signors fait il me
profit to his two lords Of-the which two lords says he to-me
parles vous. Ie vous parol fait ele des fiex le roi bohort
speak you I to-you speak says she of-the sons (of-)the king Bors
qui de ceste chite fu sires & del pais tout enuiron.
who of this city was lord and of-the country all around
A damoisele fait il anchois que vous me metes en autre
Ah damsel says he before that you me put in other
parole. dites moi si sont uif li doi enfant. Oil fait ele che
word tell me if are alive the two children Yes says she this
sachies. il sont tout sain & haitie. & por che sui ie chi
know they are all sound and hale and for this am I here
venue. que len veut bien que lor gent sachent la ou il
come that one wishes well that their people may-know there where they
sont & comment il lor esta. Et si mandent a lor .ij.
are and how it to-them stands And so send-they to their two
maistres qui laiens sont teus ensengnes quil connistront
masters who in-there are such tokens which-they will-know
bien che croi ie. por che vous pri & requier que vous
well this believe I for this you beg-I and ask that you
me fachies a euls parler. Car moult en ai grant besoig.
me may-make to them speak For much thereof have-I great need

Damoisele fait il. le parler porcacherai ie moult volentiers a
Damsel says he the speaking shall-contrive I very willingly to
mon pooir. Mais por dieu sil puet estre que vous me dites
my power But for God if-it can be that you to-me tell
en quel lieu mi doi signor sont. & se il sont es mains
in what place my two lords are and if they are in-the hands
claudas. ou es mains de lor autres anemis. Tant fait ele
(of-)Claudas or in-the hands of their other enemies So-much says she
vous en puis ie bien dire quil sont sain & haitie & a
to-you thereof can I well say that-they are sound and hale and at
aise. & en tel garde ou on les aime autretant com vous
ease and in such keeping where one them loves as-much as you
feries ou plus. Ne nont garde ne paor de nul homme
would-do or more Nor not-have-they care nor fear of any man
qui mal lor voille. Mais le lieu la il sont ne poes ore
who harm to-them may-wish But the place where they are not can-you now
pas sauoir. Damoisele fait il ie vois porcachier comment vous
at-all know Damsel says he I go to-contrive how you
parleres a lor .ij. maistres. Mais se vous voles ie dirai por
will-speak to their two masters But if you wish I shall-say for
nos gens faire plus lie que iai oi de nos seignors vraies
our people to-make more glad that I-have heard of our lords true
noueles. Car moult en sera la ioie grans. sire fait ele iel voel
news For much thereof will-be the joy great lord says she I-it wish
bien. mais que de plus ne soie enquise par nului. Car ie vous
well but that of more not I-be asked by anybody For I to-you
ai dit en confession che que ie vous ai descouert. vous ne
have said in confession this that I to-you have uncovered you not
troueres ia fait il qui de plus dire vous fache forche. Lors
will-find ever says he who of more to-say you may-make force Then
lacole & sen reuient a lor gent. si lor dit que
her-embraces-he and himself-thence comes-back to their people so to-them says that

noueles a oi des .ij. enfans & que sain sont & haitie.
news has-he heard of-the two children and that sound are-they and hale
Et sont hors des mains claudas. & de tous lor anemis.
And are out of-the hands (of-)Claudas and of all their enemies
Lors fu grans la ioie par toute la chite. Car tost
Then was great the joy through all the city For quickly
fu seue la nouele. Si fait chiex tant a qui la puchele
was known the news So does that-one so-much to whom the maiden
ot parlei quil fait traire les gens arriere. & fait venir
had spoken that-he makes draw the people back and makes come
la dame auant iusca la tor & le fait parler a pharien
the lady forward until-to the tower and her makes speak to Pharien
& a lambegues son neueu. Et quant ele ot monstree les
and to Lambegue his nephew And when she had shown the
chaintures. lors ne fu pas petite la ioie quil en orent.
belts then not was at-all little the joy that-they thereof had
Et ele lor dit ensi com sa dame li auoit la parole
And she to-them says thus as her lady to-her had the word
cargie. de che quil ne pooient ne boire ne mengier. &
charged of this that-they not could neither drink nor eat and
que moult estoient empirie de che que lor maistre nestoient
that very were-they worsened of this that their masters not-were
auoec aus. Grans est la ioie que li doi maistre font de
with them Great is the joy that the two masters make of
che que la puchele dist des enfans qui troue sont. Car ele
this that the maiden says of-the children who found are For she
lor creante amener la ou ele les a laissies. Atant
to-them promises to-lead there where she them has left Thereupon
vient phariens as fenestres de la tor. si apele des plus
comes Pharien to-the windows of the tower so calls of-the most
haus hommes de la chite & del pais. Et lors lor dist
high men of the city and of-the country And then to-them tells

les noueles teiles com il les a ois. & chil dient que sil
the news such as he them has heard and those say that if-he
fait tant quil les lor puisse monstrer. il sen
does so-much that-he them to-them may show they themselves-thereof
soufferont atant. Il est venus a la damoisele ariere si li
will-content thereupon He is come to the damsel back so to-her
dist. Damoisele fait il li meschies est si grans com vous
says Damsel says he the mischief is so great as you
poes veoir. Car ie sui & mes gens chi en prison ne ie
can see For I am and my people here in prison nor I
ne serai dessertes deuant que vne partie de chest pueple
not shall-be freed before that a part of this people
aient veu les .ij. enfans. Car il quident bien quil soient
may-have seen the two children For they think well that-they be
mort & trai par moi meisme. En non dieu fait ele che
dead and betrayed by me self In name (of-)God says she this
noseroie ie pas sor moi emprendre. Mais se vous i
not-would-dare I at-all upon me undertake But if you there
uenes ie les vous ferai veoir. & vostre neueu auoeques
come I them to-you shall-make see and your nephew with
vous. Mais a plus de gent ne seroient il pas monstre. Car
you But to more of people not would-be they at-all shown For
ensi mest il desfendu desor mes iex. Damoisele fait phariens
thus to-me-is it forbidden upon my eyes Damsel says Pharien
qui moult fu sages. Or vous dirai donques que vous
who very was wise Now to-you shall-I-tell then what you
ferois. & ie vous baillerai mon neueu qui chi est si ira
will-do and I to-you shall-hand my nephew who here is so will-go-he
avoeques vous. Car il est maistres al menor. Et sil puet
with you For he is master of-the younger And if-he can
trouer vers chelui qui les a en garde. quil les voeille
find toward that-one who them has in keeping that-he them may-wish

monstrer as barons de cest pais. ensi porrai escaper
to-show to-the barons of this country thus shall-I-be-able to-escape
hors de chaiens. Mais autrement ne quid ie pas quil puist
out of in-here But otherwise not think I at-all that-it may
estre. Ne ie ne vaudroie en nule maniere que vous en
be Nor I not would-wish in any manner that you thereof
fuissies blamee. Mais que commande vous est que nous
were blamed But that commanded to-you is that us
meignies avoeques vous & moi & mon neueu. Mon neueu
you-may-lead with you both me and my nephew My nephew
vous baillerai ie. mais vous me iureres auant sor sains que
to-you shall-hand I but you to-me will-swear first upon saints that
nel metrois en la baillie ne el pooir au roi claudas.
not-him will-you-put in the keeping nor in-the power of-the king Claudas
Ensi li otrie la damoisele. & il reuient a chels de
Thus to-him grants the damsel and he comes-back to those of
dehors si lor dist. que vne partie des plus haus hommes
outside so to-them says that a part of-the most high men
daus aillent aueuc son neueu. & cheste damoisele chi vous
of-them may-go with his nephew and this damsel here to-you
fera les enfans monstrer. Et ie remanrai en prison. tant
will-make the children show And I shall-remain in prison so-long
que vous les aures veus. Mais si tost com vous saures quil
that you them will-have seen But so soon as you will-know that-they
sont sain & haitie & hors des mains claudas. Ie voldrai
are sound and hale and out of-the hands (of-)Claudas I shall-wish
estre deliures. & ie & chist prison qui chaiens sont. &
to-be delivered both I and these prisoners who in-here are and
che me iureres vous sor sains. anchois que mes nies se
this to-me will-swear you upon saints before that my nephew himself
mueue de chaiens por aler la. Ensi le creantent li baron
may-move from in-here for to-go there Thus it promise the barons

& li vn & li autre. Car ia ne quident veoir leure que
both the ones and the others For ever not think-they to-see the-hour that
li enfant soient trouei sain & haitie. Li saint sont aporte.
the children be found sound and hale The saints are brought
si fait tout auant la damoisele a pharien son sairement. &
so makes all first the damsel to Pharien her oath and
puis li baron de gannes de che quil lor ot deuise. &
then the barons of gannes of this that-he to-them had devised and
chil que il i veut eslire. Mais por chou que li baron de
those whom he there wishes to-choose But for this that the barons of
gannes ne sorent que ert a auenir ou de traison ou dautre
gannes not knew what was to befall or of treason or of-other
chose. si acorderent a eslire que daus tous nen ira cuns
thing so agreed-they to choose that of-them all not-thence will-go but-one
seus que il poront & deuront bien croire de che quil
alone whom they will-be-able and must well to-believe of this that-he
lor fera entendant. Si eslurent chelui meisme a qui la
to-them will-make understanding So chose-they that-one same to whom the
damoisele auoit parle auant. Et il estoit li plus riches hons
damsel had spoken before And he was the most rich man
de tout le regne & li plus loiax. & auoit este cousins
of all the realm and the most loyal and had been cousin
germains au roi bohort. si ert apeles leonches de paerne.
german to-the king Bors so was called Leonce of paerne
& estoit bien de leage de .l. ans ou de plus. Mais anchois
and was well of the-age of fifty years or of more But before
quil mueuent demande a la damoisele quel part ele le
that-they set-out asks-he to the damsel which way she him
menra ou en la terre claudas ou en quel lieu. & ele dist
will-lead or into the land (of-)Claudas or into what place and she says
que claudas na nul pooir la ou ele le veut conduire.
that Claudas not-has any power there where she him wishes to-conduct

Leonce and Lambegue at the Lake

XXIV

Leonce waits at the castle of Charosche while the maiden leads Lambegue through the lake into the lady's house. Bors greets his master; Lionel, seeing Saraide's scarred face, learns she took the blow for him and vows himself hers. Lancelot, who wears a garland of roses every morning, fills Lambegue with wonder. The next day the lady shows the boys to Leonce by the river; he weeps, tells her their mother descends from David, and offers to take them, but she keeps them. When Lionel weeps for his land, Lancelot rebukes him and calls him fair cousin. Questioned by the lady, Lancelot says a great heart is what makes a gentleman, and her love for him grows.

Atant sont monte entre leonche & lambegue. & siewent la
Thereupon are mounted between Leonce and Lambegue and follow the
damoisele qui les conduist. Si cheuauchent tant quil vienent
damsel who them conducts So ride-they so-far that-they come
el chief de la valee par deuers neorrange. a lentree de la
to-the head of the valley by toward neorrange at the-entry of the
forest qui estoit apelee briosque. de chele part de la forest
forest which was called briosque on that side of the forest
estoit li lais ou li enfant estoient quil aloient veoir. lors
was the lake where the children were whom-they went to-see then
sont venu a vne iauwe qui i estoit & couroit vn petit.
are-they come to a water which there was and ran a little
si a entre liauwe & la forest moult bele praerie & moult
so has-it between the-water and the forest very fair meadow and very
grant. & la damoisele dist a leonche. biax sire ie sui vne
great and the damsel says to Leonce fair lord I am a
damoisele qui sui a autrui que a moi. Et quant ialai a gannes
damsel who am of another than of me And when I-went to gannes
len me desfend sor les iex que ie namenasse la ou li doi
one me forbids upon the eyes that I not-might-bring there where the two

enfant sont fors seulement les .ij. maistres as enfans ne ie
children are except only the two masters of-the children nor I
noseroie pas trespasser le commandement que fais mest.
not-would-dare at-all transgress the command that made to-me-is
por che vous couendra chi atendre iusca le matin. Et nous
for this you will-behoove here to-wait until-to the morning And we
irons entre moi & chest autre cheualier la ou li enfant
shall-go between me and this other knight there where the children
sont & procurons que vous i porois venir. & sachies
are and procure that you there will-be-able to-come and know
que le matin aurois en message vn de ches escuiers qui
that the morning will-you-have as messenger one of these squires who
chi sont auoec moi. qui vous reuenra dire de che que nous
here are with me who to-you will-come-back to-tell of this that we
aurons troue. Damoisele fait il puis que remanoir me couient.
shall-have found Damsel says he since that to-remain me behooves
dites moi ou ie me porai herbergier. volentiers fait ele or
tell me where I myself shall-be-able to-lodge willingly says she now
me sieues. Lors sen vont tout contremont la riuiere.
me follow Then themselves-thence go-they all up the river
tant quil coisissent vn poi loing sor destre le chastel de
so-far that-they see a little far upon right the castle of
charosche qui marchisoit al chastel qui auoit non brions.
charosche which bordered on-the castle which had name brion
si estoit la forest por chou apelee a son droit non briosque.
so was the forest for this called by its right name briosque
La damoisele monstre a leonche le chastel. & chil i
The damsel shows to Leonce the castle and that-one there
ua herbergier entre lui & ses escuiers. Et entre la damoisele
goes to-lodge between him and his squires And between the damsel
& lambegue cheuauchent tant quil sont venu au lac. Il
and Lambegue ride so-far that-they are come to-the lake They

entrent ens si estoit ia nuis quant il i uindrent. Et
enter in so was already night when they there came And
moult sen merueille lambegues. comment la damoisele
much himself-thereat marvels Lambegue how the damsel
osoit a chele eure entrer dedens chele iauwe qui si estoit
dared at that hour to-enter into that water which so was
grans. Mais il ne sot onques mot tres quil se vit deuant
great But he not knew ever word until that-he himself saw before
vnes grans portes. a lentree dune haute maison. Il regarde
some great gates at the-entry of-a high house He looks
entor soi. Mais il ne vit mie la riue del lac quil ot
around himself But he not saw at-all the bank of-the lake which-he had
ore si grant veu. si sen merueille trop durement. La
now so great seen so himself-thereat marvels too hard The
damoisele entre ens auant. & il apres. & la damoisele
damsel enters in first and he after and the damsel
entre en la cambre ou li enfant sont. Quant il sorent
enters into the chamber where the children are When they knew
que la damoisele estoit venue. si salent hors. Et quant
that the damsel was come so leap-they out And when
bohors connoist son maistre il ne fait pas a demander
Bors knows his master it not makes at-all to ask
si a grant ioie. Car il le baise plus de .C. fois. Mais
if-he has great joy For he him kisses more than hundred times But
quant lyoniaus ot dire que ses maistres ne vient pas si ne
when Lionel hears say that his master not comes at-all so not
demande plus noueles. ains se fiert en la cambre ariere
asks-he more news rather himself strikes into the chamber back
& vient a vne garderobe. si voit la damoisele qui auoit lui
and comes to a wardrobe so sees the damsel who had him
& son frere amene illuec. & ele faisoit sa plaie de son
and his brother brought there and she made her wound of her

vis afaitier qui moult estoit encore grans. Et quant il le
face dress which very was yet great And when he her
vit si se merueille ou ele auoit chele plaie prise. Car il
saw so himself marvels where she had that wound taken For he
ne lauoit pas au venir aperceue. ha damoisele fait il qui
not it-had at-all at-the coming perceived ah damsel says he who
vous a fait chele plaie. chertes moult vous a empirie &
to-you has made that wound certainly much you has-it worsened and
enlaidie. voire fait ele lyonel dont ne me doit moult amer
uglied truly says she Lionel then not me must much love
chis qui la me fist souffrir. & por qui ie lai rechus
this-one who it me made suffer and for whom I it-have received
volentiers & de boin gre & si ot sauue la vie por
willingly and of good will and so had-he saved the life for
cheste plaie. Chertes fait il oil autretant comme son cors.
this wound Certainly says he yes as-much as his body
Car iamais rien que vous li commandes ne dooit veer ne
For ever-more anything that you him command not ought-he refuse nor
contredire. & qui lauroit fait ele por vous eue. quel loier
gainsay and who it-would-have says she for you had what reward
len renderies vous. coi fait il. si voirement mait
to-her-thereof would-render you what says he so truly me-may-help
diex ie lameroie sor toute riens & querroie & douterroie.
God I her-would-love above all thing and would-believe and would-fear
Chertes fait ele lyonel dont ne vaudroie pas que ie ne
Certainly says she Lionel then not would-wish-I at-all that I not
leuse eue. Car ie loi por vous desfendre de mort &
it-had had For I it-had for you to-defend from death and
garandir. quant lespee vous fu leuee desor le chief por colper.
to-protect when the-sword to-you was raised over the head for to-cut
Or esgardes combien vous me deues de gueredon. Combien
Now look how-much you to-me owe of reward How-much

chertes ie vous en doi autretant com ie doi amer ma vie.
certainly I to-you thereof owe as-much as I must love my life
& moult de deboinairete & de bien & de pitie quil na
and much of kindness and of good and of pity that-it not-has
en pharien mon maistre. qui iou auoie mande ma grant
in Pharien my master to-whom I had sent my great
mesaise. & si nest pas a moi venus. Et si lamoie moult
hardship and so not-is-he at-all to me come And so him-loved-I much
& creoie. que se ie eusse tout le mont en mon pooir il en
and believed that if I had all the world in my power he thereof
fust plus sires asses que ie ne fuisse. Et vous vous meistes
were more lord enough than I — might-be And you yourself put
en auenture de mort por moi & si ne me connoissies. Ne
in adventure of death for me and so not me knew-you Nor
ia diex au ior mait quant iamais aurai maistre se
ever God at-the day me-may-help when ever-more shall-I-have master except
vous non. tant com vous me voldrois enseignier. Car millor
you not so-long as you me will-wish to-teach For better
maistre ne poroie ie pas auoir de vous. Car nus ne se
master not could I at-all have than you For anyone not himself
doit tant fier en autrui. comme en chelui qui plus laime
must so-much trust in another as in that-one who most him-loves
que tout li autre. Quant la damoisele lot si en a
than all the others When the damsel it-heard so thereof has-she
si grant pitie que les larmes len sont del cuer as
so great pity that the tears to-her-thereof are from-the heart to-the
iex venus. & ele la prins entre ses bras si commenche
eyes come and she him-has taken between her arms so begins
a plorer moult tendrement. & le prinst a baisier es iex
to weep very tenderly and him took to kiss on-the eyes
& en la bouche. Et lors entre lambegues en la cambre. &
and on the mouth And then enters Lambegue into the chamber and

quant lyoniaus le voit venir si le salue. & cil sagenoille
when Lionel him sees come so him greets and that-one himself-kneels
deuant lui. si li demande comment il li a puis este.
before him so him asks how it to-him has since been
Maluaisement fait li enfes. mais dieu merchi or mestat il
Badly says the child but God thanks now to-me-stands it
bien. Car iai auques oubli de mes dolors & de mes anuis.
well For I-have somewhat forgotten of my sorrows and of my troubles
Et toutes eures le tient la damoisele enbrachie parmi le
And all hours him holds the damsel embraced around the
col. & lambegues li dist; Sire mes oncles vostre maistres
neck and Lambegue to-him says Lord my uncle your master
vous salue. Mes maistres nest il mie voir fait lyoniax. mais
you greets My master not-is he at-all truly says Lionel but
vous estes maistres bohort. Car vous lestes venus solasier
you are master (of-)Bors For you him-are come to-solace
de sa mesaise. & neporquant comment li est il pharien.
of his hardship and nevertheless how to-him is it Pharien
Sire fait il dieu merchi il est sains & haities.
Lord says he God thanks he is sound and hale

Lors li conte les anuis & les tribous quil a puis
Then to-him tells-he the troubles and the tumults that-he has since
eus por garandir les preudommes del pais. & de dorien le
had for to-protect the worthy-men of-the country and of Dorin the
fiex claudas fait lyoniax est il garis del colp que bohors
son (of-)Claudas says Lionel is he healed of-the blow that Bors
mes freires li douna. Et lambegues commenche a rire &
my brother to-him gave And Lambegue begins to laugh and
li dist. quil est si garis. comme chis qui a sa fin est
to-him says that-he is so healed as this-one who to his end is
ales. Comment fait lyoniax dites vous que il est mors por
gone How says Lionel say you that he is dead for

voir. sire fait il iel vi en biere iesier sans ame tous frois
true lord says he I-him saw on bier lie without soul all cold
mors. Ore ne sentremeche ia nus fait il des ore mais de
dead Now not himself-may-busy ever anyone says he from now more of
guerroier por mon iretage. Car bien sera encore rescous.
warring for my heritage For well will-it-be yet rescued
Et diex desfende claudas quil encore si tost ne mure
And God may-forbid Claudas that-he yet so soon — may-die
deuant que ie li fache sauoir combien de deserte puet
before that I to-him may-make know how-much of desert can
auoir qui autrui terre prent a forche. Ensi parole lyoniax. si
have who another's land takes by force Thus speaks Lionel so
sen merueillent moult tout chil qui loirent. des fieres
themselves-thereat marvel much all those who him-heard of-the fierce
paroles quil traist auant. mais trop en est lie la dame
words which-he drew forward but too-much thereof is glad the lady
del lac. et si volentiers lescoute que ele ne puet entendre
of-the lake and so willingly him-listens that she not can attend
a autre chose. Lors li deuise lambegues comment il est
to other thing Then to-him devises Lambegue how he is
laiens venus & par quel couent. Et que iamais phariens
in-there come and by what covenant And that ever-more Pharien
nistera de prison. deuant que leonches li sires de paerne
not-will-issue from prison before that Leonce the lord of paerne
auroit veu lui & bohort. Et lors demande la dame del
would-have seen him and Bors And then asks the lady of-the
lac a lyonel que il en fera. se il i vaudra aler ou non.
lake to Lionel what he thereof will-do if he there will-wish to-go or not
Dame fait il ien ferai chou que ma damoisele men
Lady says he I-thereof shall-do this that my damsel me-thereof
loera. que ie tieng chi. Comment fait la dame estes vous
will-advise whom I hold here How says the lady are you

donques si a li. Sui dame fait il. a qui seroie ie dont.
then so to her Am-I lady says he to whom would-be I then
ele ma si chier acate que bien me doit auoir gaaignie par
she me-has so dear bought that well me must have won by
tant de mal. lors li descueure il meismes le uisage &
so-much of harm then to-her uncovers he himself the face and
desuolepe. si que tout voient la plaie apertement. Et chele
unwraps so that all see the wound openly And that-one
qui estoit dame de laiens dist. Chertes ele a bien emploie la
who was lady of in-there said Certainly she has well employed the
plaie sele la por vous eue. que ia ne mait diex a nul
wound if-she it-has for you had that ever not me-may-help God at any
ior. quant vous serois ia se preudons non. se vous iusca
day when you will-be ever except worthy-man not if you until-to
droit eage domme poes durer. ensi parolent de lyonel & vn
right age of-man can last thus speak-they of Lionel both one
& autre. & la dame du lac satorne a aler a lendemain
and other and the lady of-the lake herself-prepares to go at the-next-day
iusca la riuiere desous charosque. & menra auoec lui les
until-to the river below charosche and will-lead with her the
.ij. enfans por monstrer a leonche de paerne qui les atent.
two children for to-show to Leonce of paerne who them awaits
A ches paroles & a ches deuises sacorde moult bien
To these words and to these devisings himself-agrees very well
lambegues. & li enfant autresi. Ne la dame ne les i menoit
Lambegue and the children likewise Nor the lady not them there led
se por che non. que ele ne voloit mie que il fuissent
except for this not that she not wished at-all that they were
seu laiens de teus gens qui les a gaities aucunes fois. que
known in-there by such people who them has watched some times that
il ne sen preissent garde. Car legierement les peust
they not themselves-thereof might-take heed For lightly them could

len prendre. puis que len seust la ou il conuersassent.
one take since that one knew there where they dwelt
ensi com il alaissent iuer en bois. ou ensi com il en
thus as they went to-play in wood or thus as they thence
uenissent. Endementiers quil parloient de ceste chose si vint
came Meanwhile that-they spoke of this thing so came
lancelot laiens qui fu leues de dormir. Car il auoit toute ior
Lancelot in-there who was risen from sleeping For he had all day
este en bois. & moult estoit leues matin. & la dame auoit
been in wood and very was-he risen early and the lady had
en costume que ia au souper ne mangast que ele ne le
in custom that ever at-the supper not would-she-eat that she not him
veist auant. ne au disner por que il fust en la maison.
saw first nor at-the dinner provided that he were in the house
Car puis chele eure que il se sot et pot entremetre de
For since that hour that he himself knew and could busy of
seruir ne meniast ele. deuant quil eust deuant li trenchie
serving not would-eat she before that-he had before her carved
vn poi. & mis del vin dedens sa coupe. & lors si le
a little and put of-the wine into her cup and then so him
fist aleir seoir. Et ele se delitoit autresi en lui esgarder
made-she go sit And she herself delighted likewise in him beholding
comme chele qui mise auoit en lui toutes ses amors que len
as that-one who put had in him all her loves that one
puet en enfant metre par pitie de noureture. Et plus lamoit
can in child put by pity of nurture And more him-loved
ele asses que pitie de nature ne requerroit. Car nule feme
she enough than pity of nature — would-require For any woman
ne peust plus amer enfant quele eust porte en son ventre.
not could more love child that-she had borne in her belly

Lancelos vint tout contreual la sale. & ot vn capelet de
Lancelot came all down the hall and had a garland of
roses vermeilles resplendissans en son chief. qui moult li
roses red resplendent on his head which very to-him
sist bien sor le blondor des cauex qui moult furent bel.
sat well upon the blondness of-the hairs which very were fair
& si estoit el mois dauost que roses nont mie natureil
and so was-it in-the month of-August that roses not-have at-all natural
raison de tant durer. Mais li contes de lui affiche. conques
reason of so-long lasting But the tale of him affirms that-ever
tant com il fu el lac. ne fu nul ior fust estes ou fust
so-long as he was in-the lake not was any day were-it summer or were-it
iuers. quil neust au matin .j. capel de rose freches &
winter that-he not-had at-the morning a garland of roses fresh and
vermeilles sor ses cheuex. ia si matin ne se leuast. fors
red upon his hairs ever so early not himself might-rise except
seulement au vendredi & as veilles des hautes festes. &
only on-the Friday and on-the eves of-the high feasts and
tant comme quaresmes durast. En tous les autres iour auoit
so-long as Lent lasted On all the other days had
lancelos chascun matin capel de roses. Ne ia ne sen
Lancelot each morning garland of roses Nor ever not himself-thereof
preist si garde. quil onques pot apercheuoir qui le li
might-take so heed that-he ever could perceive who it to-him
aportoit iluec. & maintes fies i gaita por le sauoir.
brought there and many times there watched-he for it to-know
Mais onques puis que li doi enfant furent venu en sa
But ever after that the two children were come into his
compaignie. ne fu nus matins si tost com il se leuoit &
company not was any morning so soon as he himself rose and
tenoit son capel. quil nel depechoit si en faisoit .iij. &
held his garland that-he not-it broke-up so thereof made three and

dounoit le sien a chascun des .ij. enfans. si li fu atorne
gave the his to each of-the two children so to-him was-it turned
a grant gentilleche de cuer de tous cheus qui le veoient.
to great nobility of heart by all those who him saw
Il vint contreual la sale si com vous aues oi. Et quant
He came down the hall so as you have heard And when
il sot que sa dame estoit en la chambre as loges qui ensi
he knew that his lady was in the chamber of-the lodges which thus
fu apelee. si voit la grant compaignie de valles. dont il i
was called so sees the great company of youths of-whom it there
auoit tous iours asses. Mais li premerains de tous cheus qui
had all days enough But the first of all those who
laperchut che fu bohors qui el giron son maistre gisoit.
him-perceived this was Bors who in-the lap (of-)his master lay
si cort maintenant a li & dist. sire vees chi mon maistre
so runs at-once to him and says lord see here my master
qui venus est. & lors salent tot encontre li & la dame &
who come is and then leap all toward him both the lady and
vn moult biax cheualiers qui ses amis estoit. & doi autre
a very fair knight who her friend was and two others
qui auoec li estoient. Et tout apres & vn & autre. Car il
who with her were And all after both one and other For they
li portoient trop grant honor. & la dame le prent entre
to-him bore very great honor and the lady him takes between
ses bras si li baise les iex & la bouche moult doucement.
her arms so to-him kisses the eyes and the mouth very sweetly
Et quant lambegue voit la merueille que la dame faisoit de
And when Lambegue sees the marvel that the lady made of
chelui laiens. si se merueille moult qui il puet estre. Quant
that-one in-there so himself marvels much who he can be When
la dame ot lancelot laisie il sen uint a lambegues si le
the lady had Lancelot left he himself-thence came to Lambegue so him

salue. & li fait ioie moult grant si quil dist que onques
greets and to-him makes joy very great so that-he says that ever
mais nul enfant de son eage ne vit qui il peust onques
more any child of his age not saw-he whom he could ever
autretant proisier. & moult li poise que il ne seit qui
as-much prize and much him grieves that he not knows who
il est. Mais il le bee a sauoir au plustost que il pora.
he is But he it aims to know at-the soonest that he will-be-able
Atant se sistrent au mangier. & quant lancelos ot
Thereupon themselves sat to-the eating and when Lancelot had
serui de son mestier si ala seoir. Car nus dels ne fust
served of his office so went-he to-sit For anyone of-them not were
ia tant hardis qui asseist deuant che quil fust assis. &
ever so bold who might-sit before this that-he were seated and
neporquant il estoit fil de roi & li doi freire ausi. si ne
nevertheless he was son of king and the two brothers also so not
vaut au commenchement mangier auoec nul daus. tant
wished-he at-the beginning to-eat with any of-them so-much
ca forche fist la dame quil prist lor seruices autresi com
that-by force made the lady that-he took their services likewise as
il auoit deuant fait. Et disoit que ele voloit que il feist
he had before done And said that she wished that he might-do
che que ele commanderoit. Car ia de rien fait ele que
this that she would-command For ever of anything says she that
ie vous fache faire ne seres por uilains tenus par droit.
I you may-make do not will-you-be for villein held by right
Ensi com vous aues oi en ariere ont esploitie quil
Thus as you have heard in back have-they arranged that-they
iront lendemain a la riuiere de charosque Apres mangier
will-go the-next-day to the river of charosche After eating
salerent tantost couchier. Car matin baoit a leuer la
themselves-went straightway to-bed For early aimed to rise the

dame & sa compaignie. Al matin se leuerent moult
lady and her company At-the morning themselves rose-they very
main & quant messe orent oie si monterent. si enmena la
early and when mass had-they heard so mounted-they so led-away the
dame del lac les .ij. enfans. & lancelot qui moult volentiers
lady of-the lake the two children and Lancelot who very willingly
i ala. & mena od lui son ami soi tiers de cheualiers
there went and led with her her friend himself third of knights
bien apparellies de toutes armes. & tant i ot escuiers
well equipped with all arms and so-many there had-it squires
& serians armes. qui bien porent estre iusca .xxx. lancelos
and sergeants armed who well could be up-to thirty Lancelot
cheuauche dales sa dame toutes eures & apres li vn vallet
rides beside his lady all hours and after him a youth
qui li porte son arc & ses saietes. Et il a vne espee
who for-him carries his bow and his arrows And he has a sword
petite a sa mesure pendue a larchon de sa sele deuant. &
little to his measure hung at the-bow of his saddle before and
tous iors porte vn baston en sa main. ou autre chose por
all days carries a stick in his hand or other thing for
ieter as bestes ou as oisiax. ne nus ne ietoit plus
to-throw at-the beasts or at-the birds nor anyone not threw more
droit de lui. Et lambegue qui le regarde se refait tous
straight than him And Lambegue who him watches himself refreshes all
en lui esgarder. & lors ont auant enuoie .j. escuier au
in him beholding and then have-they forward sent a squire to-the
chastel ou li sires de paerne auoit ieu. & chil lamaine
castle where the lord of paerne had lain and that-one him-leads
tant quil vint pres des gens armes qui latendent. Et quant
so-far that-he came near of-the people armed who him-await And when
il les vit si ot paor. car moult se doutoit de traison. il
he them saw so had-he fear for much himself feared of treason he

dist a lescuier. frere va moi dire a lambegue quil viegne a
said to the-squire brother go for-me to-say to Lambegue that-he may-come to
moi parler. & chil i ua si li dist & lambegues vait
me to-speak and that-one there goes so to-him says and Lambegue goes
a lui parler. & chil est deschendus du palefroi ou il
to him to-speak and that-one is dismounted from-the palfrey where he
seoit si est montes sor vn cheual. & quant il voit lambegue
sat so is mounted upon a horse and when he sees Lambegue
si li demande porcoi ches gens armes sont iluec issi venus.
so him asks wherefore these people armed are there thus come
& chil respont por les enfans garder. sui ie fait il seurs
and that-one answers for the children to-guard am I says he sure
que il ni a traison. oil fait lambegues che sachies. Mais
that it not-there has treason yes says Lambegue this know But
il heent claudas de mort ne moi nen deues vous pas
they hate Claudas to death nor me not-thereof must you at-all
mescroire. car vous saues bien que ie namai onques traison.
misbelieve for you know well that I not-loved ever treason
Lors sentornent andui iuscas enfans. & quant li sires
Then themselves-turn both until-to-the children and when the lord
de paerne les voit si les cort baisier. & pleure moult
of paerne them sees so them runs-he to-kiss and weeps very
tenrement de la grant pitie que il en a. & quant il seit
tenderly from the great pity that he thereof has and when he knows
que che est la dame qui les a en garde si deschent &
that this is the lady who them has in keeping so dismounts-he and
li chiet as pies & dist. dame por dieu gardes les bien
to-her falls at-the feet and says lady for God guard them well
les .ij. enfans. Car il furent fil al plus preudomme &
the two children For they were sons of-the most worthy-man and
al plus loial baron que ie onques veisse de mes iex. salue
of-the most loyal baron that I ever saw with my eyes saving

lonor au roi ban qui ses freires fu germains & fu sires
the-honor of-the king Ban who his brother was german and was lord
qui plus preudom darmes estoit che seit len bien. Et se vous
who more worthy-man of-arms was this knows one well And if you
seusies dame dont il sont descendu autresi bien com ie sai.
knew lady whence they are descended likewise well as I know
voirement les garderies vous a sauuete au grant bien que
truly them would-guard you in safety at-the great good that
ie quit que en vous soit. Car combien quil soient haut
I think that in you be For however-much that-they be high
de par le peire. riens namonte enuers le hauteche quil
from by the father anything not-amounts toward the highness that-they
ont de lor boine meire. Car nous sauons par le tesmoignage
have from their good mother For we know by the witness
des escriptures. que ele & si anchisor sont deschendu del
of-the scriptures that she and her ancestors are descended from-the
haut lignage au haut roi dauid. ne nous ne sauons a com
high lineage of-the high king David nor we not know to how
grant chose il poront monter. Car che sauons nous bien
great thing they will-be-able to-rise For this know we well
que en la grant bartaigne atendent tout a estre deliure des
that in the great britain await all to be delivered from-the
merueilles & des auentures qui i auienent. par vn qui
marvels and from-the adventures which there befall by one who
sera del lignage la meire a ches enfans por che poroient
will-be of-the lineage (of-)the mother of these children for this could-they
encore venir a grignor chose que len ne quide. & se vous ne
yet come to greater thing than one — thinks and if you not
les quidies garder dame. & ore & au loing des mains
them think to-guard lady both now and at-the long from-the hands
a lor anemis baillies les moi & a lor maistres. Car nous
of their enemies hand them to-me and to their masters For we

nous enfuirions anchois que nous nes gardisiens a nos
ourselves would-flee rather than we not-them might-guard to our
poirs. & se diex plaist tous iors ne seront il pas desiretes.
powers and if God pleases all days not will-be they at-all disinherited
Encore en prendra il pities a nostre signeur. & sil
Yet thereof will-take it pity to our Lord and if-they
retraient de proeche au vaillant lignage dont il sont estrait.
take-after in prowess to-the worthy lineage whence they are descended
il feront encore a lor anemis toute paour. Et si tost com
they will-make yet to their enemies all fear And so soon as
il poront armes porter si viegnent tout seurement en lor
they will-be-able arms to-bear so may-they-come all surely into their
honors. que ia ni troueront homme qui soit de la terre
honors for ever not-there will-they-find man who be of the land
neis qui por aus ne meche cors & auoir en abandon. ensi
born who for them not may-put body and wealth in abandon thus
poront legierement lor iretage recourer. A ches paroles
will-they-be-able lightly their heritage recover At these words
commenche lioniax a penser moult durement si li venoient
begins Lionel to think very hard so to-him came
les larmes as iex grosses & chaudes. Et la damoisele qui
the tears to-the eyes big and hot And the damsel who
por lui ot eue la plaie el vis lesgarde sel prent par
for him had had the wound in-the face him-looks-at so-him takes by
la main. si li dist que est che lyonel que aues vous em
the hand so to-him says what is this Lionel what have you in
pense voles me vous ia laisier. & disies ersoir que
thought wish me you already to-leave and said-you yester-evening that
vous nauries iamais maistre que moi. & il le regarde si
you not-would-have ever-more master but me and he her looks-at so
a grant honte. puis li dist ma douce damoisele encore
has-he great shame then to-her says my sweet damsel yet

le di ie bien. Mais ie pensoie a la terre qui fu mon peire.
it say I well But I thought of the land which was (of-)my father
que ie recourasse volentiers sil peust estre prochainement.
which I would-recover willingly if-it could be soon
Lors saut auant lancelos qui sa maluaise chiere vit. si
Then leaps forward Lancelot who his bad cheer saw so
len pesa moult. puis li a dit. fi biax cousins ne
him-thereof grieved much then to-him has-he said fie fair cousin not
plores ia por paour de terre auoir. car nous en aurons
weep ever for fear of land to-have for we thereof shall-have
asses se maluais cuers ne le vous taut. & se vous la
enough if bad heart not it from-you takes and if you it
conqueres en repos. dont ne series vous houni se vous la
conquer in repose then not would-be you shamed if you it
perdies tout a veue. Mais baes a estre si preu que vous la
lost all at sight But aim to be so valiant that you it
conquerres par proeche & par vigor. de ceste parole furent
will-conquer by prowess and by vigor of this word were
esbahi tout li plus sage. & se merueillent comment
amazed all the most wise and themselves marvel how
teus enfes puet si sages paroles auoir moustrees. Mais la
such child can so wise words have shown But the
dame en est esbahie sor tous les autres. non pas de la
lady thereof is amazed above all the others not at-all of the
sage parole. Mais de chou quil clama lyonel biau cousin.
wise word But of this that-he called Lionel fair cousin
si len sont les larmes du cuer montees as iex en
so to-her-thereof are the tears from-the heart risen to-the eyes on
haut. Si quil ni a nul qui bien nel voie. Et ele dist
high So that-it not-there has any who well not-it may-see And she says
au signor de paierne biaus sire ore ne vous esmaies ia
to-the lord of paerne fair lord now not yourself dismay ever

des enfans. Car ie les quit encontre tous hommes sauuer
of-the children For I them think against all men to-save
& garandir. Ne auoeques vous ne sen iront ia por
and to-protect Nor with you not themselves-thence will-go ever for
moi laissier. Car iai encore teus .ij. fortereches ou .iij. ou
me to-leave For I-have yet such two strongholds or three where
il ne peuent cremir dant claudas ne son pooir. Mais atant
they not can fear lord Claudas nor his power But thereupon
vous en ales. & bien poes dire a tous chex qui lor
yourself thence go and well can-you say to all those who their
amendement voldroient quil sont sain & sauf & entre ses
amendment would-wish that-they are sound and safe and among their
boins amis & tout aaise. Ne de moi ne saures vous plus
good friends and all at-ease Nor of me not will-know you more
qui ie sui. ne vous riens ne men enqueres. car ie aim les
who I am nor you anything not me-thereof inquire for I love the
enfans plus que nule autre fors que lor meire. Non mie por
children more than any other except that their mother Not at-all for
auoir lor terres ne lor honors. Car dieu merchi asses en
to-have their lands nor their honors For God thanks enough thereof
ai. Mais por aus qui moult font a amer. & por autrui
have-I But for them who very are to love and for another
plus que por euls. & vous fait ele a lambegue dites moi
more than for them and you says she to Lambegue tell for-me
a vostre oncle quil viegne ses signors veoir. & que ia
to your uncle that-he may-come his lords to-see and that ever
en lor terre por euls desfendre ne mete contens. Car il
in their land for them to-defend not he-may-put strife For they
auront a honor lor terre sil viuent & de lautrui asses.
will-have with honor their land if-they live and of the-another's enough

Dame fait lambegues ie men irai a mon oncle.
Lady says Lambegue I myself-thence shall-go to my uncle
Mais les voies par ou nous sommes ale & venu sont si
But the ways by where we are gone and come are so
desuoians que nus nes poroit tenir si com moi samble. Ie
devious that anyone not-them could hold so as to-me seems I
vous baillerai fait ele .j. de mes valles qui vous i amenra.
to-you shall-hand says she one of my youths who you there will-bring
quant vous i voldres venir. Mais gardes que vous ni
when you there will-wish to-come But see that you not-there
veignies que vous tierc ou que vous quart. Lors li baille
may-come but yourself third or but yourself fourth Then to-him hands
la dame vn de ses varles & il prent congie a la dame auant
the lady one of her youths and he takes leave of the lady first
& puis a tous les autres. & enmaine a grant paine le
and then of all the others and leads-away with great pain the
signor de paerne qui de lancelot ne se pot consiurer de
lord of paerne who from Lancelot not himself could do-without of
veoir. Et auoit ses iex en lui fichies autresi comme vns hons
seeing And had his eyes on him fixed likewise as a man
derues. Car moult quide bien soupechouner qui il estoit.
crazed For much thinks-he well to-suspect who he was
Or sen torne la dame ariere au lac. si enmaine les
Now herself-thence turns the lady back to-the lake so leads-away the
enfans. Et quant ele a grant pieche ale si apele lancelot a
children And when she has great while gone so calls Lancelot to
vne part hors del chemin si li dit moult belement. fiex
one side out of-the road so to-him says very fairly son
de roi comment fustes vous ore si hardis que vous apelastes
of king how were you now so bold that you called
lyonel vostre cousin. qui est fiex de roi & plus haus hons
Lionel your cousin who is son of king and more high man

asses que len ne quide & plus gentiex. Dame fait chiex
enough than one — thinks and more gentle Lady says that-one
qui moult fu hontex ensi me vint li mos a la bouche par
who very was ashamed thus to-me came the word to the mouth by
auenture que onques garde ne men dounai. Or me dites
adventure that ever heed not myself-thereof gave-I Now me tell
dont fait ele par la foi que vous me deues lequel quidies
then says she by the faith that you to-me owe which think
vous qui soit plus gentiex hons ou vous ou il. Dame fait il
you who be more gentle man or you or he Lady says he
vous maues moult coniure. Car ie ne doi a nului tant de
you me-have much adjured For I not owe to anybody so-much of
foi comme a vous qui estes ma dame & ma meire. ne ie
faith as to you who are my lady and my mother nor I
ne sai combien ie sui gentiex hom de lignage. Mais par la
not know how-much I am gentle man of lineage But by the
foi que ie doi a vous ie ne me deigneroie pas esmaier de
faith that I owe to you I not myself would-deign at-all dismay of
che dont ie lai veu plorer. Et len me fait entendant que
this whereof I him-have seen weep And one me makes understanding that
dun homme & dune feme sont issus toutes gens. Ie ne
from-one man and from-one woman are issued all people I not
sai pas par quel raison li vn ont plus de gentilleche que li
know at-all by what reason the ones have more of nobility than the
autre. se on ne la conquert par proeche autresi com on fait
others if one not it conquers by prowess likewise as one does
les terres & les autres honors. Mais tant sachies vous bien
the lands and the other honors But so-much know you well
de voir. que se li grant cuer faisoient les gentiex hommes.
of truth that if the great hearts made the gentle men
Ie quideroie encore estre des plus gentiex. voire biax fiex fait
I would-think yet to-be of-the most gentle truly fair son says

la dame ore i parra. Et ie vous di que vous ne perdes
the lady now there will-appear And I to-you say that you not lose
a estre vn des gentiex hommes del monde. se par defaute
to be one of-the gentle men of-the world except by lack
de cuer non. Comment dame fait il dites le vous vraiement
of heart not How lady says he say it you truly
comme ma dame. Et ele dist que oil sans faille. Dame fait
as my lady And she says that yes without fail Lady says
il de dieu soies vous benoite quant vous si tost le maues
he of God be you blessed when you so soon it to-me-have
dit. Car a che me feres vous venir ou ie ne quidai ia
said For to this me will-make you come where I not thought ever
ataindre. Ne ie nauoie de riens nule si grant desirier comme
to-reach Nor I not-had of thing any so great desire as
de gentilleche auoir. Ore ne me poise mie moult. se chist
of nobility to-have Now not me grieves at-all much if these
mont serui & honere. encore soient il fil de roi. quant ie
me-have served and honored yet be they sons of king when I
porrai encore a eus ataindre ou a eus valoir ou passer.
shall-be-able yet to them reach or to them be-worth or surpass

Par ches paroles qui si sont de grant cuer & de haut
By these words which so are of great heart and of high
sens. emble si lancelos le cuer sa dame que plus laime
sense steals so Lancelot the heart (of-)his lady that more him-loves
quele ne seut. ne ne sen puet consiurer. ains croist
than-she — was-wont nor not herself-thereof can do-without rather grows
lamor que ele met en lui & enforche de iour en iour.
the-love that she puts in him and strengthens from day to day
& se ne fust le grant desirier que ele auoit de son bien
and if not were the great desire that she had of his good
& de son amendement ele neust si grant duel de
and of his amendment she not-would-have so great grief of

nule rien com de che quil croissoit tant & enforchoit.
any anything as of this that-he grew so-much and strengthened
Car bien voit quil sera par tans si grans & si enbarnis
For well sees-she that-he will-be in time so great and so grown-manly
que cheualier le conuenra estre & cherquier les merueilles
that knight him will-behoove to-be and to-seek the marvels
& les auentures en loig & en estraignes pais. & lors
and the adventures in far and in foreign countries and then
laura che li est avis ausi comme perdu puis quele
him-will-have-she this to-her is opinion as as-if lost since that-she
nel verra souent. Ne ele ne voit pas comment ele se
not-him will-see often Nor she not sees at-all how she herself
puisse consiurer de lui veoir. si i pense tant que tous
may do-without of him seeing so there thinks-she so-much that all
autres pensers en met arierre. En teil penser cheuauche la
other thoughts thereby puts-she behind In such thought rides the
dame dusques al lac. Et sele a les enfans ameis et chier
lady until to-the lake And if-she has the children loved and dear
tenus. ore se paine asses plus quil aient lor volente
held now herself pains-she enough more that-they may-have their will
toute. quele nauoit faite deuant. & che fait ele por amor
all than-she had done before and this does she for love
de lancelot. si se pense que tant les tenra entor li
of Lancelot so herself thinks-she that so-long them will-she-hold around her
com ele les pora tenir. Et quant lancelos sera cheualiers.
as she them will-be-able to-hold And when Lancelot will-be knight
si li remanra lyoniax & bohors en sa baillie. Et quant
so to-her will-remain Lionel and Bors in her keeping And when
lyoniax en ira a cheualerie al mains li remandra
Lionel thence will-go to chivalry at-the least to-her will-remain
bohors en sa baillie. Ensi se bee a comforter de lun
Bors in her keeping Thus herself aims-she to comfort of the-one

por lautre. Mais atant le lait chi endroit li contes ester
for the-other But thereupon it leaves here in-place the tale to-be
de li & des enfans & de sa compaignie toute. si retorne
of her and of-the children and of her company all so returns
au signor de paerne & a lambegue qui sen vont.
to-the lord of paerne and to Lambegue who themselves-thence go

Pharien in the Tower

XXV

Riding back, Leonce tells Lambegue he believes the child who called Lionel cousin is King Ban's son, so closely does he resemble him. At Gannes the news of the boys brings great joy. But the barons who side with the lord of High Wall, fearing Claudas, plot to seize Pharien and his prisoners, and when Pharien leads them out by night toward his castle, they are ambushed at the Breton Gate, wounded, and taken back to the tower.

Ore sen vont entre leonche de paerne & lambegue
Now themselves-thence go between Leonce of paerne and Lambegue
le neueu pharien & lor escuiers. Et quant il ont vn peu
the nephew (of-)Pharien and their squires And when they have a little
eslongie le reuiere de charosque. si demande leonches a
gone-far-from the river of charosche so asks Leonce to
lambegue sil connoist chel enfant qui apela lyonel son cousin.
Lambegue if-he knows that child who called Lionel his cousin
Et il dist quil nel connoist pas. Chertes fait leonches
And he says that-he not-him knows at-all Certainly says Leonce
moult estra & preus & fiers & sages sil vit qui que
very will-he-be both valiant and fierce and wise if-he lives whoever that
il soit. Ne onques mais enfant de son eage noi si haute
he may-be Nor ever more child of his age not-heard-I so high

parole dire de bouce. si se puet moult proisier la dame
word say from mouth so herself can much prize the lady
qui les norist. que sele ne fust plus sage & plus vaillans
who them nurtures for if-she not were more wise and more worthy
de toutes les autres femes. ele nes eust pas eus. ne
than all the other women she not-them would-have at-all had nor
chil na pas tort sil apele monsignor son cousin. Car
that-one not-has at-all wrong if-he calls my-lord his cousin For
ie quit quil le soit & de peire & de meire. & si le quit
I think that-he it be both of father and of mother and so it think-I
miex sauoir que par quidier. Comment fait lambegues quidies
better to-know than by thinking How says Lambegue think
vous quil soit ses cousins germains nei. de par qui. Ia
you that-he be his cousin german born from by whom Ever
nestoit il cha en ariere de tous les hommes del monde nus
not-was it here in back of all the men of-the world anyone
qui freires fust au roi bohort. ne madame la roine nauoit
who brother were to-the king Bors nor my-lady the queen not-had
en tout le monde cune seror. che fu madame la roine de
in all the world but-one sister this was my-lady the queen of
benoyc. Tant sachies vous bien fait leonches que chis enfes
benoic So-much know you well says Leonce that this child
fu fiex au roi ban de benoyc. ne nule figure domme ne
was son of-the king Ban of benoic nor any figure of-man not
resambla onques autresi bien com il fait a lui. Dieu merchi
resembled ever likewise well as he does to him God mercy
fait lambegues. que est che que vous aueis dit. len seit bien
says Lambegue what is this that you have said one knows well
quil fu mors auoec son peire. & neporquant qui que chist
that-he was dead with his father and nevertheless whoever that this-one
soit a preudomme ne faudra il pas. Comment fait leonches
be at worthy-man not will-fail he at-all How says Leonce

quidies quil ait este mors. Tant sachies vous bien que
think-you that-he may-have been dead So-much know you well that
che est il. Iel connois bien a son samblant issi le me dist
this is he I-him know well by his semblance thus it to-me says
li cuers. & lambegue sen merueille moult durement.
the heart and Lambegue himself-thereat marvels very hard
Atant sont venu a gannes & treuuent la tor qui est
Thereupon are-they come to gannes and find the tower which is
chascun ior & chascune nuit gardee que phariens ne li
each day and each night guarded that Pharien nor the
prison ne sen issent. Quant li doi message furent
prisoners not themselves-thence may-issue When the two messengers were
venu. & il orent dites les noueles. si fu la ioie si grans
come and they had told the news so was the joy so great
que a paines nel poroit nus deuiser. Et lors sen
that with pains not-it could anyone devise And then themselves-thence
alerent les gardes dentor la tor. Ne des lors en auant
went the guards from-around the tower Nor from then on forward
ne quida phariens avoir garde. si atourna que au matin
not thought Pharien to-have care so arranged-be that at-the morning
enuoieroit ses prisons au roi claudas. & il meismes les
he-would-send his prisoners to-the king Claudas and he himself them
conuoiera iusques la que il seront a sauuete. Ensi deuise
will-escort until there that they will-be in safety Thus devises
phariens sa volente. Mais chil de la chite & del pais
Pharien his will But those of the city and of-the country
deuisent tout autre chose. Car il doutent & bien le quident
devise all other thing For they fear and well it think-they
sauoir que li rois claudas vendra sor euls. si ne peuent falir
to-know that the king Claudas will-come upon them so not can-they fail
a morir tout. ou a estre destruit & essilie. Et se nous
to die all or to be destroyed and exiled And if we

en laissons font il aler les prisons nous sommes mort.
thence let say they go the prisoners we are dead
Mais faisons tant que nous en soions saisi. & dautre
But let-us-do so-much that we thereof be seized and on-other
part nous a phariens asses mesfait. Car nous lauons tout
side to-us has Pharien enough misdone For we him-have all
ataint de pariur & de foi mentie. Car il nous creanta a
convicted of perjury and of faith belied For he to-us promised to
garder le roi claudas en sa prison. si prenons li tout auant.
keep the king Claudas in his prison so let-us-take him all first
& les autres prisons apres. & se claudas les aime tant
and the other prisoners after and if Claudas them loves so-much
com len quide. anchois nous pardonra il son maltalent. que
as one thinks rather to-us will-pardon he his ill-will than
mais nous laist destruire deuant ses iex. A chel conseil
ever us he-may-let destroy before his eyes To that counsel
sacordent tuit. Car issi quident bien vers claudas lor pais
themselves-agree all For thus think-they well toward Claudas their peace
auoir. si atournent que lendemain les prendront si com il
to-have so arrange-they that the-next-day them will-they-take so as they
sen voldront aler. ou la nuit meisme sil metent les
themselves-thence will-wish to-go or the night same if-they put the
pies hors de la tour. Ensi ont porparle la traison. non
feet out of the tower Thus have-they plotted the treason not
pas tuit. Mais chil qui sacordent au signor de haut
at-all all But those who themselves-agree with-the lord of high
mur. Maintenant font armer .xl. cheualiers de fausses
wall At-once make-they arm forty knights with false
armes. & iusca .ijc. serians des millors quil auoient.
arms and up-to two-hundred sergeants of-the best that-they had
si font gaitier as .iij. portes qui en la chite estoient. Si
so make-they watch at-the three gates which in the city were So

metent a chascune .iiij. vins que serians que cheualiers. Et
put-they at each four score what sergeants what knights And
dautre part pense phariens que sil puet metre ses prisons a
on-other side thinks Pharien that if-he can put his prisoners in
sauuete il le fera volentiers. en teil maniere quil les voille
safety he it will-do willingly in such manner that-he them may-wish
voiant tout le monde mener hors de la chite. Car il ne
seeing all the world to-lead out of the city For he not
seit pas les pensees de tous les gens. & neporquant il ne
knows at-all the thoughts of all the people and nevertheless he not
sacorde pas en la fin a che quil auoit deuant pense. ains
himself-agrees at-all in the end to this that-he had before thought rather
deuise quil les menra a son castel encore anuit. & puis
devises that-he them will-lead to his castle yet tonight and since
quil les tenra iluec na il garde que nus lor puisse
that-he them will-hold there not-has he care that anyone to-them may
faire mal outre son gre. & il seit de voir que claudas ne
do harm beyond his will and he knows of truth that Claudas not
se tenroit en nule guise de venir en la terre a forche.
himself would-hold in any guise from coming into the land by force
Et puis quil aura les prisons en sa baillie. il quide bien
And since that-he will-have the prisoners in his keeping he thinks well
claudas mener tout a sa volente. Car en nule maniere il
Claudas to-lead all to his will For in any manner he
ne soufferoit que chil de la vile ne li preudomme del
not would-suffer that those of the town nor the worthy-men of-the
pais fuissent destruit. tant com il i peust metre conseil.
country were destroyed so-long as he there could put counsel
Car dont lor auroit il la mort dounee.
For then to-them would-have he the death given

Ensi le pense phariens a faire. Et quant che vient la nuit
Thus it thinks Pharien to do And when this comes the night
apres la premiere some. il issi hors de la tor entre li
after the first sleep he issued out of the tower between him
& les .iij. prisons. dont li vns estoit encore moult naures
and the three prisoners of-whom the one was yet very wounded
de la plaie que lambegue li auoit faite. Et lambegues
from the wound that Lambegue to-him had made And Lambegue
meismes iert auoec eus. & quant il vindrent a la porte
himself was with them and when they came to the gate
bretone qui issi estoit apelee por che que deuers bertaigne
Breton which thus was called for this that toward britain
estoit. si furent assailli. & chil se desfendirent moult
was-it so were-they assailed and they themselves defended very
durement. Mais desfense ni ot mestier. car prins furent
hard But defense not-there had use for taken were-they
& naure tuit en la fin. & furent ariere en la tor mis en
and wounded all in the end and were back in the tower put in
prison. Ensi est phariens en prison & lambegues ses nies.
prison Thus is Pharien in prison and Lambegue his nephew
& li troi qui estoient por le roi claudas en ostages. si en
and the three who were for the king Claudas in hostages so thereof
laist ore li contes vn poi a parler si retorne au roi claudas.
leaves now the tale a little to speak so returns to-the king Claudas

Claudas and Pharien

XXVI

Claudas besieges Gannes with all his hosts. The barons who had no part in the treachery free Pharien and promise him the traitors, who come to beg his mercy and are pardoned; he rides alone to Claudas, who embraces him. Pharien begs peace for the city, and when Claudas refuses, he renders his homage and offers to fight anyone who says the barons forfeited. He summons Claudas to keep his pledge to enter prison, and Claudas denies it. Pharien defies him: Claudas will never sleep secure, and the heads of the lord of Saint Chire and his companions will fly before Pharien eats again.

Li rois claudas che dist li contes na pas oublie la honte
The king Claudas this says the tale not-has at-all forgotten the shame
que chil de gannes li orent faite. ne la mort son fil.
that those of gannes to-him had done nor the death (of-)his son
dont il sent encore au cuer le grant angoisse. si sen
whereof he feels yet at-the heart the great anguish so himself-thereof
bee a vengier moult cruelment. Il a toutes ses os semonses
aims to avenge very cruelly He has all his hosts summoned
si esforchiement com il plus pot. si que dedens le mois
so mightily as he most could so that within the month
entier fu deuant la chite de gannes. Quant li baron
whole was-he before the city of gannes When the barons
qui nauoient este consentant a la traison par coi phariens
who not-had been consenting to the treason by which Pharien
auoit este pris. si oirent dire que claudas venoit sor aus.
had been taken so heard say that Claudas came upon them
si furent moult a malaise. comme chil qui bien sauoient
so were-they very at unease as those who well knew
quil estoient destruit & mort. se vers lui ne pooient
that-they were destroyed and dead if toward him not could-they

trouer aucune pais. Et dautre part il seroient pariure sil
find some peace And on-other side they would-be perjured if-they
ne tenoient a pharien le sairement quil li auoient fait.
not kept to Pharien the oath which-they to-him had made
Car il len deuoient estre en aide vers tous chels qui
For they to-him-thereof ought be in aid against all those who
tort len vaudront faire. lors sacordent a che quil
wrong to-him-thereof will-wish to-do then themselves-agree-they to this that-they
iront mettre hors de prison & lui & ses compaignons
will-go to-put out of prison both him and his companions
tous. Il sont venu a gannes. & vienent a la tor &
all They are come to gannes and come to the tower and
font samblant que durement heient pharien. Et chil qui la
make semblance that hard hate-they Pharien And those who the
tor gardoient les laissent dedens entrer sans nul content.
tower guarded them let inside enter without any strife
Car il quidoient quil haissent autretant pharien comme
For they thought that-they hated as-much Pharien as
chil qui en prison lauoient mis. Maintenant fu phariens
those who in prison him-had put At-once was Pharien
desprisones & li crierent tout merchi cil qui desprisone
unprisoned and to-him cried all mercy those who unprisoned
lauoient. & len cairent as pies. & li prient que
him-had and to-him-thereof fell at-the feet and him beg that
por dieu eust merchi de la terre & deuls auant Car
for God he-may-have mercy of the land and of-them first For
sor aus venoit claudas a moult grant gent. ne nus ne
upon them came Claudas with very great people nor anyone not
nous porcachera pais ne acorde se vous ne le porcachies. Et
for-us will-contrive peace nor accord if you not it contrive And
sachies que nous ne fumes pas consentant a cheste traison
know that we not were at-all consenting to this treason

qui de vous a este faite. Et por che que vous nous
which of you has been done And for this that you us
en crees nous vous baillerons se vous voles le cors de
thereof may-believe we to-you shall-hand if you wish the body of
cheus qui de vous firent la traison. Se vous fait phariens
those who of you did the treason If you says Pharien
me les baillies ie men tendrai a bien paies. Et nous
to-me them hand I myself-thereof shall-hold for well paid And we
les vous baillerons font il sil ne senfuient de la terre.
them to-you shall-hand say they if-they not themselves-flee from the land
Mais lors nen porriens nous mais sil senfuioient.
But then not-thereof could we more if-they themselves-fled
Ensi est la chose acreantee & dune part & dautre quil
Thus is the thing promised both on-one side and on-other that-they
bailleront a pharien les malfaiteurs sil ne senfuient. &
will-hand to Pharien the evildoers if-they not themselves-flee and
il li creantent loialment. & phariens lor creant que il
they to-him promise loyally and Pharien to-them promises that he
lor aidera a son pooir enuers le roi claudas a querre pais.
them will-aid to his power toward the king Claudas to seek peace
& sil ni peuent pais auoir. il fera autretel com il
and if-they not-there can peace have he will-do likewise as they
feront. par che sont durement asseure chil del pais. Car
will-do by this are hard assured those of-the country For
bien quidoient quil fust moult bien del roi claudas. Et
well thought-they that-he were very well with-the king Claudas And
dautre part sont tant mene chil qui de lui auoient faite la
on-other side are so-far led those who of him had done the
traison. quil li sont venu merchi crier. & se sont
treason that-they to-him are come mercy to-cry and themselves are
mis outreement en se manaie. Et tout che fu par le conseil
put utterly in his power And all this was by the counsel

leonche de paerne qui moult estoit de grant sauoir. phariens
(of-)Leonce of paerne who very was of great knowledge Pharien
ne lor vaut faire ne mal ne honte. Car asses i a
not to-them wished to-do neither harm nor shame For enough there has-be
grant honor quant chil qui estoient asses plus haut homme
great honor when those who were enough more high men
de lui li estoient venut merchi crier. si lor pardouna
than him to-him were come mercy to-cry so to-them pardoned-he
son maltalent. par la proiere des autres peirs. Apres garnirent
his ill-will by the prayer of-the other peers After furnished-they
la chite al miex quil porent. Et quant claudas fu deuant
the city to-the best that-they could And when Claudas was before
venus. phariens apela a conseil les haus hommes qui laiens
come Pharien called to counsel the high men who in-there
estoient si lor dist. signor ie voeilg aler la hors au roi
were so to-them said lords I wish to-go there outside to-the king
claudas parler. sauoir se ia vers lui porroie trouer aucune
Claudas to-speak to-know if ever toward him could-I find some
pais. Et chil li dient quil ont de lui moult grant paor
peace And those to-him say that-they have of him very great fear
quil nel fache ochire ou ieter en prison. Ie ne quit pas
that-he him may-make kill or cast in prison I not think at-all
fait phariens quil le feist. Et neporquant il na pas tant
says Pharien that-he it would-do And nevertheless it not-has at-all so-much
en chascun com len i quide. ou soit de mal ou soit de
in each as one there thinks or be-it of evil or be-it of
bien. Et iai vers lui este moult loiax al grant besoig. si
good And I-have toward him been very loyal at-the great need so
ne deuroit pas vers moi penser desloiaute ne felonie. Mais
not ought at-all toward me think disloyalty nor felony But
ie voeil que vous me iures sour sains entre vous qui
I wish that you to-me may-swear upon saints among you who

chi estes li plus poissant que sil mochit. que vous ochires
here are the most powerful that if-he me-kills that you will-kill
maintenant les .iij. prisons que vous aues. Ensi li ont
at-once the three prisoners that you have Thus to-him have-they
iure com il a deuiset. & chil sen part de la chite
sworn as he has devised and that-one himself-thence parts from the city
sans compaignie de nul homme. Il cheuauche contremont
without company of any man He rides up
lost. si fu armes de toutes armes. Et les gens claudas
the-host so was armed with all arms And the people (of-)Claudas
connurent moult bien tous ses ators. & sist sor vn merueillos
knew very well all his gear and sat-he upon a marvelous
bel cheual. si li font tout ioie li plus preudomme &
fair horse so to-him make all joy the most worthy-men and
moult lonerent. Il cheuaucha tant quil est venus au treif
much him-honored He rode so-far that-he is come to-the tent
claudas. lors oste son hiaume. Et quant claudas le voit
(of-)Claudas then removes his helm And when Claudas him sees
il ne fait pas a demander sil li fait grant ioie. Car
it not makes at-all to ask if-he to-him makes great joy For
de si loing com il le vit corut contre li les bras tendus.
from so far as he him saw ran-he toward him the arms stretched
& le baise en la bouche moult amiaulement comme chelui
and him kisses on the mouth very lovingly as that-one
quil baoit moult a amer. Et tantost li dist phariens.
whom-he aimed much to love And straightway to-him says Pharien
Sire claudas ie ne vous baise mie volentiers. bien le sachies.
Lord Claudas I not you kiss at-all willingly well it know
deuant che que ie saurai quel droit ie i aie. porcoi fait
before this that I shall-know what right I there may-have wherefore says
li rois le dites vous. por che fait phariens que vous estes
the king it say you for this says Pharien that you are

venus asseoir ceste chite ce mest auis. & dedens sont mi
come to-besiege this city this to-me-is opinion and inside are my
carneil ami a grant plente. & mi peir & mi iure que
carnal friends in great plenty and my peers and my sworn-men whom
ie auoie prins enuers vous en conduit & en garandise. si
I had taken against you in conduct and in protection so
voi ore bien que sil i prenent mort ne damage che ne
see-I now well that if-they there take death or harm this not
sera se par moi non. porcoi fait claudas ont il la chite
will-be except by me not wherefore says Claudas have they the city
freme encontre moi qui est moie. & il sont mi homme
shut against me which is mine and they are my men
tuit. Che vous dirai ie bien fait phariens. Il est bien drois
all This to-you shall-tell I well says Pharien It is well right
puis que len voit venir gent armes desor lui. que len se
since that one sees come people armed upon him that one himself
contretiegne & garandisse. tant que len sache lequel on i
may-hold-out and may-protect so-long that one may-know which one there
puet atendre ou pais ou guerre. Et pour che que nous ne
can await or peace or war And for this that we not
seumes quel gent chestoient. si fu la chites contretenue. Mais
knew what people these-were so was the city held-out But
se vous creantes a venir laiens comme sires en boine pais
if you promise to come in-there as lord in good peace
ie le vous ferai ouurir tout maintenant. si i entereis.
I it for-you shall-make open all at-once so there will-you-enter
Ie ni enterai iamais fait claudas. a la premiere fois
I not-there shall-enter ever-more says Claudas at the first time
que ie i enterai. se au grant damage non a chels de
that I there shall-enter except to-the great harm not of those of
laiens. Sire fait phariens ie les ai prins en garandise. si
in-there Lord says Pharien I them have taken in protection so

vous pri & requier comme vostre hom que vous ne me
you beg-I and ask as your man that you not to-me
fachies honte. Mais en pais les prenes comme vos hommes.
may-do shame But in peace them take as your men
Et sil auoient enuers vous de rien mesfait. tout a vostre
And if-they had toward you of anything misdone all at your
uolente lamenderoient. Et claudas dist que ia de che ne
will it-would-they-amend And Claudas says that ever of this not
fera riens. Et li meillor baron dient. que sil ne venge
will-he-do anything And the best barons say that if-he not avenges
sor eus la mort de son fil & la grant honte quil vous
upon them the death of his son and the great shame which-they to-you
firent. dont naures iamais honor en terre. Lors se
did then not-will-you-have ever-more honor on earth Then himself
traist auant phariens si dist a claudas. Sire sire il est voirs
drew forward Pharien so says to Claudas Lord lord it is true
que ie sui vostres hom. ne onques tant com vous eustes
that I am your man nor ever so-long as you had
besoig de moi ne vous guerpi. Or est issi que vous estes
need of me not you forsook-I Now is-it thus that you are
au desus & que vous naues mais de moi mestier. Ie vous
at-the above and that you not-have more of me need I to-you
rent vostre hommage puis que mon conseil ne voles croire.
render your homage since that my counsel not wish-you to-believe
ne ma proiere escouter. Car des or mais me seroit il auis
nor my prayer to-hear For from now more to-me would-be it opinion
que vous auries enuers moi peu damor. & en moi auries
that you would-have toward me little of-love and in me would-have
soupechon & mescreance si irai en tel liu ou on me
suspicion and misbelief so shall-I-go into such place where one me
querra & amera. Et vous signor baron & cheualiers fait il
will-seek and will-love And you lords barons and knights says he

qui vostre seignor tenes a houni. sil ne prent veniance de
who your lord hold for shamed if-he not takes vengeance of
chels qui laiens sont. Or i parra com vous li aideres a
those who in-there are Now there will-appear how you him will-aid to
lui vengier. Che ne disies vous pas la ou il ert en peril
him avenge This not said you at-all there where he was in peril
de mort. deuant chel palais. dont iel deliurai a mes mains.
of death before that palace whence I-him delivered with my hands
Et quant lespee li estoit appareillie por fichier dedens
And when the-sword to-him was prepared for to-fix into
le cors. & tant sachies vous bien & vous & il que
the body and so-much know you well both you and he that
nous sommes laiens tant de cheualiers que asses aures
we are in-there so-many of knights that enough will-you-have
enuers nous mellee. Mais sil i auoit chi nul de vous qui
against us melee But if-it there had here any of you who
vausist dire que li baron de gannes aient forfait envers
would say that the barons of gannes may-have forfeited toward
vostre signor qui chi est porcoi il soient desirete ne mort.
your lord who here is wherefore they be disinherited or dead
Ie sui prest que ie les en desfende chi tout orendroit.
I am ready that I them thereof may-defend here all right-now
Ensi se poroffre phariens de la bataille deuant le roi
Thus himself offers Pharien of the battle before the king
claudas & tent son gage. Mais onques cheualier ni
Claudas and holds-out his gage But ever knight not-there
ot qui contens i osast metre. Et dans claudas a bien
had who strife there might-dare put And lord Claudas has well
samblant domme qui moult soit iries. si dist a pharien.
semblance of-man who very be angered so says to Pharien
Comment fait il pharien vous estes mes hom. & vous
How says he Pharien you are my man and you

me venes chi contralier de mes mortex anemis. & vous
me come here to-oppose for my mortal enemies and you
atisies de combatre pour euls. encontre les cheualiers de ma
stir-up of fighting for them against the knights of my
maison. En non dieu fait phariens vostre hom ne sui ie
house In name (of-)God says Pharien your man not am I
pas. ne vostre mortel anemi ne sont il pas encore. bien
at-all nor your mortal enemies not are they at-all yet well
vous gardes que vous ne fachies tant que il le soient.
yourself guard that you not may-do so-much that they it be
Mais ie vous offre bien por aus a tenir droit. & a faire de
But I to-you offer well for them to hold right and to do of
quantque vous lor saurois a demander. Si lor pardones
whatever you of-them will-know to ask So to-them pardon
vostre courous com a vos hommes. Claudas dist quil nen
your wrath as to your men Claudas says that-he not-thereof
fera riens. ne de che nescoutera il ni a nule proiere.
will-do anything nor of this not-will-hear he not-there has any prayer
Sire fait phariens ie vous ai rendu vostre hommage. &
Lord says Pharien I to-you have rendered your homage and
des ore mais voel ie bien que vous sachies que vous naues
from now more wish I well that you may-know that you not-have
nul pior anemi de moi. Atant men irai ore sans
any worse enemy than me Thereupon myself-thence shall-go now without
congie de vous & sans amor. Mais auant vous semoing
leave of you and without love But first you summon-I
de vostre fianche aquiter. Car vous me fianchastes loialment
of your pledge to-acquit For you to-me pledged loyally
comme rois que vous venries en ma prison quant ie vous
as king that you would-come into my prison when I you
en semondroie. Ie vous en semoing orendroit par vostre
thereof would-summon I you thereof summon right-now by your

foi. Et claudas respont que de che ne fu il onques ses
faith And Claudas answers that of this not was he ever his
fianchiers. & phariens dist que il estoit appareillies de prouer
pledger and Pharien says that he was prepared to prove
le orendroit. se il sose vers lui desfendre. phariens fait
it right-now if he himself-dares against him defend Pharien says
li rois tu es fols qui chi matises de bataille voiant ma
the king thou art foolish who here me-stirrest of battle seeing my
gent. Mais tu ni combateras ia en teil maniere. car se
people But thou not-there wilt-fight ever in such manner for if
ie tochioie plus me seroit torne a mal que a bien. Mais ie
I thee-killed more to-me would-be turned to ill than to good But I
te semong que tu gardes vers moi ta foi si com tu dois.
thee summon that thou keep toward me thy faith so as thou must
Ne ne dois mon hommage laisier se ie ne lai vers toi
Nor not must-thou my homage leave if I not it-have toward thee
forfait. ne ie ne te forfis onques riens que ie seusse. Sire
forfeited nor I not to-thee misdid ever anything that I knew Lord
claudas fait phariens. se ie neusse este vostre hom. & vous
Claudas says Pharien if I not-had been your man and you
vous en vausissies desfendre ie vous en atainsisse bien
yourself thereof would-wish defend I you thereof would-convict well
de ceste forche. Mais la fiance que ie vous fis ia mesteut
of this force But the pledge that I to-you made once me-behooves
garder. quels quele fust ou boine ou maluaise. & toutes
to-keep whatever that-it were or good or bad and all
vois vous semong ie bien de vostre foi. Et sachies que vous
ways you summon I well of your faith And know that you
naues nul pior anemi de moi. ne iamais dedens la chite
not-have any worse enemy than me nor ever-more within the city
ne enterres casses iert qui le vous desfendra. Il ni
not will-you-enter broken will-be-he who it to-you will-forbid It not-there

a .j. tout seul homme qui puisse porter armes qui ne vous
has a all single man who may bear arms who not for-you
quiere la mort sil en puet a chief venir. & des or
may-seek the death if-he thereof can to head come and from now
mais aues asses ou entendre et ior & nuit. que iamais
more have-you enough where to-attend both day and night for ever-more
aseur ne dormeres. si orres souent entor vous & noise
secure not will-you-sleep so will-you-hear often around you both noise
& cri se ie ne muir. & verrois vos paueillons rompre
and cry if I not die and will-you-see your pavilions break
& verser. & vos hommes ochire & naurer espesement.
and overturn and your men kill and wound thickly

Comment fait claudas pharien ai ie dont garde de toi.
How says Claudas Pharien have I then care of thee
Chertes oil fait phariens tant com ie porai ferir de lespee.
Certainly yes says Pharien so-long as I shall-be-able to-strike with the-sword
& moult poes vous auoir autre paor que de prison. Et quant
and much can you have other fear than of prison And when
li cors de moi sera ales. se vous remanes vis. si atendes vous
the body of me will-be gone if you remain alive so await you
de moi la mort. ou ame de cors sera noient. Et se vous
of me the death or soul of body will-be nothing And if you
onques amastes le signor de saint chire or li monstres a
ever loved the lord of saint chire now to-him show to
lame non pas au cors. car anchois que ie meniuece mais.
the-soul not at-all to-the body for before that I may-eat more
sera sa teste & les testes a ses compaignons loing des
will-be his head and the heads of his companions far from-the
cors. tant com vns mangouniax poroit ieter a vne fie.
bodies so-much as a mangonel could throw at one time

Lambegue's Challenge

XXVII

As Pharien rides back, he unhorses one of his pursuers at the gate. Claudas, in a light hauberk, beats his own men back, and Lambegue charges him; unwilling to seem a coward, Claudas turns and awaits him. Lambegue's lance strikes high on his chest; Claudas's sword cuts through Lambegue's helm, and Lambegue's next blow fells the king. Pharien drags his nephew back into the city, both bloodied, and when Lambegue would kill the three hostages, Pharien forbids it. Claudas then sends to speak with Pharien alone.

Atant fiert le cheual des esperons si se lanche
Thereupon strikes-he the horse with-the spurs so himself hurls
loing de claudas en mi le camp. si se commenche a
far from Claudas into midst the field so himself begins to
repairier vers la chite. lors poignent apres lui plus de .xx.
return toward the city then spur after him more than twenty
cheualiers lor escus a lor caus. les lanches mises sor les
knights their shields at their necks the lances put upon the
feutres. Et quant il les voit venir si sen vait belement
rests And when he them sees come so himself-thence goes fairly
tant quil vient deuant la porte. Et lors li commenche a
so-far that-he comes before the gate And then to-him begins to
crier lambegues ses nies qui desus la porte estoit. Comment
cry Lambegue his nephew who upon the gate was How
biax oncles que sera ce si vous en vendrois assaillis
fair uncle what will-be this so you thence will-come assailed
& encauchies sans colp douner a cheualier. lors trestorne
and chased without blow to-give to knight then turns-about
phariens. si fiert .j. de chels qui le sieuoient si durement
Pharien so strikes one of those who him followed so hard
quil li met de le glaiue & fer & fust parmi le cors. si
that-he to-him puts of the lance both iron and wood through the body so

labat a terre & lui & le cheual. en teil maniere que
him-strikes-down to earth both him and the horse in such manner that
la quisse destre li est brisie. & au parcaoir est la glaiue
the thigh right to-him is broken and at-the falling is the lance
volee en pieches. Il met la main a lespee moult vistement si
flown in pieces He puts the hand to the-sword very quickly so
se court as autres meller qui apres venoient. Et chil de
himself runs to-the others to-mingle who after came And those of
dedens oeurent la porte & sont es cheuax montes por lui
inside open the gate and are on-the horses mounted for him
secoure. Mais claudas i vint poignant .j. baston en sa main.
to-succor But Claudas there came spurring a stick in his hand
si cache ariere chels qui la cache auoient faite. & lor
so chases back those who the chase had made and to-them
doune grans cols del baston. tant que tout le fait voler
gives great blows with-the stick so-much that all it makes-be fly
em pieches. & les maldit & ladenge fil a putain cuiuert
in pieces and them curses and reviles sons of whore wretches
fait il ie vous ferai trestous destruire. que par vn poi
says he I you shall-make all destroy for by a little
quil ne sont honi & destruit a tous iors. la ou claudas
that-they — are shamed and destroyed to all days there where Claudas
depeche la presse & cache ses gens arriere. si estoit vestus
breaks the press and chases his people back so was-he clothed
dun court hauberion a dure maille. & ot pose vn capel de
in-a short habergeon of hard mail and had placed a hat of
fer desus sa teste. sespee chainte & sist sor vn fort cheual
iron upon his head his-sword girded and sat upon a strong horse
& isnel. si furent cheualiers de laiens issus a grant plente.
and swift so were knights of in-there issued in great plenty
Et vint lambegues li nies pharien deuant les autres. Il fu
And came Lambegue the nephew (of-)Pharien before the others He was

armes moult tres cointement. & fu sor vn cheual quil
armed very very elegantly and was upon a horse which-he
prisoit trop & tint le glaiue eslongie de si grant aleure
prized too-much and held the lance stretched with so great pace
comme li cheuax pot aler. Si adreche a claudas le cheual &
as the horse could go So directs-he at Claudas the horse and
le glaiue & cors & cuer. Mais anchois lescrie de si loing
the lance and body and heart But first him-cries-out from so far
que bien puet estre de fuir garnis. ou de soi desfendre. Il
that well can-he be of fleeing warned or of himself defending He
torne le chief del cheual vers chelui qui en haut li escrie.
turns the head of-the horse toward that-one who on high to-him cries
Itant a dit lambegues a claudas. Claudas par sainte crois
So-much has said Lambegue to Claudas Claudas by holy cross
tant aues cachie que a honte vous en retornerois. Ou
so-much have-you chased that with shame yourself thence will-you-return Or
vous saurois se li achiers de ma glaiue seit fer trenchier.
you will-know if the steel of my lance knows iron to-cut
Quant claudas voit celui venir qui sor tous hommes le heit.
When Claudas sees that-one come who above all men him hates
si nest pas del tout asseur. Car il est sans glaiue & sans
so not-is-he at-all of-the all secure For he is without lance and without
hiaume & sans escu. si a de la mort moult grant paor
helm and without shield so has-he of the death very great fear
sil latendoit. Lors sen commenche a aler arriere moult
if-he him-awaited Then himself-thence begins-he to go back very
belement. Et cil fiert a li grant aleure qui de loing lot
fairly And that-one strikes at him great pace who from far him-had
escrie si li reproche & escrie traitor moult durement. Et
cried-out so to-him reproaches and cries traitor very hard And
chil a le main a lespee mise. si sen vait le chief
that-one has the hand to the-sword put so himself-thence goes the head

enclin. & il fu tous seus. Car ses gens le doutoient moult
bowed and he was all alone For his people him feared much
si se furent ariere trait. si tost com il li virent departir
so themselves were back drawn so soon as they him saw part
chels qui apres pharien coururent & lambegues li escrie
those who after Pharien ran and Lambegue to-him cries
que est che maluais traitres. Car vous tornes a vostre anemi
what is this bad traitor Now you turn to your enemy
mortel qui nule rien ne desire tant comme ta mort. Couars
mortal who any thing not desires so-much as thy death Coward
sans foi qui mon oncle voles faire ochire desloialment.
without faith who my uncle wish to-make kill disloyally
Quant claudas ot chelui qui plus le haoit que nul
When Claudas hears that-one who more him hated than any
autre homme qui au dos li vint esperonant. & qui
other man who at-the back to-him came spurring and who
lapele couart & traitor si en est moult angoissous. Il
him-calls coward and traitor so thereof is-he very anguished He
voit bien quen lui atendre a grant peril. car le fer de le
sees well that-in him awaiting has great peril for the iron of the
glaiue li couendra atendre sans escu. Et dautre part se il
lance him will-behoove to-await without shield And on-other side if he
ensi sen vait sans plus faire il sentendroit a houni
thus himself-thence goes without more to-do he himself-would-hold for shamed
a tous iors mais. Mais il doute plus la honteuse vie que
to all days more But he fears more the shameful life than
bele mort. si metera tout en la merchi nostre signor. Lors
fair death so will-put-he all in the mercy (of-)our Lord Then
haucha sa destre main si a seigniet son cors & son vis.
raised-he his right hand so has crossed his body and his face
puis a lespee prise & tourne le chief del cheual a chelui
then has the-sword taken and turns the head of-the horse to that-one

qui a esperon li vient fuiant. si li adreche comme
who at spur at-him comes running so at-him directs as
chil a qui il ne remenbre ne de mort ne de couardise.
that-one to whom it not recalls neither of death nor of cowardice
& li escrie moult hautement. lambegue lambegue ore
and to-him cries very loudly Lambegue Lambegue now
tout belement ne vous couient pas si haster. Car par tans
all fairly not you behooves at-all so to-hasten For in time
maurois ataint. & quanque ie me puisse de traison
me-will-you-have reached and however-much I myself may of treason
esloiauter. tu sauras orendroit que ie ne sui pas granment
clear thou wilt-know right-now that I not am at-all greatly
entechies de couardise. Quant lambegues le voit venir si est
stained with cowardice When Lambegue him sees come so is-he
tant lies que onques mais si lies ne fu. Il vient moult tost
so glad that ever more so glad not was-he He comes very fast
car de loing estoit meus. & li cheuax fu isniax & volentis
for from far was-he moved and the horse was swift and willing
& de grant force. Et li rois ne court pas encontre anchois
and of great force And the king not runs at-all against rather
latent lespee traite. et lambegues le fiert en mi le pis
him-awaits the-sword drawn and Lambegue him strikes in midst the chest
en haut qui de toute sa forche si apoia. & sil leust plus
on high who with all his force so leaned and if-he him-had more
bas feru a le grant ire quil auoit & a le forche dont
low struck with the great ire that-he had and with the force whereof
il vint. mort leust sans recouurier. Et a tout che
he came dead him-would-have-he without recovery And with all this
quil fu ferus en haut le blecha il si durement que il quida
that-he was struck on high him wounded he so hard that he thought
morir isnel le pas tout desconfes. Mais es archons se
to-die quick the pace all unconfessed But in-the saddlebows himself

tint tous drois. ne ainc ne se mut por forche que li cols
held-he all upright nor ever not himself moved for force that the blow
eust. ne onques maille del hauberc nen rompi ni empira.
had nor ever mail of-the hauberk not-thereof broke nor worsened
Li rois fu de moult grant forche & li glaiue vole en
The king was of very great force and the lance flies in
tronchons. Et ensi com lambegues sen passa outre. li
stumps And thus as Lambegue himself-thence passed beyond the
rois le fiert de lespee en mi le vis si durement. que li
king him strikes with the-sword in midst the face so hard that the
hiaumes ne fu tant fort que lespee ni soit entree parmi
helm not was so strong that the-sword not-there be entered through
iuscas mailles du hauberc. & de la coife qui sous estoit.
until-the mails of-the hauberk and of the coif which under was
de langoisse del colp fu lambegues si estordis. que lesquine
from the-anguish of-the blow was Lambegue so stunned that the-spine
li hurta a larchon deriere. Et li oeil li estincheloient
to-him struck at the-saddlebow behind And the eyes to-him sparkled
en la teste. Et claudas li rois de langoisse du colp quil
in the head And Claudas the king from the-anguish of-the blow that-he
ot eu. fu si aquis quil iut desus larchon tous enuers
had had was so overcome that-he lay upon the-saddlebow all backward
grant pieche. La noise est leuee si saillent es archons li
great while The noise is raised so leap into-the saddlebows the
miex vaillant. Et lambegues sen reuient deuers le roi.
most worthy And Lambegue himself-thence comes-back toward the king
sel troeue ausi comme tout pasme desus larchon deuant.
so-him finds as as-if all swooned upon the-saddlebow front
Et se tient a .ij. mains au col de son cheual. &
And himself holds with two hands to-the neck of his horse and
chil sache lespee si len quide colper la teste. Mais
that-one draws the-sword so to-him-thereof thinks to-cut the head But

li cheuax fu fors sel tresporta si quil le feri el capel
the horse was strong so-him carried-off so that-he him struck on-the hat
quil auoit desus sa teste. si en trencha la ourle toute
which-he had upon his head so thereof cut the rim all
iuscal pot. Et est descendus li cols desus la coiffe menu
until-to-the pot And is descended the blow upon the coif finely
maillie. si en a fait mainte des mailles entrer el
mailed so thereof has-it made many of-the mails enter into-the
col & en la teste. Se li rois fu deuant blechies del colp
neck and into the head If the king was before hurt by-the blow
de le glaiue. che ne li raida gaires. Car il fu si estounes
of the lance this not him helped much For he was so stunned
quil ne veoit vne goute de moult grant pieche. si perdi si
that-he not saw a drop for very great while so lost-he so
outreement le pooir del chief & de tout le cors quil est
utterly the power of-the head and of all the body that-he is
a la terre voles. & lambegues a en talent que il deschende.
to the earth flown and Lambegue has in desire that he may-dismount
Mais les gens claudas qui seure li courent a desroi. li
But the people (of-)Claudas who upon him run in disarray to-him
ont acorchie son desirier. Et quant il les voit sor lui. si
have cut-short his desire And when he them sees upon him so
en est si dolans que par vn poi quil nen ist del
thereof is-he so sorrowful that for a little that-he thence issues from-the
sens. Et moult volentiers vaudroit au quel qui soit la
sense And very willingly would-he-wish on whichever who may-be the
veniance prendre quil a perdue de claudas. dont trop li
vengeance to-take which-he has lost of Claudas whereof too-much him
poise. lors met lescu deuant son pis & hurte le cheual
grieves then puts-he the-shield before his chest and thrusts the horse

des esperons. si laisse coure lespee traite a .j. quil
with-the spurs so lets run the-sword drawn at one whom-he
voit venir deuant les autres. le iet dune piere poignal.
sees come before the others the throw of-a stone handheld
Chil venoit le glaiue alongie si tost com il pooit
That-one came the lance stretched so fast as he could
esperoner. si pechoie desus lescu lambegue sa glaiue moult
spur so shatters upon the-shield (of-)Lambegue his lance very
apertement. Et chil le fiert de lespee si durement en
openly And that-one him strikes with the-sword so hard in
mi le vis que le nasal li trenche tout par desor les iex
midst the face that the nasal to-him cuts all by above the eyes
vn poi. Il trait a soi sespee si le voit del sanc chelui
a little He draws to himself his-sword so it sees with-the blood (of-)that-one
toute vermeille. Et chil est des archons voles a terre. &
all red And that-one is from-the saddlebows flown to earth and
quant il voit venir les autres a grant desroi il crolle lespee.
when he sees come the others in great disarray he shakes the-sword
& safiche es estriers si se ioint desous lescu. si lor
and himself-fixes in-the stirrups so himself joins below the-shield so at-them
reuient laissier coure. Mais ses oncles phariens i est venus
comes-back to-let run But his uncle Pharien there is come
poignant qui laiert au freim si lenmaine ou il voeille
spurring who him-seizes at-the bridle so him-leads-away whether he may-wish
ou non. droit a la porte. Et les gens claudas vienent
or not straight to the gate And the people (of-)Claudas come
si tost quil les ataignent. si lor dounent de grans caus
so fast that-they them reach so to-them give of great blows
amont es hiaumes. Et tex i a qui pechoient lor
above on-the helms And such there has-it who shattered their
glaiues desor lor cors. & neporquant en la chite se
lances upon their bodies and nevertheless into the city themselves

traient entre loncle & le neueu. & des autres asses qui
draw between the-uncle and the nephew and of-the others enough who
fors furent issu por els comforter. Mais ne sen vont
out were issued for them to-comfort But not themselves-thence go-they
pas entre pharien & son neueu trop laidement. Car menu
at-all between Pharien and his nephew too uglily For frequently
& souent trestornent as plus isniaux si i font des
and often turn-about-they at-the most swift so there make-they of-the
biax cols li vn por lautre. Ne ni a chelui daus .ij. qui
fair blows the one for the-other Nor not-there has that-one of-them two who
sespee nait taint en vermeil. Atant se remetent en
his-sword not-may-have dyed in red Thereupon themselves put-back into
la chite. si sont les portes closes & abatues les couleices
the city so are the gates closed and lowered the portcullises
& vienent entre pharien & lambegue droit a la tor. Mais
and come between Pharien and Lambegue straight to the tower But
il ne vienent pas comme cheualier qui aient repose &
they not come at-all as knights who may-have rested and
non ont il fait. Car il ni a chelui des .ij. a qui
not have-they they done For it not-there has that-one of-the two to whom
il ne peire bien de son mestier. Car ambedui ont en
it not may-appear well of his office For both have in
maint lieu perdu du sanc. si ont les hiaumes detrenchies
many place lost of-the blood so have-they the helms hacked
& enfondres. & les escus perchies de grosses lanches &
and stove-in and the shields pierced with big lances and
decolpes. & detaillies des cols des espees par deseure &
cut and hewn with-the blows of-the swords by above and
par desous. Quant li troi cheualier qui por claudas sont
by below When the three knights who for Claudas are
en prison les veoient issi venir. si ont daus meismes
in prison them saw thus come so have-they of-themselves same

grant paor. Quant il voient lambegue qui esrage & dist a
great fear When they see Lambegue who rages and says to
son oncle. Sire por dieu car me laissies ochire ces traitors
his uncle Lord for God now me let kill these traitors
en despit de claudas le desloial. qui faire ochire vous
in despite of Claudas the disloyal who to-make kill you
voloit. non ferai biax nies fait phariens. Car il nont
wished not shall-I-do fair nephew says Pharien For they not-have
pas en autrui mesfait mort deseruie. Ne lor sires ne fist
at-all in another's misdeed death deserved Nor their lord not did
onques traison vers moi que vne seule. qui ne fait pas
ever treason toward me but one single which not makes at-all
a proisier iusca la mort en nul preudomme.
to prize until-to the death in any worthy-man

Ensi a phariens son neueu apaie a moult grant paine. &
Thus has Pharien his nephew appeased with very great pain and
lors ont lor hiaumes ostes. Et maintenant vient laiens vns
then have-they their helms removed And at-once comes in-there a
escuiers qui lor dist quil aillent a la porte ou li poingneis
squire who to-them says that-they may-go to the gate where the skirmish
a este. que claudas veut a pharien parler. Et li baron de la
has been for Claudas wishes to Pharien to-speak And the barons of the
chite li auoient enuoie. Car moult lor tardoit quil oissent
city him had sent For much to-them was-late that-they might-hear
che que claudas lor voloit dire. Atant resont andui monte
this that Claudas to-them wished to-say Thereupon again-are both mounted
en lor cheuax. & font apres aus porter lor hiaumes. & quant
on their horses and make after them carry their helms and when
il vienent a la porte si le font ourir. Et vns cheualiers tos
they come to the gate so it make-they open And a knight all
desarmes vient illeuques de par claudas. & dist a pharien que
unarmed comes there from by Claudas and says to Pharien that

li rois latent la dehors & quil est tous seus. si li mande
the king him-awaits there outside and that-he is all alone so to-him sends
que tous seus i aille. Car il a fait arriere traire toute
that all alone there he-may-go For he has made back draw all
se gent. Et chou estoit voirs. si com li cheualiers li dist.
his people And this was true so as the knight to-him said

The Terms of Peace

XXVIII

Claudas asks Pharien to take back his homage, and the barons to give up Lambegue to him; Leonce refuses to hand over so good a knight. Lambegue overhears his uncle grieving for the city and offers himself to save it. He rides to Claudas armed, throws down his sword, helm, and shield, and stands in his crimson coat without looking at him. Claudas, admiring his courage, spares him for Pharien's sake and offers both of them land, but Pharien will take none until he has news of the boys. Claudas lets them go, and Pharien leaves Gannes with his wife and sons.

Phariens sen vait a lui tous seus. Et quant li rois le
Pharien himself-thence goes to him all alone And when the king him
voit si li demande. Comment le font si .iij. prison. & quil
sees so him asks How it do his three prisoners and that-he
li die la uerite sor quanquil a de loialte. Et phariens
to-him may-tell the truth upon whatever-he has of loyalty And Pharien
respont. quil sont tout troi & sain & sauf. Et claudas
answers that-they are all three both sound and safe And Claudas
auoit eu moult grant paor quil nes eussent tous .iij. ochis.
had had very great fear that-they them had all three killed
Car trop sentoit pharien a viguereus. & lambegue a trop
For too-much felt-he Pharien for vigorous and Lambegue for too
felon. Lors li a dit. pharien tu mas mon hommage a
cruel Then to-him has-he said Pharien thou me-hast my homage with

tort guerpi. si te requier sor ta loialte que tu le rechoiues
wrong forsaken so thee ask-I upon thy loyalty that thou it mayst-receive
si com tu dois. Car ie ne tai forfait porcoi tu le dois
so as thou must For I not to-thee-have misdone wherefore thou it must
laissier. & chil dist que non fera. Car ie ne vous porroie
leave and that-one says that not will-he-do For I not you could
fait il amer. si seroie traitres & desloiaus. En mainte maniere
says he love so would-be-I traitor and disloyal In many manner
lassaia. mais ne pot estre. & claudas li dist. pharien or
him-tried-he but not could be and Claudas to-him says Pharien now
garde que mi prison naient nul mal. & si ten va
see that my prisoners not-may-have any harm and so thyself-thence go
puis que ma proiere ne veus oir. Et dautre part. Ie toffre
since that my prayer not wilt-thou hear And on-other side I thee-offer
bien che que tu me requesis orains. chest daler en prison
well this that thou me askedst just-now this-is of-going into prison
la ou tu me vaudras mener si com ie doi. Comment fait
there where thou me wilt-wish to-lead so as I must How says
phariens. Ie te fianchai fait claudas com a mon homme.
Pharien I to-thee pledged says Claudas as to my man
que de quel eure que tu me semonroies ie iroie en ta
that at what hour that thou me wouldst-summon I would-go into thy
prison. & de quel eure que tu soies mes hom. Ie sui pres
prison and at what hour that thou be my man I am ready
daler la ou tu voldras. apres che que tu mauras iure
of-going there where thou wilt-wish after this that thou to-me-wilt-have sworn
que ie naurai de nului garde. & que des enfans au roi
that I not-shall-have of anybody care and that of-the children of-the king
bohort naues oi nules enseignes. & se tu ensi faire nel
Bors not-have heard any tokens and if thou thus to-do not-it
vels si ten iras. Car a toi naurai plus ne boin
wilt so thyself-thence wilt-go For with thee not-shall-I-have more neither good

conseil ne maluais. puis que tu nes mais mes hons. Mais
counsel nor bad since that thou not-art more my man But
di moi as plus haus barons de laiens. quil viegnent
tell for-me to-the most high barons of in-there that-they may-come
a moi parler orendroit. si li en noume dusques .x.
to me to-speak right-now so to-him thereof names-he up-to ten
Atant sen vait phariens. & enuoie les barons a
Thereupon himself-thence goes Pharien and sends the barons to
claudas. Et quant il les voit. si lor dist sans saluer.
Claudas And when he them sees so to-them says without greeting
Signor vous estes tout mi homme si vous ai moult ames.
Lords you are all my men so you have-I much loved
Et vous aues tant vers moi mespris. que a paines poroit
And you have so-much toward me misdone that with pains could-it
estre amende. se ie voloie si haut monter lamende com li
be amended if I wished so high to-raise the-amends as the
mesfais requiert. Mais ie ne le voel pas si haut monter.
misdeed requires But I not it wish at-all so high to-raise
& vous saues de voir que iai le forche & le pooir de
and you know of truth that I-have the force and the power of
vous prendre laiens a forche. Et que en la fin ne poes
you taking in-there by force And that in the end not can
vous a moi durer. vous ni aueis fait proiere de pais
you against me last you not-there have made prayer of peace
par pharien. Mais il a mon hommage deguerpi. Et puis
by Pharien But he has my homage forsaken And since
que il mes hom ne velt estre ie ne feroie riens por lui.
that he my man not wishes to-be I not would-do anything for him
Car dont me couuendroit il de li garder. Et ie vous dirai
For then me would-behoove it of him to-guard And I to-you shall-tell
comment vous porrois auoir a moi pais & acorde. Et
how you will-be-able to-have with me peace and accord And

sachies que par les sains de chele chite. ia autrement ma
know that by the saints of that city ever otherwise my
pais naurois. Et se ie vous puis a forche prendre ie
peace not-will-you-have And if I you can by force take I
vous ferai tous ochire & desmenbrer. vous me iureres
you shall-make all kill and dismember you to-me will-swear
auant. que mes fiex doriens ne rechut mort par vous ne par
first that my son Dorin not received death by you nor by
vo conseil. Et apres me bailleres vn de chaus de laiens
your counsel And after to-me will-you-hand one of those of in-there
por faire mon bon outreement. Et se vous che ne voles
for to-do my good-pleasure utterly And if you this not wish
faire si vous en rales ariere. & vous desfendes de
to-do so yourselves thence go-again back and yourselves defend with
vos pooirs. Car vous seres assailli souent & bien. ne iamais
your powers For you will-be assailed often and well nor ever-more
ne finerai si aurai chi deuant tout le pooir mon
not shall-I-cease until shall-I-have here before all the power (of-)my
signor le roi de gaulle. & lors se ie vous preng a forche.
lord the king of gaul and then if I you take by force
Ia ne mait diex quant vous i metterois amende de
Ever not me-may-help God when you there will-put amends of
raenchon se les cors non. Quant il oient chou. si sont
ransom except the bodies not When they hear this so are-they
de ceste chose lie & dolant. lie de che quil peuent lor
of this thing glad and sorrowful glad of this that-they can their
pais auoir. & dolant de che que vn des lor i couient
peace have and sorrowful of this that one of-the theirs there behooves
laissier. Car bien seiuent queus que il soit quil nen puet
to-leave For well know-they whoever that he be that-he not-thence can
escaper que par la mort. Sire fait leonches de paerne nous
escape but by the death Lord says Leonce of paerne we

auons vostre volente oie. & nous le ferons volentiers tex
have your will heard and we it shall-do willingly such
puet il estre qui vous nous demanderes por vous baillier.
can it be whom you of-us will-ask for to-you to-hand
Et ie vous dirai fait il. chest lambegues li nies pharien.
And I to-you shall-tell says he this-is Lambegue the nephew (of-)Pharien
Ha sire fait leonches che ne poroit auenir. Car nous
Ah lord says Leonce this not could befall For we
seriens traitor se nous ensi le faisiens. que nous liurisiens
would-be traitors if we thus it did that we delivered
a mort le millor bacheler de tout chest regne. & en qui
to death the best bachelor of all this realm and in whom
nous auriens grignor fianche. Ia se dieu plaist naurons
we would-have greater trust Ever if God pleases not-shall-we-have
par murdre ne par traison la pais. Et quelque chose que li
by murder nor by treason the peace And whatever thing that the
baron de cest regne en veullent faire ia de moi se dieu
barons of this realm thereof may-wish to-do ever from me if God
plaist nauendra chis consaus. Et vous signor fait claudas as
pleases not-will-come this counsel And you lords says Claudas to-the
autres .ix. quen dites vous. laisseres vous destruire & vous
other nine what-thereof say you will-let you destroy both you
& cheste chite por moi rendre vn seul homme cheualier.
and this city for to-me to-render a single man knight
Et chil respondent quil nen feroient rien encontre le
And those answer that-they not-thereof would-do anything against the
conseil leonche. Car il est le plus preudom de lor roialme.
counsel (of-)Leonce For he is the most worthy-man of their kingdom
Or vous en poes dont aler fait il. Car de moi naures
Now yourselves thence can-you then go says he For from me not-will-have
vous des ore mais trieues ne pais. Mais auant vous requier
you from now more truce nor peace But first you ask-I

com a mes hommes. que vous les .iij. prisons que vous aues
as to my men that you the three prisoners that you have
de moi me faites rendre. Ou vous me iureres sor sains. que
of me to-me make render Or you to-me will-swear upon saints that
vous des enfans au roi bohort ne saues rien. ne de lor
you of-the children of-the king Bors not know anything neither of their
mort ne de lor vie. Sire fait leonches. des enfans ne sauons
death nor of their life Lord says Leonce of-the children not know
nous rien. Et en seur que tout vous ne nous baillastes mie
we anything And on above that all you not to-us handed at-all
vos prisons. Mais pharien. Et nous li iurames que nous
your prisoners But Pharien And we to-him swore that we
li aideriens encontre tous chels qui faire li voldroient
him would-aid against all those who to-do to-him would-wish
tort. & puis que nous lauons iure. nous ne poons ne
wrong and since that we it-have sworn we not can nor
deuons aler encontre. Car dont feriens nous desloialte. &
must go against For then would-do we disloyalty and
puis que hons est de desloialte atains il ne puet estre miex
since that man is of disloyalty convicted he not can be more
hounis. Tant sachies vous bien fait claudas. que rendre les
shamed So-much know you well says Claudas that render them
vous couenra. Ne iamais ne vous amerai de cuer & bien
you will-behoove Nor ever-more not you shall-love from heart and well
gardes que nus nen mure. car vous en mories tuit.
see that any not-thereof may-die for you thereof would-die all
Or vous en poes aler. & des ore mais fache chascuns
Now yourselves thence can-you go and from now more may-do each
son miex. Et chil sen tornent moult angoisseus. car
his best And those themselves-thence turn very anguished for
bien voient que la chites ne puet durer encontre claudas.
well see-they that the city not can last against Claudas

Quant il sont reuenu. et phariens voit la maluaise chiere
When they are come-back and Pharien sees the bad cheer
daus. si sen merueille trop durement. Il lor demande
of-them so himself-thereat marvels too hard He them asks
queles noueles del roi claudas. & il respondent que moult
what news of-the king Claudas and they answer that very
mauuaises. queles fait il. Nous ne poons font il auoir pais
bad what says he We not can say they have peace
ne acorde se nous ne li baillons lambegue vostre neueu.
nor accord if we not to-him hand Lambegue your nephew
por mettre del tout en sa merchi. & ensi poriens auoir
for to-put of-the all in his mercy and thus could-we have
acorde. Et que len aueis vous couent fait phariens. Coi
accord And what him-thereof have you covenanted says Pharien What
fait leonches de paerne. en non dieu ie ne serai ia en lieu
says Leonce of paerne in name (of-)God I not shall-be ever in place
ou tex cheualiers com il est & qui si bien nous a aidies
where such knight as he is and who so well us has aided
soit a mort liures par mon conseil. a chel conseil quil
be to death delivered by my counsel at that counsel which-they
tenoient furent tout li sage homme de la chite & del
held were all the wise men of the city and of-the
pais. Et phariens lor dist a tous. signor que vous est il
country And Pharien to-them said to all lords what to-you is it
auis de ceste chose que claudas a demande a ces barons.
opinion of this thing that Claudas has asked of these barons
& il sacordent tuit a che que leonches en auoit dit.
and they themselves-agree all to this that Leonce thereof had said
Ne ni a .j. seul qui ne die que ia se dieu plaist si
Nor not-there has a single who not may-say that ever if God pleases so
grant dolors niert otroie. Et dient li sage homme quil
great sorrow not-will-be granted And say the wise men that-they

se tenront tant com il se poront tenir. & quant
themselves will-hold so-long as they themselves will-be-able to-hold and when
il ne poront en auant. & diex ni vaura mettre conseil
they not will-be-able on forward and God not-there will-wish to-put counsel
si istront hors de par dieu & venderont lor mort tant
so will-they-issue out from by God and will-sell their death so-long
com il porront ferir. Car preudomme ne doiuent faire por
as they will-be-able to-strike For worthy-men not must do for
els sauuer ne murdre ne nule desloiaute. Quant phariens
themselves to-save neither murder nor any disloyalty When Pharien
lentent si les en prise moult durement & lies en est. si
it-hears so them thereof prizes very hard and glad thereof is-he so
lor voldra moult gueredouner. che quil gardent si envers
to-them will-wish much to-reward this that-they keep so toward
lui lor loiaute sil le puet faire. Ensi se sont aati de
him their loyalty if-he it can do Thus themselves are pledged to
desfendre. lors se departent si vait chascuns a son ostel.
defend then themselves part-they so goes each to his lodging
& entre pharien & son neueu sen vont en la tor.
and between Pharien and his nephew themselves-thence go into the tower
& quant il furent desarme phariens monte en haut as
and when they were unarmed Pharien climbs on high to-the
creniax & esgarde de toutes pars la merueille de gent qui
battlements and looks from all sides the marvel of people which
en lost vient. Si seit bien que la chites ne puet estre
in the-host comes So knows-he well that the city not can be
desfendue quele ne soit prise. Car de viande ont trop petit
defended that-it not be taken For of food have-they too little
a la plente de gent qui dedens est. si en commencha
for the plenty of people which inside is so thereof began-he
a plorer moult tendrement. & souspirer del cuer du
to weep very tenderly and to-sigh from-the heart of-the

ventre. la ou il souspiroit & ploroit si durement vient
belly there where he sighed and wept so hard comes
ses nies lambegues amont. Et quant il loi issi plaindre
his nephew Lambegue up And when he him-heard thus bewail
& dementer si sen commencha vers lui a aler tout
and lament so himself-thence began-he toward him to go all
coiement & pas pour pas que il nel puisse apercheuoir.
quietly and step by step that he not-him may perceive
& il escoute & ot que il dist a soi meisme.
and he listens and hears what he says to himself self

Hai boine chites honeree danchiserie. hantee de preudommes
Ah good city honored from-ancestry frequented by worthy-men
& de loiax. Maisons & sieges de roi. & ostex a droit
and by loyal Houses and seats of king and lodgings of right
iugeor. Repairs a ioie & a lieche. Cors pleniere de boins
judge Haunt of joy and of gladness Court plenary of good
cheualiers. vile onoree de vaillans borgois. pais plains de
knights town honored by worthy burghers country full of
loiax vauasors. & de boins seignors. terre plentiueuse &
loyal vavasors and of good lords land plentiful and
raemplie de tous biens. ha! diex qui pora veoir si grans
filled with all goods ah God who will-be-able to-see so great
dolors de toutes ces choses destruire. por saluer la vie a
sorrows of all these things to-destroy for to-save the life of
vn enfant. hai biax nies lambegues. car pleust ore a dieu
a child ah fair nephew Lambegue now might-please now to God
qui por nous vaut mort endurer que ie fuisse ore en vostre
who for us wished death to-endure that I were now in your
lieu. Si mait diex ie iroie ia au roi claudas. por
place So me-may-help God I would-go now to-the king Claudas for
ieter hors de dolor le deboinaire pais de gannes. Ou fust
to-cast out of sorrow the kindly country of gannes Or were-it

a ma ioie ou a mon duel. Car moult seroit la mors boine
to my joy or to my grief For very would-be the death good
& honeree. dont si grans honors uendroit en terre. Atant
and honored whence so great honor would-come on earth Thereupon
se teut phariens que plus ne dist. & lors commenche a
himself was-silent Pharien that more not says-he and then begins to
plorer trop durement & lambegues saut auant si li dist.
weep too hard and Lambegue leaps forward so to-him says
Sire sire or ne vous dementes pas. Car par la foi que
Lord lord now not yourself lament at-all For by the faith that
ie vous doi. Iamais por ma vie sauuer ne sera la chites
I to-you owe Ever-more for my life to-save not will-be the city
perdue. & puis que ie si grant honor com vous dites i
lost and since that I so great honor as you say there
conquerrai. dont irai ie a ma mort tout seurement & a
shall-conquer then shall-go I to my death all surely and with
grant ioie. ha! biax nies fait phariens decheu mas. Car por
great joy ah fair nephew says Pharien deceived me-hast For for
che que iel disoie. ne vaudroie ie pas ta mort. Ne ia diex
this that I-it said not would-wish I at-all thy death Nor ever God
veoir nel me laist. ne ia se dieu plaist iche ne te loerai.
to-see not-it me may-let nor ever if God pleases this not thee shall-I-advise
Mais nous atendrons encore la merchi dieu. & se nous
But we shall-await yet the mercy (of-)God and if we
nauons secors pis ne poons nous faire que de hors issir
not-have succor worse not can we do than of out issuing
& dassambler a toute lost. Si nous i poroit auenir teil
and of-joining with all the-host So to-us there could befall such
auenture que nous seriens deliure a tous iors mais. Tout che
adventure that we would-be delivered to all days more All this
fait lambegue ni a mestier. puis que por moi rendre
says Lambegue not-there has need since that for me rendering

puet la chites remanoir en pais. Iamais nus nen sera
can the city remain in peace Ever-more anyone not-thereof will-be
ferus. Lors est phariens moult angoisseus si pleure & fait
struck Then is Pharien very anguished so weeps and makes
teil duel que par vn poi quil ne sochist. puis dist a son
such grief that for a little that-he — himself-kills then says-he to his
neueu. Comment biax nies est il achertes que tu tiras
nephew How fair nephew is it in-earnest that thou thyself-wilt-go
rendre a claudas. Oil fait il biax oncles voir. Iamais plus
render to Claudas Yes says he fair uncle truly Ever-more more
de mal nen sera fais. puis que par ma mort puis sauuer
of harm not-thereof will-be done since that by my death can-I save
si bele cite & tant de preudomme com il i a car bien
so fair city and so-many of worthy-men as it there has for well
le doi faire. Car ie oi dire a vous meismes que se vous
it must-I do For I heard say to you yourself that if you
esties en mon lieu vous iries a la mort & seurement. por
were in my place you would-go to the death and surely for
che que vous le feries ausi le voel ie faire. Car bien sai
this that you it would-do also it wish I to-do For well know-I
que vous ne feries chose de quoi vous fuisies hounis. biax
that you not would-do thing of which you would-be shamed fair
nies fait phariens ie voi bien que tu iras. si saches de voir
nephew says Pharien I see well that thou wilt-go so know of truth
que moult men poise et bel men est. Il men poise
that much me-thereof grieves and fair to-me-thereof is It me-thereof grieves
por che que tu nauras ia de mort garant. Et si men
for this that thou not-wilt-have ever of death warrant And so to-me-thereof
est bel. pour che que nus cheualiers ne morut onques a
is fair for this that any knight not died ever with
si grant honor com tu feras. Car par toi sera salues tous
so great honor as thou wilt-do For by thee will-be saved all

li pueples de cest pais. Atant sen vait lambegues
the people of this country Thereupon himself-thence goes Lambegue
as barons si les apele & asambla. si lor dist. signor se
to-the barons so them calls and assembled so to-them says lords if
vous me rendes au roi claudas comment seres vous seur
you me render to-the king Claudas how will-be you sure
de sa boine pais & de samistie auoir. Et il demandent
of his good peace and of his-friendship having And they ask
porquoi il le dist. por che fait il que sil vous en veut
wherefore he it says for this says he that if-he you thereof wishes
faire seur. tous en est pris li consaus dauoir la pais.
to-make sure all thereof is taken the counsel of-having the peace
Car ie sui pres que ie me mette orendroit en sa prison.
For I am ready that I myself may-put right-now in his prison
Quant il loient si commenchent tuit a plorer & dient
When they it-hear so begin all to weep and say
que che ne sera ia souffert. Car trop seroit grans damages
that this not will-be ever suffered For too would-be great harm
se en teil eage recheuoit mort. Car encore puet venir a moult
if in such age be-received death For yet can-he come to very
grant honor. & il dist. quil ne le laira pour nul chasti.
great honor and he says that-he not it will-leave for any admonishing
Et que nus nen poroit son cuer oster. & naies doute
And that anyone not-thence could his heart remove and not-have doubt
de claudas quil mochie. Mais ie sai bien quen sa prison
of Claudas that-he me-may-kill But I know well that-in his prison
me veut tenir. Et il dient quil nel soufferont ia. Car
me wishes-he to-hold And they say that-they not-it will-suffer ever For
se phariens le sauoit il isteroit del sens. & ochiroit tous
if Pharien it knew he would-issue from-the sense and would-kill all
chex qui auroient este au conseil. De lui fait il vous asseur
those who would-have been at-the counsel Of him says he you assure

ie tous. Car par le sien conseil lai ie empris. Maintenant
I all For by the his counsel it-have I undertaken At-once
lont enuoie querre si angoisseus com il estoit. si li
him-have-they sent to-seek so anguished as he was so to-him
monstrent chou que lambegue lor deuise. Et il dist que
show this that Lambegue to-them devises And he says that
puis quil en a si grant talent. que ia par lui destorneis
since that-he thereof has so great desire that ever by him turned-aside
nen iert. Car il ne poroit pas plus honerablement morir.
not-thence will-he-be For he not could at-all more honorably die
Quant il oient que a che est atorneis li plais. si enuoient
When they hear that to this is turned the plea so send-they
leonche de paerne a dant claudas por sauoir comment il
Leonce of paerne to lord Claudas for to-know how he
les fera seurs que del descort qui entre eus ait este
them will-make sure that of-the discord which between them may-have been
ne leur venra maus ne anuis. puis que lambegues sera
not to-them will-come harm nor trouble since that Lambegue will-be
venus en sa prison. Quant claudas ot che. si respont quil
come into his prison When Claudas hears this so answers that-he
les fera seurs si com il vaudront. Il en voelent fait
them will-make sure so as they will-wish They thereof wish says
leonches auoir vostre sairement deuant els. & deuant les
Leonce to-have your oath before them and before the
plus proisies de vostre court. & il lotrie. Et il me feront
most prized of your court and he it-grants And they to-me will-make
fait il le mien sairement de mon fil. que il ne fu mors
says he the my oath of my son that he not was killed
par els ne par lor conseil. & il dist que moult volentiers
by them nor by their counsel and he says that very willingly

le feront. Ceste chose ont atornee a le matin. & par
it will-they-do This thing have-they arranged for the morning and by
commenchement li fianche claudas a leonche & il a lui.
beginning to-him pledges Claudas to Leonce and he to him
Al matin furent fait li sairement dambes .ij. pars.
At-the morning were made the oaths of-both two sides
Et furent li prison claudas rendu. Car ensi furent les
And were the prisoners (of-)Claudas rendered For thus were the
couenenches Et lors vint phariens a son neueu si li dist.
covenants And then came Pharien to his nephew so to-him said
biax nies lambegue vous en ales a vostre mort a la plus
fair nephew Lambegue you thence go to your death at the most
haute ou onques cheualiers alast. Mais auant vous feres
high where ever knight went But first yourself will-make
confes car ie le voel. porcoi sire fait lambegues. aues vous de
confessed for I it wish wherefore lord says Lambegue have you of
ma mort paour. Oil chertes fait il. car ie sai de voir que tu
my death fear Yes certainly says he for I know of truth that thou
nen pues escaper. Si mait diex fait lambegues ia de
not-thence canst escape So me-may-help God says Lambegue ever of
la mort naurai paor. tant com vous puissies escu porter.
the death not-shall-I-have fear so-long as you may shield bear
plus tormente mon cuer & iustice che quen la merchi
more torments my heart and punishes this that-in the mercy
mesteut metre a mon mortel anemi. la est langoisse qui
me-behooves to-put of my mortal enemy there is the-anguish which
passe toutes dolors. Car de morir nest il se ioie non &
surpasses all sorrows For of dying not-is it except joy not and
solas enuers langoisse de dire ne de faire chose qui est del
solace toward the-anguish of saying nor of doing thing which is of-the
tout contre mon cuer. Mais pour che ke vostre volentes i
all against my heart But for this that your will there

est me comforterai. Car riens ne me poroit greuer qui vous
is myself shall-I-comfort For anything not me could burden which you
pleust. Lors apele leuesque meisme. si reiehist a dameldieu
might-please Then calls-he the-bishop same so confesses to Lord-God
en loneranche de lui. tout che dont li cuers li puet
in the-honoring of him all this whereof the heart to-him can
descourir par lesclairement de le langue. Apres a ses armes
uncover by the-clearing of the tongue After has-he his arms
demandees. & ses oncles li dist. biax nies vous naues
asked and his uncle to-him says fair nephew you not-have
darmes mestier en chestui point. mais du merchi crier. Ia
of-arms need in this point but of-the mercy crying Ever
diex ne mait fait lambegues quant ie merci li crierai.
God not me-may-help says Lambegue when I mercy to-him shall-cry
Ie ne leusse mie ier de lui eue se ien fuisse au
I not it-would-have at-all yesterday of him had if I-thereof were to-the
desus venus. Ne se dieu plaist comme ribaus nirai ie ia
above come Nor if God pleases as rogue not-shall-go I ever
deuant haut homme. Car dont sambleroie ie laron ou murdrier
before high man For then would-seem I thief or murderer
iugies a mort. Mais ie irai comme cheualiers le hiaume
judged to death But I shall-go as knight the helm
lachie lescu au col. si li renderai mespee & mes armes
laced the-shield at-the neck so to-him shall-render my-sword and my arms
sans dire plus. Ne ia de che naies doute ne paor. Car par
without saying more Nor ever of this not-have doubt nor fear For by
la foi que ie vous doi qui mes sires estes & mes oncles.
the faith that I to-you owe who my lord are and my uncle
ie ni ferrai ia home ne laidirai ne vn ne autre.
I not-there shall-strike ever man nor shall-insult neither one nor other

Tant lor a dit que ses armes li sont rendues.
So-much to-them has-he said that his arms to-him are rendered
Et quant il fu armes & montes sor son cheual. si les
And when he was armed and mounted upon his horse so them
commande tous a dieu. Et sen vait si grant samblant
commends-he all to God And himself-thence goes so great semblance
faisant de ioie que as gens vient a grant merueille. Et
making of joy that to-the people comes-it to great marvel And
auoeques lui ne velt soffrir que nus hom voise. & phariens
with him not wishes-he to-suffer that any man may-go and Pharien
ne chil qui laiens sont ne font nul samblant de ioie faire.
nor those who in-there are not make any semblance of joy to-make
Ains font tel duel par toute la chite de gannes. com se
Rather make-they such grief through all the city of gannes as if
chascuns eust perdu la riens el monde que il miex amast.
each had lost the thing in-the world that he best loved
Tant a lambegues cheuauchie quil est venus au treif
So-far has Lambegue ridden that-he is come to-the tent
claudas. & il descent si voit claudas qui fu armes de toutes
(of-)Claudas and he dismounts so sees Claudas who was armed with all
armes. Car bien auoit aprins que chil venroit armes. &
arms For well had-he learned that that-one would-come armed and
dales li estoient armei de ses cheualiers vne partie. Car il
beside him were armed of his knights a part For he
auoit lambegue tant assaie quil nestoit pas asseur la ou
had Lambegue so-much tried that-he not-was at-all secure there where
il venist armes. Et li auoient bien conte li .iij. prison
he came armed And to-him had well told the three prisoners
comment il lauoit fait tout de son gre che dont nus ne
how he it-had done all of his will this whereof anyone not
losast requerre. Lambegues vient deuant claudas & si ne
him-would-dare ask Lambegue comes before Claudas and so not

saienoilla pas. ne mot ne dist. Mais sespee a del feure
himself-knelt at-all nor word not said-he But his-sword has-he from-the sheath
traite si le regarde & commencha a souspirer. & lors le iete
drawn so it looks-at and began to sigh and then it throws
as pies claudas sans dire plus. puis oste son hiaume de
at-the feet (of-)Claudas without saying more then removes his helm from
son chief hors. Car il nel auoit pas lachie. sel iete as pies
his head off For he not-it had at-all laced so-it throws at-the feet
claudas apres sespee & puis son escu apres le hiaume. Et
(of-)Claudas after his-sword and then his shield after the helm And
claudas a lespee prinse si le lieue en haut. & fait samblant
Claudas has the-sword taken so it raises on high and makes semblance
que ferir le voelle parmi le chief. Et lors ont pitie tout
that strike him he-may-wish through the head And then have pity all
chil qui le voient si commenchent a plorer li plus felon.
those who him see so begin to weep the most cruel
Mais lambegues ne se muet de son estal. lors commande
But Lambegue not himself moves from his place then commands
claudas que len li oste le hauberc & les cauches de
Claudas that one from-him may-remove the hauberk and the hose of
fer isnelement. Et vallet salent maintenant si le desarment.
iron quickly And youths leap at-once so him unarm
Quant il fu desarmes si remest en vne cote de sanguin
When he was unarmed so remained-he in a coat of crimson
delie. si fu a merueilles biax cheualiers & bien taillies de
fine so was-he at marvels fair knight and well shaped of
cors & de menbres. Ne nauoit barbe ne grenon. Il estoit
body and of limbs Nor not-had-he beard nor mustache He was
deuant le roi en son estant ne mot ne dist. ne onques
before the king in his standing nor word not said nor ever
le roi ne regarda droit en mi le vis. mais en trauers.
the king not looked straight in midst the face but in across

& tenoit toudis clos le destre puing. & claudas li dist
and held always closed the right fist and Claudas to-him says
lambegue comment fus tu si hardis que tu osas chaiens
Lambegue how wast thou so bold that thou daredst in-here
entrer. dont ne seis tu que ie te hei plus que nul homme.
to-enter then not knowest thou that I thee hate more than any man
Claudas fait il or pues sauoir que poi te dout. Comment
Claudas says he now canst-thou know that little thee fear-I How
fait il veis ci ta mort apparellie & encore me contralies.
says he see here thy death prepared and yet me opposest-thou
Chest vne chose fait lambegues dont ie nai gaires de
This-is a thing says Lambegue whereof I not-have much of
paor. Comment fait li rois quides me tu a si deboinaire
fear How says the king thinkest me thou for so kindly
& a si pitex. Ie te quit fait il au plus felon &
and for so piteous I thee think says he for-the most cruel and
au plus cruel qui onques fust. Mais si hardis ne seras
for-the most fierce who ever were But so bold not wilt-thou-be
tant com tu voeilles viure que tu mochies. pour qui te
so-long as thou mayst-wish to-live that thou me-mayst-kill for whom thee
lairoie ie a ochire fait claudas. Dont ne mochiroies tu se
would-leave I to kill says Claudas Then not me-wouldst-kill thou if
tu en uenoies au desus. Au desus nen vendrai ie
thou thereof camest to-the above To-the above not-thereof shall-come I
mais a pieche fait lambegues Car a dieu ne plaist. Mais ie
more for while says Lambegue For to God not pleases-it But I
ne desirai onques nule riens tant. Lors commenche claudas
not desired ever any thing so-much Then begins Claudas
a rire si le prent par la main & dist. dune chose se
to laugh so him takes by the hand and says of-one thing himself
puet vanter qui vous a a compaignon. quil a le plus
can boast who you has as companion that-he has the most

hardi cheualier qui hui se leuast de lit. & chelui qui
bold knight who today himself rose from bed and that-one who
a la dureche de tous les cuers. & se tu viuoies par eage
has the hardness of all the hearts and if thou livedst by age
tu seroies asses preudom. Ne ia ne mait diex se ie te
thou wouldst-be enough worthy-man Nor ever not me-may-help God if I thee
vaudroie orendroit auoir ochis por conquerre le moitie del
would-wish right-now to-have killed for to-conquer the half of-the
monde. & iehui ne desiroie se ta mort non. Mais ie ne le
world and today not desired-I except thy death not But I not it
desirerai iamais. Car nus ne fist onques autreteil valor com
shall-desire ever-more For anyone not did ever such worth as
tu as faite qui a la mort tabandounoies pour sauuer les
thou hast done who to the death thyself-abandonedst for to-save the
autres gens. Et se ie bien voloie ta mort. si te tenroie ie
other people And if I well wished thy death so thee would-hold I
chier pour amor de pharien ton oncle se ie voloie faire droit.
dear for love of Pharien thy uncle if I wished to-do right
Car ie ne puis mie noier quil ne mait garandi de mort
For I not can at-all deny that-he not me-has protected from death
es mains a cheus qui chaiens sont. Lors li fait claudas
in-the hands of those who in-here are Then to-him makes Claudas
aporter reube moult riche qui soie estoit. Mais il ne la
bring robe very rich which his was But he not it
vaut prendre en nule guise. Et claudas li prie de ramenoir
wished to-take in any guise And Claudas him begs to remain
o lui. Mais il dist que ia a nul homme viuant ne
with him But he says that ever to any man living not
fera hommage ne feuete. Se ses oncles nel faisoit auant.
will-do-be homage nor fealty If his uncle not-it did first

Maintenant enuoie claudas por pharien. si le troua cil
At-once sends Claudas for Pharien so him found that-one
qui laloit querre dehors la porte tout arme. le hiaume
who him-went to-seek outside the gate all armed the helm
lachie ou il se metoit en agait. comment il ocheist
laced where he himself put in watch how he might-kill
claudas sil eust son neueu ochis. phariens est venus deuant
Claudas if-he had his nephew killed Pharien is come before
claudas & il li dist. pharien or vous ai rendu vne
Claudas and he to-him says Pharien now to-you have-I rendered a
partie des seruices que vous maues fait. Car vostre neueu
part of-the services that you to-me-have done For your nephew
qui por morir sestoit en ma manaie mis ai quite por
who for to-die himself-was in my power put have-I quit for
vostre amor. & por la grant valor de lui. Chertes ie nen
your love and for the great worth of him Certainly I not-thereof
presisse mie iehui matin en raenchon tout le monde.
would-have-taken at-all this morning in ransom all the world
Et bien sachies que vous estes li doi cheualier el monde
And well know that you are the two knights in-the world
de qui ie ameroie miex le seruice & le compaignie. venes
of whom I would-love best the service and the company come
auant si retenes mon hommage. Et ie vous renderai toute
forward so retain my homage And I to-you shall-render all
le terre que vous aues tenue. & vous croistrai encore de
the land that you have held and you shall-increase yet with
riches fies & de grans rentes. phariens fu de grant sens.
rich fiefs and with great rents Pharien was of great sense
si ne se veut pas desreer de parler contre le roi claudas.
so not himself wishes at-all to-disarray of speaking against the king Claudas
Car moult tenoit a grant seruice. ce quil li auoit fait de
For much held-he for great service this that-he to-him had done of

son neueu. quil li auoit son grant mautalent pardone por
his nephew that-he to-him had his great ill-will pardoned for
la soie amor. Sire fait il ie vous merchie moult comme vn
the his love Lord says he I you thank much as one
des plus preudommes del monde. & de che que vous aues
of-the most worthy-men of-the world both of this that you have
fait por moi & de ce que vous me voles encore douner. si
done for me and of this that you to-me wish yet to-give so
ne refus ne vostre seruice ne vostre don ains lai moult
not refuse-I neither your service nor your gift rather it-have-I very
chier. Mais il a vn moult grant essoine en che que vous
dear But it has a very great hindrance in this that you
me requerres. Car iai iure sor saintes reliques que iamais
of-me ask For I-have sworn upon holy relics that ever-more
de nul homme terrien ne recheurai terre. deuant que ie
from any man earthly not shall-I-receive land before that I
saurai des enfans monsignor le roi bohort vraies noueles.
shall-know of-the children (of-)my-lord the king Bors true news

Or vous dirai fait claudas que vous feres por la moie
Now to-you shall-I-tell says Claudas what you will-do for the my
amor. prenes vostre terre de moi sans faire hommage ne
love take your land from me without doing homage nor
feute. & moues por les enfans querre quant vous voldrois. &
fealty and set-out for the children to-seek when you will-wish and
ie vous baillerai encore se vous uoles de ma gent vne partie
I to-you shall-hand yet if you wish of my people a part
qui auoeques vous iront. Et quant vous les aures troues si
who with you will-go And when you them will-have found so
les amenes cha ou en quelconques lieu que vous vaudrois.
them bring here or to whatever place that you will-wish
Et ie vous saisirai de toute la terre. tant quil soient en
And I you shall-seize of all the land so-long that-they be in

eage darmes porter. lors sil me fianchent mon hommage
age of-arms bearing then if-they to-me pledge my homage
& tiegnent de moi lor terre. & vous me faites le mien
and may-hold from me their land and you to-me do the my
hommage quant vous les aures troues. Sire fait phariens che
homage when you them will-have found Lord says Pharien this
ne feroie ie pas en chestui point. Car tex chose poroit auenir
not would-do I at-all in this point For such thing could befall
prochainement que sor vous me couenroit venir. & forfaire
soon that upon you me would-behoove to-come and to-do-wrong
en vostre terre. anchois que sauoir le vous feisse. & ensi
in your land before that to-know it to-you I-might-make and thus
me mesferoie quant ie seroie de vous tenans ia mar vous
myself would-misdo when I would-be from you holding ever ill to-you
eusse ie hommage fait. Mais ie vous ferai autre couent.
would-have I homage done But I to-you shall-make other covenant
Ie vous creanterai comme cheualiers que comment quil
I to-you shall-promise as knight that however that-it
soit des enfans. Ou soient troue ou non. Ie ne ferai autrui
be of-the children Or be-they found or not I not shall-do another
hommage. que ie ne le vous fache a sauoir auant se
homage that I not it to-you may-make to know first if
vous estes vis. Car autre chose nen feroie. Ie sai bien
you are alive For other thing not-thereof would-I-do I know well
fait claudas porcoi vous ne voles estre mi homme. vous ne
says Claudas wherefore you not wish to-be my men you nor
lambegues. vous me deistes ia que vous ne mauies onques
Lambegue you to-me said once that you not me-had ever
ame. ne amer ne me porries. Sire fait phariens. se iel vous
loved nor love not me could Lord says Pharien if I-it to-you
dis ie ne vous dis se voir non. Car onques ame ne vous
said I not to-you said except true not For ever loved not you

auoie. Mais vous aues ore plus fait por moi que tout mi
had-I But you have now more done for me than all my
seruiche ne montent que ie onques vous feisse. & chest la
services — amount that I ever to-you did and this-is the
chose porquoi vous pories plus nos cuers auoir. Mais del
thing wherefore you could more our hearts have But of-the
tout ne vous os ie pas asseurer ne ne doi. Car bien aues
all not you dare I at-all assure nor not must-I For well have-you
oi lessoine. mais en quelque lieu que nous aillons iou &
heard the-hindrance but in whatever place that we may-go I and
mes nies. li vostres cors na de nous garde. ains le vous
my nephew the your body not-has of us care before it to-you
auerons fait sauoir. Atant nous en irons se vous plaist en
we-shall-have made know Thereupon we thence shall-go if you pleases on
nostre queste. Et quant claudas voit quil nes puet plus
our quest And when Claudas sees that-he not-them can more
tenir si lor otroie & doune congie. par les couenenches
hold so to-them grants-he and gives leave by the covenants
que mises i sont. Maintenant se rest armes lambegues.
that put there are At-once himself again-is armed Lambegue
& quant il est montes sor son cheual si li fait claudas
and when he is mounted upon his horse so to-him makes Claudas
aporter vne glaiue moult trenchant dachier & fort de fust
bring a lance very cutting of-steel and strong of wood
por che que point nen auoit aporte dedens son treif.
for this that at-all not-thereof had-he brought into his tent
Atant sen partent ambedoi del treif le roi. si
Thereupon themselves-thence part both from-the tent (of-)the king so
sen vienent dedens la chite & prenent congie a tous
themselves-thence come into the city and take leave of all
les barons de laiens. si enmaine phariens sa feme auoeques lui
the barons of in-there so leads-away Pharien his wife with him

& ses fiex. Ensi est la pais faite des barons del regne de
and his sons Thus is the peace made of-the barons of-the realm of
gannes & de claudas. Mais atant se taist li contes daus
gannes and of Claudas But thereupon itself silences the tale of-them
tous que plus nen parole ore. si se retorne a pharien &
all that more not-thereof speaks now so itself returns to Pharien and
as enfans le roi bohort de gannes qui sont el lac en
to-the children (of-)the king Bors of gannes who are in-the lake in
la garde a la boine dame qui moult gentilment les norist.
the keeping of the good lady who very nobly them nurtures

The Death of Pharien

XXIX

Pharien and Lambegue reach the lake. Bors greets his master gladly, but Lionel reproaches Pharien for coming late and for saving Claudas, until his damsel bids him obey. The youth tells what the two did at Gannes, and when Lambegue tells his uncle what Lancelot said and what Leonce believes, Pharien watches Lancelot in wonder. In time Pharien dies, and his wife and two sons stay with the lady. At the Royal Minster, where Elaine lives in great austerity, the queen of Gannes wastes with grief; she sees in a vision three boys in a garden with Pharien and Lambegue, wakes with their three names written in her hand, describes Lancelot to his mother, and dies.

Quant la pais fu faite che dist li contes de claudas & des
When the peace was made this says the tale of Claudas and of-the
barons de gannes. si dist lestoire que phariens & ses nies
barons of gannes so says the-history that Pharien and his nephew
alerent en lenqueste des enfans. si les conduist li varles qui
went on the-quest of-the children so them conducted the youth who
auoeques lambegues estoit venus que la dame du lac li
with Lambegue was come whom the lady of-the lake to-him

auoit baillie por lui arriere mener. si ont tant cheuauchie
had handed for him back to-lead so have-they so-far ridden
quau tiers ior sont venu au lac. Et lors fu grans la
that-at-the third day are-they come to-the lake And then was great the
ioie quant il i furent venu qui lor fu faite. Mais plus
joy when they there were come which to-them was made But more
fu lies bohors asses de la venue lambegue son maistre. que
was glad Bors enough of the coming (of-)Lambegue his master than
lyoniax ne fu de la venue pharien. Car moult estoit iries
Lionel — was of the coming (of-)Pharien For much was-he angered
vers lui. de che que il auoit tant demore. & dautre part
toward him of this that he had so-long tarried and on-other side
auoit la damoisele tant enamee qui lauoit de gannes aporte.
had-he the damsel so-much loved who him-had from gannes brought
quil namoit mais nule compaignie tant com la soie. Ne
that-he not-loved more any company so-much as the hers Nor
tant ne doutoit ne amoit ne vn ne autre. Et neporquant
so-much not feared-he nor loved neither one nor other And nevertheless
par le commandement a la damoisele corut a pharien les
by the command of the damsel ran-he to Pharien the
bras tendus si tost com il le vit. & a sa feme qui lui &
arms stretched so soon as he him saw and to his wife who him and
son frere auoit moult honores. Mais apres ranprousna pharien
his brother had much honored But after reproached-he Pharien
moult durement. si li sot ausi bien dire com sil li
very hard so to-him knew-he as well to-say as if-it to-him
fust enseignie. Dant pharien ie ne vous doi nul gre sauoir
were taught Lord Pharien I not to-you owe any grace to-know
se vous i estes a moi venus. Mais bohors doit son maistre
if you there are to me come But Bors must his master
amer qui le vint comforter en les anuis. Et sil nalast
love who him came to-comfort in the troubles And if-he not-went

plus par ma dame que par moi. iamais voir mandes ni
more by my lady than by me ever-more truly summoned not-there
fuissies. Car ie me consiurai bien de vostre maistrise des
would-you-be For I myself shall-do-without well of your mastership from
ore mais. A tex paroles dire sestoit lyoniax bien arestes
now more To such words saying himself-was Lionel well stopped
si en dist a grant plente. Quant la damoisele qui tant
so thereof said-he in great plenty When the damsel who so-much
lamoit oi che si sailli auant & iura son sairement que
him-loved heard this so leapt forward and swore her oath that
iamais ne lameroit. se il maintenant plus parole de
ever-more not him-would-she-love if he at-once more speaks of
teil folie. Mais gardast que il feist quanke phariens li
such folly But he-might-see that he might-do whatever Pharien him
commanderoit outreement. & de tant com il en auoit dit
would-command utterly and of so-much as he thereof had said
en fu dolans phariens & moult abaubis. Et neporquant
thereof was sorrowful Pharien and very abashed And nevertheless
plus cortoisement respondi quil nauoit el cuer escrit. Sire
more courteously answered-he than-he had in-the heart written Lord
fait il ie ne doi mie prendre apres fait chose que vous me
says he I not must at-all take after done thing that you to-me
dites tant soit grans maus. Car iones sires ne doit estre
say so-much be-it great evil For young lord not must be
eslongies de son seriant pour fole parole quil li die.
estranged from his sergeant for foolish word that-he to-him may-say
Mais se vous fuisies de leage de lambegue mon neueu. vous
But if you were of the-age of Lambegue my nephew you
venissies tart au repentir. & neporquant mainte gent seiuent
would-come late to-the repenting and nevertheless many people know
bien la paine que iai eue por vostre terre garantir destre
well the pain that I-have had for your land to-protect from-being

destruite & essilie. Et fuissent maint preudomme mort &
destroyed and laid-waste And would-be many worthy-men dead and
destruit se diex ne fust auant & ie apres. Moult laues vous
destroyed if God not were first and I after Very it-have you
bien garandie fait lyoniax. quant vous rescousistes claudas &
well protected says Lionel when you rescued Claudas and
deliurastes de la mort. Iel garandi fait phariens si com ie
delivered from the death I-him protected says Pharien so as I
dui. & feroie encore demain sil mentenoit autant com il
ought and would-do yet tomorrow if-he me-held as-much as he
faisoit a chelui ior. Lors saut auant li valles qui amenes les
did at that day Then leaps forward the youth who brought them
ot laiens. & dist a lyonel. a! sire ne dites mie tex paroles
had in-there and says to Lionel ah lord not say at-all such words
sor vostre maistre. Car par sainte crois iel tieng & quit a
upon your master For by holy cross I-him hold and think for
vn des plus loiax cheualiers qui onques escu portast Et plus
one of-the most loyal knights who ever shield bore And more
en desisse ie asses sil ne fuissent chi. Mais se deuant
thereof would-say I enough if-they not were here But if before
els le disoie. on quideroit que iel desisse por lor losenge.
them it I-said one would-think that I-it said for their flattery

Atant remestrent les paroles de lyonel & de son maistre.
Thereupon remained the words of Lionel and of his master
si conta li valles qui a gannes auoit este che quil auoit veu
so told the youth who at gannes had been this that-he had seen
faire darmes a lambegue & a pharien. & comme lambegues
do of-arms to Lambegue and to Pharien and how Lambegue
se mist en auenture de mort. por sauuer le pueple &
himself put in adventure of death for to-save the people and
la vile. & che que claudas lor voloit douner a li &
the town and this that Claudas to-them wished to-give to him and

a pharien sil deuenissent si homme andui. Tant dist li
to Pharien if-they might-become his men both So-much said the
valles de bien daus .ij. que la dame del lac les esgardoit a
youth of good of-them two that the lady of-the lake them looked-at at
merueilles. & tout chil qui i estoient. Apres che ne demora
marvels and all those who there were After this not tarried-it
gaires que lancelot reuint del bois ou il estoit ales.
much that Lancelot came-back from-the wood where he was gone
si fist moult grant ioie des maistres a ses compaignons.
so made-he very great joy of-the masters of his companions
& conta lambegues a pharien le haute parole quil auoit
and told Lambegue to Pharien the high word which-he had
dite. quant lyoniax ploroit por sa terre sor la riuiere de
said when Lionel wept for his land upon the river of
charosque. Et apres li conta comment leonches li sires
charosche And after to-him told-he how Leonce the lord
de paerne auoit quidie que che fust li fiex au roi ban.
of paerne had thought that this were the son of-the king Ban
Moult esgarda la nuit phariens le contenement lancelot a
Much watched the night Pharien the bearing (of-)Lancelot at
grant merueille. & son venir & son aler. Et ses paroles qui
great marvel and his coming and his going And his words which
bien faisoient a oir. sel prisoit plus en son cuer que enfant
well were to hear so-him prized-he more in his heart than child
quil eust onques veu. longement furent ensi ensamble le troi
that-he had ever seen long were thus together the three
enfant. Tant que il auint chose que phariens morut. Si en
children So-much that it befell thing that Pharien died So thereof
fu fais moult grans li dels. Car a grant merueille estoit por
was made very great the grief For at great marvel was-he for
preudom tenus. Mais auoeques la dame del lac remeist puis
worthy-man held But with the lady of-the lake remained after

sa feme sans partir. & doi enfant vallet qui sien estoient.
his wife without parting and two children boys who his were
Qui puis furent cheualier de la main lyonel meisme. Si ot
Who after were knights by the hand (of-)Lionel himself So had
non li aines anguins. & li autres tatains. si furent andoi
name the eldest Anguin and the other Tatain so were both
de grant proeche & bel asses. Mais chi endroit laisse li
of great prowess and fair enough But here in-place leaves the
contes a parler daus vne pieche & des .iij. cousins & de
tale to speak of-them a while and of-the three cousins and of
lor compaignie. si retorne a parler des .ij. roines qui serours
their company so returns to speak of-the two queens who sisters
estoient. & qui ensamble conuersoient en roial moustier.
were and who together dwelt in royal minster

Des ore dist li contes que tant furent les .ij. serors
From now says the tale that so-long were the two sisters
roines en roial moustier. que moult furent brisies de veillier
queens in royal minster that very were-they broken from watching
& de ieuner & de plorer & de penser nuit & ior.
and from fasting and from weeping and from thinking night and day
La roine de gannes auoit bien la nouele oie que perdu
The queen of gannes had well the news heard that lost
estoient li doi enfant. Et comment claudas les vaut ochire.
were the two children And how Claudas them wished to-kill
& comment vne damoisele les embla par grant sauoir. Et
and how a damsel them stole by great knowledge And
por che que ele ne sauoit ou il estoient. ne sil auoient
for this that she not knew where they were nor if-they had
bien ou mesaise la ou ele les auoit menes. si en fu
good or hardship there where she them had led so thereof was-she
moult courechie. & sa seror meisme chele de benoyc qui
very angered and her sister same that-one of benoic who

en auoit a son cuer moult grant dolor Mais ele en
thereof had at her heart very great sorrow But she thereof
carga plus asses que chele qui mere estoit. Si commencha a
took-on more enough than that-one who mother was So began-she to
afeblir moult durement. Ne por che ne laisoit ele pas que
weaken very hard Nor for this not left she at-all that
ele nalast as matines toutes les nuis. Et sele estoit de
she not-went to-the matins all the nights And if-she was of
boine vie & de grant religion. che ne monta riens a la
good life and of great religion this not amounted anything to the
sainte vie. que sa seur menoit la roine elaine de benoyc. Car
holy life that her sister led the queen Elaine of benoic For
ele auoit toutes eures vestue le haire aspre & poignant par
she had all hours donned the hair-shirt harsh and pricking by
desous la chemise qui moult estoit blanche & delie. Ele ne
below the shift which very was white and fine She not
menia onques puis de char quele entra en la religion. por
ate ever after of flesh that-she entered into the religion for
nule enfermete qui le tenist. Ele releuoit toutes les nuis
any infirmity which her held She rose all the nights
.ij. fois. vne fois auant matines ou apres selonc che con
two times one time before matins or after according-to this that-one
les cantoit ou tempre ou tart. se disoit che quele sauoit de
them sang or early or late so said-she this that-she knew of
bien. & tout sans liure que ne voloit pas estre apercheue.
good and all without book for not wished-she at-all to-be perceived
Mais toutes les nuis diuer leuoit ele .ij. fois. ele ne manioit
But all the nights of-winter rose she two times she not ate
nule fois fors en refectoir. & dormoit en dortoir toutes fies.
any time except in refectory and slept in dormitory all times
Ele nestoit nule fois si bien cauchie que la plante de son
She not-was any time so well shod that the sole of her

pie ne sentist la pure terre. ele tenoit ordre & silenche &
foot not felt the bare earth she kept order and silence both
dedens lenclostre & dehors. que ia ne la parlast sans le
within the-cloister and outside that ever not there spoke-she without the
congie de sabeesse se nestoit quant ele se complengnoit a
leave of her-abbess if not-was-it when she herself complained to
nostre signor et crioit merchi. sans compaignie de toutes
our Lord and cried mercy without company of all
gens. Il estoit maint ior que ele ne menioit se herbe non.
people It was many day that she not ate except herb not
Et si fu maint ior que de la bouche ni menia a la
And so was many day that with the mouth not-there ate-she at the
fie quant ele estoit estordie de chanter & de clostre tenir.
time when she was dazed from singing and from cloister keeping
& de veillier & de ieuner & de dire ses proiereres.
and from watching and from fasting and from saying her prayers
si reposoit. Mais chestoit a queutes & a ienols. Et lors
so rested-she But this-was on elbows and on knees And then
ooit les vies des sains de la bouche del capelain. Dont
heard-she the lives of-the saints from the mouth of-the chaplain Whereof
ele laiens en auoit .iij. qui estoient rendu de la maison.
she in-there thereof had three who were professed of the house

Teil vie mena la roine helaine de benoyc el moustier
Such life led the queen Elaine of benoic in-the minster
roial tout son eage. Et neporquant si bele demonstrance
royal all her age And nevertheless so fair demonstration
li fist nostre sires que ses seruiches li plaisoit. Ele
to-her made our Lord that her service him pleased She
estoit crasse a mesure en son viaire. si estoit blanche &
was plump to measure in her face so was-she white and
vermeille & de si grant biaute que nus hons estraignes
red and of so great beauty that any man foreign

ne quidast que il peust auoir la septisme part de religion
not would-think that it could have the seventh part of religion
quil i auoit. En cheste vie dura moult longement. Mais
that-it there had In this life lasted-she very long But
sa seur la roine euainne estoit de feble complexion &
her sister the queen Evaine was of feeble complexion and
maluaise. si couchoit & releuoit vne eure si malade. que
bad so lay-she-down and rose one hour so sick that
len quidoit bien que ele se morust. autre eure passoit si
one thought well that she herself would-die other hour passed-it so
que leuer pooit as matines & a toutes les autres eures.
that rise could-she to-the matins and to all the other hours
Mais moult paroit bien al vis que li cors soustenoit
But much appeared-it well at-the face that the body sustained
que moult estoit & megre & paile. & la parole si reue
for very was-it both lean and pale and the speech so hoarse
& si feble. cauis estoit a tous cheus qui looient que
and so feeble that-opinion was to all those who her-heard that
tantost se deust morir. Mais quant ele parsot que si
straightway herself ought die But when she fully-knew that her
enfant estoient perdu. & que nules noueles nen ooit
children were lost and that any news not-thereof heard-she
des lors en auant empira de ior en ior. ne del lit
from then on forward worsened-she from day to day nor from-the bed
ne leuoit nule fie. Et tous iors deprioit nostre signor que
not rose-she any time And all days besought-she our Lord that
anchois que ele de cest siecle trespasast li feist
before that she from this world passed to-her he-might-make
droites noueles sauoir de ses .ij. enfans sil estoient vif.
right news know of her two children if-they were alive
Et sil estoient mort ele nen querroit ia a sauoir. Car
And if-they were dead she not-thereof would-seek ever to know For

ele ne voldroit trespaser del siecle sen boine consiense
she not would-wish to-pass from-the world except-in good conscience
non. ne que nus terriens damages li feist sa mort
not nor that any earthly harm to-her might-make her death
haster. la ou ele estoit en ches orisons & en ces proieres
hasten there where she was in these orisons and in these prayers
vers dameldieu li auint vne auision. Et ele fu ausi com
toward Lord-God to-her befell a vision And she was as as-if
endormie. & lors fu rauis ses esperis & sen ala en
asleep and then was ravished her spirit and itself-thence went in
pau deure auques loing. si li fu auis quele estoit el
little of-hour somewhat far so to-her was opinion that-she was at-the
chief dun moult bel gardin en loriere dune forest grant &
head of-a very fair garden at the-edge of-a forest great and
espese. En lenclos de chel gardin auoit maisons moult
thick In the-enclosure of that garden there-had houses very
biaus & moult grans. & ele esgardoit si voit issir des
fair and very great and she looked so sees issue of-the
enfans asses hors de ches maisons. Mais .iij. en i auoit
children enough out of these houses But three thereof there had
qui sambloient estre signor de tous les autres. Et li vns
who seemed to-be lords of all the others And the one
des .iij. si estoit asses plus grans & plus biax si estoit en
of-the three so was enough more great and more fair so was in
mi lieu. & les .ij. qui dales le grant estoient auoient .ij.
midst place and the two who beside the great were had two
hommes qui les gardoient. & ele les auisoit si counissoit
men who them guarded and she them observed so knew
pharien & lambegue son neueu. & a chelui tans estoit
Pharien and Lambegue his nephew and at that time was
encore phariens en vie. Lors soupechouna que che estoient si
yet Pharien in life Then suspected-she that these were her

doi enfant Et ele ne pooit sauoir de lautre qui il estoit. Ne
two children And she not could know of the-other who he was Nor
de ses enfans meismes ne sauoit ele riens fors par quidier.
of her children same not knew she anything except by thinking
Et lors venoit a li vns hons que ele ne connissoit pas. si
And then came to her a man whom she not knew at-all so
len remena grant aleure a labeie moult irie & moult
her-thence led-back great pace to the-abbey very angered and very
angoisseuse de che que ele nauoit conneu les .iij. enfans.
anguished of this that she not-had known the three children

Quant ele sesueilla si se dolut moult de lire quele
When she herself-awoke so herself grieved-she much of the-ire which-she
auoit eue en sauision. & ele esgarda en sa destre main si
had had in her-vision and she looked in her right hand so
i treuue en escrit .iij. nons lyonel. & bohort & lancelot.
there finds in writing three names Lionel and Bors and Lancelot
lors fu ele a merueilles lie si commencha a plorer de ioie.
then was she at marvels glad so began-she to weep for joy
Maintenant enuoia querre sa seror qui el moustier estoit si
At-once sent-she to-seek her sister who in-the minster was so
li conta sauision. & sachies fait ele bele suer que trop est
to-her told her-vision and know says she fair sister that very is
biax li vostres fiex outre le biaute a tous enfans. ne onques
fair the your son beyond the beauty of all children nor ever
mais si bel ne vi ne si plaisant. Lors li commence a
more so fair not saw-I nor so pleasing Then to-her begins-she to
deuiser comfais ele lauoit ueu. Tant li a dit que moult
devise how-made she him-had seen So-much to-her has-she said that much
en a grant ioie la roine de benoyc. bele seur fait chele
thereof has great joy the queen of benoic fair sister says that-one
de gannes ore voi ie bien que nostre sires velt que ie parte
of gannes now see I well that our Lord wishes that I may-part

de ceste vie. Car tous mes desiriers ma acomplis. a lui
from this life For all my desires to-me-has-he accomplished to him
commant ie mon esperit. Maintenant se fist a son ensient
commend I my spirit At-once herself made-she to her knowledge
bien confesser. & ne demora puis gaires que lame sen
well confess and not tarried-it after much that the-soul itself-thence
parti du cors. Si li fu fait si grans honors laiens comme
parted from-the body So to-her was done so great honor in-there as
a roine. Et moult en fist grant duel sa suer la roine de
to queen And much thereof made great grief her sister the queen of
benoyc. Mais a ceste fois ne parole plus li contes de les
benoic But at this time not speaks more the tale of them
ne de lor compaignie. ains retorne a parler del roy artu.
nor of their company rather returns-it to speak of-the king Arthur

Banin at Arthur's Court

xxx

At Easter at Carahais, the highest feast of the year, Arthur holds court. Banin, King Ban's godson, newly come to Arthur's house, wins the jousting and, by custom, serves the Round Table and then sits facing the king. Learning that he is Ban's godson, Arthur falls to weeping, until Kay sounds a horn and Gawain reproaches him. Arthur owns his shame that Ban's death is unavenged; Banin tells him the queen is veiled and the son thought dead. The queen retains Banin, who becomes one of the hundred and fifty knights of the watch.

Li contes dist chi endroit que a lentree dauril; le ior dune
The tale says here in-place that at the-entry of-April the day of-an
paske estoit li rois artus a carahais vne soie chite moult
Easter was the king Arthur at carahais a his city very
boine & bien seant de mainte chose. Che fu apres le grant
good and well seemly of many thing This was after the great
messe que li rois fu al mangier assis. En chelui tans
mass that the king was at-the eating seated In that time
auoit en coustume li rois artus que plus richement se
had in custom the king Arthur that more richly himself
demenoit a paskes tous iours que en nule autre feste. & si
conducted-he at Easter all days than at any other feast and so
vous dirai la raison porquoi. Il ne tenoit court esforchie
to-you shall-I-tell the reason wherefore He not held court mighty
de couroune porter que .v. fois lan. Che estoit a pasques
of crown bearing but five times the-year This was at Easter
a lascension a le pentecoste a le toussains & al noel.
at the-Ascension at the Pentecost at the All-Saints and at-the Christmas
Et en maintes autres festes tint il court. Mais nestoient
And on many other feasts held he court But not-were-they
pas apelees cours esforchies. si com a la candelier & a la
at-all called courts mighty so as at the Candlemas and at the

mi aust. Ou al iour de la feste de la vile ou il estoit
mid August Or at-the day of the feast of the town where he was
& en maint autre ior quant il li soruenoient gent qui
and on many other day when it to-him came-upon people whom
il voloit honorer & festoier. En teil maniere tenoit court
he wished to-honor and to-feast In such manner held court
li rois artus mainte fie. Mais de toutes estoit la paske la
the king Arthur many time But of all was the Easter the
plus haute & la plus honeree a dame dieu. & pentecouste
most high and the most honored to Lord God and Pentecost
la plus enuoisie. por che estoit paske la plus haute &
the most merry for this was Easter the most high and
la plus honeree. Quar par lui fumes nous racate des
the most honored For by him were we ransomed from-the
pardurables dolors. Car a chelui ior resuscita nostre salueor.
everlasting sorrows For at that day rose-again our savior
qui en morant auoit destruite nostre mort. & nostre vie
who in dying had destroyed our death and our life
auoit reparie & renforchie par sa resurrection. Par cheste
had repaired and strengthened by his resurrection By this
raison estoit paskes la plus haute feste de lan. & la plus
reason was Easter the most high feast of the-year and the most
honeree en la maison le roi artu. & en maint autre
honored in the house (of-)the king Arthur and in many other
lieu. Et pentecouste estoit la plus enuoisie & la plus gaie.
place And Pentecost was the most merry and the most gay
Car quant ihesus crist nostre sauueres fu montes el chiel
For when Jesus Christ our savior was ascended into-the heaven
apres la paske qui estoit lor racatement. Car pramis lor
after the Easter which was their ransoming For promised to-them
auoit a enuoier le saint esprit. & comforter dont il auoient
had-he to send the Holy Spirit and comforter whereof they had

grant mestier. car il estoient si descomfortez com vous aues
great need for they were so discomforted as you have
oi. Cestoit ausi com les berbis qui lor pastour orent perdu.
heard This-was as as the sheep who their shepherd had lost
A chelui iour lor enuoia diex le grant comfort por
At that day to-them sent God the great comfort for
els soulachier de chelui quil auoient en car en lor
them to-solace of that-one whom-they had in flesh in their
compaignie. sorent ensamble a els non mie en car. Mais
company so-had-they together with them not at-all in flesh But
esperitelment. & par che fu lor ioie refremee. si fu issi
spiritually and by this was their joy confirmed so was thus
li iors de paskes li commenchemens de nostre grant ioie.
the day of Easter the beginning of our great joy
Et li iors de pentecouste fu li renouelemens. par che fu
And the day of Pentecost was the renewal by this was
establie paskes la plus haute feste & la plus honeree de tout
established Easter the most high feast and the most honored of all
lan. por che que rachate i fumes & nostre vie reparee.
the-year for this that ransomed there were-we and our life repaired
& pentecouste doit estre la plus enuoisie por che que li
and Pentecost must be the most merry for this that the
afermemens i fu dounes de nostre ioie. Au ior de paskes
confirmation there was given of our joy At-the day of Easter
que ie vous di estoit li rois a karahais a grant plente de
that I to-you tell was the king at carahais with great plenty of
ses barons & de ses cheualiers de par son regne. Quant
his barons and of his knights from through his realm When
vint apres disner si ne pot estre qua maint des bachelers
came-it after dinner so not could be that-to many of-the bachelors
legiers qui i estoient ne preist talent de els debatre
nimble who there were not might-take desire of themselves to-sport

& esbanoier. si commenchent a iouer en mainte maniere.
and to-divert so begin-they to play in many manner
li vn iouerent as tables & as esches & a ieus dautre
the ones played at-the tables and at-the chess and at games of-other
maniere. & li autre carolaient & esgardoient les danses
manner and the others caroled and watched the dances
des dames & des damoiseles. Mais vne partie des iones
of-the ladies and of-the damsels But a part of-the young
bachelers & des prieueis & des estraignes alerent behorder.
bachelors both of-the intimates and of-the strangers went to-joust
& apres le behordis fu drechie la quintaine. si que a
and after the jousting was raised the quintain so as at
chelui tans estoit coustume. si i ferirent maint bacheler de
that time was custom so there struck many bachelor of
grant proeche. & neporquant de la maison artu ni
great prowess and nevertheless of the house (of-)Arthur not-there
feri nus. Car il nestoit a vs ni a costume. Mais lendemain
struck anyone For it not-was in use nor in custom But the-next-day
auenoit souent quil bohordoient as escus vne fois sans
befell-it often that-they jousted with-the shields one time without
plus. & autre fie armei de toutes armes. Chelui ior que
more and other time armed with all arms That day that
li estraigne bohordoient fu le ior de paskes meismes. Si
the strangers jousted was the day of Easter same So
venqui tout vns cheualiers dont li contes parole cha en
conquered all a knight of-whom the tale speaks here in
ariere si estoit apeles banyns. filleuls au roi ban de benoyc.
back so was-he called Banin godson of-the king Ban of benoic
Chil banyns estoit vns petis cheualiers. si estoit a
That Banin was a little knight so was-he at
merueilles apers & vistes. & de merueilleuse forche. Il
marvels nimble and quick and of marvelous force He

auoit guerroie le roi claudas moult longuement & maint
had warred the king Claudas very long and many
grant damage li auoit fait. Et tant auoit prins del sien
great harm to-him had done And so-much had-he taken of-the his
& tant gaaignie al gueroier que richement & a bel
and so-much won at-the warring that richly and with fair
harnois sen estoit partis de la terre soi quart de
harness himself-thence was parted from the land himself fourth of
cheualiers. Ioines bachelers autresi com il estoit. Si sen
knights Young bachelors likewise as he was So himself-thence
estoit venus en la maison le roi artu. la ou tout
was come into the house (of-)the king Arthur there where all
amendoient & poure & riske. Et chil qui baioient a bien
bettered both poor and rich And those who aimed at good
& a valor. Car a chelui tans nestoit nus por preus tenus
and at worth For at that time not-was anyone for valiant held
de quelconques terre que il fust. sil neust auant este en la
of whatever land that he were if-he not-had first been in the
maison le roi artu. & sil ne connust de chels de la table
house (of-)the king Arthur and if-he not knew of those of the table
reonde & de lescargaite. lors estoit tenus por bien errans.
round and of the-watch then was-he held for well errant

Quant banins ot ensi vencu tous chels dune part &
When Banin had thus conquered all those of-one side and
dautre au behorder. si fu esgardes asses de maint
of-other at-the jousting so was-he looked-at enough by many
preudomme. Car a chelui tans estoient toutes les proeces
worthy-man For at that time were all the prowesses
en grignor pris queles ne furent onques puis. Et a chelui
in greater prize than-they — were ever after And at that
tans estoit coustume a toutes les cours ou li rois artus
time was custom at all the courts where the king Arthur

portoit couroune. que quant venoit au souper. chil qui
bore crown that when came-it to-the supper that-one who
miex lauoit fait au behourder de tous les cheualiers
best it-had done at-the jousting of all the knights
estraignes. seruoit a la table roonde del premier mes.
foreign served at the table round of-the first course
por che que commenchemens estoit de connoissance. &
for this that beginning was-it of acquaintance and
a commenchement de compaignie. & que par sa proeche
at beginning of fellowship and that by his prowess
se baoit a metre auant. Et si tost quil auoit serui. si
himself aimed to put forward And so soon as-he had served so
aloit seoir a la table le roi artu meisme de lautre part
went-he to-sit at the table (of-)the king Arthur himself on the-other side
encontre lui. non pas endroit. Mais auques pres. Et sachies
facing him not at-all straight But somewhat near And know
bien que tous iors seoit li rois artus a son dois. ne ia
well that all days sat the king Arthur at his dais nor ever
ni seist cheualiers nus que dune part. fors seulement
not-there sat knight any but on-one side except only
chil qui tout auoit le ior vencu au behorder. por estre
that-one who all had the day conquered at-the jousting for to-be
miex conneus de toutes gens. Quant banyns ot serui del
better known by all people When Banin had served of-the
premier mes a la table roonde. si lamena messires gauuains
first course at the table round so him-led my-lord Gawain
meismes & keu le seneschal deuant le roi si li assistrent.
himself and Kay the seneschal before the king so him seated-they
& li rois lesgarde moult doucement qui a merueilles amoit
and the king him-looks-at very sweetly who at marvels loved
tous iours boin cheualier. Quant il orent le premier mes
all days good knight When they had the first course

eu. si commenchoient paroles a enforchier. si parloit li rois
had so began words to strengthen so spoke the king
a ses cheualiers & il a lui. & sachies cau ior de la
to his knights and they to him and know that-at-the day of the
feste quil portoit coroune. ne seist ia a sa table nus de ses
feast that-he bore crown not sat ever at his table any of his
rois. anchois auoit chascuns sa grant table ou il seoit. por
kings rather had each his great table where he sat for
plus honestement asseoir les preudommes quil connoissoit.
more honestly to-seat the worthy-men whom-he knew

Li rois parla amont & aual as cheualiers. Et esgarda
The king spoke up and down to-the knights And looked-at
banin qui mot ne dist. & tint la teste basse si sambla que
Banin who word not said and held the head low so seemed-it that
il fust esbahis de che que il estoit deuant persone a si haut
he were amazed of this that he was before person of so high
homme com estoit li rois artus. Et de che que il estoit
man as was the king Arthur And of this that he was
assis autresi comme mereoirs a toutes gens. & sans faille
seated likewise as mirror to all people and without fail
il nestoit esbahis por autre chose. Et li rois qui ieter le
he not-was amazed for other thing And the king who to-cast him
vaut hors de sa vergoigne. si li dist moult courtoisement.
wished out of his shame so to-him said very courteously
sire cheualiers ne soies pas au mangier si esbahis. Car
lord knight not be at-all at-the eating so amazed For
as armes nestes pas esbahis si com ie quit. Et sacies
at-the arms not-are-you at-all amazed so as I think And know
bien que vous estes esgardes de maint preudomme. Mais il
well that you are looked-at by many worthy-man But it
nen i a nul qui por vous lieue la teste en haut. lors
not-thereof there has any who for you raises the head on high then

ot banins vn poi vergoigne. & la coulor li monte el
had Banin a little shame and the color to-him rises in-the
vis. si en deuint tous vermaus & moult biax & bien li
face so thereof became-he all red and very fair and well to-him
sist. & li rois li demande comment il a non. Sire fait
sat-it and the king him asks how he has name Lord says
il iai a non banyns. de quel terre fait li rois estes vous
he I-have for name Banin of what land says the king are you
neis. sire fait il del roiaume de benoyc. de benoyc fait li
born lord says he of-the kingdom of benoic of benoic says the
roi artus. dites vous chelui benoyc que li rois bans tenoit
king Arthur say you that-one benoic which the king Ban held
quant il estoit en vie. & il dist que de chelui benoyc est
when he was in life and he says that of that-one benoic is
il sans faille. connustes le vous onques fait li rois. le roy
he without fail knew him you ever says the king the king
ban. sire fait banin il fu mes parins. Et li rois lesgarde si
Ban lord says Banin he was my godfather And the king him-looks-at so
voit que les larmes li sont as iex venus. si en a
sees that the tears to-him are to-the eyes come so thereof has-he
trop grant pitie. & lors commencha a penser trop durement.
too great pity and then began-he to think too hard
A cheste chose pensa li rois vne grant pieche en teil
On this thing thought the king a great while in such
maniere que les larmes li caoient tout contreual le vis. &
manner that the tears to-him fell all down the face and
couloient desus la table ou il sestoit apoies. Endementiers
flowed upon the table where he himself-was leaned Meanwhile
que il pensoit en teil maniere. si fu monstres a monsignor
that he thought in such manner so was-he shown to my-lord
gauuain & a keu le senescal. Sire que ferons nous fait li
Gawain and to Kay the seneschal Lord what shall-do we says the

vns a lautre. Ie criem se nous li faisons son penser laisier
one to the-other I fear if we him make his thought leave
quil nous en saura mal gre. En non dieu fait kex
that-he to-us thereof will-know ill grace In name (of-)God says Kay
si fera il sil pense a chose qui li plaise. Mais por che
so will-do he if-he thinks of thing which him may-please But for this
nel laisserons nous pas. Car ses pensers est trop greuex en
not-it shall-leave we at-all For his thought is too grievous at
chestui point. Et ie vous creant fait messires gauuains que
this point And I to-you promise says my-lord Gawain that
ie len osterai. sil me deuoit ore hair a tous iors mais.
I him-thence shall-remove if-he me were-to now hate to all days more
Lors vait auant si le boutast moult volentiers por lui oster
Then goes-he forward so him would-push very willingly for him to-remove
de son penser. & keus laert parmi le brach si li dist.
from his thought and Kay him-seizes by the arm so to-him says
Estes sire car iai porpense comment nous len porons
Stand lord for I-have bethought how we him-thence shall-be-able
ieter. Comment fait mesire gauuains. Iel vous monsterai bien
to-cast How says my-lord Gawain I-it to-you shall-show well
fait kex. si ne vous moues de chi. Maintenant vait vn cor
says Kay so not yourself move from here At-once goes-he a horn
saisir qui pendoit a vne corne de cherf parmi le guige. puis
to-seize which hung at a horn of stag by the strap then
le met a la bouche si le soune si durement que toute la
it puts to the mouth so it sounds so hard that all the
sale en tramble che mest auis. & toutes les cambres la
hall thereof trembles this to-me-is opinion and all the chambers (of-)the
roine. Li rois tressaut por le son del cor quil ot oi. Si
queen The king starts for the sound of-the horn which-he had heard So
demanda a monsignor gauuain quil vit ester deuant lui que
asked-he of my-lord Gawain whom-he saw stand before him what

che estoit. Mais che ca este fait mesire gauuains que vous
this was But this that-has been says my-lord Gawain that you
aues tant pense. quil ni a nul qui nel tiegne a trop
have so-long thought that-it not-there has any who not-it may-hold for too
grant mal. Car vous deusies festoier tout le monde qui est
great ill For you ought feast all the world which is
venus a vostre court & faire ioie. & vous penses chi aluec
come to your court and make joy and you think here there
en teil maniere que les larmes vous courent tot contreual la
in such manner that the tears to-you run all down the
fache. Che seroit laide chose se a vn enfant esties compares
face This would-be ugly thing if to a child you-were compared
qui len tient a .j. des plus sages hommes qui orendroit soit.
who one holds for one of-the most wise men who right-now may-be

Gauuain fait il biaus nies de chest pense ai iou eu &
Gawain says he fair nephew of this thought have I had both
tort & droit. Car por mes barons qui a mal le me tenoient
wrong and right For for my barons who for ill it of-me held
ai eu tort. & droit por che ke ie pensoie a la gregnor
have-I had wrong and right for this that I thought of the greatest
honte que onques mauenist. puis que ie portai primes corone.
shame that ever me-befell since that I bore first crown
Che estoit au roi ban de benoyc qui estoit vn des plus
This was of-the king Ban of benoic who was one of-the most
preudommes que ie eusse. qui fu mors el venir a moi. Et
worthy-men that I had who was dead in-the coming to me And
ia en ai eu clamor. ne onques encore ne lamendai.
already thereof have-I had complaint nor ever yet not it-amended-I
Si en ai si grant honte que ne puis grignor auoir. Sire
So thereof have-I so great shame that not can-I greater have Lord
fait mesire gauuains chertes il est bien raisons que vous i
says my-lord Gawain certainly it is well reason that you there

penses en lieu & en tans quant li pensers pora valoir.
think in place and in time when the thought will-be-able to-avail
Mais toutes uois nest il mie ore tans de faire duel. Mais
But all ways not-is it at-all now time to make grief But
quant vous verres quil en sera tans & liex. si i meteres
when you will-see that-it thereof will-be time and place so there will-you-put
auoec le penser paine & trauail. Li rois entent bien &
with the thought pain and toil The king hears well and
connoist que ses nies li dist le miellor. si tert ses iex &
knows that his nephew to-him says the best so wipes his eyes and
essue. & se paine moult de faire bel samblant. Mais nel
dries and himself pains much to make fair semblance But not-it
pot faire si bel com il auoit fait par deuant. Car li cuers
could-he make so fair as he had done by before For the heart
ne li aporte mie. & quant vint apres souper si apela
not to-him brings-it at-all and when came-it after supper so called-he
banin a vne part si li demande noueles de la feme au roi
Banin to one side so him asks news of the wife of-the king
ban & de son fil. Et il li dist que sa dame estoit noune
Ban and of his son And he to-him says that his lady was nun
velee. & que del fil ne sauoit len verite nule. Mais li
veiled and that of-the son not knew one truth any But the
plus des gens quident quil soit mors. Par teus acointances
most of-the people think that-he be dead By such acquaintances
douna li rois a banyn de ses ioiaus & grant auoir. Et
gave the king to Banin of his jewels and great wealth And
la roine le retint chele nuit meisme de sa maisnie por sa
the queen him retained that night same of her household for his
proeche. Et autresi faisoit ele tous chels qui venquoient as
prowess And likewise did she all those who conquered at-the
hautes festes les behordeis & le quintaine. Et lor dounoit
high feasts the jousts and the quintain And to-them gave-she

de ses ioiaus & de ses drueries. Et diluec en auant les
of her jewels and of her love-tokens And from-there on forward them
tenoit por ses cheualiers. Dedens chel an fist tant banins
held-she for her knights Within that year did so-much Banin
par sa proeche quil fu vn des .C. & .l. cheualiers
by his prowess that-he was one of-the hundred and fifty knights
de lescargaite por se proece. si fu el lieu grauadain
of the-watch for his prowess so was-he in-the place (of-)Gravadain
des vaus de galore. Mais de lui ne parole ore li contes
of-the vales of galore But of him not speaks now the tale
plus. Mais li contes del commun deuise. & les oeures
more But the tale of-the common devises both the works
& les proeches de lui. Et chis contes retourne a parler
and the prowesses of him And this tale returns to speak
de lancelot & de sa dame del lac & de lor compaignie.
of Lancelot and of his lady of-the lake and of their company

Lancelot at Eighteen

XXXI

Lancelot is eighteen, so fair and wise that no one could fault him, and the Lady of the Lake, who knows by her lot that he will come to great honor, sees it is time he took knighthood, though parting from him will grieve her. He shoots a stag fat as in August and sends it to her; when he comes back from the wood she weeps and bids him flee, and then, seeing him ready to leave in anger, stops him and asks what he means to do. He would go to Arthur's house to be knighted, and asks whether the virtues knighthood demands can be found in one man.

Li contes dist chi endroit que tant a este lancelos en la
The tale says here in-place that so-long has been Lancelot in the
garde a la dame del lac. que bien est en leage de .xviij.
keeping of the lady of-the lake that well he-is in the-age of eighteen
ans. Si est tant biaus valles que por noient quesist on plus
years So is-he so fair youth that for nothing would-seek one more
bel en tout le monde. & tant sages. que nule chose nestoit
fair in all the world and so wise that any thing not-was
dont len le peust a droit ne blamer ne reprendre en nule
whereof one him could by right either blame or reprove in any
oeure quil feist. Quant il fu en leage de .xviij. ans. si fu
work that-he did When he was in the-age of eighteen years so was-he
a merueilles grans & corsus. Et la dame qui le nourisoit
to marvels tall and big-bodied And the lady who him nurtured
voit bien quil est des ore mais tans & raisons quil recueure
sees well that-it is from now more time and reason that-he receive
lordre de cheualerie. & se ele plus li delaioit che seroit
the-order of chivalry and if she more to-him delayed it would-be
pechies & dolors. Car bien sauoit par son sort que maintes
sin and sorrow For well she-knew by her lot that many
fois auoit ietee quil vendroit encore a grant honor. Et sele
times she-had cast that-he would-come yet to great honor And if-she

le peust encore delaier de prendre cheualerie ele le feist
him could yet delay from taking chivalry she it would-do
moult volentiers. Car a moult grant paine se porra
very willingly For with very great pain herself she-will-be-able
consiurer de lui. Car toutes amors de pitie & de noureture
do-without from him For all loves of pity and of nurture
i auoit mise. Mais se ele outre son droit eage le detenoit
there she-had put But if she beyond his right age him held-back
destre cheualier. & len destornoit ele feroit pechie
from-being knight and him-thence turned-away she would-do sin
mortel. si grant comme de traison. Car ele li taudroit
mortal as great as of treason For she from-him would-take-away
chou a quoi il ne porroit recourer legierement. Quant vint
this to which he not could recover lightly When came-it
al chief de .xviij. ans vn poi apres la pentecouste si fu
at-the end of eighteen years a little after the Pentecost so was-he
ales en bois. si ot troue vn si grant cherf. que onques
gone into wood so he-had found a so great stag that ever
mais en sa vie nauoit veu grignor. & por le grant merueille
more in his life not-had-he seen greater and for the great marvel
moustrer si i traist & lochist. Quant il lot ochis si le
to-show so at-it he-shot and it-killed When he it-had killed so it
troua de si grant craisse. Com sil fust el mois daoust. si
found of so great fatness As if-it were in-the month of-August so
lesgardoient tot si compaignon a grant merueille. Il enuoia
it-looked-at all his companions at great marvel He sent
le cherf a sa dame par .ij. valles Et ele sen esmerueilla
the stag to his lady by two youths And she herself-thereof marveled
trop durement comment il estoit si cras en chel saison.
too hard how it was so fat in that season
Et de la grandor que il auoit sesmerueilla a grant mesure.
And of the greatness that it had she-marveled at great measure

Moult fu li chers esgardes a grant merueille. Et moult
Much was the stag looked-at at great marvel And very
grant ioie en fist la dame. & lancelos se fu remes en
great joy thereof made the lady and Lancelot himself was remained in
la forest. si se iut moult longement desous vn chesne en
the forest so himself lay very long beneath an oak in
lerbe vert por che que trop faisoit grant caut. Et quant la
the-grass green for this that too it-made great heat And when the
caure se rebaissa si monta sor son chaceor & sen
heat itself lowered so he-mounted on his hunter and himself-thence
reuint au lac. si sambloit bien hom qui de bois venist
came-back to-the lake so he-seemed well man who from wood came
Car il auoit le cote de bois vestue courte a mesure &
For he had the coat of wood worn short to measure and
de verde color. vn capelet de fueilles en sa teste por la
of green color a garland of leaves on his head for the
caure. son tarcais a sa chenture pendu. Car il nen estoit
heat his quiver at his belt hung For he not-thereof was
desgarnis nule fie ou quil alast. Mais son arc li
unprovided any time where-ever that-he went But his bow for-him
portoit vn de ses valles. Si tost com il vint pres del ostel
carried one of his youths So soon as he came near of-the house
& il fu sor le grant cacheor drois es archons & esfichies.
and he was on the great hunter straight in-the saddlebows and fixed
Il vint en la court ou sa dame le voit qui latendoit. Et
He came into the court where his lady him sees who him-awaited And
quant ele le voit si li vient liauwe del cuer as iex
when she him sees so to-her comes the-water from-the heart to-the eyes
amont. Ele se lieue de la plache quele ne latent pas &
up She herself raises from the place that-she not him-awaits at-all and
sen entre en la grant sale. si sest apoie au chief.
herself-thence enters into the great hall so herself-is leaned at-the end

si pensa moult longement. Et lancelos vient apres li. & si
so thought very long And Lancelot comes after her and so
tost com ele le voit si sest fichie en vne chambre. Chil
soon as she him sees so herself-is thrust into a chamber That-one
qui len voit aler sen merueille moult que ele pot
who her-thence sees go himself-thereof marvels much what she could
auoir. si vait apres & la troeue en sa maistre cambre sor
have so goes after and her finds in her master chamber on
vne grant couche gisant. Il vait chele part a grans pas.
a great couch lying He goes that way at great steps
si voit quele souspire & pleure moult durement. Il la
so sees that-she sighs and weeps very hard He her-has
saluee Mais ele ne li dist vn mot ne nel regarde. &
greeted But she not to-him says a word nor not-him looks-at and
il sen merueille trop. Car il auoit apris que ele li
he himself-thereof marvels too-much For he had learned that she to-him
venoit a lencontre baisier & acoler de quelconques part
came to the-meeting to-kiss and to-embrace from whatever part
que il venist. Lors li dist. ha! dame dites moi que vous
that he came Then to-her says-he ah lady tell me what you
aues. & se nus vous a courechie nel me cheles mie.
have and if anyone you has angered not-it from-me hide at-all
Car ie ne quideroie pas que nus vous osast courechier en
For I not would-think at-all that anyone you dared anger in
mon viuant. Quant ele lot si sescrieue a plorer. & est
my living When she it-heard so herself-cries-out to weep and is
tele conree cun seul mot ne li puet dire de la bouche
such arrayed that-a single word not to-him can say from the mouth
Car li seglout li entrerompent sa parole trop durement.
For the sobs to-her interrupt her word too hard
Mais a chief de pieche li dist itant si quil lentent moult
But at end of while to-him says so-much so that-he it-hears very

bien. ha! fiex de roi fuies vous de chi. Ou li cuers me
well ah son of king flee you from here Or the heart to-me
partira ia del ventre. Dame fait il anchois men iroie
will-part now from-the belly Lady says he rather myself-thence would-go
iou. Car maluais remanoir i ai puis que ie vous anuie
I For bad remaining there I-have since that I you annoy
tant. Atant sen torne li valles si vient a son arc sel
so-much Thereupon himself-thence turns the youth so comes to his bow so-it
prent & le pent a son col si rechaint son tarcais. puis vient
takes and it hangs at his neck so girds-again his quiver then comes
a son ronchin si li met le freim & le trait en mi la
to his nag so to-it puts the bridle and it draws into middle the
court. Mais cele qui sor toute rien lamoit sapense que
court But that-one who above every thing him-loved herself-bethinks that
ele a trop parle. & que trop sen vait courechies.
she has too-much spoken and that too himself-thence goes angered
Et ele le connut a si fier & a si vigureus quil ne
And she him knew for so proud and for so vigorous that-he not
prisast rien nule mesaise encontre son cuer ne son cors.
would-prize at-all any hardship against his heart nor his body
La dame saut sus. si essue son visage. & ses iex que
The lady leaps up so wipes her face and her eyes which
ele ot rouges & enfles. & sen vait grant aleure en
she had red and swollen and herself-thence goes great pace into
mi la court. Si voit le vallet qui monter voloit. Et faisoit
middle the court So sees the youth who to-mount wished And made
moult grant samblant destre corechies. Ele saut auant si
very great semblance of-being angered She leaps forward so
laiert au fraim & li dist. Que est che sire vassaus
him-seizes by-the bridle and to-him says What is this lord vassal
ou voles vous aler. Dame fait il ie voel aler iusquen chel
where wish you to-go Lady says he I wish to-go as-far-into that

bois. Dessendes tost ius fait ele. que vous nirois ore pas.
wood Get-down quickly down says she for you not-will-go now at-all
& il descent. Et ele prent son cheual sel fait establer. lors
and he gets-down And she takes his horse so-it makes stable then
lenmaine par la main iusquen sa chambre. si se rasiet en
him-leads by the hand as-far-into her chamber so herself sits-again on
vne couche. & le fait les lui asseoir. Si le coniure de
a couch and him makes beside her sit So him conjures by
la grant foi quil li doit. sans mentir que tost li die
the great faith that-he to-her owes without lying that soon to-her be-tell
ou il voloit ore aler. Dame fait il. il mestoit auis que
where he wished now to-go Lady says he it to-me-was opinion that
vous esties vers moi courechie quant vous ne volies a moi
you were toward me angered when you not wished to me
parler. Et puis que ie fui si mal de vous. chaiens nauoie
to-speak And since that I was so badly with you in-here not-had
ie nul talent de demourer. Que baies vous dont a faire biax
I any desire to remain What aim you then to do fair
fiex de roi fait la dame. Coi dame fait il. par foi fait il ie
son of king says the lady What lady says he by faith says he I
alaisse en teil lieu ou ie porcachasse ma garison. Ou fust
would-go into such place where I would-seek my livelihood Where were
che que vous alissies par la foi que vous me deues. Dame
this that you would-go by the faith that you to-me owe Lady
fait il ie alaisse en la maison le roi artu. Et la seruisse
says he I would-go into the house (of-)the king Arthur And there would-serve
aucun preudomme. tant que il me feist cheualier. Car len
some worthy-man so-long that he me made knight For one
dist que tout li preudomme sont en la maison le roi
says that all the worthy-men are in the house (of-)the king
artu. Comment fait ele biax fiex de roi baes vous dont a
Arthur How says she fair son of king aim you then to

estre cheualiers dites le moi. Chertes dame fait il che seroit
be knight tell it to-me Certainly lady says he this would-be
la chose del mont que ie plus vaudroie auoir que lordre de
the thing of-the world that I more would-wish to-have than the-order of
cheualerie. voire fait ele si loseries emprendre. Ie quit
chivalry truly says she so it-would-you-dare undertake I think
que se vous sauies com grant fais il a en cheualerie. que
that if you knew how great burden it has in chivalry that
iamais ne vous prendroit talens de lencargier. porquoi dame
ever-more not you would-take desire to it-take-on wherefore lady
fait il. Sont dont li cheualier tuit de grignor force de cors
says he Are then the knights all of greater strength of body
& de menbres que li autre homme ne sont. Nenil fait ele
and of limbs than the other men — are No says she
fiex de roi. Mais il convient tel chose en cheualier. que il
son of king But it befits such thing in knight that it
ne couient en autres hommes. Et se vous les oies noumer.
not befits in other men And if you them heard name
Ia nauries si hardi le cuer. que tout ne vous en
Ever not-would-have-you so bold the heart that all not to-you thereof
tramblast. Dame fait il ches choses que a cheualier affierent
trembled Lady says he these things which to knight pertain
peuent eles estre en cuer ne en cors domme trouees. Oil
can they be in heart or in body of-man found Yes
fait la dame moult bien. Car dame diex a fait les vns
says the lady very well For Lord God has made the ones
plus vaillans que les autres. & plus preus & plus gratieus.
more valiant than the others and more valiant and more gracious

What a Knight Must Be

XXXII

Lancelot argues that the virtues of the heart can be had by anyone whom sloth does not hold back. The Lady tells how knighthood began when the strong oppressed the weak: the best were set over the people to protect them and Holy Church, and each arm has its meaning, the shield, hauberk, helm, lance, the two-edged sword and its point, and the horse that is the people. A knight must have one heart hard as lodestone toward felons and one soft as wax toward the good. She names Judas Maccabeus, David, Joseph of Arimathea and his son Galahad, King Pelles, and others who had all these goodnesses, and Lancelot says he will take the order if anyone will give it to him.

Dame fait il. dont se doit chil sentir a moult maluais
Lady says he then himself ought that-one feel for very wicked
& a moult vuis de boines teches. qui por ceste teche
and for very empty of good qualities who for this quality
de paor laisse a prendre cheualerie. Car chascuns doit baer
of fear leaves-off to take chivalry For each ought aim
tous iors a enforchier & a amender de boines teches. Et
all days to strengthen and to amend in good qualities And
moult se doit hair qui par sa pareche pert che que
much himself ought hate who by his sloth loses this that
chascuns poroit auoir. Che sont les vertus del cuer. qui a
each could have These are the virtues of-the heart which at
chent double sont plus legieres a auoir que cheles del cor
hundred double are more light to have than those of-the body
ne sont. Quel deuision fait la dame a il entre les vertus
— are What division says the lady has it between the virtues
del cuer & cheles del cors. Dame fait il iel vous dirai
of-the heart and those of-the body Lady says he I-it to-you shall-tell
chou que ien quit. Il mest auis que tex puet auoir
this which I-thereof think It to-me-is opinion that such-one can have

les bontes del cuer. qui ne puet pas auoir cheles del
the goodnesses of-the heart who not can at-all have those of-the
cors. Car tex puet estre cortois & sages & deboinaires
body For such-one can be courteous and wise and gentle
& loiaus. preus & larges & hardis. tout che sont les
and loyal valiant and generous and bold all these are the
vertus del cuer. Qui ne puet pas estre grans & corsus
virtues of-the heart Who not can at-all be tall and big-bodied
ne isniax ne biax ne plaisans. Et toutes ches teches mest
nor swift nor fair nor pleasing And all these qualities to-me-is
il auis que che sont les bontes del cors. Si quit que li
it opinion that these are the goodnesses of-the body So think-I that the
hons les aporte auoeques li hors del ventre sa meire
man them brings with him out of-the belly (of-)his mother
des chele eure que il naist. Mais les teches del cuer mest
from that hour that he is-born But the qualities of-the heart to-me-is
il auis que chascuns les poroit auoir se pereche ne li
it opinion that each them could have if sloth not from-him
toloit. Car chascuns puet auoir cortoisie & deboinairete &
took For each can have courtesy and gentleness and
les autres biens qui del cuer mueuent che mest auis.
the other goods which from-the heart move this to-me-is opinion
por che quit ie que len nel pert se par pereche non a
for this think I that one not-it loses except by sloth not to
estre preus. Car a vous meismes ai ie oi dire pluseurs
be valiant For from you yourself have I heard say several
fois. que riens ne fait le preudome se li cuers non.
times that anything not makes the worthy-man except the heart not
Et neporquant se vous me deuisies le grant fais qui est
And nevertheless if you to-me described the great burden which is
en cheualerie. par quoi nus ne deuroit estre si hardis que
in chivalry by which anyone not ought be so bold that

cheualiers deuenist. Ie loroie moult volentiers. Et ie les
knight he-became I it-would-hear very willingly And I them
vous deuiserai fait la dame. non pas tous car ie ne sui
to-you shall-describe says the lady not at-all all for I not am
mie de si grant sens que tous les sauroie deuiser. Et
at-all of so great sense that all them I-would-know-how to-describe And
neporquant entendes les bien quant vous les aures ois. &
nevertheless hear them well when you them will-have heard and
si metes auoec loiaute cuer & raison. Car por che se vous
so put with loyalty heart and reason For for this if you
aues talent destre cheualiers. si ne deues vous pas le talent
have desire of-being knight so not ought you at-all the desire
tant bouter auant. que vous ni esgardes anchois raison.
so-much push forward that you not-there regard first reason
Car por che fu doune a homme raison & entendement.
For for this was given to man reason and understanding
que il esgardast droiture anchois que il en preist a faire
that he regard right before that he thereof took to do
rien. Et tant sachies vous bien que cheualiers ne fu mie
anything And so-much know you well that knight not was at-all
fais a gas ne establis. & non pas por che quil fuissent
made in jest nor established and not at-all for this that-they were
au commenchement plus gentil homme ne plus haut de
at-the beginning more noble men nor more high of
lignage li vn de lautre. Car dun peire & dune meire
lineage the one than the-other For from-a father and from-a mother
deschendirent toute gent. Mais quant enuie & couoitise
descended all people But when envy and covetousness
commencha a croistre el monde. Et forche commencha a
began to grow in-the world And force began to
vaintre droiture. A chele eure estoient encore pareil & vn
vanquish right At that hour were still equal and one

et autre de lignage. & de gentilleche. Et quant li foible ne
and other of lineage and of nobility And when the weak not
porent plus souffrir ne endurer encontre les fors. si establirent
could more suffer nor endure against the strong so established
desor aus garans & desfendeors por garandir les foibles
over them warrantors and defenders for to-protect the weak
& les paisibles. Et tenir selonc droiture Et por les fors
and the peaceful And to-hold according-to right And for the strong
bouter ariere des tors quil faisoient & des outrages.
to-push back from-the wrongs that-they did and from-the outrages
A cheste garantie porter furent establi chil qui plus
To this protection to-bear were established those who more
ualoient. a lesgart del commun des gens. Che furent li
were-worth in the-regard of-the common of-the people These were the
grant & li fort. & li bel & li legier. & li loial & li
great and the strong and the fair and the light and the loyal and the
preu & li hardi. Chil qui des bontes del cuer & del cors
brave and the bold Those who of-the goodnesses of-the heart and of-the body
estoient plain. Mais la cheualerie ne lor fu pas donee a
were full But the chivalry not to-them was at-all given in
gas. ne por noient. Anchois lor en fu mis desor les cols
jest nor for nothing Rather to-them thereof was put upon the necks
moult grans fais. & saues vous queus. Au commenchement
very great burdens and know you which At-the beginning
quant li ordres de cheualerie commencha. fu deuise a chelui
when the order of chivalry began was devised to him
qui voloit estre cheualiers. & qui le don en auoit par
who wished to-be knight and who the gift thereof had by
droite election. quil fust piteus sans vilonie. deboinaire sans
right election that-he be pitiful without baseness gentle without
felonie. piteus enuers les souffraitex & larges. Et appareillies
felony pitiful toward the needy and generous And ready

de secoure les besoigneus. pres & apparellies de confondre
to succor the wanting near and ready to confound
les robeors & les ochians. Drois iugieres sans amour &
the robbers and the killers Right judge without love and
sans haine. & sans amor daidier au tort por le droit
without hate and without love of-helping the wrong for the right
greuer. & sans haine de nuire au droit por traire le tort
to-harm and without hate of harming the right for to-draw the wrong
auant. Cheualiers ne doit por paor de mort nule chose faire.
forward Knight not ought for fear of death any thing do
ou len puisse honte connoistre ne apercheuoir. Ains doit
where one may shame recognize nor perceive Rather ought-he
plus douter honteuse cose que mort a souffrir. cheualiers fu
more fear shameful thing than death to suffer knight was
establis outreement por sainte eglize garandir. Car ele ne se
established utterly for holy church to-protect For she not herself
se doit deuanchier par armes. ne rendre mal encontre mal.
— ought defend by arms nor render evil against evil
Et por che est a che establis li cheualiers quil garandisse
And for this is to this established the knight that-he protect
chelui qui tent la senestre ioe quant ele a este ferue en la
him who holds-out the left cheek when it has been struck on the
destre. Et sachies que au commenchement si com tesmoigne
right And know that at-the beginning so as witnesses
lescripture. nestoit nus si hardis qui montast sor cheual. se
the-scripture not-was anyone so bold who mounted on horse if
cheualier ne fust auant. Et por che furent il cheualier clame.
knight not were before And for this were they knights called
Mais les armes que il porte & que nus qui cheualiers
But the arms which he bears and which anyone who knight
ne soit ne doit porter. ne lor furent pas dounees sans
not be not ought bear not to-them were at-all given without

raison. Ains i a raison asses & moult grant senefiance.
reason Rather there is reason enough and very great signification
Li escus qui au col li pent & dont il est couers par
The shield which at-the neck to-him hangs and whereby he is covered in
deuant. senefie que autresi quil se met entre lui & lescu.
front signifies that just-as that-it itself puts between him and the-shield
autresi se doit metre li cheualiers deuant sainte eglise
so-also himself ought put the knight before holy church
encontre tous malfaiteurs. ou soient robeor ou mescreant.
against all evildoers whether they-be robbers or misbelievers
Et se sainte eglise est assaillie ne en auenture de recheuoir
And if holy church is assailed or in risk of receiving
colp ne colee. Li cheualiers se doit auant metre por la
blow or buffet The knight himself ought forward put for the
colee soustenir comme ses fiex. Car ele doit estre garantie
buffet to-sustain as her son For she ought be protected
par son fil & desfendue. Car se la meire est batue ne
by her son and defended For if the mother is beaten or
laidengie deuant son fil. sil ne la venge bien li doit
abused before her son if-he not her avenges well to-him ought
estre ses pains vees & ses huis clos. Et li haubers dont
be her bread forbidden and her doors closed And the hauberk wherewith
li cheualiers est vestus & garandis de toutes pars. senefie
the knight is clothed and protected on all sides signifies
que autresi doit sainte eglize estre close & auironee de la
that so-also ought holy church be enclosed and surrounded by the
desfense au cheualier. Car si grans doit estre sa desfense
defense of-the knight For so great ought be his defense
& si sage sa proueanche que li malfaisieres ne viegne ia
and so wise his providence that the evildoer not may-come ever

de teil eure a lentreie ne a lissue de sainte eglize quil ne
at such hour at the-entry nor at the-exit of holy church that-he not
truisse le cheualier tout prest & esueillie por desfendre le.
find the knight all ready and awake for to-defend it
Li hiaumes que li cheualiers a el chief. qui desus
The helm which the knight has on-the head which above
toutes les armes est parans senefie. que autresi doit paroir
all the arms is apparent signifies that so-also ought appear
li cheualiers deuant toutes autres gens encontre chels qui
the knight before all other people against those who
voldroient estre nuisant a sainte eglize ne faire mal. Et
would-wish to-be harmful to holy church or to-do evil And
doit estre tout ausi com vne boate qui est la maisons
ought-he be all just as a watchtower which is the house
a la gaite. que len doit veoir de toutes pars desus les
of the watchman which one ought see from all parts above the
autres maisons. por espoenter les malfaiteurs & les larrons.
other houses for to-frighten the evildoers and the thieves
Li glaiue que li cheualiers porte qui si est lons quil point
The lance which the knight bears which so is long that-it pricks
anchois que len puisse auenir a lui senefie. que autresi
before that one may reach to him signifies that just
com la paors del glaiue dont li fust est roides & li fers
as the fear of-the lance whose the shaft is stiff and the iron
trenchans fait resortir ariere les desarmes pour la doutance
cutting makes draw-back back the unarmed for the dread
de la mort. & autresi doit estre li cheualiers plus fiers &
of the death and so-also ought be the knight more fierce and
plus hardis & plus viguereus. que la paors de lui coure si
more bold and more vigorous so-that the fear of him run so
loing. que nus lerres ne nus malfaiteur ne soit si oses que
far that any thief nor any evildoer not be so daring that

il aproche a sainte eglise. ains fuie loing por la paor de
he approach to holy church rather flee far for the fear of
lui. vers qui il ne doit auoir poissance. Nient plus que li
him against whom he not ought have power No more than the
desarmes a pooir encontre le glaiue dont li fers trenche.
unarmed has power against the lance whose the iron cuts
Et lespee que li cheualiers a chainte si est trenchans a .ij.
And the-sword which the knight has girded so is cutting on two
pars. Mais che nest mie sans raison. Espee si est de toutes
sides But this not-is at-all without reason Sword so is of all
armes la plus honeree & la plus haute. & chele qui plus
arms the most honored and the most high and that-one which most
a dignite. Car len en puet faire mal en .iij. manieres. On
has dignity For one therewith can do harm in three manners One
en puet bouter & ochire de la pointe en estoquant. Et
therewith can thrust and kill with the point in stabbing And
si en puet on ferir a colp de .ij. trenchans a destre &
so therewith can one strike at blow of two edges to right and
a senestre. Li doi trenchant senefient que li cheualiers doit
to left The two edges signify that the knight ought
estre serians a nostre signor & a son pueple. Si doit li vns
be servant to our Lord and to his people So ought the one
des trenchans ferir sor cheus qui sont anemi nostre signor
of-the edges strike upon those who are enemies (of-)our Lord
& a son pueple. & despiseor de sa crestienete; Et li autre
and to his people and despisers of his Christendom And the other
doit faire veniance de cheus qui sont depecheor de lumaine
ought do vengeance on those who are breakers of the-human
compaignie nostre signor. Chest de cheus qui tolent li vn
company (of-)our Lord That-is of those who take the ones
as autres. & qui ochient li vns lautres. De tel forche
from-the others and who kill the ones the-others Of such force

doiuent estre li doi trenchant. Mais la pointe est dautre
ought be the two edges But the point is of-another
maniere. La pointe senefie obedience. Car toutes gens doiuent
manner The point signifies obedience For all people ought
obeir au cheualier. La pointe senefie moult droit obedience.
obey the knight The point signifies very rightly obedience
Car ele point. Ne nule riens ne point si durement le cuer
For it pricks Nor any thing not pricks so hard the heart
ne perte de terre ne dauoir com fait obeir encontre son cuer.
nor loss of land nor of-goods as does obeying against one's heart
Teus est la senefianche de lespee. Mais li cheuax sor
Such is the signification of the-sword But the horse on
quoi li cheualiers siet. & qui a tous besoins le porte.
which the knight sits and which at all needs him carries
senefie le pueple. Car autresi doit il porter le cheualier en
signifies the people For just-so ought it carry the knight in
tous besoins. & desus li doit seoir li cheualiers. Li pueples
all needs and upon it ought sit the knight The people
doit porter le cheualier en teil maniere. Car il li doit
ought carry the knight in such manner For it for-him ought
querre & porcachier toutes les choses dont il a mestier
seek and procure all the things whereof he has need
a viure honerablement. por che quil le garde & garandist
to live honorably for this that-he it guards and protects
& nuit & ior. Et desus le pueple doit seoir li cheualiers.
and night and day And upon the people ought sit the knight
Car autresi com on point le cheual. & le maine chil qui
For just as one spurs the horse and it leads that-one who
siet desus la ou il veut. Autresi doit li cheualiers mener
sits upon there where he wishes So-also ought the knight lead
le pueple a son voloir par droite subiection. por che que
the people at his will by right subjection for this that

desous lui est. & estre i doit. Ensi poes sauoir que li
beneath him it-is and be there ought-it Thus can-you know that the
cheualiers doit estre sires del pueple. & serians a dame dieu.
knight ought be lord of-the people and servant to Lord God
Car il doit sainte eglize garantir & desfendre & maintenir.
For he ought holy church protect and defend and maintain
Chest li clergies par quoi sainte eglize doit estre seruie.
That-is the clergy by which holy church ought be served
& les veues femes & les orphenins & les dimes & les
and the widowed women and the orphans and the tithes and the
aumousnes qui sont establies en sainte eglize. Et autresi com
alms which are established in holy church And just as
li pueples le maintient terrienement. & li porcache che
the people him maintains earthly and for-him procures that
dont il a mestier. Autresi le doit sainte eglize maintenir
whereof he has need So-also him ought holy church maintain
espiritueument. Et porcachier la vie qui ia ne prendra fin.
spiritually And procure the life which ever not will-take end
Chou est par orisons & par proieres & par aumousnes.
That is by orisons and by prayers and by alms
que diex li soit sauueres pardurablement. autresi com il
that God to-him be savior everlastingly just as he
est garandiseres de sainte eglize terrienement & desfenderes.
is protector of holy church earthly and defender
Ainsi doiuent corre tuit le besoig que il a desus
Thus ought run all the needs that he has upon
le pueple des terrienes choses. Et tout le besoig qui
the people of-the earthly things And all the needs which
appartienent a lame de lui doiuent repairier a sainte eglize.
belong to the-soul of him ought return to holy church
Cheualiers doit auoir .ij. cuers. lun dur & serei autresi
Knight ought have two hearts the-one hard and close just

com aimant. & lautre mol & ploiant autresi comme cyre
as lodestone and the-other soft and bending just as wax
caude. Chil qui est durs com aymans. doit estre encontre
hot That-one which is hard as lodestone ought be against
les desloiaus & les felons. Car autresi com li aymans ne
the disloyal and the felons For just as the lodestone not
sueffre nul polissement. autresi doit estre li cheualiers fel
suffers any polishing so-also ought be the knight fierce
& cruex vers les felons qui droiture depechent & empirent
and cruel toward the felons who right break and impair
a lor pooirs. Et autresi com la cyre mole & caude puet
to their powers And just as the wax soft and hot can
estre flequie & menee la ou on le veut mener. Autresi
be bent and led there where one it wishes to-lead So-also
doiuent les boines gens & les pitex mener le cheualier a
ought the good people and the pitiful lead the knight to
tous les poins qui apartienent a deboinairete & a douchor.
all the points which belong to gentleness and to sweetness
Mais bien se gart que li cuers de chire ne soit
But well himself may-be-guard that the heart of wax not be
as felons ne a desloyaus abandounes. Car tout auroit
to-the felons nor to disloyal abandoned For all he-would-have
perdu outreement. quanque il li auroit fait de bien. Et
lost utterly whatever he to-him would-have done of good And
lescripture nous dist. que li iugieres se dampne quant il
the-scripture to-us says that the judge himself damns when he
deliure de mort & lait aler chelui qui est coupable. & si
delivers from death and lets go him who is guilty and if
laorse de cuer dur daymant desus les boins qui nont mestier
it-has-set of heart hard of-lodestone upon the good who not-have need
fors de misericorde & de pitie. dont a il same perdue. Car
except of mercy and of pity then has he his-soul lost For

lescripture le dist. que chil qui aime desloiaute & felonie
the-scripture it says that that-one who loves disloyalty and felony
heit lame de lui. Et diex meismes dist en leuangile. que
hates the-soul of him And God himself says in the-gospel that
che que len fait al besoigneus. on le fait a lui meisme.
this that one does to-the needy one it does to him himself
Toutes ches choses doit auoir chil qui ose recheuoir
All these things ought have that-one who dares receive
cheualerie. & qui ensi ne veut ouurer com ie vous ai chi
chivalry and who thus not wishes to-work as I to-you have here
deuise. bien se gart destre cheualiers. Car la ou il
described well himself may-he-guard from-being knight For there where he
ist de la droite voie hors. Il doit estre tout premierement
goes from the right way out He ought be all first
hounis au siecle & apres a dame dieu. Car le iour quil
shamed in-the world and after to Lord God For the day that-he
rechoit lordre de cheualerie. il creante a dame dieu quil sera
receives the-order of chivalry he promises to Lord God that-he will-be
tex com chil qui cheualier le fait li deuise. Qui miex
such as that-one who knight him makes to-him describes Who better
le seit deuiser fait la dame que ie nai fait si le fache.
it knows-how to-describe says the lady than I not-have done so it may-he-do
& puis quil est pariures vers dame dieu nostre signor.
and since that-he is forsworn toward Lord God our Lord
Dont a il perdue par droit tant donor com il atendoit a
Then has he lost by right as-much of-honor as he expected to
auoir en la grant ioie. Et au siecle est il hounis tout par
have in the great joy And in-the world is he shamed all by
droiture. Car li preudomme del siecle nel doiuent pas
right For the worthy-men of-the world not-him ought at-all
souffrir entreus. Chelui qui vers son creator sest pariures.
suffer among-them That-one who toward his creator himself-is forsworn

Mais de tous cuers doit estre li plus esmeres & le plus
But of all hearts ought be the most refined and the most
nes chil qui veut estre cheualiers. Et qui teus ne veut
clean that-one who wishes to-be knight And who such not wishes
estre. si se gart que ia de tel chose ne sentremeche
to-be so himself may-he-guard that ever of such thing not himself-meddle
ne de si haute. Car asses miex vaudroit a .j. vallet a viure
nor of so high For much better would-be-worth to a youth to live
sans cheualerie tout son eage. Que estre hounis en terre.
without chivalry all his age Than to-be shamed on earth
& perdus a dame dieu. Car trop a en cheualerie grignor
and lost to Lord God For too-much is in chivalry greater
faissel que on ne quide. Ore fait ele fiex de roi ie vous ai
burden than one — thinks Now says she son of king I to-you have
vne partie deuise des poins qui apartienent a loial cheualier.
a part described of-the points which belong to loyal knight
Mais tous ne les vous ai pas monstres car ie ne sai.
But all not them to-you have-I at-all shown for I not know-them
Ore si me dites que vous en plaist ou del prendre ou del
Now so to-me tell what to-you thereof pleases either the taking or the
laissier. Dame fait li enfes puis que cheualerie commencha.
leaving Lady says the child since that chivalry began
fu il onques nus cheualiers qui toutes ches bontes eust
was there ever any knight who all these goodnesses had
en soi. Oil sire fait ele asses. Dont sainte escripture nous
in himself Yes lord says she enough Whereof holy scripture to-us
est tesmoins. & deuant che que ihesus crist souffri mort.
is witness and before this that Jesus Christ suffered death
Au tans que li pueples israel seruoit nostre signor a foi
At-the time that the people Israel served our Lord in faith
& a loyaute. & se combatoient por sa loi essauchier
and in loyalty and themselves fought for his law to-exalt

& acroistre. encontre les philistiens & les autres pueples
and to-increase against the Philistines and the other peoples
mescreans qui lor voisin estoient pres. De chels fu Iehans
misbelieving who their neighbors were near Of those was John
li ircaniens. & iudas macabeus. li tres boins cheualiers qui
the Hyrcanian and Judas Maccabeus the very good knight who
eslut a estre ochis & decolpes anchois que guerpir la loy
chose to be killed and beheaded rather than to-forsake the law
dieu nostre seignor. Que onques por mescreans ne tourna le
(of-)God our Lord Who ever for misbelievers not turned the
dos honteusement. Si en fu symons ses freres & dauid li
back shamefully So thereof was Simon his brother and David the
rois & maint autre dont ie ne parlerai pas ore. qui furent
king and many other of-whom I not shall-speak at-all now who were
deuant lauenement nostre signor. & puis sa passion ont il
before the-coming (of-)our Lord and since his passion have there
este de teux. qui de toutes vraies valors furent vaillant. Si
been of such who in all true valors were valiant So
en fu ioseph darimachie. li gentiex cheualiers qui ihesu
thereof was Joseph of-arimathea the noble knight who Jesus
crist despendi de la sainte crois a ses .ij. mains. Et coucha
Christ took-down from the holy cross with his two hands And laid
dedens le sepulcre. Et si en fu ses fiex galahas li haus
within the sepulcher And so thereof was his son Galahad the high
rois de hosseliche qui puis fu apelee gales en lonor de
king of hosseliche which afterward was called wales in the-honor of
lui. Et trestout li roi qui de li issirent dont ie nen
him And all the kings who from him issued of-whom I not-thereof
sai pas les nons. Si en fu li rois pelles de listenois qui
know at-all the names So thereof was the king Pelles of listenois who
encore estoit de chelui lignage li plus haus quant il viuoit.
still was of that lineage the most high when he lived

Et ses freires helains li gros. tout chil en furent des vrais
And his brother Helain the fat all those thereof were of-the true
cheualiers cortois. & des vrais preudommes qui maintindrent
knights courteous and of-the true worthy-men who maintained
honerablement cheualerie au siecle & a dame dieu. Dame
honorably chivalry in-the world and to Lord God Lady
fait li valles puis que tant en ont este qui furent
says the youth since that so-many thereof have been who were
plain de toutes les proeches que vous maues chi deuisees.
full of all the prowesses which you to-me-have here described
de grant maluaistie seroit dont plains chil qui cheualerie
of great wickedness would-be then full that-one who chivalry
refuseroit & douteroit a prendre por paor de che quil ne
would-refuse and would-fear to take for fear of this that-he not
poist a toutes uertus ataindre. Neporquant ie nen blasme
could to all virtues attain Nevertheless I not-thereof blame
pas les vns de grant maluaistie se il nosent cheualier estre.
at-all the ones of great wickedness if they not-dare knight be
Ne les autres se il le sont. Car chascuns doit aprendre che
Nor the others if they it are For each ought learn this
mest auis selonc che quil troeue en son cuer ou de
to-me-is opinion according-to what that-he finds in his heart either of
maluaistie ou de proeche. Mais en droit de moi sai ie bien.
wickedness or of prowess But in right of me know I well
que se ie truis a nul iour qui me voeille faire cheualier. ia
that if I find on any day who me may-wish to-make knight ever
nel laiserai estre por paor de che que cheualerie i soit
not-it shall-I-leave be for fear of this that chivalry there be
maluaisement assise. Car diex puet bien en moi auoir mis
badly set For God can well in me have put
plus de bonte que ie ne sai. Et bien est il encore poissans
more of goodness than I — know And well is he still powerful

quil i mette asses de sens & de valor se ele i faut.
that-be there put enough of sense and of valor if it there fails
Et comment quil men auiegne. Ie nel lairai ia por paor
And however that-it to-me befall I not-it shall-leave ever for fear
de nule chose a recheuoir le haut ordre de cheualerie. se ie
of any thing to receive the high order of chivalry if I
truis qui men doinst lonor. Et se diex i ueut mettre
find who to-me-thereof give the-honor And if God there wishes to-put
les boines teches biau men sera. Mais ie i oserai
the good qualities fair to-me-thereof will-be But I there shall-dare
bien mettre cuer & cors & paine & trauail. Comment
well to-put heart and body and pain and toil How
fait la dame fiex de roi sacorde vostre cuers a che que
says the lady son of king itself-accords your heart to this that
vous voles estre cheualiers. Dame fait il ie nai de nule
you wish to-be knight Lady says he I not-have for any
rien si grant talent. se ie truis qui ma volente macomplisse.
thing so great desire if I find who my will to-me-fulfill

The Lady Arms the Youth

XXXIII

The Lady promises that Arthur will knight him on the feast of Saint John; if he knew his father and his lineage, she says, he would not fear to fall short. She has long since prepared his white arms, a well-tried sword, a white lance and horse, and a white samite robe furred with ermine. She sets out with forty white horses, five hundred knights, three damsels, Lionel, Bors, and Lambegue, crosses the sea to Floudehueg, learns that the king will hold court at Camelot, and comes within two leagues of it, grieving at the parting.

En non dieu fait ele toute en sera acomplie vostre
In name (of-)God says she all thereof will-be fulfilled your
volentes. Car vous serois cheualiers si ne demoura pas
will For you will-be knight so not will-it-tarry at-all
longement. Et sachies que por che ploroie ie ore quant vous
long And know that for this wept I now when you
venistes deuant moi. Quant ie vous dis que vous en alisies
came before me When I you told that you thence should-go
ou se che non li cuers me creueroit el ventre. Car iai
or if this not the heart to-me would-burst in-the belly For I-have
en vous mise toute lamor que meire poroit mettre en son
in you put all the-love that mother could put in her
enfant. Si ne sai comment ie me puisse comsieurrer de
child So not know-I how I myself could do-without from
vous en nule fin. Car moult me greuera au cuer. Mais
you in any end For much to-me it-will-grieve at-the heart But
miex aim ie a souffrir ma grant mesaise. que vous perdisies
better love I to suffer my great distress than you should-lose
par moi si haute ordre comme de cheualerie & si grant
through me so high order as of chivalry and so great
honor. & si quit que ele i sera bien emploie. Et se
honor and so think-I that it there will-be well employed And if

vous sauies qui vostre peires fu. ne de quel lignage vous
you knew who your father was or of what lineage you
estes estrais de par vostre meire. vous nauries pas paor
are sprung on side-of your mother you not-would-have at-all fear
destre preudomme si com ie quit. Car nus qui de teil
of-being worthy-man so as I think For anyone who of such
lignage fust ne deuroit pas auoir corage de maluastie. Mais
lineage were not ought at-all have heart of wickedness But
vous nen saures ore plus de moi tant ca ma volente
you not-thereof will-know now more from me so-long that my will
soit. ne ia plus ne men enquerres. Car ie ne le voeil.
be nor ever more not to-me-thereof will-you-inquire For I not it wish
Et vous seres cheualiers prochainement de la main au plus
And you will-be knight soon by the hand of-the most
preudomme qui au siecle soit orendroit. Cest de la main
worthy-man who in-the world be now That-is by the hand
le roi artu. Et si mouerons ceste semaine qui entree est
(of-)the king Arthur And so we-shall-move this week which entered is
si que nous vendrons a lui le vendredi deuant la feste saint
so that we shall-come to him the Friday before the feast (of-)Saint
iehan au plus tart. Car la feste sera au diemenche apres.
John at-the most late For the feast will-be on-the Sunday after
Il ni a de chestui diemenche que .viij. Iors seulement
It not-there has from this Sunday except eight Days only
& ie voeil que vous soies cheualiers au iour de le feste
and I wish that you be knight on-the day of the feast
saint Iehan ne ia plus ni delaierons. Et diex qui de la
(of-)Saint John nor ever more not-there shall-we-delay And God who of the
viergene nasqui por son pueple rachater. autresi com messires
virgin was-born for his people to-redeem just as my-lord
saint Iehans fu li plus haus hons de gueredon & de merite
Saint John was the most high man of reward and of merit

qui onques en feme fu concheus par carnel assamblement.
who ever in woman was conceived by carnal joining
que autresi vous doinst il le don que vous puisies trespasser
that so-also to-you may-give he the gift that you may surpass
de bonte & de cheualerie tous les cheualiers qui ore sont.
in goodness and in chivalry all the knights who now are
Et ie sai grant partie comment il vous en auendra.
And I know great part how it to-you thereof will-befall
Ensi a la dame del lac pramis a lenfant quil sera
Thus has the lady of-the lake promised to the-child that-he will-be
cheualiers prochainement. Et il en a si grant ioie quil ne
knight soon And he thereof has so great joy that-he not
poroit grignor auoir. Or gardes fait ele que ia nus nen
could greater have Now take-care says she that ever anyone not-thereof
sache riens. Et ie vous appareillerai vostre besoigne si bien
know anything And I for-you shall-prepare your business so well
que ia nus ne sen prendra garde. Moult a la dame
that ever anyone not himself-thereof will-take heed Very-much has the lady
bien atournee a lenfant toute sa besoigne. Car ele li auoit
well arrayed for the-child all his business For she for-him had
porquis grant pieche auoit. tout che que mestiers estoit a
procured great while-ago had-she all that which need was to
cheualier. hauberc blanc & legier & fort. Et hiaume sorargente
knight hauberk white and light and strong And helm silvered
moult riche & de moult grant biaute. & escu tout blanc
very rich and of very great beauty and shield all white
comme noif a boucle dargent moult bele. Et por che quele
as snow with boss of-silver very fair And for this that-she
ne voloit quil ni eust riens qui ne fust blanche. & si
not wished that-it not-there were anything which not were white and so
li ot appareillie vne espee qui en maint lieu auoit este
for-him had-she prepared a sword which in many place had been

bien assaie deuant quil leust. Et puis quil lot le rasaia il
well tried before that-he it-had And after that-he it-had it tried-again he
bien. Si estoit grans a mesure & trenchans a grant merueille
well So it-was long to measure and cutting at great marvel
& poi pesans. Et li fu aprestes li glaiues a vne hanste
and little heavy And for-him was made-ready the lance with a shaft
blanche qui corte & grosse & roide estoit. & li fers blans
white which short and thick and stiff was and the iron white
& trenchans & bien agus. Auoec tout che li ot la dame
and cutting and well sharp With all this for-him had the lady
apparellie cheual grant & fort & isnel. & bien esproue de
prepared horse great and strong and swift and well proven of
grant visteche & de hardement. & fu tous blans autresi
great swiftness and of boldness and was all white just
comme noif negie & si li ot appareillie a sa cheualerie
as snow snowed and so for-him had-she prepared for his knighting
robe dun blanc samit cote & mantel. & estoit li mantiax
robe of-a white samite coat and mantle and was the mantle
foures dermines. pour che que riens ni eust que blans
furred of-ermine for this that anything not-there were that white
ne fust & la cote fu foree par dedens dun blanc chendal.
not were and the coat was lined on inside with-a white sendal
En teil maniere atourna la dame au vallet tout che
In such manner arrayed the lady for-the youth all that
que mestier li estoit a estre cheualiers. Et puis mut
which need to-him was to be knight And then moved-she
au tierch matinet & che fu a vn mardi si auoit del
on-the third morning and this was on a Tuesday so was-there from-the
diemenche apres .viij. Iors iusca la feste saint Iehan. La
Sunday after eight Days until the feast (of-)Saint John The
dame entre en son chemin si vait a la cort le roi artu
lady enters on her road so goes to the court (of-)the king Arthur

asses cointement. Car ele auoit en sa compaignie iusqua .xl.
very elegantly For she had in her company up-to forty
cheuaus tous blans. & chil qui sus seoient estoient autresi
horses all white and those who upon sat were likewise
vestu de blanc. En chele route auoit .vc. cheualiers. Et
clad in white In that company were five-hundred knights And
lami a la dame qui moult estoit biax & preus. si auoit
the-friend of the lady who very was fair and valiant so was-there
auoeques la dame .iij. damoiseles. chele qui auoit eue la plaie
with the lady three damsels that-one who had had the wound
por les enfans & .ij. autres. Et si i estoient li troi qui bien
for the children and two others And so there were the three who well
faisoient a mener. Che fu lyoniax & bohors & lambegue
were-fit to lead These were Lionel and Bors and Lambegue
auoec euls. & dautres valles i auoit il asses. Tant ont
with them and of-other youths there were there enough So-long have-they
cheuauchie ca la mer vienent. si entrent ens & sont ariue
ridden that the sea they-come so enter in and are arrived
en la grant bertaigne a vn diemenche au soir au port de
in the great britain on a Sunday at-the evening at-the port of
floudehueg. Diluec cheuauchierent par droites enseignes del
floudehueg Thence rode-they by right tidings of-the
roi artu. Si lor fu dit que li rois seroit a chamaalot a
king Arthur So to-them was said that the king would-be at camelot at
chele feste. Et il acueillent lor chemin tant quil vindrent
that feast And they take-up their road so-long that-they came
le iuedi au soir a vn chastel qui a a non lawenor si
the Thursday at-the evening to a castle which has to name lawenor so
est a .xxij. lieues engleces de camaalot. A lendemain mut
is at twenty-two leagues English from camelot On the-next-day moved
la dame moult matin por errer la matinee. Car moult estoit
the lady very early for to-travel the morning For very was

grans li caus & aspres. si cheuaucha toute la forest iusca .ij.
great the heat and harsh so rode-she all the forest up-to two
lieues engleses pres de camaalot. Si estoit la dame merueilles
leagues English near of camelot So was the lady marvelously
pensiue & esbahie. Car moult li faisoit mal au cuer
thoughtful and amazed For very to-her it-did harm at-the heart
du vallet qui de lui se deuoit partir. si en souspire
for-the youth who from her himself was-to part so thereof sighs
& pleure des iex moult tendrement Mais atant laisse ore
and weeps from-the eyes very tenderly But thereupon leaves now
li contes a parler de lui vn petit & parole del roi artu.
the tale to speak of her a little and speaks of-the king Arthur

The Wounded Knight at Camelot

XXXIV

On the Friday before the feast Arthur rides out to hunt with Gawain, still bandaged from his fight with Gasoain of Estragot, and others of his barons. A litter comes out of the forest bearing a knight with two lance stumps through his body and a sword in his head. He asks the king to have him unfastened, but whoever draws out the irons must swear to avenge him on all who say they love the man who wounded him more than they love him. Arthur will not swear to so great a thing, the knight lies down in the king's hall to wait, and the court calls the request folly.

Chelui ior che dist li contes estoit a camaalot li rois
That day this says the tale was at camelot the king
artus. Car il i souiornoit. & auoeques lui grant plente de
Arthur For he there sojourned and with him great plenty of
cheualiers. si i deuoit sa court tenir au ior de la feste
knights so there was-to his court hold on-the day of the feast
saint Iehan. Au vendredi matin se leua li rois. si main
(of-)Saint John On-the Friday morning himself raised the king as early

com il pot le ior apercheuoir. Car il voloit aler en bois por
as he could the day perceive For he wished to-go into wood for
archoier. si oi messe al plus matin que il onques pot. Si
to-shoot so heard mass at-the most early that he ever could So
tost com il ot messe oie si monta & sen issi de la
soon as he had mass heard so mounted and himself-thence went-out of the
ville par la porte galeche. & auoeques lui de ses compaignons
town by the gate Welsh and with him of his companions
vne partie. Messires gawains ses nies i fu qui auoit
a part My-lord Gawain his nephew there was who had
encore le vis bende dune plaie que gasoains destragort li
still the face bandaged from-a wound that Gasoain of-estragort to-him
auoit faite. ne nauoit pas plus de .iij. semaines. Car il
had made nor not-had-it at-all more than three weeks For they
sestoient combatu deuant le roi entraus .ij. & lauoit apele
themselves-were fought before the king between-them two and him-had appealed
de desloiaute deuant toute le court le roi & auoeques
of disloyalty before all the court (of-)the king and with
aus fu mesire yvvains li grans li fiex le roi vryen &
them was my-lord Yvain the great the son (of-)the king Urien and
keis li senescaus. & tors li fiex ares. le roi daltice. &
Kay the seneschal and Tor the son (of-)Ares the king of-altice and
lucans li bouteilliers. & beduivers li conestables & des
Lucan the butler and Bedivere the constable and of-the
autres barons de la maison le roi meisme a grant plente.
other barons of the house (of-)the king himself in great plenty

Quant li rois aproche de la forest. a mains que len ne
When the king approaches to the forest at less than one —
trairoit dun arc a .iij. fies. Si en uoit hors issir vne litiere
would-shoot from-a bow at three times So thence sees-he out come a litter
sor .ij. palefrois qui tost & soef le portent. li rois esgarde si
on two palfreys which quickly and gently it carry the king looks so

voit que la litiere vient a lui tout droit. Et quant ele apoche
sees that the litter comes to him all straight And when it approaches
si voit dedens .j. cheualier arme de toutes armes. ne mais
so sees-he inside a knight armed in all arms except only
que descu & de hiaume dont il na point. li cheualiers fu
that of-shield and of helm whereof he not-has any the knight was
naures de .ij. tronchons de lanches parmi le cors. si les i
wounded by two stumps of lances through the body so them there
auoit encore ambes .ij. a tous les fers. Et paroient parmi
had-he still both two with all the irons And they-showed through
les .ij. plois du hauberc tout outre en outre. Et parmi la
the two folds of-the hauberk all beyond in beyond And through the
teste estoit ferus dune espee. si que par desus la ventaille ne
head was-he struck with-a sword so that from above the ventail not
paroit pas la moitie. & tant com il en paroit tout estoit
showed at-all the half and as-much as it thereof showed all was
taint del sanc & enrumellie moult durement. Li cheualiers
stained with-the blood and rusted very hard The knight
fu grans & gens & bien taillies. mais son non ne noume
was tall and comely and well shaped but his name not names
pas li contes chi endroit. & neporquant cha en ariere sera
at-all the tale here in-place and nevertheless here in back will-be
bien seu comment il ot a non & comment il fu naures
well known how he had to name and how he was wounded
& pourquoi il porta si longement en ses plaies les fers &
and wherefore he bore so long in his wounds the irons and
les tronchons. Quant il encontre les cheualiers si demanda li
the stumps When he meets the knights so asked the
quex est li rois. & il troua asses qui li enseigna. Il fait
which is the king and he found enough who to-him showed He makes
arester la litiere si salue le roi. & li rois sareste moult
stop the litter so greets the king and the king himself-stops very

volentiers pour lui oir & lesgarde a grant merueille. Rois
willingly for him to-hear and him-looks-at in great marvel King
artus fait il diex te saut. comme le millor roi qui soit. en
Arthur says he God thee may-save as the best king who be in
tesmoig de toutes gens & li plus loiaus & li plus poisans.
witness of all people and the most loyal and the most powerful
Comme chelui qui conseilles les desconseillies & maintiens
As him who counselest the counseless and maintainest
secuers & aides. biax frere fait li rois diex vous benoie &
succors and aids fair brother says the king God you may-bless and
vous doinst sante. Car grant mestier en aues che mest
to-you may-give health For great need thereof have-you this to-me-is
auis. Sire fait li cheualiers. Ie vieng a vous por secours
opinion Lord says the knight I come to you for succor
& aide. com a chelui qui len dist que nus desconseillies
and aid as to him whom one says that any counseless
ne faut. Si vous pri que vous me conseillies por dieu.
not fails So you beg-I that you me counsel for God
En quel chose fait li rois me demandes vous secors. Ie vous
In what thing says the king me ask you succor I you
requier fait li cheualiers. que vous me fachies desferrer de
request says the knight that you me have unfastened from
ceste espee. & de ches tronchons qui chi mochient. Chertes
this sword and from these stumps which here me-kill Certainly
fait li rois moult volentiers. Il meismes iete les poins por
says the king very willingly He himself throws the hands for
sachier hors les tronchons. Et li cheualiers li crie. ha sire
to-pull out the stumps And the knight to-him cries ah lord
ore ne vous hastes mie si. Ie ne serai mie en teil maniere
now not yourself hasten at-all so I not shall-be at-all in such manner
desferres. Comment dont fait li rois. Sire fait il. il conuenra
unfastened How then says the king Lord says he it will-be-needful

que chil qui me desferra me iure sor sains que il me
that that-one who me will-unfasten to-me swear on saints that he me
vengera a son pooir de tous cheus qui diront quil ameront
will-avenge to his power on all those who will-say that-they will-love
plus chelui qui che me fist que moi. A cest mot sest li
more him who this to-me did than me At this word himself-is the
rois ariere trais & dist al cheualier. sire cheualiers chest
king back drawn and says to-the knight lord knight this-is
trop greueuse chose que vous aues demandee. Car tant puet
too grievous thing that you have asked For so-many can
auoir damis chil qui si vous a naure quil na cheualier
have of-friends that-one who so you has wounded that-there not-has knight
el monde ne .ij. ne .iij. qui chou puissent achieuer. Mais
in-the world nor two nor three who this could achieve But
se vous voles ie vous vengerai de cheli qui che vous fist. sil
if you wish I you shall-avenge on him who this to-you did if-he
est tex que iel doie ochire sans moi mesfaire. Et sil est
is such that I-him ought kill without myself misdoing And if-he is
mes hom. chaiens a asses cheualiers qui por conquere los
my man in-here has enough knights who for to-win praise
& pris emprendront le fais sor euls volentiers. De chelui
and prize will-undertake the burden upon them willingly Of him
qui che me fist fait li cheualiers ne me vengeres vous ia
who this to-me did says the knight not me will-avenge you ever
ne vous ne autres. Ie meismes men sui vengies. Car
nor you nor others I myself myself-thereof am avenged For
ie li trenchai la teste puis quil mot ainsi atourne.
I from-him cut the head after that-he me-had thus arrayed
En non dieu fait li rois. dont quit ie que vous en
In name (of-)God says the king then think I that you thereof
soies bien vengies. Ne de plus ne vous oseroie ie pas
be well avenged Nor of more not you would-dare I at-all

asseurer. Car ie cremeroie de faillir a mon couant. Ne ia
assure For I would-fear to fail at my covenant Nor ever
autres par mon los ne vous asseura de che. sire fait li
another by my counsel not you will-assure of this lord says the
cheualiers len mauoit dit que en vostre maison trouoit len
knight one me-had told that in your house found one
tous les secors & les aides. Mais ore mest il auis que
all the succors and the aids But now to-me-is it opinion that
ie i ai moult bien failli. neporquant ie ne me mouerai
I there have very well failed nevertheless I not myself shall-move
deuant que ie voie se diex me regardera. Car sil a en
before that I see if God me will-regard For if-there is in
vostre cort tant de proeche com len dist. Dont ne men
your court as-much of prowess as one says Then not myself-thence
irai ie pas sans garison. Il mest moult bel fait li rois
shall-go I at-all without cure It to-me-is very fair says the king
que vous soies en mon ostel tant com il vous plaira
that you be in my house as-long as it you will-please
& bel vous iert. Atant sen vait li cheualiers vers
and fair to-you will-be Thereupon himself-thence goes the knight toward
camaalot & vient as maisons le roi. Si se fait porter
camelot and comes to-the houses (of-)the king So himself makes carry
a ses escuiers en la sale en haut. & se fait coucier en
by his squires into the hall on high and himself makes lay in
la plus bele couce & en la plus riche quil i choisist.
the most fair couch and in the most rich that-he there chose
dont il en i ot asses. Ne a chelui tans ne fust nus
whereof there thereof there were enough Nor at that time not were any
serians de lostel si hardis qui contredesist a cheualier en
servant of the-house so bold who would-deny to knight in
lostel le roi. ne lentree ne lit ou il se couchast.
the-house (of-)the king either the-entry or bed where he himself might-lay

tant riches fust. Ainsi est li cheualiers malades herbergies.
so rich were-it Thus is the knight sick lodged
Et li rois sen vait en la forest si parolent asses del
And the king himself-thence goes into the forest so they-speak enough of-the
cheualier entre lui & ses compaignons. & dist chascuns que
knight between him and his companions and says each that
onques mais si fole requeste noirent faire a cheualier. &
ever more so foolish request not-heard-they make to knight and
toutes uois dist messires Gauuain que ia se dieu plaist de
all ways says my-lord Gawain that ever if God please from
lostel le roine sen ira descomseillies. Ie ne sai
the-house (of-)the king-not himself-thence will-go counseless I not know
fait li rois que il fera. Mais sachent tuit mi compaignon.
says the king what he will-do But may-know all my companions
que sil i auoit nul qui empreist si grant folie. iamais
that if-there there were any who undertook so great folly ever-more
a nul ior nauroit mamor. Car che nest pas chose par
on any day not-would-he-have my-love For this not-is at-all thing by
auenture. cuns cheualiers ne .ij. ne .iij. ne .xx. ne .xxx.
chance that-a knight nor two nor three nor twenty nor thirty
peussent a chief mener. Ne nous ne sauons ore porquoi chis
could to end bring Nor we not know now wherefore this
cheualiers demande si grant outrage. ou por le domage
knight asks so great outrage either for the harm
de ma maison ou por le preu. Ensi parloient entre le roi
of my house or for the profit Thus spoke between the king
& ses compaignons del cheualier.
and his companions of-the knight

Li rois fu en la forest toute ior. & archoia dusques vers
The king was in the forest all day and shot until toward
vespres & lors sen retorna. Et quant il vint hors de
vespers and then himself-thence returned And when he came out of

la forest tot vn sentier si esgarde sor destre & voit venir la
the forest all a path so looks on right and sees come the
route a la dame del lac. Si voit el premier chief deuant
company of the lady of-the lake So sees-he at-the first head before
.ij. garchons a pie qui .ij. soumiers tous blans cachoient.
two boys on foot who two packhorses all white drove
Desus lun des .ij. soumiers auoit tourse vn petit paueillon
Upon the-one of-the two packhorses was packed a little pavilion
legier. vn des plus riches & des plus biax que nus eust
light one of-the most rich and of-the most fair that anyone had
onques veu. Et desus lautre la robe au vallet dont il
ever seen And upon the-other the robe of-the youth wherein he
deuoit estre cheualiers. & vne autre ruebe a porter & vnes
was-to be knight and an other robe to wear and some
cauchies. Apres les .ij. soumiers venoient .ij. escuiers sor
hose After the two packhorses came two squires on
.ij. ronchis tous blans. si porte li vns vn escu tout blanc
two nags all white so carries the one a shield all white
comme nois. & li autres porte vn hiaume qui asses est
as snow and the other carries a helm which very is
cointes & biax. apres ches .ij. en vienent doi autre. dont
elegant and fair after these two thence come two others of-whom
li vns porte vne glaiue toute blanche. Et apres euls vienent
the one carries a lance all white And after them come
seriant & escuier a grant plente. Et les .iij. damoiseles
servants and squires in great plenty And the three damsels
apres. Et li cheualier dales eles qui tout sient sor blans
after And the knights beside them who all sit on white
cheuax. & cheuauchent tout chil de la route doi & doi
horses and ride all those of the company two and two
sor le chemin. Mais la dame vint toute daaraine entre li
on the road But the lady came all hindmost between her

& son vallet. si li aprent & enseigne comment il se
and her youth so to-him teaches and instructs how he himself
contendra a la court le roi artu. & as autres ov il
will-conduct at the court (of-)the king Arthur and at-the others where he
vendra. Et bien li commande si chier com il a samor
will-come And well to-him commands as dear as he has her-love
quil soit au diemenche sans nule essoine cheualiers. Car
that-he be on-the Sunday without any excuse knight For
ele le veut ensi. & sil nel estoit il i auroit trop grant
she it wishes thus and if-he not-it were it there would-have too great
damage & chil respont que ia delai ni aura quis.
harm and that-one answers that ever delay not-there will-have sought
Car a son voeil le seroit il ia. Tant ont il cheuauchie
For at his wish it would-be he already So-long have they ridden
que la route aproche tout en parlant del roi. Et li rois
that the company approaches all in speaking of-the king And the king
et toute la soie route les orent esgarde a grant merueille.
and all the his company them had looked-at at great marvel
pour che que ensi estoient tout uestus de blanches robes.
for this that thus were-they all clad in white robes
& seoient sour blans cheuaux. si les monstra li rois a
and sat on white horses so them showed the king to
monseignor gauuain & a monsignor ywain. Et dist que
my-lord Gawain and to my-lord Yvain And said that
onques mais vne route de gent nauoit veu cheuauchier si
ever more a company of people not-had-he seen ride so
couenablement. Les noueles vienent a la dame que chest li
fittingly The news come to the lady that this-is the
rois. & ele croist saleure si trespasse toute la route entre
king and she increases her-pace so passes all the company between
li & le vallet. si est venue deuant le roi qui latendoit.
her and the youth so is come before the king who her-awaited

Si tost com il la vit cheuauchier si cointement & venir
So soon as he her saw ride so elegantly and come
& haster. Car bien pensoit quele voloit parler a lui.
and hasten For well he-thought that-she wished to-speak to him

The Lady of the Lake at Court

XXXV

Returning at evening Arthur meets the Lady of the Lake's white company. She greets him as the best of earthly kings and asks a gift: that he knight her youth in the arms and robes he has brought. Arthur says he knights no one but in his own robes and arms; she answers that the youth can be knighted in no others, and Yvain urges the king not to refuse so fair a youth. She will tell no more than her name. Parting from Lancelot she tells him he is a king's son, that Lionel and Bors are his cousins, gives him a ring that uncovers enchantments, and bids him seek adventures.

La dame si fu atornee moult richement. Car ele fu uestue
The lady so was arrayed very richly For she was clad
dun blanc samit cote & mantel a vne pene dermine. &
in-a white samite coat and mantle with a fur of-ermine and
sist sour vn petit palefroi soef amblant qui estoit si biaus
sat on a little palfrey gently ambling which was as fair
& si bien taillies com len le poroit miex deuiser. Moult
and as well shaped as one it could best devise Very
fu li palefrois riches & biax. si fu li frains de fin argent
was the palfrey rich and fair so was the bridle of fine silver
blanc esmere & li poitrax autresi. & li estrier & la sele
white refined and the breast-strap likewise and the stirrups and the saddle
estoient diuoire entaillie moult soutilment a ymages menues
were of-ivory carved very subtly with images small
de dames & de cheualiers. Et la sambue estoit toute blanche
of ladies and of knights And the saddlecloth was all white

& trainans dusques vers terre. & del samit meisme dont
and trailing as-far toward ground and of-the samite same wherewith
la dame estoit vestue. Ainsinc appareillie de cors & de
the lady was clad Thus arrayed in body and in
palefroi est la dame deuant le roi venue. Et dales li fu li
palfrey is the lady before the king come And beside her was the
valles. & fu vestus dun blanket breton qui moult fu bons.
youth and was clad in-a blanket Breton which very was good
si fu biaus a merueilles & bien taillies & sist desus vn
so was-he fair to marvels and well shaped and sat upon a
chaceor fort & isnel qui tost le porte. La dame abat sa
hunter strong and swift which quickly him carries The lady lowers her
guimple de deuant sa bouche & salue le roi. & non pas
wimple from before her mouth and greets the king and not at-all
si tost quil nel eust anchois salues que ele lui. Sire dist
so soon that-he not-her had rather greeted than she him Lord says
ele diex vous beneie. comme le millor roi des terriens rois.
she God you may-bless as the best king of-the earthly kings
Artus fait ele ie sui a vous uenue de moult loing. Et si
Arthur says she I am to you come from very far And so
vous vieng .j. don requerre. lequel vous ne me deues pas
to-you come-I a gift to-request which you not to-me ought at-all
escondire. Car vous ni poes auoir damage ne honte ne
refuse For you not-there can have harm nor shame nor
mal. Ne ia ne vous coustera del vostre rien. Damoisele
ill Nor ever not to-you will-cost-it of-the yours anything Damsel
fait li rois sil me coustoit del mien asses. Mais que honte
says the king if-it me cost of-the mine much Provided that shame
ni eusse ne damage de mes amis si lauries vous.
not-there I-had nor harm of my friends so it-would-have you
Mais noumes le don seurement. Car li dons seroit moult
But name the gift surely For the gift would-be very

grans que ie vous refuseroie. Sire fait ele grant merchis. Or
great that I to-you would-refuse Lord says she great thanks Now
vous requier ie dont que vous chest mien vallet qui chi est
you request I then that you this my youth who here is
me faites cheualier. de teus armes & de teil harnois com
for-me make knight with such arms and with such harness as
il a. & quant il le vous requerra. Damoisele fait li rois
he has and when he it of-you will-request Damsel says the king
bien soies vous venue a moi. Et grant merchis que vous
well be you come to me And great thanks that you
le maues amene. Car moult est biax li valles. & iel
him to-me-have brought For very is fair the youth and I-him
ferai moult volentiers cheualier de quel eure quil vaudra.
shall-make very willingly knight at what hour that-he will-wish
Mais vous meustes en couent que vous ne me demanderies
But you to-me-had in covenant that you not of-me would-ask
don ou ie eusse damage ne honte ne mal. Mais en che
gift where I had harm nor shame nor ill But in this
que vous me requerres auroie ie honte se iel faisoie. Car
that you of-me request would-have I shame if I-it did For
ie nai pas a coustume que ie fache nului cheualier se
I not-have at-all in custom that I make anyone knight except
de mes robes non. & de mes armes. Mais laissies moi le
with my robes not and with my arms But leave me the
vallet & iel ferai cheualier moult volentiers. Car iou i
youth and I-him shall-make knight very willingly For I there
meterai chou que a moi en apartient. che sont les armes
shall-put this which to me thereof belongs these are the arms
& le harnois & la colee. Et diex i meche le sorplus.
and the harness and the accolade And God there may-put the surplus
cest la proeche & les boines teches qui doiuent estre en
that-is the prowess and the good qualities which ought be in

cheualier. Sire fait ele il puet bien estre que vous naues
knight Lord says she it can well be that you not-have
pas en coustume a faire cheualier se del vostre non.
at-all in custom to make knight except of-the yours not
Car nen aues encore este requiers par auenture. Mais
For not-thereof have-you yet been requested by chance But
se len vous en requiert & vous le faites. vous ni
if one you thereof requests and you it do you not-there
aues nule honte che mest auis. Et bien sachies que chis
have any shame this to-me-is opinion And well know that this
valles ne puet estre cheualiers. ne ne doit. dautres armes ne
youth not can be knight nor not ought with-other arms nor
dautres robes que de cheles qui chi sont. Et se vous voles
with-other robes than with those which here are And if you wish
vous le feres cheualier. & se vous nel voles faire si
you him will-make knight and if you not-it wish to-do so
me porcacherai aillors. Et anchois le feroie ie meismes
myself shall-I-provide elsewhere And rather him would-make I myself
cheualier quil ne le fust. Sire fait mesire ywains nel
knight than-he — it were Lord says my-lord Yvain not-him
refuses ia a faire cheualier si com la dame vous en prie.
refuse ever to make knight so as the lady you thereof begs
puis quele le veut. Et se vous i deuies vn poi mesfaire
since that-she it wishes And if you there were-to a little misdo
nel deues vous pas laissier aler si biau vallet comme
not-him ought you at-all let go so fair youth as
chist est. Car ie ne vi onques mais si bel dont moi
this-one is For I not saw ever more so fair whereof to-me
souiegne. Lors otroie li rois a la dame sa volente. & ele
may-remember Then grants the king to the lady her will and she
len merchie moult durement. si baille al vallet les .ij.
him-thereof thanks very hard so hands to-the youth the two

soumiers. & .ij. des plus biax palefrois del monde & sont
packhorses and two of-the most fair palfreys of-the world and are
tout blanc. Et si li baille .iiij. escuiers pour lui seruir.
all white And so to-him hands four squires for him to-serve
Atant prinst la dame congie del roi. Mais il li prie moult
Thereupon took the lady leave of-the king But he her begs much
& requiert de remanoir. Et ele dist que che ne puet estre en
and requests to remain And she says that this not can be in
nule fin. Dame fait li rois puis que remanoir ne voles dont
any end Lady says the king since that to-remain not you-wish whereof
moult men poise. si me dites qui vous estes & comment
much to-me-thereof grieves so to-me tell who you are and how
vous aues non. Car iel sauroie moult volentiers. Sire fait ele
you have name For I-it would-know very willingly Lord says she
a si preudomme com vous estes ne doi ie pas mon non
to so worthy-man as you are not ought I at-all my name
cheler. & ie le vous dirai. len mapele la dame del lac. De
conceal and I it to-you shall-tell one me-calls the lady of-the lake At
chest non se merueille moult li rois Car onques mais de
this name himself marvels much the king For ever more of
li nauoit oi parler. Atant sen part la dame del
her not-had-he heard speak Thereupon herself-thence parts the lady from-the
roi. Et li valles le conuoie pres dune archie. & ele li dist.
king And the youth her escorts near of-a bowshot and she to-him says
Biax fiex de roi vous en ires. & Ie voeil que vous
Fair son of king you thence will-go and I wish that you
sachies que vous nestes pas mes fiex. Ains fustes fiex a vn
know that you not-are at-all my son Rather were-you son to one
des plus preudommes del monde & des millors cheualiers.
of-the most worthy-men of-the world and of-the best knights
& a vne des plus beles dames & des millors qui onques
and to one of-the most fair ladies and of-the best who ever

fust. Mais vous ne saures ore pas ne del peire ne de
was But you not will-know now at-all either of-the father or of
la meire la verite. & si le saureis vous prochainement. Et
the mother the truth and so it will-know you soon And
gardes que vous soies de cuer autresi biax com vous estes
take-care that you be of heart as fair as you are
de cors & dautres menbres. Car de la biaute aues vous
of body and of-other limbs For of the beauty have you
tant com diex en poroit mettre en vn enfant. Si sera
as-much as God thereof could put in a child So will-it-be
moult grant damage se la proeche ne se prent a la biaute.
very great harm if the prowess not itself takes to the beauty
Et gardes que vous requerres le roi demain au soir
And take-care that you request the king tomorrow at-the evening
quil vous fache cheualier. et quant vous seres cheualiers ne
that-be you make knight and when you will-be knight not
gisies ia puis nule nuit en sa maison. Mais ales par tout
lie ever after any night in his house But go through all
les pais querant les auentures & les merueilles. Car ensi
the countries seeking the adventures and the marvels For thus
pores conquere los & pris. Ne ia ne vous arrestes en .j.
can-you win praise and prize Nor ever not yourself stop in one
lieu fors le mains que vous porres. Mais gardes que vous
place except the least that you can But take-care that you
fachies tant que ia nus nen prengne a faire cheualerie.
do so-much that ever anyone not-thereof take-up to do chivalry
la ou vous le laisseres. Et se li rois vous demande qui
there where you it will-leave And if the king you asks who
vous estes. ne comment vous aueis non ne qui ie sui. dites
you are or how you have name or who I am say
outreement que vous nel saues pas. fors tant cune dame
utterly that you not-it know at-all except so-much that-a lady

sui qui vous nouri. & ie lai autresi a vos escuiers bien
am-I who you nurtured and I it-have likewise to your squires well
desfendu. Mais au partir vous dirai ie tant que ie voeil
forbidden But at-the parting to-you shall-tell I so-much that I wish
que vous sachies que ie ne vous ai pas fait faire vilounie.
that you know that I not you have at-all made do baseness
de che que ie vous faisoie seruir a ches .ij. fiex de roi qui
in this that I you made serve to these two sons of king who
ont este auoeques vous. Car mains ientiex hom daus nestes
have been with you For less noble man than-them not-are
vous pas. Et vostre cousin germain sont il andui. & por
you at-all And your cousins german are they both and for
chou que iai en vous mise toute lamor qui puet venir de
this that I-have in you put all the-love which can come from
noureture. les retenrai iou o moi tant com ie les porai
nurture them shall-keep I with me as-long as I them shall-be-able
retenir por ramenbrance de vous. Et quant il couendra que
keep for remembrance of you And when it will-be-needful that
lyoniax soit cheualiers. si me remandra bohors.
Lionel be knight so to-me will-remain Bors

Quant lancelos oi que li doi enfant sont si cousin si est
When Lancelot heard that the two children are his cousins so is-he
a merueilles lie. & dist a la dame Com vous aueis ore bien
to marvels glad and says to the lady How you have now well
fait de che que vous le maues dit. Car moult en sui ore
done in this that you it to-me-have said For much thereof am-I now
plus a aise. Et por vostre grant comfort & por ma ioie. Lors
more at ease And for your great comfort and for my joy Then
trait la dame de son doit vn anelet. sel met lenfant en
draws the lady from her finger a little-ring so-it puts to-the-child on
son doit & li dist quil a tel forche quil descueure tous
his finger and to-him says that-it has such force that-it uncovers all

encantemens & fait veoir. Atant le commande la dame a
enchantments and makes see Thereupon him commends the lady to
dieu si le baise moult doucement. & au partir li dist.
God so him kisses very sweetly and at-the parting to-him says
biax fiex de roi itant vous enseignerai au departir. Que
fair son of king so-much you shall-I-teach at-the departing That
quant plus aures achieue auentures felenesses & perilleuses.
when more you-will-have achieved adventures cruel and perilous
plus seurement emprenes les autres a achieuer. Car la ou
more surely undertake the others to achieve For there where
vous laires a achieuer les auentures par proeches que diex
you will-leave to achieve the adventures by prowesses that God
a mises en cheualier. Il nest pas encore nes qui menra
has put in knight He not-is at-all yet born who will-bring
a chief cheles que vous aures laissies. Asses vous deisse
to end those that you will-have left Enough to-you I-would-say
mais ie ne puis. Car trop mest li cuers serres. & la parole
but I not can For too to-me-is the heart pressed and the word
me faut. Mais ore vous en ales. boins & biax ientiex &
to-me fails But now yourself thence go good and fair noble and
gratiex. desires de toutes gens & ames sor tous cheualiers
gracious desired by all people and loved above all knights
de toutes dames. & itex seres vous ie le sai bien. Atant li
by all ladies and such will-be you I it know well Thereupon him
baise la bouche & la fache & les .ij. iex moult durement.
kisses the mouth and the face and the two eyes very hard
si en est tornee teil duel faisant que on nen puet parole
so thence is turned such grief making that one not-thereof can word
traire. Et li enfes en a pitie moult grant. si len
draw And the child thereof has pity very great so to-him-thereof
sont les larmes venues as iex. Et il court maintenant a
are the tears come to-the eyes And he runs at-once to

ses .ij. cousins si baise lyonel auant & puis bohort. Et dist
his two cousins so kisses Lionel before and then Bors And says
a lyonel. Lyonel lyonel ne soies pas esbahis ne desesperes se
to Lionel Lionel Lionel not be at-all amazed nor despairing if
dans claudas a vostre terre en baillie. Car vous aures plus
lord Claudas has your land in keeping For you will-have more
damis que vous ne quidies au recourer. Apres baise tous
of-friends than you — think at-the recovering After kisses-he all
les autres vn & vn. Et lors sen part tous les galos. si
the others one and one And then himself-thence parts all the gallops so
rataint le roi & sa compaignie qui laloient atendant por lui
overtakes the king and his company who him-went awaiting for him
veoir. Et li rois le prent par le menton si le voit si bel
to-see And the king him takes by the chin so him sees so fair
& si bien fait de toutes fachons. que riens ni faut a
and so well made in all fashions that anything not-there lacks to
amender. & messires ywain li dist. sire esgardes le bien.
amend and my-lord Yvain to-him says lord look-at him well
Car ie ne quit pas que onques mais veissies si bele figure
For I not think at-all that ever more you-saw so fair figure
en nul vallet. Diex ne fu mie envers lui auers sil li a
in any youth God not was at-all toward him miserly if-he to-him has
autretant dounees de boines teches comme il a de biaute.
as-many given of good qualities as he has of beauty

The Youth Before the Queen

XXXVI

Arthur commends the youth to Yvain, and the town crowds to see him. On the Saturday Lancelot asks to be knighted the next day without more waiting. The queen comes to see him and, taking his hand, asks his name and land; he is so lost in looking at her that he cannot answer, and she leaves him, suspecting why. Passing through the chamber where the wounded knight lies, Lancelot asks why the knights stop their noses, and learns that the knight waits there for God to send him succor.

Tant en dient entre monsigneur ywain & les autres.
So-much thereof say between my-lord Yvain and the others
que li valles en est tous esbahis. & li rois le voit
that the youth thereof is all amazed and the king it sees
moult bien si ne li voet riens enquerre de son couine.
very well so not of-him wishes anything inquire of his condition
Ains le laisse iusca vne autre fois. puis dist a monsignor
Rather it leaves until an other time then says to my-lord
ywain. ywain ie le vous commant le vallet. Car nus ne
Yvain Yvain I him to-you commend the youth For anyone not
li sauroit enseignier miex de vous comment il se doit
him could teach better than you how he himself ought
contenir. Lors li baille par le main. & mesire ywain
conduct Then to-him hands-him by the hand and my-lord Yvain
len merchie moult. Atant sont a camaalot venu. si
him-thereof thanks much Thereupon are-they to camelot come so
est la presse si grans entor le vallet por lui veoir. que
is the press so great around the youth for him to-see that
a paines i puet len son pie torner. Il est deschendus a
with pains there can one his foot turn He is dismounted at
losteil monsignor ywain & il & toute sa maisnie. Et tout
the-house (of-)my-lord Yvain and he and all his household And all

chil qui le veoient dient que onques mais ne virent si biau
those who him saw say that ever more not they-saw so fair
vallet. Quant vint a lendemain au samedi. li valles vint
youth When came-it to the-next-day on-the Saturday the youth came
a monsignor ywain si li dist. Sire dites a monsignor
to my-lord Yvain so to-him says Lord say to my-lord
le roi quil me fache cheualier issi com il le creanta a
the king that-he me make knight so as he it promised to
madame. Car ie le voeil estre demain sans plus atendre.
my-lady For I it wish to-be tomorrow without more to-wait
Comment fait mesire ywains biax dous amis. dont ne vous
How says my-lord Yvain fair sweet friend then not to-you
uenist il miex encore atendre. & aprendre tant des
would-come it better still to-wait and to-learn so-much of-the
armes que vous en seusies. Sire fait li valles ie ne serai
arms that you thereof knew Lord says the youth I not shall-be
ore mon voeil plus escuiers. Et ie vous pri que vous dies
now by-my wish more squire And I you beg that you say
a monsignor le roi quil me fache demain cheualier sans
to my-lord the king that-he me make tomorrow knight without
plus atendre. Certes fait il moult volentiers. Messires ywains
more to-wait Certainly says he very willingly My-lord Yvain
sen vait au roi si li dist. Sire vostre valles vous
himself-thence goes to-the king so to-him says Lord your youth to-you
mande par moi que vous le fachies cheualier. liquels valles
sends by me that you him make knight which youth
fait li rois. Sire fait il li valles qui ier soir vous fu
says the king Lord says he the youth who yester evening to-you was
baillies que vous me commandastes a garder. A ces paroles
handed whom you to-me commanded to keep At these words
vint la roine parmi la sale & dales lui mesire gauuains
came the queen through the hall and beside her my-lord Gawain

le nies le roi. Et li rois regarde monsignor yuuain si
the nephew (of-)the king And the king looks-at my-lord Yvain so
li dist. Dites vous fait li rois del vallet que la dame
to-him says Say you says the king of-the youth whom the lady
me bailla vestu de la robe blanche. De chelui fait il di ie
to-me handed clad in the robe white Of that-one says he say I
por voir. Comment fait li rois si veut ia estre cheualiers.
for truth How says the king so wishes already to-be knight
voire fait mesire ywains demain el ior. Oieis gauuain fait
truly says my-lord Yvain tomorrow in-the day Hear Gawain says
li rois de nostre vallet der soir qui veut ia estre
the king of our youth of-yester evening who wishes already to-be
cheualiers. Chertes fait mesire Gauuain il a grant droit. &
knight Certainly says my-lord Gawain he has great right and
ie quit que cheualerie i sera moult bien asise. Car moult
I think that chivalry there will-be very well set For very
est biax. & moult samble bien estre de haute gent. Qui
is-he fair and much seems well to-be of high people Who
est fait la roine chis valles. qui dame. fait mesire ywains
is says the queen this youth who lady says my-lord Yvain
chest tous li plus biaus valles que vous onques veissies
this-is all the most fair youth that you ever saw
de vos iex. Lors li conte comment il auoit este amenes
with your eyes Then to-her tells-he how he had been brought
au roi le iour deuant & com la dame estoit venue
to-the king the day before and how the lady was come
cointement qui lamena. Comment fait la roine. ier soir
elegantly who him-brought How says the queen yester evening
vint a court & demain veut estre cheualiers. voire dame
came-he to court and tomorrow wishes-he to-be knight truly lady
fait mesire ywains car il en a trop grant talent. Ore
says my-lord Yvain for he thereof has too great desire Now

le verroie fait la roine moult volentiers Et li rois dist
him would-see-I says the queen very willingly And the king says
en non dieu vous le verres ia. comme le plus bel &
in name (of-)God you him will-see now as the most fair and
le miex taillie que vous onques veissies au mien espoir.
the best shaped that you ever saw to-the my belief
Lors dist a monsignor ywain quil laille querre. Et si le
Then says to my-lord Yvain that-he him-go seek And so him
faites si richement atorner com vous saues que mestiers est.
make as richly array as you know that need is
& si quit bien quil a asses de quoi. Lors conte li rois
and so think-I well that-he has enough of what Then tells the king
meismes a la royne comment la dame del lac li auoit
himself to the queen how the lady of-the lake of-him had
requis quil nel feist cheualier se de ses armes non &
requested that-he not-him made knight except with her arms not and
de ses robes. & que ele estoit apelee la dame del lac. Et
with her robes and that she was called the lady of-the lake And
la roine sen merueille moult. & trop li tarde quele
the queen herself-thereof marvels much and too to-her it-is-slow that-she
le voie. Mesire ywains vait au vallet sel fait vestir &
him see My-lord Yvain goes to-the youth so-him makes dress and
achesmer au miex quil puet. Et quant il est tex que il
adorn at-the best that-he can And when he is such that he
ni voit que amender si lenmaine a cort sor son cheual
not-there sees what to-amend so him-leads to court on his horse
meismes qui moult iert biax. Mais il ne lamena pas en
own which very was fair But he not him-brought at-all in
repost. Car tant auoit de pueple enuiron que toute en
hiding For so-much had-it of people around that all thereof
estoit la rue plaine. & la nouele est espandue parmi la uile
was the street full and the news is spread through the town

que li biax valles qui ier soir vint sera cheualiers demain.
that the fair youth who yester evening came will-be knight tomorrow
& quil vient a cort vestus de robe a cheualier. lors salent
and that-he comes to court clad in robe of knight then go
as fenestres cil de la vile hommes & femes. Et dient la
to-the windows those of the town men and women And say there
ou il le voient passer. que onques si bel cheualier vallet
where they him see pass that ever so fair knight youth
ne virent mais. Il est venus a la court si descent de son
not saw-they more He is come to the court so dismounts from his
cheual. Et la nouele de lui sespart parmi la sale & par
horse And the news of him itself-spreads through the hall and through
les cambres. si salent hors cheualiers & dames & damoiseles.
the chambers so go out knights and ladies and damsels
Et meismes li rois & la roine vont as fenestres. Quant
And even the king and the queen go to-the windows When
li valles est deschendus. si le prent par le main mesire
the youth is dismounted so him takes by the hand my-lord
ywain & lenmaine par la main en la sale amont.
Yvain and him-leads by the hand into the hall up

Li rois vient encontre & la roine. si le prenent andoi
The king comes to-meet and the queen so him take both
par les .ij. mains & sen vont asseoir en vne couche.
by the two hands and themselves-thence go sit on a couch
Et li valles sasiet deuant els sor lerbe vert dont la
And the youth himself-sits before them on the-grass green wherewith the
sale estoit ionchie. Et li rois lesgarde moult volentiers. sil
hall was strewn And the king him-looks-at very willingly if-he
li auoit samblei biax en son venir noiens estoit enuers la
to-him had seemed fair in his coming nothing was toward the
biaute quil auoit ore. Si li est auis quil soit creus &
beauty that-he had now So to-him is opinion that-he be grown and

enbarnis a grant plente. Et la roine prie que preudomme
filled-out in great plenty And the queen begs that worthy-man
le fache diex. Car grant plente de biaute li a doune.
him may-make God For great plenty of beauty to-him has given
La roine regarde le vallet moult doucement. Et il li toutes
The queen looks-at the youth very sweetly And he her all
les fois quil puet vers li mener ses iex couertement. Si
the times that-he can toward her lead his eyes covertly So
se merueille moult dont si grans biautes puet venir com
himself marvels much whence so great beauty can come as
il voit en lui paroir. ne de la biaute sa dame del lac.
he sees in her appear nor of the beauty (of-)his lady of-the lake
ne de nule quil onques veist mais. ne prise il rien enuers
nor of any that-he ever saw more not prizes he anything toward
chestui. & il nauoit mie tort se il ne prisoit enuers la
this-one and he not-had at-all wrong if he not prized toward the
roine nule autre dame. Car che fu la dame des dames
queen any other lady For this was the lady of-the ladies
& la fontaine de biaute. Mais sil seust la grant valor
and the fountain of beauty But if-he knew the great worth
qui en li estoit encore lesgardast il plus volentiers. Car
which in her was yet her-would-look-at he more willingly For
nule nestoit ne poure ne riche de sa ualor. Ele demande
none not-was either poor or rich of her worth She asks
a monsignor ywain comment chis valles a a non. & il
to my-lord Yvain how this youth has to name and he
respont quil ne seit. Et saues vous fait ele qui fiex il est.
answers that-he not knows And know you says she whose son he is
ne dont il est neis. Dame fait il naie. fors tant que ie sai
or whence he is born Lady says he no except so-much that I know
bien quil est del pais de gaule. Car moult en parole
well that-he is of-the country of gaul For very thereof speaks-he

droit la parole. Lors le prent la roine par le main. si li
right the word Then him takes the queen by the hand so of-him
demande dont il est. Et quant il le senti si tressaut tout
asks whence he is And when he it felt so starts all
autresi com sil sesueillast. & tant pense il a li durement
just as if-he himself-awoke and so-much thinks he of her hard
quil ne seit quele li a dit. Et ele aperchoit quil est
that-he not knows what-she to-him has said And she perceives that-he is
moult esbahis. si li demande autre fois. Dites moi fait ele
very amazed so of-him asks other time Tell me says she
dont vous estes. & il le regarde moult simplement. si li
whence you are and he her looks-at very simply so to-her
dist en sospirant quil ne seit dont. Et ele li redemande
says in sighing that-he not knows whence And she of-him asks-again
comment il a a non & il respont que il ne seit comment.
how he has to name and he answers that he not knows how

Maintenant aperchoit bien la roine quil est esbahis &
Now perceives well the queen that-he is amazed and
trespenses. Mais ele nose pas quidier que che soit por li.
lost-in-thought But she not-dares at-all think that this be for her
& neporquant ele le soupechoune vn poi. si en laisse la
and nevertheless she it suspects a little so thereof leaves the
parole ester atant. Et por chou quele nel veut en grignor
word stand thereupon And for this that-she not-him wishes in greater
folie mettre ele se lieue de la plache. Et dist por che
folly to-put she herself raises from the place And says for this
quele ne veut que nus i pense a vilounie & que nus
that-she not wishes that anyone there think of baseness and that anyone
aperchoiue de che dont ele soupechounoit que chis valles ne
perceive of this whereof she suspected that this youth not
li samble pas estre senes tres bien. Et quels que il soit
to-her seems at-all to-be sensible very well And whatever that he be

ou sages ou fols il a este maluaisement enseignies. Dame
either wise or foolish he has been badly taught Lady
fait mesire ywains entre moi & vous ne sauons pas comment
says my-lord Yvain between me and you not know-we at-all how
il est. & par auenture desfendu li est quil ne nous die
he is and by chance forbidden to-him is that-he not to-us tell
son non ne qui il est. Et ele dist que bien puet estre. Mais
his name nor who he is And she says that well can-it be But
che disoit ele si bas que li valles ne loi pas. La roine
this said she so low that the youth not it-heard at-all The queen
vient en ses cambres. & quant vient a eure de vespres
comes into her chambers and when comes-it to hour of vespers
mesire ywains i mena le valles par la main. Au reuenir
my-lord Yvain there led the youth by the hand At-the returning
des uespres alerent li rois & la roine & li autre cheualier
from-the vespers went the king and the queen and the other knights
par deriere la sale en .j. moult biau iardin sor la riuiere qui
by behind the hall into a very fair garden on the river which
as maisons le roi ioignoit. & mesires ywains i mena
to-the houses (of-)the king adjoined and my-lord Yvain there led
le vallet autresi. Et apres li venoient moult grant route
the youth likewise And after him came very great company
dautres valles qui nouel cheualier deuoient estre lendemain.
of-other youths who new knights were-to be the-next-day
Quant il vindrent del iardin si monterent en la sale par
When they came from-the garden so mounted into the hall by
vns degres sor la riuiere. si les conuint a passer parmi la
some steps on the river so them it-behooved to pass through the
cambre ou li cheualiers gisoit qui estoit enferres des .ij.
chamber where the knight lay who was ironed with-the two
tronchons & de lespee. Et ses plaies puoient si durement
stumps and with the-sword And his wounds stank so hard

que li cheualier estoupoient lor neis de lor mantiax. &
that the knights stopped their noses with their mantles and
senfuioient grans cors outre. Li valles demande a monsignor
themselves-fled great courses beyond The youth asks to my-lord
ywain porquoi il estoupoient si lor neis. biax amis fait il
Yvain wherefore they stopped so their noses fair friend says he
dun cheualier naure qui chaiens gist. Sire fait li valles par
for-a knight wounded who in-here lies Lord says the youth by
quel raison gist il dont chaiens. dont ne fust il miex la
what reason lies he then in-here then not were it better there
desous en vn ostel. Oil voir fait mesire ywains. Mais il sest
below in a lodging Yes truly says my-lord Yvain But he himself-is
arestes chaiens pour secors auoir se diex li veut enuoier.
stopped in-here for succor to-have if God to-him wishes to-send

The Wounded Knight Unfastened

XXXVII

Yvain tells Lancelot the covenant, which no knight of the court will take on. That night Lancelot keeps his vigil; in the morning the king gives the new knights the accolade, meaning to gird their swords after mass. After mass Lancelot leaves Yvain, goes alone to the wounded knight, swears the oath at a window, and draws out the sword and the stumps. Yvain, the king, and the queen all lament that so fair a youth has undertaken what will kill him, and in the grief the king forgets to gird his sword.

Lors li conte comment il couenoit a chelui qui le
Then to-him tells-he how it behooved to him who him
desferroit iurer sor sains quil len vengeroit. & quele
would-unfasten to-swear on saints that-he him-thereof would-avenge and what
la venianche deuoit estre. sire fait li valles ie le verroie
the vengeance was-to be lord says the youth I him would-see
volentiers sil vous plaisoit. & vous le verres fait mesire
willingly if-it you pleased and you him will-see says my-lord
ywains ore en uenes. Messires ywains lenmaine iuscal
Yvain now thence come My-lord Yvain him-leads up-to-the
cheualier & li valles li demande. sire cheualiers qui vous
knight and the youth of-him asks lord knight who you
naura si durement. freire fait il vns cheualiers que iou ochis.
wounded so hard brother says he a knight whom I killed
Et porquoi ne vous faites vous desferrer fait li valles. por
And wherefore not yourself make you unfasten says the youth for
che fait il que ie ne truis nul si hardi cheualier qui mosast
this says he that I not find any so bold knight who me-dared
enprendre a desfendre. porquoi dieu merchi fait li valles. En
undertake to defend wherefore God mercy says the youth In
non dieu ie vous desferrai orendroit se vous voles. se moult
name (of-)God I you shall-unfasten right-now if you wish if very

grant forche ne couient a ches tronchons esrachier hors. Ie
great force not is-needed to these stumps to-tear out I
vauroie ore fait li cheualiers que vous meusies desferre par le
would-wish now says the knight that you me-had unfastened by the
couent qui i est. quex est li couens fait li valles. Il est fait
covenant which there is what is the covenant says the youth It is says
messires ywains que par auenture il ni a el monde .ij.
my-lord Yvain that by chance it not-there has in-the world two
cheualiers ne .iij. qui lachieuassent. non .xx. lors li deuise
knights nor three who it-could-achieve not twenty then to-him describes-he
les couenenches de chief en chief & li valles commenche
the covenants from end to end and the youth begins
a penser vn petit. & mesire ywains qui moult estoit sages
to think a little and my-lord Yvain who very was wise
le prent par le main. venes ent fait il ne vous caut
him takes by the hand come thence says he not to-you matters-it
encore de penser a si grant chose. porquoi dous sires fait li
yet to think of so great thing wherefore sweet lord says the
valles. por che fait il que chaiens a des plus preudommes
youth for this says he that in-here are of-the most worthy-men
del monde qui ne sen voeillent entremetre. enteme
of-the world who not themselves-thereof wish to-meddle much-less
vous qui encore nestes pas cheualier. Comment fait li
you who yet not-are at-all knight How says the
cheualiers naures si nest encore mie cheualiers. nenil voir
knight wounded so not-is-he yet at-all knight no truly
fait mesire ywain. Mais il le sera le matin & si en
says my-lord Yvain But he it will-be the morning and so thereof
a il ia vestu la robe si com vous poes veoir.
has he already put-on the robe so as you can see

Quant li valles oit quil nest pas encore cheualiers. si
When the youth hears that-he not-is at-all yet knight so
nose plus mot souner. fors tant quil commande le
not-dares-he more word sound except so-much that-he commends the
cheualier naure a dieu. & chil dist que diex le fache
knight wounded to God and that-one says that God him may-make
preudomme. Atant lenmaine mesires ywains en la sale ou
worthy-man Thereupon him-leads my-lord Yvain into the hall where
les tables sont mises & les napes desus. si assient al
the tables are set and the cloths upon so sit-they to-the
mangier. apres mangier mena mesire ywains le vallet a son
eating after eating led my-lord Yvain the youth to his
ostel. & quant il anuita si le mena a vn moustier ou
lodging and when it grew-night so him led to a minster where
il veilla toute nuit iuscal ior. onques ne le laissa de toute
he watched all night until-the day ever not him let-be in all
la nuit dormir. a lendemain le mena a lostel sel fist
the night sleep on the-next-day him led-he to the-lodging so-him made
dormir tant que vint a la grant messe. & lors le mena
sleep until that it-came to the great mass and then him led-he
al moustier auoec le roi. Car li rois as grans festes
to-the minster with the king For the king at-the great feasts
ooit tous iors messe al plus haut moustier & al plus
heard all days mass at-the most high minster and at-the most
riche de la vile ou il estoit. & la grant messe ooit
rich of the town where he was and the great mass heard-he
tous iors. Quant il durent al moustier aler si firent
all days When they were-to to-the minster go so made-they
aporter les armes a tous cheus qui cheualier deuoient estre.
bring the arms to all those who knight were-to be
& sarmerent si comme a chelui tans estoit coustume.
and themselves-armed so as at that time was custom

& lors douna li rois les colees. Mais les espees ne lor
and then gave the king the accolades But the swords not to-them
chaint pas deuant quil reuenissent del moustier. Quant
girded-he at-all before that-they returned from-the minster When
les colees orent eues si alerent al moustier & oirent
the accolades they-had had so went-they to-the minster and heard
messe tout arme si comme a chelui tans estoit coustume.
mass all armed so as at that time was custom
& ensi le faisoient. & si tost com la messe fu dite & il
and thus it did-they and so soon as the mass was said and they
vindrent del moustier. li valles se part de monsignor
came from-the minster the youth himself parts from my-lord
yewain & sen vint en la salle en haut & vait au
Yvain and himself-thence came into the hall on high and goes to-the
cheualier naure. si li dist que ore le desferreroit il se
knight wounded so to-him says that now him would-unfasten he if
il voloit. chertes fait li cheualiers che mest moult bel par
he wished certainly says the knight this to-me-is very fair by
les couenans qui i sont. si li redeuise & chil dist
the covenants which there are so to-him describes-again and that-one says
quil est tous appareillies de iurer. lors se traist vers vne
that-he is all ready to swear then himself draws toward a
fenestre. & tent sa main vers .j. moustier quil voit si
window and holds-out his hand toward a minster that-he sees so
iure uoiant les escuiers au cheualier. quil a son pooir le
swears seeing the squires of-the knight that-he to his power him
vengera de tous cheus qui diront quil ameront plus chelui
will-avenge on all those who will-say that-they will-love more him
qui che li fist que lui. lors est li cheualiers moult lies.
who this to-him did than him then is the knight very glad
& dist au uallet. biax sire des ore me poes desferrer. que
and says to-the youth fair lord from now me can-you unfasten that

vous soies li bien venus. Et li valles met maintenant les
you be the well come And the youth puts at-once the
mains a lespee qui en la teste au cheualier ert embatue. si
hands to the-sword which in the head of-the knight was driven so
le sache si douchement hors. que li cheualiers nen sent
it pulls so gently out that the knight not-thereof feels
se moult poi non. Et apres li oste les tronchons.
except very little not And after from-him removes the stumps
Endementiers quil desferroit issi le cheualier auint chose
While that-be unfastened thus the knight befell thing
que vns escuiers le vit. si sen cort aual en la cort
that a squire it saw so himself-thence runs down into the court
deuant la sale ou li rois chaignoit les espees as cheualiers
before the hall where the king girded the swords on-the knights
nouiax. si conta a monsignor yewain comment li valles auoit
new so told to my-lord Yvain how the youth had
desferre le cheualier. Messires yewains en vient courant
unfastened the knight My-lord Yvain thence comes running
en la chambre au cheualier autresi comme tous desues.
into the chamber of-the knight just as all out-of-his-wits
si voit le cheualier qui est desferres. & dist au vallet. ha
so sees the knight who is unfastened and says to-the youth ah
biax cheualiers diex te fache preudomme. & si seras tu
fair knight God thee may-make worthy-man and so will-be thou
se tu pues viure longement. Des ore mais fait li cheualiers
if thou canst live long From now more says the knight
seroie ie tous garis se iou auoie vn mire qui sentremeist
would-be I all healed if I had a physician who himself-meddled
de moi garir. li valles voit monsignor yewain si li dit.
of me to-heal the youth sees my-lord Yvain so to-him says
ha sire por dieu car li queres vn mire. Comment fait
ah lord for God now for-him seek a physician How says

mesire yewains aues le vous dont desferre. Sire fait il oil
my-lord Yvain have him you then unfastened Lord says he yes
che poes veoir. Car ien auoie si grant pitie que plus
this can-you see For I-thereof had so great pity that more
ne pooie souffrir sa grant mesaise. vous naues pas fait que
not could-I suffer his great distress you not-have at-all done as
sages fait mesire ywains. & si vous iert atorne a grant
wise says my-lord Yvain and so to-you will-be turned to great
folie. Car il a chaiens des millors cheualiers del monde
folly For it has in-here of-the best knights of-the world
qui entremetre ne sen voloient. Car nus nen
who to-meddle not themselves-thereof wished For anyone not-thereof
poroit a chief venir. Et vous qui ne saues que ce monte
could to end come And you who not know what this amounts
aues empris vne tel chose a faire dont moult men
have undertaken a such thing to do whereof much to-me-thereof
poise. Et miex amasse si mait diex que li cheualiers
grieves And better would-I-love so me-may-help God that the knight
sen alast tous desconseillies de chaiens. quelconques
himself-thence went all counseless from in-here whatever
honte que li rois i deust auoir ne ses ostex. & quel
shame that the king there might have or his house and whatever
damage que li cheualiers i eust. Car se vous vesquisies
harm that the knight there had For if you lived
longement encore peusies venir a moult grant chose. ha sire
long yet could-you come to very great thing ah lord
fait il moult est ore miex que ie mure en cheste besoigne
says he much is now better that I die in this business
se morir i doi. que chis cheualiers qui est espoir de grant
if to-die there I-must than this knight who is perhaps of great

proece & len ne seit encore combien ie vail. ne rien
prowess and one not knows yet how-much I am-worth nor anything
nai fait porquoi fust blames mesires li rois ne ses ostex.
not-have-I done whereby were blamed my-lord the king nor his house
Mais por dieu sire puis que tant est la chose alee. faites
But for God lord since that so-far is the thing gone have
querre vn mirre au cheualier por li garir. Et mesire
sought a physician for-the knight for him to-heal And my-lord
yewains respont tous angoisseus que por mire ne perdra
Yvain answers all anguished that for physician not will-lose
il ia. Il enuoie .j. mire querre. si enmaine le vallet en la
he ever He sends a physician to-seek so leads the youth into the
sale ou li rois estoit montes qui ia auoit les noueles
hall where the king was gone-up who already had the news
oies. que li valles auoit desferre le cheualier. Comment
heard that the youth had unfastened the knight How
yewains fait li rois a vostre valles desferre le cheualier
Yvain says the king has your youth unfastened the knight
naure. Sire fait il oil. Chertes fait li rois che doit vous
wounded Lord says he yes Certainly says the king this ought you
peser. & merueilles aueis fait qui le souffristes & ie vous
weigh and marvels have-you done who it allowed and I you
en sai moult maluais gre. quant vous au plus bel vallet
thereof know very ill will when you to-the most fair youth
del monde aues souffert a emprendre chose dont il ne
of-the world have allowed to undertake thing whereof he not
puet se morir non. Sire fait mesire yeuuains par la foi
can except to-die not Lord says my-lord Yvain by the faith
que ie doi a vous qui mes sires estes ie ne fui pas au
that I owe to you who my lord are I not was at-all at-the
desferrer. & moult len ai blasme & laidengie. Et
unfastening and much him-thereof have-I blamed and reviled And

miex vausisse vn des bras auoir brisie que il le fist. Chertes
better would-I-wish one of-the arms to-have broken than he it did Certainly
fait li rois vous neusies mie tort. Car onques mais
says the king you not-would-have at-all wrong For ever more
homme ne vi dont il fust par samblant si grant damages
man not saw-I whereof it were by semblance so great harm
comme de chestui. Car il a empris vne chose. dont nus
as of this-one For he has undertaken a thing whereof anyone
ne porroit a chief venir; ha sire por dieu merchi fait li
not could to end come ah lord for God mercy says the
valles Moult est ore miex que ie i mure. que vn des plus
youth Much is now better that I there die than one of-the most
proisies cheualiers de vostre ostel. Car ie ne puis pas encore
prized knights of your house For I not can at-all yet
granment valoir. & li rois enbronche la teste. si en est
greatly be-worth and the king bows the head so thereof is
si iries que les larmes len sont as iex venus. Tant
so grieved that the tears to-him-thereof are to-the eyes come So-far
sont corues les paroles partot laiens que la roine le sot. si
are run the words everywhere in-there that the queen it knew so
len poise trop durement. Car ele crient & doute quil
to-her-thereof grieves too hard For she fears and dreads that-he
ne lamast de si grant amor. que il eust por li empris a
— her-loved with so great love that he had for her undertaken to
desferrer le cheualier. Si dist que moult est grant dolor de
unfasten the knight So says that very is great sorrow of
lui & grans damages. Moult plaignent durement le vallet &
him and great harm Much lament hard the youth and
.j. & autre. & por le grant duel que tout en orent ne
one and other and for the great grief that all thereof had not
menbra il au roi ne a autrui de lespee que il li auoit
remembered it to-the king nor to another of the-sword that he to-him had

oublie a chaindre. Atant sont les napes mises. si sont tout
forgotten to gird Thereupon are the cloths set so are all
desarme li cheualier nouel & vont asseoir al mangier.
disarmed the knights new and go sit to-the eating

The Lady of Nohaut Asks for Help

XXXVIII

At the meal a knight comes from the Lady of Nohaut: the King of Northumberland makes war on her and will fight on a claim she denies, champion against champion, and she asks Arthur, her lord, for a knight. Lancelot asks the succor as a gift. The king says he is too young, but Gawain and Yvain beg him not to refuse, and he grants it. The messenger goes ahead, and Lancelot, armed, goes to take leave of the queen.

Quant li rois ot vne pieche al mangier sis. si entra laiens
When the king had a while at-the eating sat so entered in-there
vns cheualiers armes de toutes armes fors de hiaume & de
a knight armed in all arms except of helm and of
sa ventaille. quil ot abatue sor ses espaules. Il est venus
his ventail which-he had lowered on his shoulders He is come
deuant le roi si le salue. Rois artus fait il diex te saut
before the king so him greets King Arthur says he God thee may-save
et toute ta compaignie de par la dame de nohaut a qui
and all thy company on behalf-of the lady of nohaut to whom
ie sui. Madame menuoie a toi. Et si te mande que li rois
I am My-lady me-sends to thee And so to-thee sends-word that the king
de northunberlande le guerroie. & siet deuant vn sien castel
of northumberland her wars and sits before a her castle
a siege. li rois la moult greuee & asses de ses hommes
at siege the king her-has much grieved and many of her men

mors & de sa terre destruite si lapele de couenenche. dont
dead and of her land destroyed so her-appeals of covenant whereof
madame ne li connoist ne tant ne quant. Tant ont
my-lady not to-him acknowledges either so-much nor how-much So-far have
les paroles este menees dambes .ij. pars. & par cheualiers
the words been led from-both two parts and by knights
& par gent de religion que li rois dist quil est prest
and by people of religion that the king says that-he is ready
dataindre madame des couenenches quil li demande ensi
to-convict my-lady of-the covenants that-he of-her asks so
com iugemens dira. Et iugemens dist que si li rois le veut
as judgment will-say And judgment says that if the king it wishes
moustrer madame se doit desfendre si com ele porra. ou
to-show my-lady herself ought defend so as she will-be-able either
par vn cheualier encontre .j. ou par .ij. contre .ij. ou par
by a knight against one or by two against two or by
.iij. contre .iij. Ou par tant com ele en pora auoir se
three against three Or by as-many as she thereof will-be-able have if
ele veut. por che te mande madame. comme a cheli qui
she wishes for this to-thee sends my-lady as to him who
ses sires liges es. & ele ta feme lige que tu la secueres
her lord liege art and she thy woman liege that thou her succor
a chest besoig. Et que tu li enuoies tel cheualier qui
at this need And that thou to-her send such knight who
encontre vn autre puisse lonor madame desraisnier. Car ele
against an other may the-honor (of-)my-lady maintain For she
prendra la bataille a la moustre dun cheualier. biax amis
will-take the battle at the showing of-a knight fair friend
fait li rois au cheualier ie la secourai moult volentiers. Et
says the king to-the knight I her shall-succor very willingly And
ie connois bien que ie le doi faire. Car ele est ma feme
I acknowledge well that I it ought do For she is my woman

lige. & tient de moi toute sa terre. Et sele nen tenoit
liege and holds from me all her land And if-she not-thereof held
ore rien. sest ele tant vaillant dame & deboinaire & tant
now anything so-is she so worthy lady and gentle and so
gentiex feme que bien la deuroie secoure. Chil qui seruoient.
noble woman that well her ought-I succor Those who served
mainent mangier le cheualier qui le message ot aporte. &
lead to-eat the knight who the message had brought and
atant remest la parole de chest secours. & si tost com
thereupon remained the word of this succor and so soon as
len commenche napes a traire li valles monsignor yeuuain
one begins cloths to draw the youth (of-)my-lord Yvain
saut sus. & sen vait deuant le roi si saienoille. &
leaps up and himself-thence goes before the king so himself-kneels and
li dist moult simplement. sire vous maues fait cheualier
to-him says very simply lord you me-have made knight
vostre merchi & ie vous requier vn don. que vous motroies
your mercy and I you request a gift that you to-me-grant
a faire cest secors que chis cheualiers vous a demande.
to do this succor which this knight of-you has asked
Biax amis fait li rois vous ne saues que vous requeres.
Fair friend says the king you not know what you request
Car vous estes si enfes & si iouenes. que vous ne
For you are so child and so young that you not
saues camonte grant fais de cheualerie. Car li rois de
know what-amounts great burden of chivalry For the king of
northumberlande a tant de boins cheualiers. si sai bien
northumberland has so-many of good knights so know-I well
que a son essiant fera faire la bataille au millor. Et
that to his knowledge he-will-make do the battle to-the best And
vous estes de tel eage que vous naues encore mestier de
you are of such age that you not-have yet need of

si grant fais encargier. & trop seroit grant damages se
so great burden to-take-on and too would-be great harm if
vous estes par mesauenture desauanchies. Car a moult grant
you are by mishap brought-low For to very great
chose porries encore venir. & vous estes si biax & si gens
thing could-you yet come and you are so fair and so comely
& de si grant cuer che mest auis. quil ne puet pas estre
and of so great heart this to-me-is opinion that-it not can at-all be
que vous ne soies de moult haute gent estrais. Et de grant
that you not be of very high people sprung And of great
hauteche de cuer estes vous a moi venus. Car vous baes
highness of heart are you to me come For you aim
a conquerre honor & pris. Si en auroie moult grant
to win honor and prize So thereof would-have-I very great
duel se vous par don que ie vous dounasse esties mors. Et
grief if you by gift that I to-you gave were dead And
dautre part vous aues tel chose empris a faire que bien
on-other part you have such thing undertaken to do that well
vous deues atant tenir. Et diex vous en doinst a boin
you ought thereat hold And God to-you thereof may-give to good
chief traire. Car li periex i est moult grans. Sire fait li
end draw For the peril there is very great Lord says the
valles toute la premiere requeste que ie vous ai faite puis
youth all the first request that I to-you have made since
que vous me feistes cheualier ne me deusies pas refuser.
that you me made knight not to-me ought-you at-all refuse
Gardes i bien vostre honor que vous ne mescondisies chose
Guard there well your honor that you not me-refuse thing
que ie vous requiere raisonablement. Et ie vous demande
that I of-you request reasonably And I of-you ask
encore vn don. que vous menuoies a la dame por chest
still a gift that you me-send to the lady for this

secors. & se vous le me escondisies ie en serai moult
succor and if you it to-me refuse I thereof shall-be very
empiries & mains men priseront. & .j. & autre. & ie
impaired and less me-thereof will-prize and one and other and I
meismes men amerai mains se diex mait quant vous
myself myself-thereof shall-love less so God me-may-help when you
donner ne me voles a faire qui puisse estre fais dun seul
to-give not me wish to do what may be done by-a single
cheualier. lors salent auant mesire gauuain & mesire yeuuain
knight then go forward my-lord Gawain and my-lord Yvain
ses cousins. & dient au roy. ha sire por dieu dounes
his cousin and say to-the king ah lord for God give
li. Car chertes nous quidons quil le fache moult bien.
to-him For certainly we think that-he it do very well
ne vous ne le poes pas escondire belement. Chertes fait
nor you not it can at-all refuse fairly Certainly says
li rois. aussi quit ie quil le fera bien & diex le doinst.
the king also think I that-he it will-do well and God it may-give
& ie li donrai volentiers. Tenes fait il biax amis ie
and I to-him shall-give-it willingly Take says he fair friend I
vous otroi le secors a la dame de nohaut. Et diex le vous
to-you grant the succor to the lady of nohaut And God it to-you
doinst si faire que vous en aies & los & pris & que
may-give so to-do that you thereof have both praise and prize and that
ie i aie honor. sire la vostre grant merci fait li valles.
I there have honor lord the your great mercy says the youth
Atant prent del roi congie & de monsignor Gauuain
Thereupon takes-he of-the king leave and of my-lord Gawain
& as autres compaignons & mesire yeuuain lenmaine a
and of-the other companions and my-lord Yvain him-leads to
son ostel por lui armer. Et li cheualiers qui por le secors
his lodging for him to-arm And the knight who for the succor

estoit venus vient au roi & li dist. sire ie men
was come comes to-the king and to-him says lord I myself-thence
irai. Car moi est auis que vous aues donnee la bataille
shall-go For to-me is opinion that you have given the battle
a uostre nouel cheualier. Et gardes quil soit tex comme
to your new knight And take-care that-he be such as
a teile besoigne conuient. Chertes fait li rois il le me
to such business befits Certainly says the king he it of-me
requist en don. Car se che ne fust. iou i enuoiasse .j.
requested as gift For if this not were I there would-have-sent one
des millors cheualiers de ma maison. Et neporquant ie quit
of-the best knights of my house And nevertheless I think
que il i soit bien emploie. Sire fait il ie men vois
that it there be well employed Lord says he I myself-thence go
a vostre congie. Ales a dieu fait li rois & si me salues
at your leave Go to God says the king and so for-me greet
vostre dame. si li dites que sele a paor que sa bataille
your lady so to-her say that if-she has fear that her battle
ne soit boine a faire par .j. seul cheualier. Ie li en
not be good to do by one single knight I to-her thereof
enuoierai .ij. ou .iij. out tant com ele vaudra. Grant mercis
shall-send two or three or as-many as she will-wish Great thanks
sire fait il. Atant sen part & vient a lostel au
lord says he Thereupon himself-thence parts and comes to the-lodging of-the
vallet a monsignor yeuuain ou il sarmoit. Et quant il
youth of my-lord Yvain where he himself-armed And when he
est armes fors son chief & ses mains. si dist a monsignor
is armed except his head and his hands so says to my-lord
yeuuain. ha! sire iai trop oublie. Coi fait mesire yevvains.
Yvain ah lord I-have too-much forgotten What says my-lord Yvain

sire fait il que ie nai pas prins congie a madame. vous
lord says he that I not-have at-all taken leave of my-lady you
aues dit que sages fait mesire yevvain. or i alons.
have said as wise says my-lord Yvain now there let-us-go
Biaus sire fait li valles au cheualier qui latendoit. ales
Fair lord says the youth to-the knight who him-awaited go
vous ent auant iusques la dehors. Car ie ferrai apres
yourself thence ahead as-far-as there outside For I shall-strike after
vous des esporons si tost com iaurai parle a madame
you with-the spurs so soon as I-shall-have spoken to my-lady
la roine. Et vous fait il a ses escuiers ales auoeques lui &
the queen And you says he to his squires go with him and
menes tot mon harnas. lors conseille .j. de ses escuiers quil
lead all my harness then counsels one of his squires that-he
enport sespee autresi. Car il bee a estre cheualiers dautrui
carry-off his-sword likewise For he aims to be knight by-another's
main que de la main le roi. Sire fait li cheualiers
hand than by the hand (of-)the king Lord says the knight
qui latendoit. ie irai auant iusca lentree de cel bois.
who him-awaited I shall-go ahead up-to the-entry of that wood
& illueques vous atenderai. ales fait li valles car ie vous
and there you shall-await go says the youth for I you
sieuerai orendroit. Atant sen part li cheualiers & li
shall-follow right-now Thereupon himself-thence parts the knight and the
escuier au vallet. Et entre monsignor yeuuain & le vallet
squires of-the youth And between my-lord Yvain and the youth
sen vont a la cort. & passent parmi la maison &
themselves-thence go to the court and pass through the house and
la sale ou li rois estoit encore. & maint boin cheualier
the hall where the king was still and many good knight
auoeques lui. Li valles ot la ventaille abatue sor ses espaules.
with him The youth had the ventail lowered on his shoulders

& il vont tant quil sont venu dedens le cambre a la
and they go so-far that-they are come inside the chamber of the
roine. & quant li valles le vit il ne la mesconnoit pas. Il
queen and when the youth her saw he not her mistakes at-all He
saienoille deuant li si la regarde moult deboinairement tant
himself-kneels before her so her looks-at very gently as-much
com il ose. Et quant vergoigne le soruaint si fiche les iex
as he dares And when shame him overcomes so fixes-he the eyes
vers terre tous esbahis. & messires yeuuain dist a la roine.
toward ground all amazed and my-lord Yvain says to the queen
Dame veis chi le vallet dier soir que li rois a fait
Lady see here the youth of-yester evening whom the king has made
cheualier qui vient a vous prendre congie. Comment fait la
knight who comes to you to-take leave How says the
roine sen va il ia. Oil dame fait mesire yevvains. il
queen himself-thence goes he already Yes lady says my-lord Yvain he
fera .j. secors de par monsignor a la dame de nohaut. ha
will-do a succor on behalf-of my-lord to the lady of nohaut ah
diex porquoi sueffre messires que il i aille. Ia auoit il
God wherefore allows my-lord that he there go Already had he
tant a faire dautre part de che quil desferra le cheualier.
so-much to do on-other part in this that-he unfastened the knight
Chertes dame fait mesire yevvains che poise a monsignor le
Certainly lady says my-lord Yvain this grieves to my-lord the
roi. Mais il li demanda en don. Et lors dist chascuns.
king But he of-him asked as gift And then says each
chest li valles qui desferra le cheualier. Diex com a fait
this-is the youth who unfastened the knight God how has-he made
grant hardement. diex font les dames & les damoiseles de
great boldness God say the ladies and the damsels of

laiens com parest biax & gens & bien taillies de tous
in-there how is-he fair and comely and well shaped in all
menbres & bien samble quil doie estre de grant proeche.
limbs and well seems that-he ought be of great prowess

The Queen Gives Him Leave

XXXIX

The queen raises him from his knees, forgives him for leaving her the night before without taking leave, and grants that he be her knight wherever he goes. Yvain sees that his sword is not girded, but Lancelot rides after his squires rather than be girded by the king, meaning to be girded by another hand. Gawain guesses that he took it amiss to be passed over. Lancelot overtakes the messenger, who has turned off the road, and makes him tell why.

Lors le prent la roine par la main. si li a dit. leues
Then him takes the queen by the hand so to-him has said rise
sus biax dous sire. Car ie ne sai qui vous estes. Espoir vous
up fair sweet lord For I not know who you are Perhaps you
estes plus gentiex hom que ie ne sai. & ie vous suefre a
are more noble man than I — know and I you allow on
ienols deuant moi. si ne fais mie que cortoise. ha! dame fait
knees before me so not do-I at-all as courteous ah lady says
il en sospirant. vous me pardonres auant le folie que iou
he in sighing you me will-pardon first the folly that I
ai faite. Quel folie fait ele feistes vous. Dame fait il de che
have done What folly says she did you Lady says he in this
que ie men issi de chaiens sans prendre congie a vous.
that I myself-thence went from in-here without taking leave of you
biax dous amis fait ele vous estes si iouenes hons que len
fair sweet friend says she you are so young man that one

vous doit bien pardoner .j. tel mesfait & iel vous pardoins
you ought well pardon a such misdeed and I-it to-you pardon
moult volentiers. Dame fait il vostre merci. Et puis li dist.
very willingly Lady says he your mercy And then to-her says
Dame fait il se vous plaisoit ie me tendroie en quelque lieu
Lady says he if you it-pleased I myself would-hold in whatever place
que iou alaisse a vostre cheualier. Chertes fait ele che voel
that I went for your knight Certainly says she this wish
ie moult bien. Dame fait il des ore men irai a vostre
I very well Lady says he from now myself-thence shall-I-go at your
congie. Adieu fait ele biax dous amis. Et il respont entre ses
leave To-God says she fair sweet friend And he answers between his
dens grans merchis dame. quant il vous plaist que ie le soie.
teeth great thanks lady when it you pleases that I it be
Atant le lieue la roine par le main sus. & il est moult
Thereupon him raises the queen by the hand up and he is very
a aise quant il sent a sa main touchier la soie toute nue.
at ease when he feels to his hand touch the hers all bare
Il prent congie as dames & as damoiseles. Et mesire
He takes leave of-the ladies and of-the damsels And my-lord
yeuuains len remaine parmi la sale. & quant il vint a
Yvain him-thence leads-back through the hall and when he came to
son ostel. si li a arme son chief & ses mains. Et quant
his lodging so to-him has armed his head and his hands And when
il li volt lespee chaindre si li menbre de chou que li
he to-him wished the-sword to-gird so to-him remembers of this that the
rois ne li auoit onques chainte si li dist. Sire par mon
king not to-him had ever girded so to-him says Lord by my
chief vous nestes mie cheualiers. porcoi fait li valles por
head you not-are at-all knight wherefore says the youth for
chou fait mesires yevvains que li rois ne vous a pas lespee
this says my-lord Yvain that the king not to-you has at-all the-sword

chainte. Or alons a li si la vous chaindra. Sire fait il or
girded Now let-us-go to him so it to-you he-will-gird Lord says he now
matendes dont. & ie courai apres mes escuiers qui la moie
me-await then and I shall-run after my squires who the mine
enportent. Car ie ne vaudroie que li rois me chainsist se
carry-off For I not would-wish that the king me girded except
chele non. Ie irai fait mesire yevvain auoeques vous. sire fait
that-one not I shall-go says my-lord Yvain with you lord says
il non feres. Car ie irai apres eus tant com ie porai
he not will-you For I shall-go after them as-much as I shall-be-able
traire del cheual. & au retorner ie reuendrai chi a
draw from-the horse and at-the returning I shall-come-back here to
vous tout droit. Il sen uoit & mesire yeuuains latent.
you all straight He himself-thence goes and my-lord Yvain him-awaits
Mais li valles na talent de reuenir. Car il natent pas a
But the youth not-has desire to come-back For he not-expects at-all to
estre cheualiers de la main le roi. Mais dun autre dont
be knight by the hand (of-)the king But of-an other whereof
il quide plus amender. Grant pieche latent mesire yevvains.
he thinks more to-gain Great while him-awaits my-lord Yvain
& quant il voit quil ne repaire si sen va droit au
and when he sees that-he not returns so himself-thence goes straight to-the
roi & dist. sire malement sommes decheu de nostre vallet
king and says lord badly are-we deceived by our youth
qui sen va a nohaut por le secors. Comment fait li
who himself-thence goes to nohaut for the succor How says the
rois. chertes fait il vous ne li aues pas chainte lespee.
king certainly says he you not to-him have at-all girded the-sword
Et lors conte au roi comment il deuoit reuenir & quil
And then tells-he to-the king how he was-to come-back and that-he
ala sespee querre. & li rois sesmerueille moult porcoi il
went his-sword to-seek and the king himself-marvels much wherefore he

nestoit reuenus. puis que mesire yeuuains li auoit dit
not-was come-back since that my-lord Yvain to-him had said
quil nestoit mie cheualiers. Chertes fait messires gauuain.
that-he not-was at-all knight Certainly says my-lord Gawain
ie quit quil estoit moult haus hons de grant maniere. si
I think that-he was very high man of great manner so
a tenu ie croi a despit che que mesires li rois ne li
has-he held I believe in scorn this that my-lord the king not to-him
chainst lespee auant ches autres. & pour che sen est
girded the-sword before these others and for this himself-thence is
ales. Et la roine dist que bien puet estre. & maint des
gone And the queen says that well can-it be and many of-the
autres cheualiers dient autretel. Mais ore se taist atant li
other knights say the-same But now itself is-silent thereupon the
contes del roi & de la roine & de tout lor compaignie
tale of-the king and of the queen and of all their company
& retorne al vallet qui la dame de nohaut vait deliurer.
and returns to-the youth who the lady of nohaut goes to-deliver
Or sen vait li valles apres le cheualier qui vint
Now himself-thence goes the youth after the knight who came
querre le secors. & apres son harnois qui auant vait. si
to-seek the succor and after his harness which ahead goes so
rataint le cheualier & le harnois a lentree de la forest. Il
overtakes the knight and the harness at the-entry of the forest They
cheuauchent ensamble parmi la forest tant quil est noune.
ride together through the forest until that-it is nones
si fait moult grant caut. li valles oste son hiaume si le
so it-makes very great heat the youth removes his helm so it
baille a .j. sien escuier. Et il commenche a penser moult
hands to a his squire And he begins to think very
durement. & li cheualiers qui deuant vait. issi hors del
hard and the knight who before goes went out of-the

chemin & entre en vn petit sentier. Et quant il ont vn
road and enters into a little path And when they have a
poi ale par le sentier .j. rains aconsieut le vallet el vis
little gone by the path a branch catches the youth in-the face
si la blechie. & il laisse son penser si regarde & voit
so him-has hurt and he leaves his thinking so looks and sees
quil est hors del grant chemin. Que est che fait il au
that-he is out of-the great road What is this says he to-the
cheualier. dont nestoit la voie plus bele & plus droite par
knight then not-was the way more fair and more straight by
le grant chemin que par chest petit sentier. Oil sans faille
the great road than by this little path Yes without fail
fait li cheualiers. Mais ele nestoit mie si seure. porquoi
says the knight But it not-was at-all so sure wherefore
dous sire fait li valles. Che ne vous dirai ie pas se ie ne
sweet lord says the youth This not to-you shall-tell I at-all if I not
voeil fait li cheualiers. en non dieu fait il si ferois. Car
wish says the knight in name (of-)God says he so you-will For
vous maues fait plus damage & anui que vous ne quidies
you me-have done more harm and annoyance than you — think
en cheste voie. Amis fait li cheualiers. & quel. teil fait
in this way Friend says the knight and what such says
li valles que nel me pories pas restorer. Mais or me
the youth that not-it to-me could-you at-all restore But now to-me
dites porquoi la voie nest pas seure par dela. Ie nel vous
tell wherefore the way not-is at-all sure by yonder I not-it to-you
dirai pas fait li cheualiers. lors prent lancelot sespee del
shall-tell at-all says the knight then takes Lancelot his-sword from-the
escuier qui le portoit. & reuient au cheualier isnelement.
squire who it carried and comes-back to-the knight swiftly
Or le me dires vous fait il maintenant ou vous estes mors.
Now it to-me will-say you says he at-once or you are dead

Mors fait il si commenche a rire. quidies me vous si tost
Dead says he so begins to laugh think me you so soon
ochire. Oil chertes fait li valles mors estes vous se nel me
to-kill Yes certainly says the youth dead are you if not-it to-me
dites orendroit. Ie ne sui pas fait li cheualiers si legiers
tell right-now I not am at-all says the knight so light
a ochire com vous quidies. Mais iel vous dirai ains que
to kill as you think But I-it to-you shall-tell before that
vous vous melles a moi. Car dont feroie ie la besoigne
you yourself meddle with me For then would-do I the business
madame maluaisement. se ie vous laisoie meller a moi. Or
(of-)my-lady badly if I you let meddle with me Now
en venes arriere fait li cheualiers & ie vous monsterai
thence come back says the knight and I to-you shall-show
porcoi ie vous destornai del grant chemin. Il retornent
wherefore I you turned-aside from-the great road They return
si com il estoient venu tout le sentier. & li valles vait
so as they were come all the path and the youth goes
apres & ses harnois. & lors sont repairie a lor chemin.
after and his harness and then are returned to their road

The Damsel in the Lake

XL

The knight explains that a great knight guards a maiden in a pavilion by the way. Lancelot goes there on foot; the great knight will not fight one so young but promises to show him the maiden when she wakes, and two damsels at a lodge mock Lancelot as a coward. He returns to find the pavilion empty and the damsels gone, and sends the messenger on to Nohaut. Another knight offers to show him a damsel held in a lake by two knights if Lancelot will help free her for him; Lancelot jousts with the two, is wounded in the shoulder, and they yield her to spare him.

Norent gaires ale par le chemin quant il trouerent vn poi
Not-had-they much gone by the road when they found a little
sor destre .j. perron les vne moult bele fontaine. Et esgarde
on right a stone beside a very fair fountain And looks-he
.j. poi loing en sa voie .j. paueillon moult bien tendu en vne
a little far on his way a pavilion very well pitched in a
lande qui moult iert grans. biaus sire fait li cheualiers au
heath which very was great fair lord says the knight to-the
vallet. or vous dirai iou se vous voles porcoi iou laissoie
youth now to-you shall-tell I if you wish wherefore I left
le grant chemin. dites fait il. En chel paueillon la fait li
the great road say says he In that pavilion there says the
cheualiers a vne puchele. si le garde vns cheualiers qui est
knight has a maiden so her guards a knight who is
plus grans dautres cheualiers bien demi pie. & plus fors &
more tall than-other knights well half foot and more strong and
plus corsus. Si est moult fel & moult cruels de tous cheus
more big-bodied So is-he very fierce and very cruel to all those
dont il vient au desus. Et chest de tous chex qui a
over-whom he comes to-the above And that-is of all those who with
lui se mellent. Car il est de si grant forche que nus
him themselves meddle For he is of so great strength that anyone

ne le puet souffrir & por che destornoie del chemin
not him can withstand and for this turned-I-aside from-the road
hors. Et iel voeil aler veoir fait li valles. non feres fait li
out And I-it wish to-go see says the youth not will-you says the
cheualiers se vous men crees. si ferai fait il. par foi fait
knight if you me-thereof believe so shall-I-do says he by faith says
li cheualiers che poise moi & vous ne feres pas sauoir.
the knight this grieves me and you not will-do at-all wisdom
Ne ie ne vous conuoierai en auant che vous di ie bien. Se
Nor I not you shall-escort in forward this to-you say I well If
vous voles si me conuoies fait li valles. & se vous ne voles
you wish so me escort says the youth and if you not wish
si le laissies. Que autretant mest il de lun com de lautre.
so it leave For as-much to-me-is it of the-one as of the-other
Lors deschent li valles de son cheual. si prent sespee en
Then dismounts the youth from his horse so takes his-sword in
vne main. & son hiaume en lautre. & laisse le cheualier
one hand and his helm in the-other and leaves the knight
& ses escuiers au perron. & vient deuant le pauillon
and his squires at-the stone and comes before the pavilion
sespee en sa main. toute nue. Il vaut ouurir luis del
his-sword in his hand all bare He wished to-open the-door of-the
paueillon. Mais li grans cheualiers seoit deuant en vne
pavilion But the great knight sat before in a
moult riche caiere. Il dist au vallet mar i faites biax
very rich chair He says to-the youth ill there you-do fair
sire. ne vous caut pas a entrer laiens. Moi si fait. fait
lord not to-you matters-it at-all to enter in-there To-me so it-does says
li valles. Car ie voeil veoir vne damoisele qui laiens est.
the youth For I wish to-see a damsel who in-there is
Ele nest pas abandounee a veoir a tous cheus qui veulent.
She not-is at-all given-up to see to all those who wish

Ie ne sai fait li valles as queus ele est abandounee.
I not know says the youth to-the which she is given-up
mais ie le verrai. lors vait dedens le pauellon entrer a
but I her shall-see then goes-he inside the pavilion to-enter by
forche. Estes biax sire fait li cheualiers ni entres pas.
force Stop fair lord says the knight not-there enter at-all
car la damoisele dort. ne ie ne vaudroie en nule guise
for the damsel sleeps nor I not would-wish in any guise
quele sesueillast outre son gre. Mais puis que vous estes si
that-she awoke beyond her will But since that you are so
destrois de li veoir fait li cheualiers. ie ne me melerai
pressed to her see says the knight I not myself shall-meddle
pas a vous. Car ie nauroie nule honor en vous ochire.
at-all with you For I not-would-have any honor in you killing
Mais ie la vous monsterai ia. quant ele sesueillera. porcoi
But I her to-you shall-show now when she will-awake wherefore
fait li valles nauries vous nule honor en moi ochire. por
says the youth not-would-have you any honor in me killing for
che fait il que vous iestes trop iones. Et si sui plus grans
this says he that you are too young And so am-I more tall
& plus fors de vous asses. Moi ne caut fait li valles
and more strong than you much To-me not matters-it says the youth
porcoi vous le laissies. se vous me creantes a monstrer
wherefore you it leave if you to-me promise to show
la puchele quant ele sera esueillie. Iel vous creant fait li
the maiden when she will-be awakened I-it to-you promise says the
cheualiers. & li valles guenchist le pauellon & sen
knight and the youth turns-from the pavilion and himself-thence
torne vers vne loge galeche qui estoit a mains dune archie
turns toward a lodge Welsh which was at less of-a bowshot
du paueillon. Si voit deuant la loge seoir .ij. damoiseles
from-the pavilion So sees-he before the lodge sit two damsels

moult richement achesmees. Il sen vait as damoiseles
very richly adorned He himself-thence goes to-the damsels
sespee en sa main destre. & son hiaume en la senestre. Et
his-sword in his hand right and his helm in the left And
quant il aproche deles onques ne se murent. Anchois
when he approaches of-them ever not themselves moved Rather
dist lune. Diex com biax cheualier a ore en chestui qui chi
says the-one God how fair knight is now in this-one who here
vient. Chertes fait lautre voirement est il le plus biax del
comes Certainly says the-other truly is he the most fair of-the
monde mar i fu quant il est si couars. Mait diex
world ill there was-it when he is so coward Me-may-help God
fait lautre. vous aues voir dit. Et il nest pas cheualiers
says the-other you have truth said And he not-is at-all knight
quant il madame nosa veoir. qui est la plus bele riens
when he my-lady not-dared see who is the most fair thing
del monde. por la paor del grant cheualier qui la garde.
of-the world for the fear of-the great knight who her guards
Il a moult bien entendu che queles ont dit si sareste. &
He has very well heard this that-they have said so himself-stops and
puis lor dist. si voirement mait diex vous aues voir
then to-them says so truly me-may-help God you have truth
dit. lors tourne ariere au paueillon qui estoit en lorriere
said then turns-he back to-the pavilion which was at the-edge
de la forest. Et quant il vient a luis del paueillon. si ne
of the forest And when he comes to the-door of-the pavilion so not
treue pas le grant cheualier. Il oeure luis mais il ni
finds-he at-all the great knight He opens the-door but he not-there
voit dedens homme ne feme. lors est moult esbahis. si se
sees inside man nor woman then is-he very amazed so himself
merueille ou peuent estre ale chil de laiens. si regarde
marvels where can be gone those of in-there so looks

entor lui mais il ni choisist nule rien. Maintenant
around him but he not-there perceives any thing At-once
reuient ariere as .ij. pucheles quil auoit laissies deuant
comes-he back to-the two maidens whom-he had left before
la loge. Mais il nen puet nule trouer. lors est si dolans
the lodge But he not-thereof can any find then is-he so sorrowful
que par vn poi quil nest derues. & reuient ariere au
that by a little that-he is mad and comes back to-the
perron ou il ot laisie le cheualier & son harnois. Et
stone where he had left the knight and his harness And
li cheualiers li demande que il a fait. Ie nai fait il
the knight of-him asks what he has done I not-have says he
riens fait. la puchele mest escapee dont moult me poise.
anything done the maiden to-me-is escaped whereof much to-me grieves
lors li conte en tel maniere. Mais chertes fait il ie ne
then to-him tells-he in such manner But certainly says he I not
finerai iamais deuant che que ie aurai veue la damoisele.
shall-cease ever-more before this that I shall-have seen the damsel
Lors est montes sor son cheual. & rebaille sespee &
Then is-he mounted on his horse and hands-back his-sword and
son hiaume a lescuier. Quest che biax sire fait li cheualiers.
his helm to the-squire What-is this fair lord says the knight
voles vous dont aler sieuir la damoisele. oil fait il ie
wish you then to-go to-follow the damsel yes says he I
la querrai tant que ie laurai trouee. Comment fait li
her shall-seek until that I her-shall-have found How says the
cheualiers vous deuies a madame faire secors. Si ferai ie fait
knight you were-to to my-lady do succor So shall-do I says
li valles ie i uenrai bien a tans. ains que li iors soit de
the youth I there shall-come well in time before that the day be of
la bataille. vous que saues fait li cheualiers a quant il est.
the battle you what know says the knight to when it is

Ie sai bien fait li valles que vous desistes a monsignor le
I know well says the youth that you said to my-lord the
roi que encore nestoit il mie deuise quant la bataille seroit
king that yet not-was it at-all appointed when the battle would-be
ne a quans cheualiers. Mais ales auant a vostre dame.
nor with how-many knights But go ahead to your lady
& si le me salues & li dites que ie vieng por sa
and so her for-me greet and to-her say that I come for her
besoigne & que ie i serai prochainement. A dieu dont
business and that I there shall-be soon To God then
vous commans fait li cheualiers car ie men vois. Mais si
you commend-I says the knight for I myself-thence go But so
tost com vous aurois la damoisele veue que vous en uenes
soon as you will-have the damsel seen that you thence come
a nohaut. si ferai ie fait il. Lors sentorne li cheualiers
to nohaut so shall-do I says he Then himself-thence-turns the knight
dune part & li valles dautre entre lui & ses escuiers. Et
on-one part and the youth on-other between him and his squires And
quant vint apres vespres .j. poi si encontra .j. cheualier arme
when came-it after vespers a little so met-he a knight armed
de toutes armes. li cheualiers li demande ou il vait. Ie
in all arms the knight of-him asks where he goes I
vois fait li valles en vn mien voiage la iai afaire. dites le
go says the youth on a my journey there I-have to-do tell it
moi fait li cheualiers. non ferai fait li valles. Ie sai bien
to-me says the knight not shall-I-do says the youth I know well
fait li cheualiers ou vous ales. & ou fait il. vous querres
says the knight where you go and where says he you seek
fait li cheualiers vne damoisele que vns cheualiers garde.
says the knight a damsel whom a knight guards
vous dites voir fait li valles qui le vous dist. Ie le sai bien
you say truth says the youth who it to-you said I it know well

fait li cheualiers. Ie sai bien qui le vous dist fait li valles.
says the knight I know well who it to-you said says the youth
& qui fait li cheualiers. Il le vous dist vns cheualiers qui
and who says the knight He it to-you said a knight who
de moi sen parti ore. Qui sen vait a madame
from me himself-thence parted now Who himself-thence goes to my-lady
de nohaut. qui que le me dist fait li cheualiers ie ai
of nohaut whoever that it to-me said says the knight I have
tant fait que ie le sai. & ie vous i menroie bien se
so-much done that I it know and I you there would-lead well if
ie voloie. Dont mi menes fait li valles. non ferai pas
I wished Then me-there lead says the youth not shall-I-do at-all
fait li cheualiers anuit. Car nous ni seriens pas de ior.
says the knight tonight For we not-there would-be at-all by day
Mais le matin i alons. Et ie vous menroie veoir vne
But the morning there let-us-go And I you would-lead to-see one
des plus beles damoiseles que vous onques veissies & si
of-the most fair damsels that you ever saw and so
nest gaires loins de chi. & en la droite voie de chelui
not-is-it much far from here and on the right way of that-one
que vous ales querrant. Che voeil ie moult fait li valles
whom you go seeking This wish I much says the youth
menes mi dont. par foi fait li cheualiers non ferai se
lead me then by faith says the knight not shall-I-do except
par .j. couent non. quel est il fait li valles. iel vous dirai.
by a covenant not what is it says the youth I-it to-you shall-tell

La puchele est en prison dedens .j. lac en vn prael
The maiden is in prison within a lake in a meadow
desous .j. trop biau chicamor qui est el milieu du
beneath a very fair sycamore which is in-the middle of-the
prael. Si se gist toute ior iluec sor vne kieute pointe
meadow So herself lies all day there on a quilt stitched

toute seule sans compaignie. Et quant vient al anuitier
all alone without company And when comes-it to-the nightfall
si i uienent doi cheualier tout arme les hiaumes lachies.
so there come two knights all armed the helms laced
si le metent hors diluec & lenmainent auoec aus. &
so her put out thence and her-lead with them and
chascuns matin le ramainent ariere el lac. Mais sele
each morning her bring-back back into-the lake But if-she
auoit .ij. cheualiers qui se vausissent combatre encontre
had two knights who themselves would-wish to-fight against
aus .ij. la puchele seroit deliure. Se li sien doi pooient
them two the maiden would-be delivered If the her two could
outrer les autres .ij. de la bataille. Et iou en seroie
overcome the other two in the battle And I thereof would-be
li vns se vous volies estre li autres. & li valles respont
the one if you wished to-be the other and the youth answers
quil le sera moult volentiers. par tel couent fait il que
that-he it will-be very willingly by such covenant says he that
vous me menres le matin la ou ie porrai trouer le
you me will-lead the morning there where I shall-be-able find the
grant cheualier. qui garde la damoisele del pauellon. puis
great knight who guards the damsel of-the pavilion since
que vous i metes couent fait li cheualiers ie li metrai
that you there put covenant says the knight I there shall-put
autresi. Que ie voeil se nous conquerrons la pucele qui est
likewise That I wish if we shall-win the maiden who is
el lac que ele soit moie. & ie lotroi fait li valles. Et ie
in-the lake that she be mine and I it-grant says the youth And I
vous otroi fait li cheualiers autresi vostre requeste. Atant
to-you grant says the knight likewise your request Thereupon
sen vont andoi cheuauchant droit vers le lac. &
themselves-thence go both riding straight toward the lake and

quant il i uindrent si anuitoit. Et il virent dautre part
when they there came so it-grew-night And they saw on-other part
les .ij. cheualiers qui venu furent. & li cheualiers dist au
the two knights who come were and the knight says to-the
vallet vees la les .ij. cheualiers qui mener en veullent la
youth see there the two knights who to-lead thence wish the
damoisele. Ore prenes vostre escu & vostre lance & lachies
damsel Now take your shield and your lance and lace
vostre hiaume & cheingies vostre espee. Li valles fu si
your helm and gird your sword The youth was so
desirans de la iouste que il ne li menbra onques de
desirous of the joust that he not to-him remembered ever of
son escu. Mais son hiaume li lacha vn de ses escuiers.
his shield But his helm for-him laced one of his squires
Et maintenant saisi vne glaiue. & sadrechent entrax
And at-once seized-he a lance and themselves-direct between-them
.ij. encontre les .ij. cheualiers. Il vindrent tost & sisent
two against the two knights They came quickly and sat
sor boins cheuax si se fierent grans cals sor les escus
on good horses so themselves strike great blows on the shields
chil qui les orent. Li vns des .ij. cheualiers qui gardoient
those who them had The one of-the two knights who guarded
la damoisele fiert le vallet sor le hauberc. si quil li
the damsel strikes the youth on the hauberk so that-he to-him
fausse endroit la senestre espaule trestout le fer. li valles
pierces at the left shoulder all the iron the youth
referi lui si quil le porte a terre & au parcaioir
struck-back him so that-he him bears to ground and at-the falling
brise li glaiues. Et li autre doi cheualier se furent
breaks the lance And the other two knights themselves were
entrabatu. lors deschent li valles a terre. & quant li
struck-down-each-other then dismounts the youth to ground and when the

cheualiers qui amene li auoit vit que il nauoit ne lanche
knight who brought him had saw that he not-had either lance
nespee ne escu. si esgarda quil feroit. & chil vient a
nor-sword nor shield so considered-he what-he would-do and that-one comes to
lui si li dist. baillies moi vostre espee car mi escuier sont
him so to-him says hand me your sword for my squires are
trop loing. volentiers fait chil si li baille. & li valles
too far willingly says that-one so to-him hands and the youth
li dit. Or vous traies ariere. & les mes baillies andoi.
to-him says Now yourself draw back and them to-me hand both
Et quant li cheualiers qui lauoit naure oi quil disoit que
And when the knight who him-had wounded heard that-he said that
len les li baillast andeus. si commenche a rire. Lors
one them to-him should-hand both so begins to laugh Then
vient a lui & si li dist. Chertes biax sire encore vous
comes-he to him and so to-him says Certainly fair lord yet to-you
baillerai iou la moie espee se vous voles. Ne a vous ne me
shall-hand I the my sword if you wish Nor with you not myself
combaterai mais hui. ne ie voir fait li autres cheualier. par
shall-fight more today nor I truly says the other knight by
sainte crois fait li valles dont quiteres vous la pucele. Nous
holy cross says the youth then will-yield you the maiden We
la vous quitons font il andui. & saues vous porquoi. nous
her to-you yield say they both and know you wherefore we
veons bien que vous estes de trop grant cuer. si poes encore
see well that you are of too great heart so can-you yet
venir a moult grant chose. Et vous estes si naures que
come to very great thing And you are so wounded that
bien en pories morir se encore esties .j. poi greues. por
well thereof could-you die if yet you-were a little harmed for
che si vous faisons ceste bonte. Moi ne chaut fait li valles
this so to-you do-we this kindness To-me not matters-it says the youth

porquoi vous laues fait. mais que la puchele soit quite. Ore
wherefore you it-have done provided that the maiden be yielded Now
le me baillies car ie le voeil. volentiers font li cheualier.
it to-me hand for I it wish willingly say the knights
Li vns trait vne cleif. si la iete el prael & dist a
The one draws a key so it throws into-the meadow and says to
la pucele. Damoisele desfremes cele neif & venes hors. Car
the maiden Damsel unfasten that boat and come out For
chis cheualiers vous a conquise. Chele desferme la neif qui
this knight you has won She unfastens the boat which
el prael estoit atachies a vne caine. puis est hors venue.
at-the meadow was tied with a chain then is-she out come
Et li doi cheualier qui le gardoient sen partent &
And the two knights who her guarded themselves-thence part and
sen vont en lor affaire. & tantost vienent illuec .iiij.
themselves-thence go on their affair and at-once come there four
vallet qui aportoient .j. paueillon torse sor .j. soumier. si le
youths who brought a pavilion packed on a packhorse so it
tendent pres diluec en vne foillie. & puis atornent a mangier
pitch near thence in a bower and then prepare to eat
a grant plente. & il estoient au cheualier qui le vallet ot
in great plenty and they were of-the knight who the youth had
amene illuec. Quant li mangiers fu pres si mengierent &
brought there When the meal was ready so ate-they and
quant il orent mangie si commanda la puchele as valles
when they had eaten so commanded the maiden to-the youths
a faire .iij. lis. & li valles qui lauoit conquise le regarde.
to make three beds and the youth who her-had won her looks-at
si li demande porquoi ele commande .iij. lis a faire. por
so of-her asks wherefore she commands three beds to make for
vous fait ele & por cel cheualier & por moi. A moi
you says she and for that knight and for me With me

fait il. ie gerrai auoeques vous. non feres fait ele. si ferai
says he I shall-lie with you not will-you says she so shall-I-do
fait il. voire fait ele se vous voles. & Ie vous en claim
says he truly says she if you wish and I you thereof declare
quit fait il. lors se couchent & dorment iuscal matin.
quit says he then themselves lay-down and sleep until-the morning

The Knight of the Pavilion

XLI

In the morning Lancelot finds the great knight and, bearing his sword at his saddlebow because he will not gird it, unhorses him, breaking a rib, and makes him swear never to fight a knight but in self-defense. He sends the two maidens to the queen, asking her for a sword as her knight; she sends one, and he girds it. At Nohaut the Lady keeps him fifteen days to heal his wound. Kay arrives, sent by the king, and claims the battle; when the new knight proposes that they fight each other for it, the Lady makes peace by taking her battle with two knights.

Au matin quant il furent leue dist li valles au cheualier.
In-the morning when they were risen says the youth to-the knight
biaus sire menes moi la ou vous me deues mener.
fair lord lead me there where you me ought lead
volentiers fait li cheualiers par vn couent. que se vous
willingly says the knight by a covenant that if you
la conqueres quele soit moie. Ie lotri fait li valles. Il
her win that-she be mine I it-grant says the youth They
montent andui. & la puchele auoeques aus. & oirent tant
mount both and the maiden with them and travel so-far
quil vienent au perron. vees la le paueillon fait li
that-they come to-the stone see there the pavilion says the
cheualiers au vallet. Mais il vous couient faire vne chose
knight to-the youth But it you behooves to-do a thing

que ceste damoisele vous prie & ie aussi. que est che fait
that this damsel you begs and I also what is this says
il. que vous ceingies vostre espee fait li cheualiers & metes
he that you gird your sword says the knight and put
vo escu a vo col. & vous aues boine lanche que ceste
your shield at your neck and you have good lance which this
damoisele vous a faite baillier a vn de vos escuiers. lescu
damsel to-you has made hand to one of your squires the-shield
fait li valles & la lanche prendrai ie volentiers. Mais lespee
says the youth and the lance shall-take I willingly But the-sword
ne puis ie chaindre ne ne doi. tant que ien aurai autre
not can I gird nor not ought-I until that I-thereof shall-have other
commandement. Or souffres dont fait li cheualiers que ie
command Now allow then says the knight that I
le vous pende a larchon de vostre sele. si le traires se
it for-you hang at the-saddlebow of your saddle so it will-draw-you if
mestier vous est. Car vous aues afaire a vn moult cruel
need to-you is For you have to-do with a very cruel
homme. Tant li prie li cheualiers & la pucele quil le
man So-much him beg the knight and the maiden that-he it
fait. & il li pendent lespee a larchon. Et il prent
does and they for-him hang the-sword at the-saddlebow And he takes
son escu & sa lance & vient iuscal paueillon. & treuue
his shield and his lance and comes up-to-the pavilion and finds
le grant cheualier autresi com il auoit fait a lautre fie.
the great knight just as he had done at the-other time
Ie vieng querre fait li valles mon couent. que vous me
I come to-seek says the youth my covenant that you me
monstres la damoisele. si com vous me creantastes ier.
show the damsel so as you to-me promised yesterday
Et chil respont quil ne la verra point sans mellee. se
And that-one answers that-he not her will-see at-all without melee if

meller mesteut fait li valles. anchois le ferai iou que ie ne
to-fight me-behooves says the youth rather it shall-do I than I —
la voie. Et si vous armes tost car ie ai aillors a aler. lors
her see And so yourself arm quickly for I have elsewhere to go then
se dreche li grans cheualiers si commenche a rire de che
himself raises the great knight so begins to laugh at this
que li valles li dist quil sarmast. fi fait il que ie por
that the youth to-him said that-he himself-arm fie says he that I for
vous marmeroie. Il saut sor .j. cheual qui pres de li estoit.
you myself-would-arm He leaps on a horse which near of him was
& prent .j. escu & vne lanche. & autretel fait li valles.
and takes a shield and a lance and the-same does the youth
Lors sentreuienent si tost com li cheual lor courent. &
Then themselves-meet so fast as the horses them run and
se dounent grans caus & pesans sor les escus. li grans
themselves give great blows and heavy on the shields the great
cheualier brisa sa lance que li esclat en sont vole. Et li
knight broke his lance that the splinters thence are flown And the
valles le fiert de tel force que li cuirs ront & les ais
youth him strikes with such force that the leather breaks and the boards
couint desioindre. & li fers del glaiue est outrepasses. si
had-to come-apart and the iron of-the lance is passed-through so
le hurte au senestre coste. si li ront vne des costes
him knocks at-the left side so to-him breaks one of-the ribs
dedens le cors. Et lempaint si durement que les regnes
within the body And him-thrusts so hard that the reins
li remainent en la main. & li archons deriere brise;
to-him remain in the hand and the saddlebow behind breaks
si le porte a terre si durement que tout lestone. & au
so him bears to ground so hard that all him-stuns and at-the
parcaoir brise sa lanche. Li cheualiers se pasme car moult
falling breaks his lance The knight himself faints for very

est blechies. Et li valles quide quil soit mors. lors se
is-he hurt And the youth thinks that-he be dead then himself
dreche en son seant & li valles li dist. Or verrai ie la
raises-he in his sitting and the youth to-him says Now shall-see I the
damoisele. voire fait il biax sire ie la vous quit. Maleoite
damsel truly says he fair lord I her to-you yield Cursed
soit leure que onques la vi. que mors en sui. Ainsi li
be the-hour that ever her saw-I for dead thereof am-I Thus to-him
guerpist la damoisele. Mais anchois que li valles len
gives-up the damsel But before that the youth him-thence
voeille laissier aler li fait fianchier que iamais a cheualier
will let go him makes pledge that ever-more with knight
ne se combatera se che nest sor soi desfendant. Lors
not himself will-fight unless this not-is on himself defending Then
vient li cheualiers qui iluec auoit amene le vallet & la
comes the knight who there had brought the youth and the
damoisele aussi. si furent tot esbahi des merueilles quil
damsel also so were-they all amazed at-the marvels that-he
auoit faites. Et il entre el paueillon & prent la damoisele
had done And he enters into-the pavilion and takes the damsel
par la main qui lors primes sestoit leuee si la tent au
by the hand who then first herself-was risen so her holds-out to-the
cheualier. Tenes fait il sire cheualiers or en aues vous .ij.
knight Take says he lord knight now thereof have you two
sire fait li cheualiers moies ne seront eles pas. Car trop
lord says the knight mine not will-be they at-all For too
sont beles. ne ie nes ai mie conquises mais vous. si
are-they fair nor I not-them have at-all won but you so
doiuent estre voes. Moies ne seront eles ia fait li valles.
ought be yours Mine not will-be they ever says the youth
Car il fu couens que vous les auries andeus. Sire fait li
For it was covenant that you them would-have both Lord says the

cheualiers puis que vous nes voles auoir. si me commandes
knight since that you not-them wish to-have so me command
que ien ferai. Car il en sera fait a vostre volente. voire
what I-thereof shall-do For it thereof will-be done at your will truly
fait li valles. oil fait li cheualiers iel vous creant loialment.
says the youth yes says the knight I-it to-you promise loyally
Or les menes fait li valles a la court monsignor le roi
Now them lead says the youth to the court (of-)my-lord the king
artu. si dites a madame la royne que li valles qui va secorre
Arthur so say to my-lady the queen that the youth who goes to-succor
la dame de nohaut les li enuoie. Et li dites que ie li
the lady of nohaut them to-her sends And to-her say that I to-her
mant. que por moi gaaignier a tous iors. que ele me fache
send-word that for me to-win for all days that she me make
cheualier. Et quele menuoieche vne espee com a chelui qui
knight And that-she me-send a sword as to him who
ses cheualiers sera. Car messires li rois ne me chainst point
her knight will-be For my-lord the king not me girded at-all
despee quant il me fist cheualier Quant li cheualiers oi
with-sword when he me made knight When the knight heard
quil estoit cheualiers nouiax. si en est tous esbahis. Sire
that-he was knight new so thereof is-he all amazed Lord
fait il ou vous trouerai iou au reuenir. a nohaut fait li
says he where you shall-find I at-the returning at nohaut says the
valles venes tout droit. Atant sen vait li cheualiers a
youth come all straight Thereupon himself-thence goes the knight to
la cort si fait son message. & conte a la roine les merueilles
the court so does his message and tells to the queen the marvels
quil a veues del vallet. Et ele en est moult lie. si li
that-he has seen of-the youth And she thereof is very glad so to-him
enuoie vne espee moult boine. & moult richement appareillie
sends a sword very good and very richly furnished

de fuerre & de renge. Li cheualiers enporte lespee & vait
with scabbard and with belt The knight carries-off the-sword and goes
tant quil vient a nohaut. Car bien sauoit la droite voie. &
so-far that-he comes to nohaut For well he-knew the right way and
quant il vient pres de la vile si troue le vallet qui encore
when he comes near of the town so finds the youth who yet
nestoit pas venus. Et il li baille lespee de par la
not-was at-all come And he to-him hands the-sword on behalf-of the
roine. & si vous mande fait il que vous le cheingies. &
queen and so to-you sends-word-she says he that you it gird and
il si fait moult volentiers. & au cheualier doune chele qui
he so does very willingly and to-the knight gives that-one which
estoit pendue a son archon. & dist que ore est il cheualiers
was hung at his saddlebow and says that now is he knight
dieu merchi & sa dame. & por che la apele li contes
God thanks and his lady and for this him-has called the tale
valles dusques chi. Li cheualiers la dame qui le secors
youth until here The knight (of-)the lady who the succor
estoit ales querre por sa dame de nohaut estoit ia venus
was gone to-seek for his lady of nohaut was already come
tier ior auoit. Et il auoit tant loe a sa dame le nouel
third day ago And he had so-much praised to his lady the new
cheualier que ele latent a grant desirier. Ne ne veut que
knight that she him-awaits with great desire Nor not wishes that
autres fache la bataille. Quant il vint. si fu asses qui
another do the battle When he came so were-there enough who
ioie li fist. Car li cheualiers qui auant venoit sen
joy to-him made For the knight who ahead came himself-thence
vait deuant por dire de li les noueles. Si monta la dame
goes before for to-say of him the news So mounted the lady

et moult de ses gens si vinrent encontre lui. si li font
and many of her people so came to-meet him so to-him make
si grant ioie com on puet faire a .j. cheualier estraigne.
as great joy as one can make to a knight strange
Quant il voit la dame. si ne sesbahi mie de sa grant
When he sees the lady so not himself-dismayed at-all at her great
biaute. ne grant entente ni met. & si estoit ele tres bele.
beauty nor great attention not-there puts and so was she very fair
Mais il ne met mie a son cuer toutes biautes. Ains dist.
But he not puts at-all to his heart all beauties Rather says
Dame a vous menuoie mesire li rois artus por vostre bataille
Lady to you me-sends my-lord the king Arthur for your battle
faire. & Iou en sui prest orendroit ou quant vous plaira.
to-do and I thereof am ready right-now or when you will-please
Sire fait ele benoit soit mesire li rois. & vous soies li bien
Lord says she blessed be my-lord the king and you be the well
venus. Et ie vous rechoif a moult boin gre. Lors esgarde si
come And I you receive at very good will Then looks-she so
voit son hauberc fosse endroit lespaule la ou il fu naures
sees his hauberk pierced at the-shoulder there where he was wounded
quant il conquist la damoisele el lac. Et la plaie li estoit
when he won the damsel in-the lake And the wound to-him was
moult empirie. car il lauoit mise en non caloir. Sire fait ele
very worsened for he it-had put in not caring Lord says she
vous estes naures. Dame fait il ie nai plaie qui me toille
you are wounded Lady says he I not-have wound which me prevents
a faire mon seruice quant vous plaira. & ie le vous offre a
to do my service when you will-please and I it to-you offer to
faire orendroit ou a demain. La dame le fait desarmer. &
do right-now or at tomorrow The lady him makes disarm and
trueue la plaie moult grande & moult parfonde si li dist.
finds the wound very great and very deep so to-him says

En non dieu fait la dame vous naues mestier de combatre
In name (of-)God says the lady you not-have need to fight
tant que vous soies garis. Et iou avrai bien respit de ma
until that you be healed And I shall-have well respite of my
bataille. Dame fait il ie ai moult plus a faire ailleurs que
battle Lady says he I have much more to do elsewhere than
chi. si couient haster. & por vous & por moi. Et ele dist
here so it-behooves to-hasten and for you and for me And she says
que en nule maniere ele ne soufferroit quil se combatist
that in any manner she not would-allow that-he himself fought
en teil point. Ains li fait mires venir. & le couche
in such point Rather to-him makes-she physicians come and him lays
en vne cambre sel tient ainsi .xv. iors. tant quil fu tous
in a chamber so-him keeps thus fifteen days until that-he was all
garis. Dedens les .xv. Iors vint la nouele a la cort le
healed Within the fifteen Days came the news to the court (of-)the
roi artu. que la dame de nohaut nestoit pas encore deliure.
king Arthur that the lady of nohaut not-was at-all yet delivered
& keus li senescax dist au roi. quidies vous que si ioines
and Kay the seneschal says to-the king think you that so young
hons com il est puet faire tel besoigne. Enuoies moi. Car
man as he is can do such business Send me For
preudomme doit len enuoier en tel affaire. & li rois li
worthy-man ought one send on such affair and the king to-him
otrie. Mesire kex vait tant par ses iornees quil vient a
grants-it My-lord Kay goes so-far by his journeys that-he comes to
nohaut. Si enuoie deuant vn escuier. & la dame monte &
nohaut So sends-he ahead a squire and the lady mounts and
ses gens si vont a lencontre & le rechoiuent a moult
her people so go to the-meeting and him receive with very
grant ioie. Et li nouiax cheualiers i fu aussi qui tous
great joy And the new knight there was also who all

estoit garis. Dame fait il. mesire li rois menuoie a vous
was healed Lady says he my-lord the king me-sends to you
por vostre bataille faire. & il mi eust piecha enuoiet
for your battle to-do and he me-there would-have long-ago sent
ou vn autre preudomme Mais vns nouiax cheualiers len
or an other worthy-man But a new knight him-thereof
requist le don. si li douna. Mais quant il oi que vostre
requested the gift so to-him gave-he-it But when he heard that your
affaires nestoit mie a chief menes. si mi enuoie por faire
affair not-was at-all to end brought so me-there sends for to-do
le. Sire fait la dame grant mercis a monsignor le roi. &
it Lord says the lady great thanks to my-lord the king and
au cheualier kil enuoia & a vous. Mais el cheualier
to-the knight whom-he sent and to you But in-the knight
ne remest la besoigne. Car des le premier ior leust
not remained the business For from the first day it-would-have
il faite. Mais ie noi cure por che quil estoit naures. Et
he done But I not-had care for this that-he was wounded And
ore est garis si le fera. Dame fait kex che ne puet estre
now is-he healed so it will-do Lady says Kay this not can be
puis que ie i sui venus ie la ferai ou ie i auroie
since that I there am come I it shall-do or I there would-have
honte. & mesire li rois ni auroit mie honor. Quant
shame and my-lord the king not-there would-have at-all honor When
chou ot la dame si est moult angoisseuse ne ne seit que
this hears the lady so is-she very anguished nor not knows what
faire. Car moult vauroit que li nouiax cheualiers feist la
to-do For much would-wish-she that the new knight did the
bataille. ne vers le senescal ne seit que faire. Car il estoit
battle nor toward the seneschal not knows-she what to-do For he was
moult sires del roi. qui feme ele estoit. si li puet nuire
very lord of-the king whose woman she was so to-her can-he harm

& aidier. lors se trait auant li cheualiers nouiax & dist
and help then himself draws forward the knight new and says
au senescal. Chertes sire keu des le premier ior leuse
to-the seneschal Certainly lord Kay from the first day it-would-have
ie faite se madame vausist. & encore en sui ie prest &
I done if my-lady wished and still thereof am I ready and
bien le requier que autres ne le fache. car ie la doi faire
well it request that another not it do for I it ought do
qui ving auant. biax amis fait kex. che ne puet estre puis
who came first fair friend says Kay this not can be since
que ie i sui venus. Chertes fait li nouiax cheualiers moult
that I there am come Certainly says the new knight very
seroit grans damages se madame estoit engingnie que li
would-be great harm if my-lady were deceived so-that the
mieudres ne le feist. vous aues voir dit fait keus. Dont nous
best not it did you have truth said says Kay Then we
combaterons ensamble fait li cheualiers nouiax & chil
shall-fight together says the knight new and that-one
qui vaintera. si fache la bataille. & keus dist que il lotrie.
who will-win so may-do the battle and Kay says that he it-grants
En non dieu fait la dame se dieu plaist che niert ia
In name (of-)God says the lady if God please this not-will-be ever
fait Mais ie ferai pais a lonor monsignor le roi qui chi
done But I shall-make peace to the-honor (of-)my-lord the king who here
vous a enuoies & lonor de vous .ij. Car ie puis faire ma
you has sent and the-honor of you two For I can do my
bataille par .j. cheualier ou par .ij. ou par tant com ie
battle by one knight or by two or by as-many as I
vaudrai. Or si men irai au roi de northumberlande
shall-wish Now so myself-thence shall-I-go to-the king of northumberland
prendre ma bataille par .ij. cheualiers. En ceste guise les
to-take my battle by two knights In this guise them

apaise madame comme sage. Au matin vint li rois &
appeases my-lady as wise In-the morning came the king and
sa gent dune partie del castel. ou il estoit en vne lande
his people from-one part of-the castle where he was into a heath
desous nohaut. ou la bataille estoit deuisee. & dautre part
below nohaut where the battle was appointed and on-other part
venoit la dame & si doi cheualier & ses autres gens.
came the lady and her two knights and her other people

The Battle at Nohaut

XLII

Kay and the new knight fight two of the King of Northumberland's knights; the new knight overcomes his but spares him so as not to shame Kay, who beats his own. The king makes peace and leaves the Lady's land, and Kay returns to court. The knight who brought the queen's sword escorts Lancelot and explains that the great knight, Autragais, wanted to win the Lady's love by doing her battle, and that she had the two knights test the king's champion. Lancelot leaves his squires at a house of religion where Leucan, nephew of Joseph of Arimathea, lies buried.

Quant li couenent furent recorde deuant les gens. si se
When the covenants were recorded before the people so themselves
mistrent tout ariere. Et li .iiij. cheualier sentrelongent. puis
put-they all back And the four knights draw-apart then
sadrechierent li doi cheualier as .ij. entre monsigneur keu
directed-themselves the two knights to-the two between my-lord Kay
& le sien cheualier sentrefierent parmi les escus. si que
and the his knight struck-each-other through the shields so that
toutes lor lanches volent en pieces. Mais ne cai ne li vns
all their lances fly in pieces But not fell either the one
ne li autres. & il sachent les espees si se recourent
nor the other and they draw the swords so themselves run-again

sus. Et entre le nouel cheualier & le sien sentrecontrerent.
upon And between the new knight and the his met-each-other
& chil de northumberlande le fiert si quil li fait
and that-one of northumberland him strikes so that-he to-him makes
lescu hurter a le temple & le lanche vole en pieches. Et
the-shield knock at the temple and the lance flies in pieces And
li nouiaus cheualiers fiert lui desous la borcle. si quil li
the new knight strikes him beneath the boss so that-he to-him
serre lescu au bras & le bras au cors & lenpaint si
presses the-shield to-the arm and the arm to-the body and him-thrusts so
durement que les regnes li remaignent en la main. &
hard that the reins to-him remain in the hand and
leskine li hurte contre larchon deriere. si le porte par
the-spine to-him knocks against the-saddlebow behind so him bears over
desus la crupe del cheual a terre. & al porcaoir brise
above the croup of-the horse to ground and at-the falling breaks
li glaiues. Mais chil ne iut gaires a terre. car tost fu
the lance But that-one not lay much on ground for quickly was-he
en pies salis. & li nouiax cheualiers dist a monsignor kex.
on feet leapt and the new knight says to my-lord Kay
Mesire keus a chestui vous tenes si me laisies chel autre.
My-lord Kay to this-one yourself hold so to-me leave that other
& keus ne li respont mie anchois se combat moult
and Kay not to-him answers at-all rather himself fights very
durement entre lui & son cheualier. Lors se traist ariere
hard between him and his knight Then himself draws back
li nouiaus cheualiers si deschent. & vient vers son cheualier
the new knight so dismounts and comes toward his knight
si iete son escu sor sa teste lespee en la main. & chil
so throws his shield over his head the-sword in the hand and that-one
refait autretel si sentredounent grans cals parmi les escus
does-again the-same so give-each-other great blows through the shields

& parmi les hiaumes & sor les bras & sor les espaules
and through the helms and on the arms and on the shoulders
& la ou il se peuent entrataindre. si dure moult
and there where they themselves can reach-each-other so lasts very
longement la bataille daus .ij. tant que li cheualiers nel
long the battle of-them two until that the knight not-it
puet souffrir. Ains guerpist plache plus & plus. Et chil
can endure Rather yields-he place more and more And that-one
prent terre sor lui. & li cheualiers guenchist tant com il
takes ground upon him and the knight swerves as-much as he
puet. Mais guenchiers ne li vaut noient. car il le haste
can But swerving not to-him avails anything for he him presses
moult & bien veoient que il en a le pior de moult &
much and well they-saw that he thereof has the worst by much and
que trop est au desous. Et entre keu & li sien cheualier
that too-much is-he at-the below And between Kay and the his knight
orent lor cheuax ochis. & furent a pie. Et li nouiax
had their horses killed and were on foot And the new
cheualiers li redist. venes cha sire kex. car vous vees bien
knight to-him says-again come here lord Kay for you see well
comment il est. & vous me laissies chelui. Car iai autre
how it is and you to-me leave that-one For I-have other
chose a faire que chi demourer toute ior. & kex a moult
thing to do than here to-stay all day and Kay has very
grant honte si li redist par courous; biax sire bien vous
great shame so to-him says-again in anger fair lord well to-you
couiegne del vostre & le mien me laisies. Et lors recort
may-it-befall of-the yours and the mine to-me leave And then runs-again
li nouiax cheualiers sus a son cheualier. Et chil se
the new knight upon to his knight And that-one himself
desfendist volentiers sil peust. Mais sa desfense li vaut
would-defend willingly if-he could But his defense to-him avails

peu. & quant il voit quil la si au desous mis si le
little and when he sees that-he him-has so at-the below put so him
deporte. Car il ne voloit mie faire honte a monsignor kex.
spares For he not wished at-all to-do shame to my-lord Kay
& si vausist bien que pais en fust. & dautre part
and so would-wish-he well that peace thereof were and on-other part
se rest mesire kex tant combatus au sien. quil le
himself is-again my-lord Kay so-much fought with-the his that-he him
met au desous. & bien voit li rois de northumberlande
puts at-the below and well sees the king of northumberland
que deuers aus ni a mais point de desfense.
that toward them not-there has more any of defense
Lors mande pais a la dame. & li mande quil
Then sends-he peace to the lady and to-her sends-word that-he
sen ira il & ses gens. & toute sa terre li laira
himself-thence will-go he and his people and all her land to-her will-leave
quitement. ne iamais ne li fera mal. ne a li ne a sa
freely nor ever-more not to-her will-do harm nor to her nor to her
terre. si len asseure par sairement & par ostages. Si
land so her-thereof assures-he by oath and by hostages So
ont faite la pais en tel maniere. Et la dame vient as
have-they made the peace in such manner And the lady comes to-the
.ij. cheualiers qui por li se combatent si dist que ele a
two knights who for her themselves fight so says that she has
pais a son talent. si les depart. li rois de northumberlande
peace at her desire so them parts the king of northumberland
sen reuait & enmaine ses gens. & la dame remeist
himself-thence goes-back and leads-off his people and the lady remained
en boine pais. & lendemain sen reuait mesire kex
in good peace and the-next-day himself-thence goes-back my-lord Kay
a la court ariere. Et conta au roi comment li affaires est
to the court back And told to-the king how the affair is

ales. & le merchia moult de par le dame de nohaut.
gone and him thanked much on behalf-of the lady of nohaut
Et li nouiaus cheualiers remest a nohaut. Car la dame le
And the new knight remained at nohaut For the lady him
retint tant com ele pot. & quant plus retenir nel pot
kept as-long as she could and when more to-keep not-him could-she
si len pesa moult. & il sen parti a .j. lundi
so to-her-thereof weighed much and he himself-thence parted on a Monday
matin si le conuoia la dame meisme a grant plente de
morning so him escorted the lady herself with great plenty of
cheualiers & moult se poroffri a li & a sa terre & a
knights and much herself offered to him both to her land and to
son voloir. Quant ele lot conuoie vne grant pieche. si le
his will When she him-had escorted a great while so her
fist li cheualiers retorner a forche. & quant il furent tout
made the knight return by force and when they were all
retorne ne retorna mie li cheualiers qui lespee auoit aportee
returned not returned at-all the knight who the-sword had brought
de la roine. ains le conuoia moult uolentiers. Car il lamoit
from the queen rather him escorted very willingly For he him-loved
moult et prisoit dedens son cuer si li dist. Sire ie sui
much and prized within his heart so to-him says Lord I am
a vostre plaisir. ne de chose que iaie vers vous faite vous
at your pleasure nor of thing that I-have toward you done you
prie por dieu quil ne vous anuit mie. De quel chose fait
pray-I for God that-it not you may-annoy at-all Of what thing says
li cheualiers. de ce que ie vous menai combatre as .ij.
the knight of this that I you led to-fight with-the two
cheualiers por la puchele qui estoit el lac. Car ie nel fis
knights for the maiden who was in-the lake For I not-it did
se por vostre grant honor non. & si vous dirai comment
except for your great honor not and so to-you shall-tell how

che fu. Madame dist quele feroit esprouer le cheualier que
this was My-lady said that-she would-make test the knight whom
li rois li enuoieroit por faire sa bataille ains quele li
the king to-her would-send for to-do her battle before that-she him-there
meist. si menuoia & ches .ij. a qui nous ioustames por
put so me-sent and these two with whom we jousted for
combatre a vous & por che nen oserent il plus faire
to-fight with you and for this not-thereof dared they more do
quant ie vous baillai mespee. & vous deistes & que ie les
when I to-you handed my-sword and you said and that I them
vous laisasse ans .ij. Car il quiderent bien que vous fuissies
to-you should-leave both two For they thought well that you were
plus naures que vous nesties. & li grans cheualiers fait il
more wounded than you were and the great knight says he
qui estoit. Sire fait il chestoit vns cheualiers de moult grant
who was-he Lord says he that-was a knight of very great
proeche qui a non autragais. si estoit poroffers a madame
prowess who has name Autragais so was-he offered to my-lady
de faire sa bataille. par si que ele li dounast samor. Et
to do her battle by so that she to-him gave her-love And
ele dist que sil estoit mieudres cheualiers que chil que li
she said that if-he was better knight than that-one whom the
rois li enuoieroit ele li donroit samor. & le metroit a
king to-her would-send she to-him would-give her-love and him would-put to
sa bataille. & il desiroit lamor madame seur toutes choses.
her battle and he desired the-love (of-)my-lady above all things
& por che ne deingna il iouster se desarmes non. &
and for this not deigned he to-joust except unarmed not and
sachies que sil vous eust conquis. il eust faite la bataille.
know that if-he you had conquered he would-have done the battle

Or vous ai dite locoison porquoi chist agait furent
Now to-you have-I said the-occasion wherefore these ambushes were
basti. si vous pri por dieu que vous me pardones le mesfait.
built so you beg-I for God that you to-me pardon the misdeed
Chertes fait il mesfait ni voi ie nul. & se mesfait i ot
Certainly says he misdeed not-there see I any and if misdeed there was
iel vous pardoins. Sire fait il grant merchis. & sachies bien
I-it to-you pardon Lord says he great thanks and know well
que ie sui vostres cheualiers en tous lieus. & chil len
that I am your knight in all places and that-one him-thereof
merchie moult. & puis sentrecommandent a dieu si se
thanks much and then commend-each-other to God so themselves
partent li vns de lautre. Li cheualiers nouiaus sen
part the one from the-other The knight new himself-thence
vait entre lui & ses escuiers. & sapense quil veut aler
goes between him and his squires and himself-bethinks that-he wishes to-go
cheleement en teil maniere que nus nel connoisse. Com
secretly in such manner that anyone not-him know As
chil qui bee a los & a honor conquerre. Lors est entres en
that-one who aims at praise and at honor to-win Then is-he entered into
vne grant forest si cheuauche toute ior sans auenture trouer
a great forest so rides all day without adventure finding
qui a raconter fache ne dont on doie parler. la nuit iut en
which to tell may-be nor whereof one ought speak the night lay-he in
la forest en vne maison de religion. ou grans honors li
the forest in a house of religion where great honor to-him
fu faite. Al matin i laisse ses escuiers si lor commande
was done At-the morning there leaves-he his squires so to-them commands
quil latendent. & quil ne se moeuent deuant .j.
that-they him-await and that-they not themselves move before a
mois. sil ne voient son cors meisme. lors sen part de
month if-they not see his body own then himself-thence parts from

la maison. & ele estoit bien .xxx. lieues engleses loig de
the house and it was well thirty leagues English far from
nohaut. En chele maison auoit vne sepulture que len apeloit
nohaut In that house was a sepulcher which one called
leucan. Chil leucans fu nies ioseph de arismachie. dont li
Leucan That Leucan was nephew (of-)Joseph of arimathea from-whom the
grans lignages descendi par qui la grans bertaigne fu puis
great lineage descended by whom the great britain was afterward
enluminee. Car il porterent le graal. & conquisent la terre
illumined For they carried the grail and conquered the land
des mescreans a nostre signor & de chelui gisoit li cors
from-the misbelievers for our Lord and of that-one lay the body
en la maison de religion. que vous aueis oie par deuant.
in the house of religion which you have heard by before

The Queen's Ford

XLIII

Lancelot sits thinking by a river, and a knight rides through the ford and splashes him, forbidding him to cross in the name of the queen, who has set him to guard it. The knight seizes his bridle; Lancelot unhorses him, returns his horse, and they fight with swords until the other, Alibon, son of the vavasor of the Queen's Ford, yields and asks his name. The tale tells how the ford was named, when Arthur, Gawain, Urien, Lot, Yvain, and Kay held it against the seven kings. Alibon goes to the queen to ask who the white knight is.

Quant li cheualiers nouiax se fu partis de la maison. si
When the knight new himself was parted from the house so
cheuaucha si comme auenture le mena. vne eure auant &
rode-he so as adventure him led one hour forward and
lautre ariere. tant quil est hors de toute la terre de nohaut
the-other back until that-he is out of all the land of nohaut
.j. ior auint quil ot cheuauchie iusca miedi. si li prinst
one day befell that-he had ridden until midday so to-him took
moult grant talent de boire. Et il cheuauche vers vne riuiere.
very great desire to drink And he rides toward a river
& quant il i uient si deschendi & but. Et quant il ot
and when he there comes so dismounted-he and drank And when he had
beu si sasist sor la riuiere si commencha a penser moult
drunk so himself-sat on the river so began to think very
durement. & maintenant vint vns cheualiers tous armes
hard and at-once came a knight all armed
de lautre part de liauwe. & se fiert el gue moult
from the-other part of the-water and himself strikes into-the ford very
durement. si quil fist liauwe uoler sor le cheualier pensant.
hard so that-he made the-water fly on the knight thinking
& le moille tout. Chil laissa son penser si se dreche
and him wets all That-one left his thinking so himself raises

& dist au cheualier. Sire cheualiers or maues vous moult
and says to-the knight Lord knight now me-have you much
moillie. & autre anui maues vous fait. Car mon penser
wetted and other annoyance to-me-have you done For my thinking
maues tolu. Moult mest ore poi de vous ne de vostre
me-have-you taken Very to-me-is now little of you nor of your
pensei fait chil. lors monte li nouiaus cheualiers. car aler
thought says that-one then mounts the new knight for to-go
sen veut sans meller a chelui. por sauoir sil poroit
himself-thence wishes-he without fighting with him for to-know if-he could
son penser recourer. ainsi douchement com il faisoit. Lors
his thinking recover as sweetly as he did Then
entre el gue por passer outre. Et li cheualiers li dist.
enters-he into-the ford for to-pass beyond And the knight to-him says
mar i passastes sire vassaus. Car madame la roine ma
ill there passed-you lord vassal For my-lady the queen to-me-has
commandee cest gue a garder que nus ni past. Et
commanded this ford to keep that anyone not-there pass And
chil demande quel roine. la feme le roi artu fait chil.
that-one asks what queen the wife (of-)the king Arthur says that-one
Quant chil lot. si guenchist contremont la riuiere.
When that-one it-heard so turns-aside up the river
si sen commencha a aler. Et li cheualiers vait apres
so himself-thence began to go And the knight goes after
lui sel prent au fraim. Estes fait il. cest cheual vous
him so-him takes by-the bridle Stop says he this horse you
couient laissier. porquoi fait li nouiax cheualiers. por che
behooves to-leave wherefore says the new knight for this
fait il que vous entrastes el gue ne tant ne quant.
says he that you entered into-the ford either so-much nor how-much
Maintenant oste vn des pies de son estrier. & quant
At-once removes-he one of-the feet from his stirrup and when

il ot que li cheualiers ne dist plus si lesgarde. Dites moi
he hears that the knight not says more so him-looks-at Tell me
qui le commande fait il & chil dist que la roine. Dites
who it commands says he and that-one says that the queen Say
le vous com loiax cheualiers. & il dist quil ni a
it you as loyal knight and he says that-it not-there has
commandement se le sien non. le vostre fait il par mon
command except the hers not the yours says he by my
chief vous ne le menres hui mais par vous. & touteuois le
head you not it will-lead today more by you and all-the-same it
tient chil par le fraim. laissies mon freim fait li nouiax
holds that-one by the bridle leave my bridle says the new
cheualiers. Non ferai fait il. Et il met le main a lespee
knight Not shall-I-do says he And he puts the hand to the-sword
& la trait moitie fors del fuerre. & chil le laisse &
and it draws half out of-the scabbard and that-one it leaves and
dist. chertes mar le traisistes. Lors sesloigne & prent
says certainly ill it drew-you Then himself-withdraws and takes
lescu par les enarmes. puis met le lanche sous laissele &
the-shield by the straps then puts the lance under the-armpit and
laisse courre a chelui. Et chil se cueure de son escu
lets run at that-one And that-one himself covers with his shield
& sadreche encontre lui. Li cheualiers quil le gue deuoit
and himself-directs against him The knight who the ford was-to
garder le fiert si que toute sa lanche vole en pieches. &
keep him strikes so that all his lance flies in pieces and
li nouiax cheualiers fiert lui si quil le porte a terre. Il
the new knight strikes him so that-he him bears to ground He
vient au cheual si le prent & li a amene. Tenes fait
comes to-the horse so it takes and to-him has brought Take says
il vostre cheual. & si vous fac droit de che que ie vous
he your horse and so to-you do-I right for this that I you

ai abatu. Mais iel fis sor moi desfendant. Chil tient a
have struck-down But I-it did on myself defending That-one holds in
moult grant despit chou quil la abatu Car il ne seit
very great scorn this that-he him-has struck-down For he not knows
qui il est si remonte. Puis li a dit cheualiers dites
who he is so remounts Then to-him has-he said knight tell
moi qui vous estes. Ne vous en dirai rien fait chil.
me who you are Not to-you thereof shall-tell anything says that-one
& touteuois sen va contremont la riue. & chil le
and all-the-same himself-thence goes up the bank and that-one him
reprent au fraim & dit. Or saurai ie qui vous estes
takes-again by-the bridle and says Now shall-know I who you are
anchois que vous mescapes. Certes fait il che ne sera mais
before that you me-escape Certainly says he this not will-be more
hui. Dont vous combateres vous a moi fait chil. A vous
today Then yourself will-fight you with me says that-one With you
fait li nouiax cheualiers ne me combaterai ie hui mais. Car
says the new knight not myself shall-fight I today more For
vous aues trop boin conduit puis que madame vous conduit.
you have too good conduct since that my-lady you conducts
Mais ensi ne salose mie preudom de faire anui &
But thus not himself-praises at-all worthy-man to do annoyance and
honte as cheualiers errans por seurte as hautes dames.
shame to-the knights errant for surety of-the high ladies
Et chil dist que por seurte de la roine ne se vaut mie
And that-one says that for surety of the queen not himself wished at-all
combatre. Car ie ne sui mie a lui fait il & por che vous
to-fight For I not am at-all to her says he and for this you
combateres a moi. Ou vous me dires vostre non. Se vous
will-fight with me Or you to-me will-say your name If you
me fianchies fait li nouiax cheualiers que vous nestes mie a
to-me pledge says the new knight that you not-are at-all to

li ie feroie lun des .ij. & il le fianche. Or aures la
her I would-do the-one of-the two and he it pledges Now will-have-you the
bataille fait li nouiax cheualiers se vous voles. Car vous ne
battle says the new knight if you wish For you not
saures mie qui ie sui. & chil dist quil miex ne quiert.
will-know at-all who I am and that-one says that-he better not seeks
Lors se requierent moult fierement as espees tout a
Then themselves attack very fiercely with-the swords all on
cheual. & chil estoit moult preus. si auoit non alybons. li
horse and that-one was very valiant so had name Alibon the
fiex au vauasor del gue la roine. & chis gues auoit ensi
son of-the vavasor of-the ford (of-)the queen and this ford had thus
a non pour che que la roine le troua auant que nus. dedens
to name for this that the queen it found before that anyone within
les .ij. ans quele auoit prins le roi artu. Et quant li .vij. roi
the two years that-she had taken the king Arthur And when the seven kings
lasalirent as tres a la iornee la ou il sestoit logies sor
him-assailed at-the tents at the day there where he himself-was lodged on
hombre quant tout furent descomfit. & fui cascuns la ou
humber when all were discomfited and fled each-one there where
fuir pot. Et la recoura li rois & mesire gauuain & li
to-flee could And there recovered the king and my-lord Gawain and the
rois vriens & li rois loth ses freires & mesire yeuuains qui
king Urien and the king Lot his brother and my-lord Yvain who
encore estoit iones & de petit pris & bachelers. & messires
yet was young and of little prize and bachelor and my-lord
keus autresi qui le Ior fist la grant proeche par quoi il fu
Kay likewise who that Day did the great prowess by which he was
en grant pris & senescaus clames ains quil le fust. Iluec
in great prize and seneschal called before that-he it were There
lor auint la bele auenture quant il vindrent au gue. Et
to-them befell the fair adventure when they came to-the ford And

la roine fu passee qui senfuioit. Et kex dist quil ne fuiroit
the queen was passed who herself-fled And Kay said that-he not would-flee
plus deuant quil sauroit porcoi. & lors virent les .vij. venir
more before that-he would-know wherefore and then saw-they the seven come
a esperons deuant tous lor gens le trait de .ij. ars. Car
at spurs before all their people the shot of two bows For
li autre entendoient au grant gaaig qui estoit as tentes.
the others attended to-the great gain which was at-the tents
Et li rois vriens dist quil se meissent outre liauwe
And the king Urien said that-they themselves should-put beyond the-water
car la ne douteroient il rien. Et lors dist keus que
for there not would-fear they anything And then said Kay that
dehais ait qui passera laigue quex que il soit. deuant
ill-luck may-have who will-pass the-water whoever that he be before
quil eust ioste al roi. Ia sont il dist il autretant
that-he had jousted with-the king Already are they said he as-many
com nous. & li rois vriens dist keu il sont .vij. & nous
as we and the king Urien said Kay they are seven and we
sommes .vj. Moi ne caut dist keu. Car iou en ochirai
are six To-me not matters said Kay For I thereof shall-kill
.ij. a par moi. bien se gart chascuns de vous quil
two by by myself well himself may-guard each of you what-he
fera & il dist voir. Car il en ochist .j. de sa glaiue &
will-do and he said truth For he thereof killed one with his lance and
vn autre de sespee. & chascuns des autres ochist le sien.
an other with his-sword and each of-the others killed the his

Che fu la plus honeree auenture qui onques auenist au
This was the most honored adventure which ever befell to-the
roi artu. Iteus fu lauenture del gue. Mais ore dirons des .ij.
king Arthur Such was the-adventure of-the ford But now shall-we-tell of-the two
cheualiers qui se combatent. si est tant dure la mellee que
knights who themselves fight so is so hard the melee that

moult se sont blechie. Mais en la fin ne pot durer alibons.
much themselves are hurt But in the end not could endure Alibon
& quant il voit que chest sans recourier. si dist quil ne se
and when he sees that it-is without recovery so says that-he not himself
combatera plus. Et li autres dist que a tant ne sen ira
will-fight more And the other says that at that not himself-thence will-go
il mie. porquoi fait il. Ia ne nous combatons por nule querele.
he at-all wherefore says he Ever not ourselves fight-we for any quarrel
& se querele i a ie la vous quit. Il i a tel querele fait
and if quarrel there is I it to-you yield It there has such quarrel says
li nouiax cheualiers que vous me moillastes & feistes honte.
the new knight that you me wetted and did shame
sel vous amenderai fait chil a vostre deuise. & ie vous en
so-it to-you shall-amend says that-one at your devising and I you thereof
quit fait il. grans merchis fait alybons. Mais or vous pri que
quit says he great thanks says Alibon But now you beg-I that
vous me dies uostre non. & chil li dist quil ne li
you to-me say your name and that-one to-him says that-he not to-him
dira mie. & ie vous requier fait chil quil ne vous poist
will-say at-all and I you request says that-one that-it not you may-weigh
mie se ie vois en tel lieu ou len le me dira. & chil
at-all if I go into such place where one it to-me will-say and that-one
dist quil veut bien quil aille partout la ou li plaira.
says that-he wishes well that-he go everywhere there where to-him will-please
Atant sen part li vns de lautre. Et li cheualiers
Thereupon himself-thence parts the one from the-other And the knight
del gue sen vient droit a la cort le roi artu ou
of-the ford himself-thence comes straight to the court (of-)the king Arthur where
il estoit bien conneus. & vient tout droit a la roine si li
he was well known and comes all straight to the queen so to-her
dist. Dame ie sui venus a vous de loing. Si vous pri que
says Lady I am come to you from far So you beg-I that

vous me diies se vous le saues qui est vns cheualiers a
you to-me say if you it know who is a knight with
vnes blanches armes & a .j. blanc cheual. Porcoi le dites
some white arms and with a white horse Why it say
vous fait la roine se diex vous ait ne par la rien que vous
you says the queen so God you may-help or by the thing that you
plus ames. Dame fait il por che que ie vous merchie moult
most love Lady says he for this that I you thank much
de lui. Et de quoi fait la roine. & il li conte si com
for him And for what says the queen and he to-her tells so as
la chose auoit este & les paroles toutes. Et ie quit dame
the thing had been and the words all And I think lady
fait il que seie li eusse dit que vous li mandisies. Il
says he that if-I to-him had said that you to-him sent-word He
meust son cheual baillie. Car ie ne gardai onques le gue
to-me-would-have his horse handed For I not kept ever the ford
par vous. Dame dist il encore me fist il plus. Car il me
by you Lady says he yet to-me did he more For he to-me
rendi mon cheual puis quil mot abatu. & de che vous
gave-back my horse after that-he me-had struck-down and for this you
merchi ie. & puis apres nous combatimes ensamble moult
thank I and then after we fought together very
longement. liqueus en ot le pire fait la roine. Dame fait il
long which-one thereof had the worse says the queen Lady says he
chertes iou. ie nen quier mentir. Mais or me dites qui
certainly I I not-thereof seek to-lie But now to-me tell who
il est. Si mait diex fait ele ie ne sai ne son non ne
he is So me-may-help God says she I not know either his name nor
qui il est. Mais messires li rois le fist cheualier a le feste
who he is But my-lord the king him made knight at the feast
saint Iehan. si a puis fait asses darmes en maint lieu &
(of-)Saint John so has-he since done many of-arms in many place and

voiant chaus de laiens & autres. Mais por dieu itant me
seeing those of in-there and others But for God so-much to-me
dites sil est haities & sains. Dame fait il oil. Tant est alee
tell if-he is well and sound Lady says he yes So-far is gone
la parole que par toute la cort est ia seue. si en est li
the word that through all the court is-it already known so thereof is the
rois moult lies & le plus de cheus qui loirent. Ne plus ne
king very glad and the most of those who it-heard Nor more not
parole chi endroit li contes del roi ne de la roine. Anchois
speaks here in-place the tale of-the king nor of the queen Rather
retorne au cheualier as armes blanches qui sen vait.
returns-it to-the knight with-the arms white who himself-thence goes

The Gates of the Dolorous Guard

XLIV

Lancelot meets a damsel grieving for her friend, killed at a castle where every knight errant dies or is imprisoned. It is the Dolorous Guard, on a rock above the Humber: at each of its two gates a knight must fight ten, one after another, each replaced when he tires, and a copper knight with an axe stands over the second gate. A veiled damsel tells him the custom and warns him off. A knight comes out; Lancelot kills him, then beats four more in turn before night ends the fighting, and the veiled damsel takes him to lodge in the borough.

Quant li blans cheualiers se fu partis dalibon le fil au
When the white knight himself was parted from-Alibon the son of-the
vavassor. si erra toute ior sans auenture trouer dont a
vavasor so traveled-he all day without adventure finding whereof to
parler fache. la nuit iut chis vn forestier qui moult bien le
speak be-fitting the night lay-he at a forester who very well him
herberga. Lendemain fu matin leues. et cheuaucha toute la
lodged The-next-day was-he early risen and rode all the

matinee iusquendroit tierche. & lors encontra vne damoisele
morning until-toward tierce and then met-he a damsel
sor vn palefroi. merueilleus duel faisant. Il li demande que
on a palfrey marvelous grief making He of-her asks what
ele a. & ele dist quele a le plus grant duel que ele eust
she has and she says that-she has the most great grief that she had
onques. Et il li demande de coi. Iai fait ele mon ami
ever And he of-her asks of what I-have says she my friend
mort en vn castel chi deriere .j. des plus biax cheualiers du
dead in a castle here behind one of-the most fair knights of-the
monde. Damoisele fait il porquoi. sire fait ele por les maluaises
world Damsel says he wherefore lord says she for the evil
coustumes qui i sont. Que maleoite soit lame de chelui qui
customs which there are For cursed be the-soul of him who
lestabli. Car onques cheualiers errans ni entra qui ni
them-established For ever knight errant not-there entered who not-there
morust. & i entera il ia cheualiers fait il qui ni mure.
died and there will-enter it ever knight says he who not-there die
Oil fait ele sil pooit achieuer che que lauenture requiert.
Yes says she if-he could achieve this that the-adventure requires
Mais il le couendroit estre mieudres que nus cheualiers qui
But it him would-behoove to-be better than any knight who
ore soit. Damoisele fait il que requiert lauenture dites le moi.
now be Damsel says he what requires the-adventure tell it to-me
Se vous uoles fait ele lauenture sauoir si i ales. Car chen
If you wish says she the-adventure to-know so there go For this-thence
est la voie. Atant sen vait grant aleure faisant son duel
is the way Thereupon herself-thence goes great pace making her grief
que ele auoit commenchie. & chil cheuauche les galos tant
that she had begun and that-one rides the gallops until
quil vit le castel. & il cheuauche la tout droit. Et tantost
that-he saw the castle and he rides there all straight And at-once

vient deuant la porte lors esgarda le castel si voit quil siet
comes before the gate then looked-at-he the castle so sees that-it sits
trop orguelleusement & trop bel. Car toute la fortereche
very proudly and very fair For all the fortress
siet en vne haute roche naie & si nest mie petite. Car
sits on a high rock native and so not-is-it at-all small For
ele a detor sans plus cune arbaleste ne trairoit. Au pie
it has of-round without more than-a crossbow — would-shoot At-the foot
de la roche de lautre part cort li hombres. & dautre part
of the rock on the-other part runs the humber and on-other part
cort .j. grant rix qui vient de plus de .xl. fontaines qui
runs a great brook which comes from more than forty springs which
toutes sourdent a mains dune archie del pie de la tor.
all rise at less of-a bowshot from-the foot of the tower

Li cheualiers cheuauche droit a la porte del castel tout
The knight rides straight to the gate of-the castle all
contremont. & quant il vient pres si la treuue close. &
uphill and when he comes near so it finds-he closed and
moult bien fremee. ne cele porte nestoit nule fois ouerte. &
very well fastened nor that gate not-was any time open and
li castiax auoit non la dolorouse garde. por che que nus
the castle had name the dolorous guard for this that any
cheualiers errans ni venist quil ni morust ou quil
knight errant not-there came that-he not-there died or that-he
ne fust emprisones au mains si tost com len venoit au
not were imprisoned at-the least so soon as one came to-the
desus & chestoit de tous cheus qui i uenoient. Car nus
above and that-was of all those who there came For anyone
ne pooit souffrir le paine des armes quil i couenoit. Car
not could endure the pain of-the arms which-it there behooved For
il i auoit .ij. paire de murs. & a chascun mur auoit vne
it there had two pair of walls and at each wall was a

porte. & a chascune porte couenoit le cheualier combatre
gate and at each gate behooved the knight to-fight
a .x. cheualiers. Mais che estoit en vne moult estraigne
with ten knights But this was in a very strange
maniere. Car si tost comme li .j. des cheualiers estoit las
manner For so soon as the one of-the knights was weary
& il ne voloit plus combatre. si estoit appareillies vns autres
and he not wished more to-fight so was ready an other
& venoit en son lieu si se combatoit por lui. Et quant
and came in his place so himself fought for him And when
chil estoit las si venoit vns autres. Et ensi ne pooit vns
that-one was weary so came an other And thus not could a
seus cheualiers entrer. sil nestoit de tel proeche & de si
single knight enter if-he not-were of such prowess and of so
grant forche que tous les peust ochire lun apres lautre.
great strength that all them he-could kill the-one after the-other
Desus lautre mur en haut desus la porte. si auoit .j.
Upon the-other wall on high above the gate so was a
cheualier forme de cueure & fu grans & corsus sor son
knight formed of copper and was tall and big-bodied on his
cheual armes de toutes armes. Et tenoit en ses .ij. mains
horse armed in all arms And held in his two hands
vne grant hache. si estoit la sus drechies par enchantement.
a great axe so was-he there up raised by enchantment
Et tant com il fust en estant nauoit garde li castiax
And as-long as he were in standing not-had fear the castle
destre conquis par nul homme. Mais si tost com il entroit
of-being conquered by any man But so soon as he entered
dedens la premiere porte. qui le castel deuroit conquerre &
within the first gate who the castle was-to conquer and
il porroit le cheualier de cueure veoir. tantost carroit a
he could the knight of copper see at-once he-would-fall to

terre. & lors sen iroient tout li enchantement del
ground and then themselves-thence would-go all the enchantments of-the
chastel dont il estoit tous plains. En teil maniere quil
castle whereof it was all full In such manner that-they
seroient veu apertement. Mais del tout ne remandroient il
would-be seen openly But of-the all not would-remain-behind they
mie. deuant que chil qui le castel conquerroit i demorast
at-all before that that-one who the castle would-conquer there stayed
.xl. iors sans iesir hors nule nuit. Tele estoit la forche
forty days without lying out any night Such was the force
des enchantemens del castel. & par desous estoit li bors
of-the enchantments of-the castle and by below was the borough
assis aaisies ou len pooit trouer toutes les choses qui
set comfortable where one could find all the things which
mestier eussent a nul cheualier errant. Si i auoit non li
need might-have to any knight errant So there had name the
bors chaneuinche. & seoit tres desus la riuiere de hombre.
borough chaneuinche and sat right above the river of humber
Quant li cheualiers as blanches armes vint deuant la
When the knight with-the white arms came before the
porte & il la vit fremee si en fu moult angoiseus. Et
gate and he it saw fastened so thereof was-he very anguished And
lors vient encontre lui vne damoisele de moult grant biaute
then comes toward him a damsel of very great beauty
si le salue & il li. Damoisele fait il sauries vous moi dire
so him greets and he her Damsel says he could you me tell
nule verite del couine de laiens. la damoisele fu enuolepee
any truth of-the condition of in-there the damsel was wrapped
moult bien. Car sele fust descouerte il leust bien
very well For if-she were uncovered he her-would-have well
conneue. & ele li deuise tout le couine de laiens. Et
known and she to-him describes all the condition of in-there And

comment fait il le couient combatre. & a quel meschief
how says he him behooves to-fight and at what mischief
sil veut entrer. Mais se vous men crees fait ele vous
if-he wishes to-enter But if you me-thereof believe says she you
ni penseres ia. neis que vous i entres.
not-there will-think ever no-more than you there enter

Damoisele fait il ensi ne remandrai ie mie. Ou ie saurai le
Damsel says he thus not shall-remain I at-all Either I shall-know the
couine de laiens. ou ie serai mis auoec les autres prodommes.
condition of in-there or I shall-be put with the other worthy-men
qui laiens ont este ochis. Car ie porai bien faillir a plus
who in-there have been killed For I shall-be-able well fail to more
honeree vie auoir. Atant sen part la damoisele. &
honored life have Thereupon herself-thence parts the damsel and
ia estoit moult tart si tornoit vers le vespre. Et tantost
already was-it very late so it-turned toward the evening And at-once
oi li cheualiers .j. homme desus la porte en haut. qui
heard the knight a man above the gate on high who
li demande sire cheualiers que querres vous. Laiens fait il
of-him asks lord knight what seek you In-there says he
voudroie ore estre. Certes fait chil qui garde estoit. quant
would-wish-I now to-be Certainly says that-one who guard was when
vous i estres che deura vous peser. Ie ne sai fait il.
you there will-be this will-have-to you weigh I not know says he
Mais por dieu biax amis hastes moi ma besoigne. car il iert
But for God fair friend hasten for-me my business for it will-be
ia nuis. Maintenant soune chil .j. moienel. Et vn poi apres
soon night At-once sounds that-one a horn And a little after
ist de laiens .j. cheualier par le guichet de la porte. &
goes-out from in-there a knight by the wicket of the gate and
fu armes cors & menbres. & ses cheuax fu trais apres lui
was armed body and limbs and his horse was drawn after him

& il dist a lautre. sire cheualiers la aual vous couint traire.
and he says to the-other lord knight there below you behooves to-draw
Car chi na mie plache. ou nous nous puissons combatre
For here not-is at-all place where we ourselves may fight
aaisiement. Et chil respont que che li est bel. lors sont
comfortably And that-one answers that this to-him is fair then are-they
venu aual au pie de la tor. si sentreuienent si tost com
come down to-the foot of the tower so meet-each-other as fast as
li cheual lor porent coure. & sentrefierent sor les escus si
the horses them could run and strike-each-other on the shields as
grans caus com il peuent grignors. Li cheualiers del chastel
great blows as they can greater The knight of-the castle
brise son glaiue & chil au blanc escu le fiert en haut
breaks his lance and that-one with-the white shield him strikes on high
desor la borcle si len fait rompre le cuir & les
above the boss so to-him-thereof makes break the leather and the
ais desioindre. & li caus fu pesans & trenchans li fers
boards come-apart and the blow was heavy and cutting the iron
si nel pot souffrir li haubers. a che que de grant vertu
so not-it could withstand the hauberk to this that with great force
fu empains. si derompirent les mailles & li fers passe
was-it thrust so burst the mails and the iron passes
au cheualier parmi le cors si vole a terre des archons
to-the knight through the body so flies-he to ground from-the saddlebows
comme chil qui mors estoit. Quant li blans cheualiers le
as that-one who dead was When the white knight him
voit keu si deschent. Car il ne quide mie quil soit mors.
sees fallen so dismounts For he not thinks at-all that-he be dead
si li court sus lespee traite. & quant il voit quil ne
so to-him runs upon the-sword drawn and when he sees that-he not

se relieue si li esrache le hiaume de la teste. &
himself rises-again so from-him tears the helm from the head and
quant il voit quil est mors si en est moult courechies.
when he sees that-he is dead so thereof is-he very grieved
Atant est sonnes li cors si reuient vns autres grant
Thereupon is sounded the horn so comes-again an other great
aleure. Et quant chil le voit venir. si rest montes &
pace And when that-one him sees come so is-again mounted and
retrait son glaiue qui estoit el cors al cheualier. si
draws-back his lance which was in-the body of-the knight so
sentrelaissent coure tant com li cheual pueent rendre. Chis
let-each-other run as-much as the horses can give This-one
du castel a fali. & li blans cheualiers le fiert si que li
of-the castle has failed and the white knight him strikes so that the
escus na duree. Mais li haubers remest entiers. & chil
shield not-has lasting But the hauberk remained whole and that-one
lempaint bien qui asses ot forche & plus cuer. si lesrache
him-thrusts well who enough had strength and more heart so him-tears
del cheual. & le porte par desus la crupe del cheual
from-the horse and him bears over above the croup of-the horse
a terre. & au caioir li auint que il brise le destre
to ground and at-the falling to-him befell that he breaks the right
brach si se pasme. Et chil qui abatu lot se
arm so himself faints And that-one who struck-down him-had himself
remet a terre. & tantost li errache le hiaume de la
puts-again to ground and at-once from-him tears the helm from the
teste. & quant il reuint de paumison si li manache le
head and when he came-back from swoon so to-him threatens the
chief a coper. sil ne li fianche prison. & ia refu
head to cut if-he not to-him pledges prison and already again-was
li cors sones. si reuenoit vns autres cheualiers tous armes
the horn sounded so came-again an other knight all armed

aual le tertre. Et li blans cheualiers se haste moult de
down the hill And the white knight himself hastens much to
son cheualier conquerre. sel tient si cort. que por paor
his knight conquer so-him holds so short that for fear
de mort li fianche prison. Maintenant rest chil salis
of death to-him pledges prison At-once is-again that-one leapt
en son cheual & reprent son glaiue qui encore tenoit en
on his horse and takes-again his lance which still held in
lescu au cheualier. Si muet encontre chelui qui vient. si
the-shield of-the knight So moves-he against him who comes so
le porte a terre moult durement. & lors brise sa lanche.
him bears to ground very hard and then breaks his lance
Li cheualiers ne demora gaires a terre ains sali sus. &
The knight not stayed much on ground rather leapt up and
chil redeschent de son cheual. si trait son escu auant.
that-one dismounts-again from his horse so draws his shield forward
lespee en la main si sentredounent grans caus partout
the-sword in the hand so give-each-other great blows everywhere
la ou il se quident empirier. Mais longement nel
there where they themselves think to-impair But long not-it
pot mie souffrir li cheualiers del chastel. Ains commenche
could at-all endure the knight of-the castle Rather begins-he
plache a guerpir. Et quant il voit que li pires en est
place to yield And when he sees that the worse thereof is
siens. si fait signe de lespee a la gaite. & chil
his so makes-he sign with the-sword to the watchman and that-one
resoune le cor. Et maintenant reuient vns cheualiers grant
sounds-again the horn And at-once comes-again a knight great
aleure qui moult fu grans & corsus & de moult grant
pace who very was tall and big-bodied and of very great
desfense par samblant. Et li blans cheualiers ne laisse mie
defense by semblance And the white knight not leaves at-all

por che le sien. ains li cort sus tant quil la moult
for this the his rather to-him runs upon so-much that-he him-has much
blechie. & chil se cueure de son escu au miex quil
hurt and that-one himself covers with his shield at-the best that-he
puet. que autre conroi ni met. Et chil li crie qui
can for other provision not-there puts And that-one to-him cries who
au secors vient. Sire laissies le cheualier. car ie vieng en
to-the succor comes Lord leave the knight for I come in
lieu de lui. Moi ne caut fait chil combien vous soies
place of him To-me not matters says that-one how-many you be
mais que ie vous puisse tous conquerre. vous naues droit
provided that I you may all conquer you not-have right
en chel autre cheualier plus touchier. Car iel vieng garandir.
in that other knight more to-touch For I-him come to-protect
Comment le garandires vous fait li blans cheualiers se vous
How him will-protect you says the white knight if you
ne poes mie vous meisme garantir. Lors a prins le glaiue
not can at-all you yourself protect Then has-he taken the lance
au cheualier a qui il sestoit combatus & est salis en
of-the knight with whom he himself-was fought and is leapt on
son cheual. si laisse coure a chelui qui vient. si le fiert de
his horse so lets run at him who comes so him strikes with
toute sa forche si durement quil porte lui & son cheual en
all his strength so hard that-he bears him and his horse into
mi le rieu dune fontaine. puis reuient al cheualier que
middle the brook of-a spring then comes-back to-the knight whom
chil secouroit. & il voloit ia remonter en son cheual.
that-one succored and he wished already to-remount on his horse
& il se reuient par lui si le fiert del pis du cheual
and he himself comes-back by him so him strikes with-the breast of-the horse
si quil le porte a terre. si le bat tant par desor le cors
so that-he him bears to ground so him beats so-much by over the body

que tout le debrise. & quil na pooir de releuer. Et
that all him breaks and that-he not-has power to rise-again And
il regarde si voit chelui qui gisoit el riu de la fontaine
he looks so sees him who lay in-the brook of the spring
que ia se releuoit. & lors li adreche lespee en la
who already himself rose-again and then to-him directs-himself the-sword in the
main sel fiert de tel aleure com il vient si quil lestoune
hand so-him strikes with such speed as he comes so that-he him-stuns
si le reboute a terre tout estendu. & li refait son
so him pushes-back to ground all stretched and to-him makes-again his
cheual aler desus le cors autretant com il fist a lautre.
horse go over the body as-much as he did to the-other
si que moult la blechie. & il se pasme de langoisse.
so that much him-has hurt and he himself faints from the-anguish
Lors reuient a lautre si deschent & li deslache le
Then comes-he-back to the-other so dismounts and to-him unlaces the
hiaume & la ventaille & le manache a coper la teste. tant
helm and the ventail and him threatens to cut the head until
que chil li fianche prison. Et tantost fu li cors sounes
that that-one to-him pledges prison And at-once was the horn sounded
& vint hors li quins cheualiers. Et quant chil le voit
and came out the fifth knight And when that-one him sees
venir si cort sus a chelui qui gist sor la fontaine. si li
come so runs upon to him who lies by the spring so from-him
sache le hiaume de la teste & li donne grant colp del
pulls the helm from the head and to-him gives great blow with-the
plat de lespee. tant que anchois que li autres uenist. li
flat of the-sword so-much that before that the other came to-him
a chil prison fianchie. Quant il voit quil est ia des .iiij.
has that-one prison pledged When he sees that-he is already of-the four
au desus. petit prise le remenant. Lors est venus a son
at-the above little prizes-he the remainder Then is-he come to his

cheual si remonte & laist coure a chelui lespee traite. Car
horse so remounts and lets run at him the-sword drawn For
de glaiue na il point. & chil pechoie sor lui son glaiue
of lance not-has he any and that-one shatters on him his lance
de tel aleure com il vient. Et li blans cheualiers sen
with such speed as he comes And the white knight himself-thence
vient par lui. si li doune tel cop de lespee a lire
comes by him so to-him gives such blow with the-sword with the-wrath
& a le forche quil ot que il li trenche le hiaume &
and with the strength that-he had that he to-him cuts the helm and
la ventaille selonc le temple senestre. si que li achiers est
the ventail along the temple left so that the steel is
deschendus de sor lorreille si li a trenchie toute iuscal
descended from above the-ear so to-him has-it cut all to-the
col. & la ioe tout autresi. & a le col si empirie que a
neck and the cheek all likewise and has the neck so impaired that with
grant paine sostient son hiaume. si la si estone quil ne
great pain holds-up-he his helm so him-has so stunned that-he not
puet arester en sele. Si vole a terre tous estendus. & au
can stay in saddle So flies-he to ground all stretched and at-the
caoir feri li cuirs del hiaume en terre si que par .j. poi
falling struck the leather of-the helm on ground so that by a little
quil na le col brisie. si a tel angoisse que li sans li
that-he not-has the neck broken so has-he such anguish that the blood to-him
vole parmi le bouce & par le nes & par les oreilles si se
flies through the mouth and by the nose and by the ears so himself
pasme. lors commenche moult durement a anuitier si que chil
faints then begins very hard to grow-dark so that those
des murs ne veoient mais se petit non comment il se
of-the walls not saw more except little not how they themselves
contienent aual. Atant ont le guichet freme. & dient chil
conduct below Thereupon have-they the wicket fastened and say those

de la vile qui as murs estoient. que onques mais nauoient
of the town who on-the walls were that ever more not-had-they
veu cheualier si viste ne tant seur. & il a tant fait quil
seen knight so swift nor so sure and he has so-much done that-he
a conquis le quint cheualier. & prison li a fianchie a
has conquered the fifth knight and prison to-him has-he pledged to
tenir la ou il vaudra. Et lors est illuec venue la damoisele
hold there where he will-wish And then is there come the damsel
qui auoit a lui parle deuant la porte si li dist. venes
who had to him spoken before the gate so to-him says come
ent sire cheualiers. Car mais anuit ne feres vous bataille.
thence lord knight For more tonight not will-do you battle
Damoisele fait il encore en i a il asses a conquerre.
Damsel says he still thereof there has it enough to conquer
Voirs est fait ele. mais il nen vendra hui mais plus.
True is-it says she but it not-thereof will-come today more more
Car li guiches est fremes. Mais le matin i poes vous
For the wicket is fastened But the morning there can you
tout a tans venir. Ce poise moi fait il damoisele. quant il
all in time come This grieves me says he damsel when they
ne uienent. Car toutes uois eusse mains a faire quant
not come For all ways I-would-have less to do when
del plus fuisse deliures. & che saues vous bien sil me
of-the more I-were delivered and this know you well if-they to-me
font droit si le me dites. Oil fait ele che sachies. Car
do right so it to-me tell Yes says she this know For
la bataille ne doit durer puis quil est nuis. Mais le matin
the battle not ought last after that-it is night But the morning
laures autresi com ore laues. & se ne fust por che
it-will-have-you just as now it-have-you and if not were-it for this
que cheualiers ne se doit chi delaier qui por la bataille
that knight not himself ought here delay who for the battle

i viegne. Il ni eust anuit colp feru. Car trop estoit
there may-come It not-there would-have tonight blow struck For too was-it
tart & che deuries vous voloir. Car vous estes asses las.
late and this ought you wish For you are very weary
Las fait il damoisele che veissies vous par tans sil fust
Weary says he damsel this would-see you by time if-it were
iors. Lors est moult iries & hontex. Car il crient quele ne
day Then is-he very angry and ashamed For he fears that-she —
li ait veu faire aucun maluais contenement. venes ent
him may-have seen do some bad conduct come thence
fait ele auoec moi. Damoisele fait il en quel lieu. la ou
says she with me Damsel says he into what place there where
ie vous herbergerai fait ele moult bien. Atant dist a chiax
I you shall-lodge says she very well Thereupon says-he to those
quil auoit conquis que il le sieuent. & il si font. &
whom-he had conquered that they him follow and they so do and
ont pris tous lor cheuax dont il estoient cheu. La damoisele
have taken all their horses whence they were fallen The damsel
maine le cheualier el bourc aual en vn ostel moult bel
leads the knight into-the borough below into a lodging very fair
& il en auoit moult grant mestier. Car moult iert las.
and he thereof had very great need For very was-he weary

The Three Shields

XLV

In his lodging Lancelot sees three silver shields with one, two, and three red bands, and the damsel unveils: she is one of the Lady of the Lake's, sent to tell him that tomorrow he will learn his name and his father's in the castle, and that each shield adds a knight's strength to his own. In the morning she warns him that ten knights must be beaten at each gate before night and that he will not die by arms while he wears helm and hauberk. He returns the four prisoners he took, and the jousts begin again.

Quant il fu a lostel. si le mena la damoisele en vne
When he was at the-lodging so him led the damsel into a
cambre por desarmer. & ele fu toutes eures enuolepee. Et
chamber for to-disarm and she was all hours wrapped And
il esgarde si voit en chele chambre .iij. escus pendus en
he looks so sees in that chamber three shields hung on
haut. & furent a toutes les hauches. Il demande a la
high and were with all the covers He asks to the
damoisele qui sont chil escu. Et ele dist quil sont a .j.
damsel whose are those shields And she says that-they are of one
seul cheualier. Damoisele fait il ie les verroie volentiers tous
single knight Damsel says he I them would-see willingly all
descouers sil vous plaisoit. & ele les fait descourir. Et
uncovered if-it you pleased and she them makes uncover And
il voit que li .iij. escu sont dargent. si a en lun vne
he sees that the three shields are of-silver so has-it on the-one a
bende vermeille de bellic & en lautre .ij. & en lautre .iij.
band red of bend and on the-other two and on the-other three
si les regarde moult grant pieche. La ou il regardoit les
so them looks-at-he very great while There where he looked-at the
escus. vint la damoisele dune autre cambre moult richement
shields came the damsel from-an other chamber very richly

achesmee. si ot le vis nu & descouert. & laiens ot
adorned so had the face bare and uncovered and in-there was
luminaire a grant plente. Sire cheualier fait ele que vous
lighting in great plenty Lord knight says she what to-you
en samble des escus. Dame fait il moult bien lors le
thereof seems of-the shields Lady says he very well then her
regarde. & quant il le voit a descouert si le connoist
looks-at and when he her sees in uncovered so her knows
moult bien. Et il saut a li les bras tendus. & si li
very well And he leaps to her the arms stretched and so to-her
dist. ha bele douche damoisele vous soies la bien venue sor
says ah fair sweet damsel you be the well come above
toutes autres damoiseles. Car por dieu me dites que fait ma
all other damsels For for God to-me tell what does my
boine dame. Moult bien fait ele. Lors le trait a vne part
good lady Very well says she Then him draws-she to a part
a conseil si li dist que sa dame del lac lenuoie a li &
in counsel so to-him says that his lady of-the lake her-sends to him and
demain fait ele saurois vostre non. & le non vostre pere
tomorrow says she will-know-you your name and the name (of-)your father
& vostre mere. Et che sera la sus en chel castel dont
and your mother And this will-be there up in that castle whereof
vous seres sires ains que vespres soient sounees. Car iel sai
you will-be lord before that vespers be rung For I-it know
de voir par la bouche madame meisme. & li .iij. escu
of truth by the mouth (of-)my-lady herself and the three shields
sont vostre que vous aues veus. & sachies quil sont asses
are yours which you have seen and know that-they are very
merueilleus. Car si tost com vous aures au col chelui la
marvelous For so soon as you will-have at-the neck that-one there
ou il na que vne bende. si aures recouree la forche
where it not-has but one band so will-have-you recovered the strength

& le proeche dun cheualier auoeques chele que vous aues.
and the prowess of-a knight with that which you have
Et se vous i pendes chelui as .ij. bendes si aures
And if you there hang that-one with-the two bands so will-have-you
la proeche a .ij. cheualiers. & par chelui as .iij. bendes
the prowess of two knights and by that-one with-the three bands
recoueres la proeche a .iij. cheualiers. Et ie les ferai
will-recover-you the prowess of three knights And I them shall-make
demain porter en la plache si gardes bien que vous ne vous
tomorrow carry into the place so take-care well that you not yourself
fies tant en vostre iouencche. & que si tost com vous
trust so-much in your youth and that so soon as you
sentires vostre force a munusier que vous prengies lescu
will-feel your strength to diminish that you take the-shield
a vne seule bende. & puis cheli as .ij. se besoins vous
with a single band and then that-one with-the two if need you
en cache. & quant vous voldres tout torner a mal & que
thereto drives and when you will-wish all to-turn to ill and that
tous li siecles se merueille de vous si prendes chelui a
all the world itself marvel at you so take that-one with
.iij. bendes. Car vous verres les plus apertes merueilles que
three bands For you will-see the most open marvels that
vous onques veissies. & teiles que vous ne pories penser.
you ever saw and such that you not could think

Mais bien gardes que vous ne ne remaignies ne au roi
But well take-care that you not — remain either with-the king
artu ne a autrui. deuant que vous soies conneus par vos
Arthur nor with another before that you be known by your
proeches en plusors terres. Car ensi veut madame que vous le
prowesses in several lands For thus wishes my-lady that you it
fachies por essauchier & amender. Longement parla a lui la
do for to-exalt and to-amend Long spoke to him the

damoisele. si se sont assis al mangier quant il fu pres
damsel so themselves are sat to-the eating when it was ready
Et la nuit furent en paine del cheualier veoir chil damont &
And the night were in pain of-the knight to-see those from-above and
chil daual. & prioient tout nostre signeur quil li dounast
those from-below and prayed all our Lord that-he to-him gave
forche & pooir sor tous les cheualiers. autresi com il auoit
strength and power over all the knights just as he had
conquis les autres .v. Car moult desiroient que li encantement
conquered the other five For much desired-they that the enchantments
& les males coustumes del castel fuissent remaises a tous iors.
and the evil customs of-the castel were ceased for all days
Ensi passerent chele nuit & al matin fist la damoisele
Thus passed-they that night and at-the morning made the damsel
oir messe au cheualier. Et puis sarma. & quant il
hear mass to-the knight And then himself-armed-he and when he
fu armes. la damoisele le mena deuant la porte. & puis
was armed the damsel him led before the gate and then
li dist saues vous que vous aues a faire se vous voles le
to-him says know you what you have to do if you wish the
signor de cest castel conquerre. & abatre les encantemens.
lord of this castle to-conquer and to-overthrow the enchantments
Il vous conuendra ains quil soit nuis conquerre .x. cheualiers
It you will-behoove before that-it be night to-conquer ten knights
a ceste premiere porte. & .x. a chel autre outre. Comment
at this first gate and ten at that other beyond How
fait il. dont nen ai iou conquis de la premiere porte .v.
says he then not-thereof have I conquered of the first gate five
cheualiers. nenil fait ele. Car riens que vous i aies fait ne
knights no says she For anything that you there have done not
vous i vaudra. ne plus que se vous ni eusies onques
to-you there will-avail no more than if you not-there had ever

colp feru. Et se vous auies conquis .ix. cheualiers de lune des
blow struck And if you had conquered nine knights of the-one of-the
portes & leure venist. si seroit tout a recommenchier. Car
gates and the-hour came so would-be all to begin-again For
anchois quil soit nuis les deues vous auoir tous conqui. &
before that-it be night them ought you have all conquered and
bien soies seurs que vous les conquerres tous. & encore vous
well be sure that you them will-conquer all and still you
ferai chertains dune autre chose. que vous ne morres ia
shall-I-make certain of-an other thing that you not will-die ever
darmes tant com vous aies hiaume en teste ne hauberc el
by-arms as-long as you have helm on head or hauberk on-the
dos. Chest vne chose qui moult vous doit asseurer. Chertes
back This-is a thing which much you ought assure Certainly
fait il dont sui ie seur que ie ne puis morir honteusement.
says he then am I sure that I not can die shamefully
Endementiers quil parloient ensi. soune li cors. Et vns
While that-they spoke thus sounds the horn And a
cheualiers ist hors armes de toutes armes fors la teste.
knight goes out armed in all arms except the head
& dit au blanc cheualier. sire cheualiers que demandes
and says to-the white knight lord knight what ask
vous. & il dist que lauenture del chastel. De che fait
you and he says that the-adventure of-the castle Of this says
li cheualiers ne troueres vous ia qui vous responde tant
the knight not will-find you ever who you answer as-long
com vous tendrois nos cheualiers. Mais si tost com vous
as you will-hold our knights But so soon as you
les aures rendus si aures lauenture toute preste. por
them will-have given-back so will-have-you the-adventure all ready for
les cheualiers fait il ne remendra il ia que vous ne me
the knights says he not will-remain it ever that you not to-me

rendes mauenture. Mais gardes que vous ne me rendes a
give-back my-adventure But take-care that you not to-me give-back in
tort. Car che seroit desloialtes. & chil dist sire cheualiers
wrong For this would-be disloyalty and that-one says lord knight
bien sachies que vous les deues rendre. Mais il ne peuent
well know that you them ought give-back But they not can
ne ne doiuent armes porter encontre vous. & se vous uoles
nor not ought arms bear against you and if you wish
les fois en poes auoir & iel vous lo. Et bien sachies
the faiths thereof can-you have and I-it to-you counsel And well know
que ie voldroie que vous fusies si preus que vous eussies le
that I would-wish that you were so valiant that you had the
castel conquis. Car trop a duree ceste dolors. Mais il me
castle conquered For too-long has lasted this sorrow But it me
couient garder ma loiaute & faire che que mes fies aporte.
behooves to-keep my loyalty and to-do this that my fief brings
Maintenant deliure chil les .iiij. cheualiers si sentrent
At-once delivers that-one the four knights so themselves-enter
el chastel. Et tantost est fors venus vns cheualiers tous
into-the castle And at-once is out come a knight all
armes. & quant il est hors del guichet si saut en son
armed and when he is out of-the wicket so leaps on his
cheual qui amenes li fu. puis si vienent andoi al pie
horse which brought to-him was then so come both to-the foot
del tertre aual. & commenchent les ioustes au plus pres
of-the hill below and begin the jousts at-the most near
de la porte que il porent. Li cheualiers de la porte du
of the gate that they could The knight of the gate of-the
castel fiert lautre de son pooir si quil li fait hurter a
castle strikes the-other with his power so that-he to-him makes knock at
le temple. Mais la lanche ne brisa mie. Car trop estoit fors.
the temple But the lance not broke at-all For too was-it strong

Et li cheualiers refiert lui si que parmi lescu & parmi le
And the knight strikes-back him so that through the-shield and through the
mance del hauberc le point el brac. si li fait lescu
sleeve of-the hauberk him pricks in-the arm so to-him makes the-shield
hurter au coste. si durement que lesquine li est ploie
knock at-the side so hard that the-spine to-him is bent
contre larchon. si le fait voler a terre par desus la crupe
against the-saddlebow so him makes fly to ground over above the croup
del cheual & il chiet si durement que moult se bleche.
of-the horse and he falls so hard that much himself hurts
Li blans cheualiers est deschendus a terre. & quant il
The white knight is dismounted to ground and when he
li volt coure sus. si voit dusca .ix. cheualiers issus
to-him wished to-run upon so sees-he up-to nine knights come-out
de la premiere porte. & vienent aual le tertre. Et .j.
from the first gate and come down the hill And a
cheualiers sen part & vient iusquen la plache. &
knight himself-thence parts and comes as-far-as-into the place and
saut .j. petit loing. & quant li blans cheualiers le voit
leaps a little far and when the white knight him sees
si se crient de traison. Lors est salis en son cheual &
so himself fears of treason Then is-he leapt on his horse and
prent son glaiue si sadreche a chelui quil voit venir. sel
takes his lance so himself-directs at him whom-he sees come so-him
fiert moult durement. & il lui si que les lances volent en
strikes very hard and he him so that the lances fly in
pieches. Mais ne cai ne li vns ne li autres. Et quant li
pieces But not fell either the one nor the other And when the
blans cheualiers voit que chil nest queus & que andoi li
white knight sees that that-one not-is fallen and that both the
glaiue sont pechoie si a moult grant despit. & dist que
lances are shattered so has-he very great scorn and says that

maleois soit qui onques fist glaiue quant il nel fist tele
cursed be who ever made lance when he not-it made such
que len nel peust pechoier. Lors met le main a lespee. &
that one not-it could shatter Then puts-he the hand to the-sword and
li autres cheualiers fu releues & ot son cheual perdus. si
the other knight was risen-again and had his horse lost so
ot ius iete son escu por le brac qui nel pot soustenir.
had down thrown his shield for the arm which not-it could hold-up
Si se traioit vers la roche au plus que il pooit. &
So himself drew toward the rock at-the most that he could and
chil adreche quanque li cheuax pot aler. & quant li
that-one directs as-fast-as the horse could go and when the
cheualiers lot venir si regarde & voit sespee traite.
knight him-heard come so looks and sees his-sword drawn
Mais il na mie loisir. Car il sen vient par lui. si
But he not-has at-all leisure For he himself-thence comes by him so
li doune tel colp en haut desus le hiaume que tout le
to-him gives such blow on high upon the helm that all him
fait cancheler. & par .j. poi quil nest queus. & chil
makes stagger and by a little that-he not-is fallen and that-one
se lanche outre. & puis sen reuient par lui si com
himself launches beyond and then himself-thence comes-back by him so as
il a lespee traite si li doune tel colp sor le destre brac
he has the-sword drawn so to-him gives such blow on the right arm
ains quil sen gardast quil le mahaigne. & lespee
before that-he himself-thereof guarded that-he it maims and the-sword
est queue en mi le camp. Comment sire cheualiers fait li
is fallen into middle the field How lord knight says the
autres qui poignant i vient voles vous combatre a nous
other who spurring there comes wish you to-fight with us
.ij. Oil fait il au tierch sil i uenoit aussi uolentiers
two Yes says he with-the third if-he there came as willingly

comme as .ij. par foi fait il. nous ne vous oseriens mie
as with-the two by faith says he we not you would-dare at-all
doi ferir ensamble. se ne fust par vostre congie. puis que
two to-strike together if not were-it by your leave since that
vous i uenes fait il por secoure lun lautre. si vos
you there come says he for to-succor the-one the-other so yourselves
entresecores au miex que vous poes. Ne il ne me grieue
succor-each-other at-the best that you can Nor it not me grieves
nient plus se vous estes .ij. que vns seus. Ne li troi.
anything more if you are two than one alone Nor the three
nient plus que li doi. puis que ie conquerrai. aussi bien le
anything more than the two since that I shall-conquer as well the
plus que le mains. Quant li cheualiers lentent si sen
more as the less When the knight it-hears so himself-thereof
esmaie moult. & bien seit que parest de trop grant
dismays much and well knows that he-is-indeed of too great
cuer. Lors sentreuienent les espees traites. si se dounent
heart Then meet-each-other-they the swords drawn so themselves give
grans cols desor les hiaumes. Et quant li cheualiers blans
great blows upon the helms And when the knight white
en reuoit aler celui quil ot mehaignie des .ij. bras. si
thence sees-again go that-one whom-he had maimed of-the two arms so
li relaisse coure & sen reuient par lui. si li
at-him lets-again run and himself-thence comes-back by him so from-him
sache le hiaume ius de la teste. & chil bee a fuir
pulls the helm down from the head and that-one aims to flee
contremont le tertre. Et chil sen vient par lui sel
up the hill And that-one himself-thence comes by him so-him
fiert desus la coiffe a la grant ire quil ot si que tout
strikes upon the coif with the great wrath that-he had so that all
le porfent iusquens espaules & il chiet. Et li autres li
him cleaves as-far-into-the shoulders and he falls And the other to-him

vient ataignant si li doune grant colp sor le hiaume si
comes reaching so to-him gives great blow on the helm so
que tout la enbronchie aual. & la ou il sen
that all him-has bowed down and there where he himself-thence
passe outre li blans cheualiers fiert par auenture de lespee
passes beyond the white knight strikes by chance with the-sword
ariere main el nazel del hiaume. si le trenche tout iuscas
back hand on-the nasal of-the helm so it cuts all to-the
ioes. si lenuerse de la grant angoisse que il a. tres desus
cheeks so him-overturns from the great anguish that he has right over
larchon deriere & il se pasme. Et chil reuient par
the-saddlebow behind and he himself faints And that-one comes-back by
li si li esrache le hiaume del cief & li crie
him so from-him tears the helm from-the head and to-him cries
quil li fianche prison. Mais il na pooir de parler. &
that-he to-him pledge prison But he not-has power to speak and
chil refiert de lespee en mi les dens. quil a tous
that-one strikes-again with the-sword into middle the teeth which-he has all
descouers & plains de sanc. si le trenche tout dusquens
uncovered and full of blood so him cuts all as-far-into-the
oreilles. & dist que ia diex ne li ait. sil a iamais
ears and says that ever God not him may-help if-he has ever-more
pitie daus ochire. puis que autrement nes puet conquerre.
pity of-them killing since that otherwise not-them can-he conquer
& chil est a terre queus. Lors voient bien li autre que il
and that-one is to ground fallen Then see well the others that he
est mors. Si sen part vns des autres. Car ia furent
is dead So himself-thence parts one of-the others For already were-they
venu au pie del tertre si pechoie son glaiue sor le blanc
come to-the foot of-the hill so shatters his lance on the white
cheualier. Et quant li glaiues li est falis si sache lespee
knight And when the lance to-him is failed so draws-he the-sword

& li doune grant colp la ou il puet. Et chil li
and to-him gives great blow there where he can And that-one to-him
recort sus si fierement que tout sen esbahissent.
runs-again upon so fiercely that all themselves-thereof dismay
Si le conroient si en poi deure que plus nel puet souffrir.
So him handles-he so in little of-time that more not-it can-he endure
si apele .j. autre & il vient. Et cil qui plus ne puet
so calls an other and he comes And that-one who more not can
la bataille soffrir senfuit el castel. & vns autres vient
the battle endure himself-flees into-the castle and an other comes
tous fres en son lieu. Ensi menerent le cheualier blanc tant
all fresh in his place Thus led-they the knight white until
que ia estoit prime passee. & pres de tierce pooit estre.
that already was prime passed and near of tierce could-it be

The Dolorous Guard Conquered

XLVI

Weary and wounded, Lancelot takes the shield of one band and finds his strength doubled; with the shield of two bands he beats the defenders of the first gate until it opens. The damsel gives him the shield of three bands; the copper knight falls and kills a defender, and the rest flee or yield. The lord, whom he must still fight, has fled. In the cemetery he lifts the metal slab and reads: Here will lie Lancelot of the Lake, son of King Ban of Benoic. He swears the damsel to silence and stays to heal, while the town fears he will not stay the forty days that end the enchantments.

Lors vient iluec .j. escuiers & portoit a son col .j. escu
Then comes there a squire and carried at his neck a shield
dargent a vne bende vermeille de bellic. & li escus au
of-silver with a band red of bend and the shield of-the
blanc cheualier estoit ia tex conrees. que moult en i
white knight was already such arrayed that very thereof there
auoit petit remes. & il meismes estoit ia moult empiries
had little remained and he himself was already much impaired
& dalaine & dautre force. si auoit asses perdu del sanc. Car
both of-breath and of-other strength so had-he much lost of-the blood For
en maint lieu estoit naures. & il les rauoit moult blechies
in many place was-he wounded and he them had-again much hurt
& naures. Mais tout senfuioient el castel a garant & por
and wounded But all themselves-fled into-the castle to safety and for
aus reuenoient autre tout fres. Quant li blans cheualiers voit
them came-back others all fresh When the white knight sees
quensi ne pora venir a chief si li anuie moult que
that-thus not will-he-be-able come to end so to-him it-irks much that
tant demeure a conquerre le grant honor que il atent. Et
so-long delays to conquer the great honor that he awaits And
lors iete ius che poi descu quil auoit. & saisist chelui
then throws-he down this little of-shield that-he had and seizes that-one

que li valles ot aporte. Et lors sent sa forche doublee. si
which the youth had brought And then feels-he his strength doubled so
est tant vistes & tant legiers quil ne se sent de colp ne
is-he so swift and so light that-he not himself feels of blow nor
de plaie que il ait. Et tantost laisse coure a eus tous &
of wound that he may-have And at-once lets-he run at them all and
fiert a destre & a senestre & fait tex merueilles que nus
strikes to right and to left and does such marvels that anyone
nel uoit quil ne sen esbahisse. Il lor fausse lor
not-him sees that-he not himself-thereof dismay He to-them pierces their
hiaumes & lor decaupe lor escus. Il lor desront lor
helms and to-them hacks their shields He to-them breaks their
haubers sor les bras & sor les espaules. Et il le refierent
hauberks on the arms and on the shoulders And they him strike-back
& blechent moult. Car si tost comme lun ne puet plus
and hurt much For so soon as the-one not can more
souffrir si vient vns autres en son lieu & che li a moult
endure so comes an other in his place and this to-him has much
greue. Si a ainsi maintenue la mellee tant que tierche
grieved So has-he thus maintained the melee until that tierce
passe. si li ont fait asses de petites plaies & de grans.
passes so to-him have-they made many of little wounds and of great
Et lors vient la damoisele qui lauoit amene deuant la porte.
And then comes the damsel who him-had led before the gate
& li escuiers auoec lui qui auoit aporte lescu. si aportoit
and the squire with her who had brought the-shield so brought
chelui as .ij. bendes. Et li cheualiers les auoit ia tant
that-one with-the two bands And the knight them had already so-much
menes. quil sestoient ia mis au tertre. & sen
driven that-they themselves-were already put to-the hill and themselves-thence
aloient vers la porte por le secors auoir plus pres. Et les
went toward the gate for the succor to-have more near And the

gens del castel esgardent desor le mur comme li cheualiers
people of-the castle look from-upon the wall how the knight
les enmaine tous par son cors. si en sont tout esbahi.
them drives all by his body so thereof are-they all amazed
Et prient que diex le tiengne en che quil a commenchie.
And pray that God him may-keep in this that-he has begun

Tant ont guenchi chil de dedens as cols quil sont uenu
So-much have swerved those from within at-the blows that-they are come
a le porte. & lors li recourent tuit sus. & lor secors lor
to the gate and then to-him run-again all upon and their succor to-them
vient souent & menu par quoi il nen puet a chief venir. Et
comes often and small by which he not-thereof can to end come And
lors le prent la damoisele au fraim & li oste lescu
then him takes the damsel by-the bridle and from-him removes the-shield
del col. & i met chelui as .ij. bendes. & li cheualier
from-the neck and there puts that-one with-the two bands and the knights
sen merueillent moult porcoi ele le fait. si vausissent
themselves-thereof marvel much wherefore she it does so would-wish-they
bien quil ne venist plus arriere. Car trop ont grant honte de
well that-he not came more back For too have-they great shame to
combatre a .j. seul cheualier qui si malement les a menes.
fight with a single knight who so badly them has driven

Lors est reuenus a la mellee. si les conroie tex en poi
Then is-he come-back to the melee so them arrays such in little
deure que nus a colp ne lose atendre. Ains guenchisent
of-time that anyone at blow not him-dares await Rather swerve
a ses cols tout li plus hardi. Ne ni a dedens le
at his blows all the most bold Nor not-there has within the
castel cheualier qui ait este a la mellee qui ses cols
castle knight who may-have been at the melee who his blows
nait assaies. Si dient bien tout que onques mais ne virent
not-have tried So say well all that ever more not saw-they

cheualier de son pooir. Mais sor tous les autres en est
knight of his power But above all the others thereof is
esbahis li sires del castel qui les esgarde desus le mur
amazed the lord of-the castle who them looks-at from-upon the wall
ou il estoit. si a teil duel que por poi quil nesrage de
where he was so has such grief that for little that-he goes-mad for
chou quil nest a la mellee. Mais il ni puet estre ne
this that-he not-is at the melee But he not-there can be nor
ne doit selonc les costumes del castel. deuant que tout
not ought according-to the customs of-the castle before that all
li autre fuissent conquis. Si a moult grant paor de ueoir
the others were conquered So has-he very great fear to see
sa grant dolor. a coi il nauoit onques quidie que nus cors
his great sorrow to which he not-had ever thought that any body
dun seul cheualier peust ataindre. Moult les maine li blans
of-a single knight could attain Very them drives the white
cheualiers honteusement. & bien veoient que il ne porront
knight shamefully and well they-saw that they not will-be-able
a lui durer por cange quil fachent. Car il les tient si
against him to-last for change that-they make For he them holds so
court que li lasse nont tant pooir que il puissent entrer
short that the weary not-have so-much power that they can enter
el guichet. ne chil de dedens de venir hors. Si sest
into-the wicket nor those from within to come out So himself-is
en poi deure si vistoies quil en a .v. tex conrees quil
in little of-time so hastened that-he thereof has five such arrayed that-there
ni a chelui qui a pooir de releuer Car li doi en
not-there has that-one who has power to rise-again For the two thereof
sont ochis. & li troi gisent a mort naure estre les .ij. qui
are killed and the three lie to death wounded besides the two who
sont ochis des le commenchement. & quant il voit quil
are killed from the beginning and when he sees that-they

ne sont mais que troi si les prise moult petit. lors lor
not are more than three so them prizes-he very little then to-them
cort sus moult fierement. & il li guerpissent plache si
runs-he upon very fiercely and they to-him yield place so
fuient tant com il peuent en guenchissant. Et lors vient
flee as-much as they can in swerving And then comes
auant li plus grans & li plus poisans des .iij. & li plus
forward the most tall and the most powerful of-the three and the most
corsus. si dist quil ne se fera ia ochire. Car maint
big-bodied so says that-he not himself will-make ever kill For many
plus preu que il nest i ont perdu la vie. si li tent
more valiant than he is there have lost the life so to-him holds-out
sespee & li fianche a tenir prison. & quant li autre doi
his-sword and to-him pledges to hold prison and when the other two
le veoient si font autretel. Et lors escoute li blans cheualiers
it saw so do the-same And then listens the white knight
si oi .j. grant escrois. si esgarde contremont & voit que
so heard a great crash so looks up and sees that
chest la porte qui est ouuerte. & il a trop grant ioie. Car
it-is the gate which is opened and he has very great joy For
che ne quidoit il ia veoir & ia estoit il pres de noune.
this not thought he ever to-see and already was it near of nones
Et quant il a monte le tertre si voit parmi la porte les
And when he has mounted the hill so sees through the gate the
.x. cheualiers de lautre part tous abochies deuant la porte.
ten knights of the-other part all gathered before the gate
Lors lareste la damoisele qui les escus li auoit aportes
Then him-stops the damsel who the shields to-him had brought
si li deslache ele meisme son hiaume. Car il ne li
so for-him unlaces she herself his helm For it not to-him
estoit mais preus. & ele le baille .j. sien vallet & prent .j.
was more profitable and she it hands a her youth and takes an

autre que il tenoit moult boin & moult bel si li a
other which he held very good and very fair so for-him has-she
lachie. Et puis li oste lescu del col si li remet
laced And then from-him removes the-shield from-the neck so to-him puts-again
chelui as .iij. bendes. Et il dist. ha damoisele houni
that-one with-the three bands And he says ah damsel shamed
maues. qui les me feres vaincre sans point de ma
me-have-you who them to-me will-make conquer without any of my
proeche. Trop i auoit il de cheli que vous aues oste.
prowess Too-much there had it of that-one which you have removed
lors li baille li valles vne glaiue. dont li hanste est
then to-him hands the youth a lance whose the shaft is
meruilleuse & fors & li fers trenchans comme rasoirs. Et
marvelous and strong and the iron cutting as razors And
la damoisele li dist. que ele veut veoir comment il iouste.
the damsel to-him says that she wishes to-see how he jousts
Car ele seit asses comment il se seit aidier de lespee.
For she knows enough how he himself knows help with the-sword
Li cheualiers a prins le glaiue & vient dedens la porte.
The knight has taken the lance and comes within the gate
Et la damoisele li dist quil esgart en haut desus lautre
And the damsel to-him says that-he look on high above the-other
porte. & il i esgarde. si voit le cheualier de cueure grant
gate and he there looks so sees the knight of copper great
& merueilleus. & si tost com il la veu. Il chiet de si
and marvelous and so soon as he him-has seen It falls from as
haut com il est. & ataint en son caioir .j. des cheualiers
high as it is and reaches in its falling one of-the knights
qui desous la porte sont si li brise le col en trauers. &
who below the gate are so to-him breaks the neck in across and
labat mort de son cheual. Mais de riens ne sesbahist
him-strikes-down dead from his horse But of anything not himself-dismays

li blans cheualiers. anchois laisse coure a tout le tropel &
the white knight rather lets run at all the troop and
fiert chelui quil aconsieut premiers si durement quil le
strikes him whom-he reaches first so hard that-he him
gete mort. Et quant li autre veoient ches .ij. mors & le
casts dead And when the others saw these two dead and the
cheualier de cueure qui fondus est. si ne se seiuent mais
knight of copper which fallen is so not themselves know-they more
en coi fier. Si se lanchent ius des cheuax & se
in what to-trust So themselves throw-they down from-the horses and themselves
metent ens parmi le guichet al plus isnelement quil
put in through the wicket at-the most swiftly that-they
peuent. Et li blans cheualiers saut ius si a traite lespee
can And the white knight leaps down so has drawn the-sword
dont il lor doune grans cols par la ou il les ataint.
wherewith he to-them gives great blows by there where he them reaches
Si a tant fait que li .iij. daarrain li ont fianchie
So has-he so-much done that the three last to-him have pledged
prison. qui a tans ni porent entrer. Et il se met
prison who in time not-there could enter And he himself puts
apres les autres .v. parmi le guichet mais il nen ataint
after the other five through the wicket but he not-thereof reaches
nul. Et lors encontre asses dames & damoiseles & borgois
any And then meets-he many ladies and damsels and burghers
qui moult grant ioie li font & li dient. sire il ne
who very great joy to-him make and to-him say lord it not
vous en couient faire plus que fait en aues. puis quil
you thereof behooves to-do more than done thereof have-you since that-they
vous ont guerpie la porte. Et lors aporte vne damoisele les
to-you have yielded the gate And then brings a damsel the
cleis & len li desferme la porte tantost. Et ele iete vn
keys and one to-him unfastens the gate at-once And she throws a

si grant cri que moult sen merueille li cheualiers. Et
so great cry that much himself-thereof marvels the knight And
il demande a chex qui entor lui sont sil a plus a faire
he asks to those who around him are if-he has more to do
de nule chose qui a lauenture apartiegne & li borgois
of any thing which to the-adventure belong and the burghers
qui moult tardoient quil fuissent deliure respondent. quil
who much were-impatient that-they were delivered answer that-he
se doit encore combatre au signor del castel. ains
himself ought still fight with-the lord of-the castle before
quil osteche son hiaume ne riens de sarmeure. De che
that-he remove his helm or anything of his-armor Of this
fait il sui ie moult lies. & ou le porai ie trouer.
says he am I very glad and where him shall-be-able I find
Sire fait vns valles au signor qui illuec estoit. a
Lord says a youth of-the lord who there was of
monsignor aues vous fali. Car il sen va si tost comme
my-lord have you failed For he himself-thence goes as fast as
cheuax len puet porter. si grant duel faisant que par .j.
horse him-thence can carry so great grief making that by a
poi quil ne sochist. De ches noueles sont moult dolant tout
little that-he not himself-kills At these news are very sorrowful all
cil del castel. si mainent le cheualier en vne chimentiere
those of-the castle so lead-they the knight into a cemetery
moult merueilleus qui estoit dehors les murs. si sen
very marvelous which was outside the walls so himself-thereof
meruella moult quant il le vit. Car il estoit de toutes les
marveled-he much when he it saw For it was on all the
parties clos de murs batillers menuement. & desus maint
parts enclosed with walls battlemented closely and upon many
des creniax auoit testes de cheualiers a tous les hiaumes.
of-the crenels were heads of knights with all the helms

& endroit chascun crenel a tombes ou il a lettres
and at each crenel are tombs where there are letters
qui dient. chi gist chil & vees la sa teste. Mais endroit
which say here lies that-one and see there his head But at
les creniax ou il na nule teste nauoit il mie ensi escrit.
the crenels where it not-has any head not-had it at-all thus written
Ains disoient les lettres chi gerra chil. Si i auoit nons
Rather said the letters here will-lie that-one So there were names
de maint boin cheualier. de la terre le roi artu &
of many good knight of the land (of-)the king Arthur and
daillors. de tous les millors que len sauoit. & el milieu
from-elsewhere of all the best that one knew and in-the middle
de le chimentiere si auoit vne grant lame de metal tres
of the cemetery so was a great slab of metal very
merueilleusement ouuree a or & a pieres & a esmax.
marvelously worked with gold and with stones and with enamels
Et si i auoit lettres qui disoient. ceste lame niert ia
And so there were letters which said this slab not-will-be ever
leuee par main domme ne par esfors. se par chelui non
raised by hand of-man nor by effort except by him not
qui conquerra cest doleros castel. & de chelui est li nons
who will-conquer this dolorous castle and of that-one is the name
escris desous. A chele tombe leuer auoient mainte gent assaie
written beneath At that tomb to-raise had many people tried
& par forche & par engien por le non del boin cheualier
both by force and by craft for the name of-the good knight
comnoistre. Et li sires del castel i auoit maintefois
to-know And the lord of-the castle there had many-times
grant paine mise por le cheualier connoistre. Car il le
great pain put for the knight to-know For he him
feist ochire sil peust. lors ont mene le cheualier
would-have-made kill if-he could then have-they led the knight

iusca la lame si arme com il fu de toutes armes & li
up-to the slab so armed as he was in all arms and to-him
monstrent les lettres quil seit bien lire. Car maint ior
show the letters which-he knows well to-read For many day
auoit apris. & quant il les ot leuees si esgarda la lame
had-he learned and when he them had read so looked-at the slab
amont & aual. & vit que sele estoit toute deliure en mi
up and down and saw that if-it were all free in middle
vne voie. si i auoit asses a leuer a .iiij. des plus fors
a road so there would-have enough to raise for four of-the most strong
cheualiers del monde. a tout le plus petit des .ij. chies.
knights of-the world by all the most little of-the two ends
Lors le saisist a .ij. mains par deuers le plus gros. si
Then it seizes-he with two hands by toward the most thick so
la tant leuee quele est plus haute que sa teste .j. pie. Et
it-has so-much raised that-it is more high than his head a foot And
lors voit les lettres qui dient. Chi gerra lancelos del lac li
then sees the letters which say Here will-lie Lancelot of-the lake the
fiex au roi ban de benoyc. & lors remet la lame ius &
son of-the king Ban of benoic and then puts-back the slab down and
bien seit que chest ses nons quil a veu. Lors regarde la
well knows that this-is his name that-he has seen Then looks-at-he the
damoisele qui estoit a sa dame. Qui auoit autresi bien veu
damsel who was of his lady Who had as well seen
le non com il auoit. Que aueis vous fait ele veu. noiant fait
the name as he had What have you says she seen nothing says
il. si aues fait ele dites le moi. ha fait il por dieu merchi.
he yes you-have says she tell it to-me ah says he for God mercy
por dieu merci fait ele. aussi bien lai ie veue com vous
for God mercy says she as well it-have I seen as you
aues. lors li dist en loreille & il en est courechies.
have then to-him says-she in the-ear and he thereof is vexed

si li dist & coniure de quanque il puet quele nen
so to-her says and conjures by whatever he can that-she not-thereof
paroleche a nului rien. Non ferai ie fait ele naies doute.
speak to anyone anything Not shall-do I says she not-have fear
Atant lenmainent les gens el castel en .j. des plus biax
Thereupon him-lead the people into-the castle into one of-the most fair
palais del monde mais petis estoit. si le desarment & font
palaces of-the world but small was-it so him disarm and make
de lui trop grant feste. Chil palais estoit au signor del
of him very great feast That palace was of-the lord of-the
castel. si estoit riches de toutes choses qui a cort de riche
castle so was rich in all things which to court of rich
& haut homme deuoient estre. Ensi a li blans cheualiers
and high man ought be Thus has the white knight
la dolerouse garde conquise & la damoisele est auoec li
the dolorous guard conquered and the damsel is with him
qui le fait laiens seiourner por lui garir de ses plaies & de
who him makes in-there sojourn for him to-heal of his wounds and of
ses blecheures dont il auoit asses. Mais trop sont chil del
his hurts whereof he had many But too are those of-the
castel dolant del signor qui escapes est. Car sil fust prins
castle sorrowful for-the lord who escaped is For if-he were taken
tous li couignes fust descouers de laiens. & ore ne sera
all the condition would-be uncovered of in-there and now not will-be-it
iamais seus che doutent. Car il doutent quil ne puissent
ever-more known this fear-they For they fear that-they not may
mie retenir chel cheualier .xl. iors. Car sil i demorast. lors
at-all keep that knight forty days For if-he there stayed then
caissent tout li encantement. & toutes les merueilles que par
would-fall all the enchantments and all the marvels which by
nuit & par ior i venoient. Car nus ni beuoit ne ne
night and by day there came For anyone not-there drank nor not

mengoit asseur ne couchoit ne leuoit. En tel maniere sont en
ate sure nor lay nor rose In such manner are-they in
la vile lie & dolant. Si font de lor nouel seignor si grant
the town glad and sorrowful So make-they of their new lord as great
ioie com Il doiuent. Mais plus nen parole chi endroit li
joy as They ought But more not-thereof speaks here in-place the
contes de lui. ains retorne a vne autre voie si com vous orres.
tale of him rather returns to an other way so as you will-hear

The Tidings at Court

XLVII

A young noble who saw the conquest rides to Arthur's court at Caerleon. On the way he meets Alibon, who sends him on, and before the king he tells that a knight in white arms has conquered the Dolorous Guard; his brother Aiglin of the Vales vouches for him. Gawain says it must be the new knight, and when many knights would go, he counsels that ten are enough; the king names them, Gawain first, then Yvain, Galegantin the Welsh, Tor, Caradoc Short Arm, Aiglin, and others.

Quant li blans cheualiers ot la dolerouse garde conquise.
When the white knight had the dolorous guard conquered
& la lame leuee. si auoit en la plache .j. vallet gentil
and the slab raised so was-there in the place a youth noble
homme moult preu & moult viste. Qui estoit freres a
man very brave and very swift Who was brother to
.j. cheualier de la maison le roi artu. si auoit non li
a knight of the house (of-)the king Arthur so had name the
cheualiers aiglyns des vax. li valles sot bien que se ches
knight Aiglin of-the vales the youth knew well that if these
noueles estoient seues a cort. Trop seroient volentiers oies.
news were known at court Very would-be-they willingly heard

Car lon ne quidoit mie que nus hons peust che faire. Et
For one not thought at-all that any man could this do And
il sist sor .j. moult boin cacheor. si sen parti del
he sat on a very good hunter so himself-thence parted from-the
castel entre noune & vespres por les noueles porter a cort.
castle between nones and vespers for the news to-carry to court
Car il auoit bien veu quanque li cheualiers auoit fait le
For he had well seen whatever the knight had done the
Iour & la nuit deuant. & queus armes il auoit aportees.
Day and the night before and what arms he had brought
Chele nuit iut si loing com il pot plus. & lendemain
That night lay-he as far as he could most and the-next-day
se leua moult matin si erra tant par ses Iournees quil
himself raised very early so traveled so-far by his Journeys that-he
vint au tierch ior a carlyon. & le ior anchois quil i
came on-the third day to carlyon and the day before that-he there
venist si encontra alibon le filg au vauassor del gue la
came so met-he Alibon the son of-the vavasor of-the ford (of-)the
roine. Alibons li demande. vallet ou vas tu si tost. as
queen Alibon of-him asks youth where goest thou so fast hast
tu besoig. oil fait il. Car ie vois a la cort le roi artu
thou need yes says he For I go to the court (of-)the king Arthur
& port noueles trop estraignes. queles fait li cheualiers.
and carry news very strange which says the knight
La dolerouse garde fait il est conquise. Cest menchoigne
The dolorous guard says he is conquered This-is lie
fait alibons che ne puet estre. ains est voirs fait il valles.
says Alibon this not can be rather is-it true says he youth
Car ie le vi a mes iex passer les .ij. portes. & tous les
For I it saw with my eyes pass the two gates and all the
cheualiers conquerre. Queus armes fait il auoit li cheualiers.
knights conquer What arms says he had the knight

Il portoit fait li valles vnes armes blanches & si auoit
He bore says the youth some arms white and so had
.j. blanc cheual. Or vallet fait alybons porte ches noueles
a white horse Now youth says Alibon carry these news
a cort. Car asses troueras qui en fera ioie. Li valles
to court For enough wilt-thou-find who thereof will-make joy The youth
vient a la cort. & la ou il voit le roi artu si li
comes to the court and there where he sees the king Arthur so to-him
dist.
says

Rois artus diex te saut. Ie taport noueles les plus
King Arthur God thee may-save I to-thee-bring news the most
estraignes qui onques entrassent en ton ostel. Dites les
strange which ever entered into thy house Say them
dont biax sire fait li rois. Car bien font a oir puis
then fair lord says the king For well are-they to hear since
queles sont si estraignes. Ie vous di fait li valles que la
that-they are so strange I to-you say says the youth that the
dolerouse garde est conquise. & est entres dedens les .ij.
dolorous guard is conquered and is entered within the two
portes par force darmes vns cheualiers. Che ne puet estre
gates by force of-arms a knight This not can be
fait chascuns. Il est voirs fait li valles. Car ie le vi
says each It is true says the youth For I him saw
entrer a mes iex & les cheualiers conquerre. vallet fait
enter with my eyes and the knights conquer youth says
li rois nel di mie chou nest voirs. Sire fait il se ie vous
the king not-it say at-all this not-is true Lord says he if I to-you
en ment si me pendes. & lors entra laiens ses freres
thereof lie so me hang and then entered in-there his brother
aiglyns qui venoit de son ostel. Et quant il voit sen frere
Aiglin who came from his lodging And when he sees his brother

a genous deuant le roi si li dist. biax freres bien soies
on knees before the king so to-him says fair brother well be
tu venus quel besoig tamaine a cort & il saut sus si
thou come what need thee-brings to court and he leaps up so
li conte les noueles. Comment fait li rois aiglins est
to-him tells the news How says the king Aiglin is
che dont vostre freires. Oil sire fait il sans faille. Dont
this then your brother Yes lord says he without fail Then
est il bien creables fait li rois que il nen mentiroit
is he well credible says the king for he not-thereof would-lie
mie. par foi fait aiglyns le mentir noseroit il faire.
at-all by faith says Aiglin the lying not-would-dare he do
Mais chest si grant chose que ie meismes en seroie en
But it-is so great thing that I myself thereof would-be in
doutance se ie ne lauoie veu. lors demandent au vallet
doubt if I not it-had seen then ask-they to-the youth
queus armes auoit li cheualiers & il dist vnes blanches
what arms had the knight and he says some white
armes & .j. cheual blanc. Et lors dist mesire gauuain. que
arms and a horse white And then says my-lord Gawain that
chest li cheualiers nouiax. Et lors dient vne grant partie
it-is the knight new And then say a great part
des cheualiers quil iront veoir se chest voirs. si se
of-the knights that-they will-go to-see if it-is true so themselves
appareillent por armer. Mais mesire Gauuain dist que che
prepare for to-arm But my-lord Gawain says that this
nest mie boin que tant en i aillent. Mais .x. en i
not-is at-all good that so-many thence there go But ten thence there
uoisent sans plus. & a che sacorde li rois meismes &
may-go without more and to this itself-accords the king himself and
tout li autre. Si deuise li rois les .x. qui iront de ches .x.
all the others So designates the king the ten who will-go of these ten

fu mesire Gauuain li premiers. & li secons mesire yewains.
was my-lord Gawain the first and the second my-lord Yvain
& li tiers Galegantis li galois. & li quars galescondes
and the third Galegantin the Welsh and the fourth Galescond
& li quins tors li fiex ares. & li sistes caradus bries
and the fifth Tor the son (of-)Ares and the sixth Caradoc Short
bras. li setismes ywains li auoltres. li witismes gassemans
Arm the seventh Yvain the bastard the eighth Gasoain
destragos. li noeuismes li gais ganlantins & li dismes fu
of-estragot the ninth the gay Galantin and the tenth was
aiglyns des vax.
Aiglin of-the vales